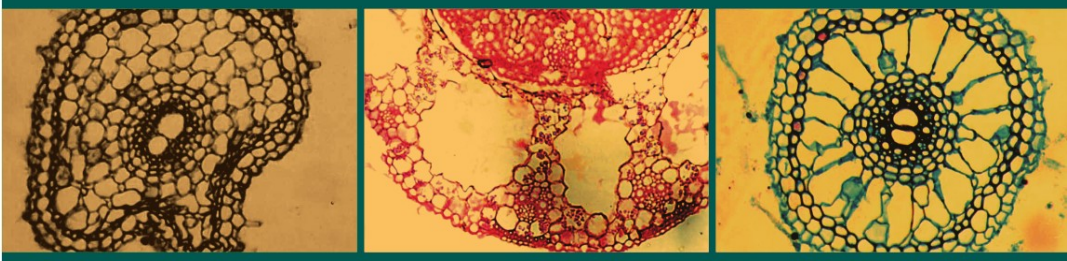
Dinesh K. Maheshwari *Editor*

Bacteria in Agrobiology:



Plant Growth Responses

Springer

Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses

Dinesh K. Maheshwari
Editor

Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses

Springer

Editor
Prof. (Dr.) Dinesh K. Maheshwari
Gurukul Kangri University
Deptt. of Botany and Microbiology
Haridwar (Uttarakhand)
India
maheshwaridk@gmail.com

ISBN 978-3-642-20331-2 e-ISBN 978-3-642-20332-9
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9
Springer Heidelberg Dordrecht London New York

Library of Congress Control Number: 2011932212

Cover illustration: Optical micrograph showing cross sections of intercellular colonization rice calli and regenerated plantlets by A. caulinodans: CS view of root uninoculated control; magnified cross section view of leaf colonized by A. caulinodans in regenerated rice plant; possible sites of infection and colonization of rice root (from left to right); see also Fig. 3.1 in "Endophytic Bacteria – Perspectives and Applications in Agricultural Crop Production", Senthilkumar M, R. Anandham, M. Madhaiyan, V. Venkateswaran, Tong Min Sa, in "Bacteria in Agrobiology: Crop Ecosystems, Dinesh K. Maheshwari (Ed.)"

Background: Positive immunofluorescence micrograph showing reaction between cells of the rhizobial biofertilizer strain E11 and specific anti-E11 antiserum prepared for autecological biogeography studies; see also Fig. 10.6 in "Beneficial Endophytic Rhizobia as Biofertilizer Inoculants for Rice and the Spatial Ecology of this Bacteria-Plant Association", Youssef Garas Yanni, Frank B. Dazzo, Mohamed I. Zidan. in "Bacteria in Agrobiology: Crop Ecosystems, Dinesh K. Maheshwari (Ed.)"

Cover design: deblik, Berlin

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Preface

The microbial world is the largest unexplored reservoir of biodiversity and acts as a major source for agriculture, industrial, and medicinal applications. Bacteria are the most dominant group of this diversity, which exist in different ecological niches. The growing interest in microorganisms promoting plant growth provides a fascinating biological system for the enhancement of their growth and development. Efforts have been made in this scenario for the selection of organisms and their selective genera suitable for sustainable plant growth.

With limited arable land coupled with rising demand of a steadily increasing human population, food supply is a global challenge and, therefore, production of high-quality food void of unacceptable chemicals is a pressing need. Knowledge of different mechanisms involved in support of plant growth promotion and disease suppression is essential from both societal and scientific point of view.

This volume comprises 15 chapters that cover application of symbiotic, free-living, rhizospheric, endophytic, methylotrophic, diazotrophic, and filamentous bacteria in plant growth promotion and protection and other related genera associated with orchids and coniferous tree. The effects of ecological consequences of the plasmid plasticity influence the adaptation of azospirilla to the complex plant–soil ecosystem, which have proved to be a great success in improving plant growth. A due account is provided with respect to *Lysobacter* spp., which uniquely is displayed in traits distinguishing them from other similar microbes in the practical field of agriculture. Complex knowledge relating to biology and biotechnology of methylotrophy has remained under infancy. A brief picture on the diversity of methylotrophs and their interactions that imply at both plant and ecosystem level is also provided, and the selection of suitable microbial partner to host orchids proved beneficial for the establishment of a stable community.

Substantial information is provided on the knowledge of different groups of bacteria and other related microbes such as *Actinobacteria*, *Actinomycetes*, and insect gut bacteria, which also have an added advantage due to their unexplored niche.

Spectacular progress has been made in phytobacteriology particularly in the area of agrobiology. The subject has evidently grown enormously, but the role of different group of bacteria and related organisms on plant growth responses also needs to be studied.

This book will benefit the students, teachers, and researchers and those interested to strengthen their learning of the subject of Agriculture, Plant physiology, Plant protection, Agronomy, Microbiology, Biotechnology, and Environmental science.

I am grateful to all the leading experts who have contributed their chapters in the preparation of the aforesaid volume. This pragmatic approach for investment in research from seed to soil and then raising plants will boost sustainability.

Appreciations are due to my research students, Abhinav, Rajat, Pankaj, Narendra, and Dr. Sandeep for their sincere efforts. I am also thankful to C.S.I. R., U.G.C., and UCOST for their financial support in the execution of the research projects on the subject that emerged as a prelude in compilation of this volume. I owe my special thanks to Dr. Jutta Lindenborn, Springer, for the excellent support in bringing out the volume in its current shape.

Haridwar, Uttarakhand, India Dinesh K. Maheshwari

Contents

Contributors

Abhinav Aeron Department of Botany and Microbiology, Faculty of Life Sciences, Gurukul Kangri University, Haridwar, 249404 Uttarakahnd, India, abhinavaeron@gmail.com

R. Anandham Department of Agricultural Microbiology, Agricultural College and Research Institute, Tamil Nadu Agricultural Universtiy, Madurai, 625 104 Tamil Nadu, India, anandhamranga@rediffmail.com

Javier A. Andrés Laboratorio de Microbiología Agrícola, Facultad de Agronomía y Veterinaria, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina

Charles W. Bacon USDA, ARS, Russell Research Center, 950 College Station Road, P.O. Box 5677, Athens, GA 30604, USA, charles.bacon@ars.usda.gov

Anelise Beneduzi Departamento de Genética, Universidade Federal do Rio Grande do Sul, Av. Bento Gonçalves, 9500, prédio 43312, sala 207b, Porto Alegre, RS, CEP 91501–970, Brasil

Rainer Borriss Bacterial Genetics/Institute of Biology Humboldt University Berlin, Chausseestr. 117, 10155 Berlin, Germany; ABiTEP GmbH, Glienicker Weg 185, 12489 Berlin, Germany, rainer.borriss@rz.hu-berlin.de

Puneet Singh Chauhan Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk, 361–763, Republic of Korea, puneetnbri@ gmail.com

Hari Prasanna Deka Boruah Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361–763, Republic of Korea

Kátia Regina dos Santos Teixeira Embrapa Agrobiology, BR 465 Km 7, Seropédica, Rio de Janeiro, CEP 23851–970, Brazil, katia@cnpab.embrapa.br

Sharon Lafferty Doty School of Forest Resources, College of the Environment, University of Washington, UW Box 352100, Seattle, WA 98195, USA, sldoty@uw.edu

Lorena B. Guiñazú Laboratorio de Interacción Microorganismo – Planta, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas, Físico-Químicas y Naturales, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina

Dorothy M. Hinton USDA, ARS, Russell Research Center, 950 College Station Road, P.O. Box 5677, Athens, GA 30604, USA, Charles.Bacon@ars.usda.gov

P. Indiragandhi Regional Research Station, Tamil Nadu Agricultural Universtiy, 606 001 Vriddhachalam, Cuddalore, Tamil Nadu, India, mptindira@gmail.com

Md. Tofazzal Islam Department of Biotechnology, Bangabandhu Sheikh Mujibur Rahman Agricultural University, Gazipur 1706, Bangladesh, tofazzalislam@-yahoo.com

Chaitanya Kumar Jha Department of Microbiology, University School of Sciences, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad, 380 009 Gujarat, India, jha_chaitanya@rediffmail.com

R. Kamaraj Kennedy Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Kalapet, Puducherry, 605014, India, puns2005@gmail.com

Elena I. Katsy Institute of Biochemistry and Physiology of Plants and Microorganisms, Russian Academy of Sciences, 13 Prospekt Entuziastov, Saratov 410049, Russia, katsy@ibppm.sgu.ruei_katsy@mail.ru

Munusamy Madhaiyan Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361–763, Republic of Korea

Dinesh K. Maheshwari Department of Botany and Microbiology, Faculty of Life Sciences, Gurukul Kangri University, Hardwar 249404 Uttarakhand, India, maheshwaridk@gmail.com

Luciane M. P. Passaglia Departamento de Genética, Universidade Federal do Rio Grande do Sul, Av. Bento Gonçalves, 9500, prédio 43312, sala 207b, Porto Alegre, RS, CEP 91501–970, Brasil, lpassaglia@terra.com.br

Nicolás A. Pastor Laboratorio de Interacción Microorganismo – Planta, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas, Físico-Químicas y Naturales, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina

Baldev V. Patel Department of Microbiology, University School of Sciences, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad, 380 009 Gujarat, India

J. Pathma Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Kalapet, Puducherry 605014, India

Raúl Osvaldo Pedraza Faculty of Agronomy and Zootecny, National University of Tucumán, Av. Roca 1900 (4000), Tucumán, Argentina, rpedraza@herrera.unt.edu.ar

Veronica Massena Reis Embrapa Agrobiology, BR 465 Km 7, Seropédica, Rio de Janeiro, CEP 23851–970, Brazil, veronica@cnpab.embrapa.br

Susana B. Rosas Laboratorio de Interacción Microorganismo – Planta, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas, Físico-Químicas y Naturales, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina

Marisa Rovera Laboratorio de Interacción Microorganismo – Planta, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas, Físico-Químicas y Naturales, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina

Tong Min Sa Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361–763, Republic of Korea, tomsa@chungbuk.ac.kr

N. Sakthivel Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Kalapet, Puducherry 605014, India, puns2005@gmail.com

Meenu Saraf Department of Microbiology, University School of Sciences, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad, 380 009 Gujarat, India, sarafmeenu@gmail.com

Masafumi Shimizu Laboratory of Plant Pathology, Faculty of Applied Biological Sciences, Gifu University, 1-1 Yanagido, Gifu City 501–1193, Japan, shimizma@gifu-u.ac.jp

Janice L. Strap University of Ontario Institute of Technology, 2000 Simcoe Street North, Oshawa, ON, Canada, L1H 7K4, Janice.Strap@uoit.ca

Elena Tsavkelova Microbiology Dept. 1/12, Moscow State University, 119991 Moscow, Russia, tsavkelova@mail.ru

Woo Jong Yim Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361–763, Republic of Korea

Chapter 1
Genetic and Phenotypic Diversity of Plant Growth Promoting Bacilli

Anelise Beneduzi and Luciane M.P. Passaglia

1.1 Introduction

Aerobic endospore-forming bacteria (AEFB) are essentially ubiquitous in agricultural systems. Common physiological traits important to their survival include the production of a multilayered cell wall structure, formation of stress-resistant endospores, and secretion of peptide antibiotics, peptide signal molecules, and extracellular enzymes. However, significant variation exists in other key traits, including nutrient utilization, motility, and physiochemical growth optima. Their microscopic size and omnipresence in soils facilitates their colonization of plants and animals, but the degree of niche localization of most species has not been thoroughly studied. Multiple *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* spp. can be readily cultured from both bulk and rhizosphere soils. Indeed, the ecological significance of the genotypic and phenotypic diversity of named species of *Bacillus* and related genera remains largely a mystery (Gardener 2004).

Analysis of the DNA extracted directly from soil samples, especially those that use the sequencing of the 16S ribosomal RNA genes (16S rRNA), has confirmed the occurrence of easily cultivable bacterium species, as well as a wide variety of noncultivable strains of species that belong to the genera *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* (Borneman et al. 1996; Felske et al. 1999; Garbeva et al. 2003; Smalla et al. 2001). Nevertheless, evidence of the relative number of cultivable and noncultivable representatives of these genera in different soils is surrounded by controversy. Some studies have suggested that most 16S rRNA sequences of bacilli isolated directly from soil samples are very similar to the sequences of cultivable and named species (Garbeva et al. 2003; Smalla et al. 2001). Other authors report that the

A. Beneduzi • L.M.P. Passaglia (✉)
Departamento de Genética, Universidade Federal do Rio Grande do Sul, Av. Bento Gonçalves, 9500, prédio 43312, sala 207b, Porto Alegre, RS CEP 91501-970, Brasil
e-mail: lpassaglia@terra.com.br

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_1,

predominant sequences found in different soils are not the same as those presented by bacilli isolated and easily cultivable (Borneman et al. 1996; Felske et al. 1999).

In turn, niche specificity and important ecological activities in *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* spp. appear to span phylogenetic boundaries. Most species can survive as saprophytes in soils, which are considered the primary reservoirs of these bacteria; however, most viable cells probably occur as inactive spores at any given time (Nicholson 2002). Furthermore, multiple species can be recovered as epiphytes and endophytes of plants and animals, as well as foodstuffs and composts derived from them (Priest 1993; Stahly et al. 1992; Slepecky and Hemphill 1992). The rich variety of organic substrates and microniches present in those environments supports a complex milieu of microbial species, so it is perhaps not surprising that multiple species of *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* inhabit them (Gardener 2004).

Numerous *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* species may contribute to the health status of plants in several ways. A considerable number of isolates belonging to these genera have been used as agents of biological control against phytopathogens (Lacey et al. 2001; Siddiqui and Mahmood 1999). Yet, the successful application of these agents requires comprehensive knowledge of their ecology. Additionally, the safety and efficacy of inoculants are largely determined by the ecological success of strains in the environments they are to be introduced. Better knowledge of the diversity, distribution, and action of bacteria of the *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* genera is extremely important to the identification of new strains, to the formulation of inoculants, and to the determination of the kinds of plantation they may be employed in Gardener (2004).

Members of the genus *Paenibacillus* are facultatively anaerobic organisms that produce spores in definitely swollen sporangia and have G + C contents ranging from 45 to 54 mol%. Some of these organisms excrete diverse assortments of extracellular polysaccharide-hydrolyzing enzymes to hydrolyze complex carbohydrates, including alginate, chondroitin, chitin, curdlan, and other polysaccharides (Shida et al. 1997). Also, a number of species under these genera are known to produce polysaccharides (Yoon et al. 2002), antifungal, and antimicrobial agents, such as polymyxin, octopityn, and baciphelacin (Chung et al. 2000).

Paenibacillus species have been isolated from a wide range of sources, including soil, water, plant rhizosphere, tree roots, plant material, foods, forage, feces, and insect larvae (Daane et al. 2002). Bacterial isolates from this genus have also been detected in Lake Vostok, Antarctica (Christner et al. 2001), in the ice caps of mountains, China (Christner et al. 2000), in paintings that have undergone biological deterioration (Heyrman and Swings 2001), in seawaters (Siefert et al. 2000), in mercury-reducing biofilms (Wagner-Döbler et al. 2000), and in estuarial sediments contaminated with crude oil (Daane et al. 2002). The genus was also observed to be abundant in companies that produce paper used in the food industry (Raaska et al. 2002).

Several species described as nitrogen-fixing bacilli belong to the *Paenibacillus* genus, as for example *P. polymyxa* (Grau and Wilson 1962), *P. macerans*, *P. durus* (*P. azotofixans*), *P. peoriae* (Montefusco et al. 1993), *P. borealis* (Elo et al. 2001),

P. graminis and *P. odorifer* (Berge et al. 2002), *P. brasilensis* (von der Weid et al. 2002), *P. massiliensis* (Roux and Raoult 2004), *P. wynnii* (Rodríguez-Diaz et al. 2005), *P. sabinae* (Ma et al. 2007a), *P. zanthoxyli* (Ma et al. 2007b), *P. donghaensis* (Choi et al. 2008), *P. forsythiae* (Ma and Chen 2008), *P. sonchi* (Hong et al. 2009), and *P. riograndensis* (Beneduzi et al. 2010).

Concerning the bacteria belonging to the *Bacillus* genus, in 1998, Xie et al. detected the activity of the nitrogenase enzyme in *B. megaterium*, *B. cereus*, *B. pumilus*, *B. circulans*, *B. licheniformis*, *B. subtilis*, *B. brevis*, and *B. firmus*. These same authors reported, in 2003, the isolation of 14 *Bacillus* strains that were able to reduce acetylene in paddy fields of eight locations on the banks of river Yangtze, China. Li et al. (1992) had also identified a *Bacillus* species that fixed nitrogen in association with ectomycorrhizas, while Ahmad et al. (2008) have detected nitrogen-fixing *Bacillus* isolates in different rhizosphere soils in Aligarh, India. *Bacillus fusiformis* (strains PM-5 and PM-24) has also been identified as a nitrogen-fixing bacterium using the acetylene reduction test. This species was shown to exhibit an intense nitrogenase activity in different plant cultures in the province of Chungbuk, South Korea. Diazotrophic *Bacilllus* were even found in the rhizosphere of pine and oak trees (Rózycki et al. 1999). Ding et al. (2005) detected biological nitrogen activity in *B. marisflavi* and *Paenibacillus massiliensis* and also identified fragments of the *nifH* gene in *B. megaterium* and *B. cereus*. *B. alkalidiazotrophicus* (Sorokin et al. 2008a), a low salt-tolerant alkaliphile isolated from Mongolian soda soil, was also described as a nitrogen-fixing bacterium. Therefore, it was demonstrated that both genera, *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus*, presented species that are able to fix nitrogen. It is interesting to note that *Natronobacillus*, a new bacilli genus, was created specifically for *N. azotifigens*, its only species, which is an anaerobic diazotrophic haloalkaliphile bacterium that was isolated from soda-rich habitats (Sorokin et al. 2008b).

In recent years, the interest in soil microorganisms has increased as they play an important role in the maintenance of soil fertility. A major challenge for the development of sustainable agriculture lies in the use of nitrogen-fixing bacteria, which are able to assimilate gaseous N_2 from the atmosphere (Seldin et al. 1998).

1.2 Plant Growth Promoting Rhizobacteria

Rhizosphere can be defined as any volume of soil specifically influenced by plant roots and/or in association with roots and hairs, and plant-produced material. This space includes the soil surrounding plant roots, often extending a few millimeters from the root surface and can include as well the plant root epidermal layer. Plant exudates in the rhizosphere, such as amino acids and sugars, provide a rich source of energy and nutrients for bacteria, resulting in higher bacterial populations in this area (Gray and Smith 2005). In fact, the concentration of bacteria (per gram of soil) found around plant roots (i.e., in the rhizosphere) is generally much bigger than the bacterial density, or concentration, detected in the rest of the soil (Lynch 1990).

Despite the large number of bacteria in the rhizosphere, only 7–15% of the total root surface is generally occupied by microbial cells (Gray and Smith 2005).

The interaction between bacteria and plant roots may be beneficial, harmful, or neutral for the plant, and sometimes the effect of a particular bacterium may vary as a consequence of soil conditions (Lynch 1990). Thus, for example, a particular organism that facilitates plant growth by fixing nitrogen, which is usually present in the soil in limited amounts, is unlikely to provide benefit to a plant in a place where exogenous fixed nitrogen is added to the soil (Glick 1995).

Bacteria that provide some benefit to plants are of two general types: those that establish a symbiotic relationship with the plant and those that are free-living in the soil, but are often found near on or even within plant roots (Kloepper et al. 1988). Symbiotic bacteria, especially rhizobia, have been deeply studied, and although the world market for these microorganisms is nowadays relatively small, they have been developed as a biological means of increasing crop yields in certain circumstances. Beneficial free-living soil bacteria are usually referred to as plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPRs, Kloepper et al. 1989), or, according to Piao et al. (1992), as yield increasing bacteria (YIBs). However, for Gray and Smith (2005), PGPRs also include rhizobia, due to the well-characterized legume–rhizobium symbiosis. Independently of the mechanisms of vegetal growth promotion, PGPRs have to colonize the rhizosphere around the roots, the rhizoplane (root surface), or the root itself (within radicular tissues). Among rhizobacteria, there is a gradient of root proximity and intimacy as follows: (1) bacteria living in the soil near to the roots, which utilize metabolites released by the roots as C and N sources, (2) bacteria colonizing the rhizoplane (radicular surface), (3) bacteria residing inside the root tissues, inhabiting spaces between cortical cells, and lastly (4) bacteria living inside cells in specialized root structures, or nodules, which generally fall into two groups: the legume-associated rhizobia and the woody plant-associated *Frankia* species. The cyanobacterial nitrogen-fixing symbionts of the cycads could also be included as PGPR (Gray and Smith 2005). A number of different bacteria may be considered to be PGPR, including species of the genera *Azotobacter*, *Azospirillum*, *Pseudomonas*, *Acetobacter*, *Burkholderia*, and bacilli (Bashan and Levanony 1990; Brown 1974; Elmerich 1984; Kloepper et al. 1988, 1989; Okon and Labandera-González 1994; Tang et al. 1994).

To aid in this conceptualization, two simple terms have been adopted: intracellular PGPRs (iPGPRs), which are bacteria that live inside plant cells, being localized in the nodules, and extracellular PGPRs (ePGPRs), which are those bacteria that live outside plant cells, being able to enhance plant growth through the production of signal compounds that directly stimulate plant growth, to the improvement of plant disease resistance, or to the mobilization of soil nutrients to the plant. ePGPR can be subdivided into three types, based on the degree of association with plant roots: those living near but not in contact with the roots; those colonizing the root surface; and those living in the spaces between cells of the root cortex (Gray and Smith 2005).

PGPRs can affect plant growth in two different ways: indirectly or directly. The direct promotion of plant growth by PGPRs entails either providing the plant with

a compound that is synthesized by the bacterium or facilitating the uptake of certain nutrients from the environment (Glick 1995). PGPRs can fix atmospheric nitrogen and supply it to plants; they synthesize siderophores that can solubilize and sequester iron from the soil and provide it to plant cells; they synthesize several different phytohormones that can act to enhance various stages of plant growth; they may have mechanisms for the solubilization of minerals such as phosphorus that then become more readily available for plant growth; and they may synthesize some less well-characterized low-molecular mass compounds or enzymes that can modulate plant growth and development (Brown 1974; Kloepper et al. 1988, 1989). A particular PGPR may affect plant growth and development by using any one, or more, of these mechanisms. The indirect promotion of plant growth occurs when PGPRs lessen or prevent the deleterious effects of one or more phytopathogenic organisms.

Researches on ePGPRs were initially focused on *Bacillus* and *Anthrobacter* spp. (Brown 1974). Applications of these associations have been investigated in maize, wheat, oat, barley, peas, canola, soy, potatoes, tomatoes, lentils, radicchio, and cucumber (Gray and Smith 2005). Among the most widely studied ePGPR bacilli are *B. cereus* (Handelsman et al. 1990; Ryder et al. 1999), *B. circulans* (Berge et al. 1990), *B. firmus*, *B. lichenformis* (Chen et al. 1996), *B. subtilis* (Turner and Blackman 1991; Zhang and Smith 1996), and *B. thuringiensis* (Bai et al. 2002a, b).

1.3 Direct Benefits of ePGPRs for Plants

The extensive biochemical and molecular biological studies of symbiotic diazotrophs, such as rhizobia, have served as a conceptual starting point for the understanding of the mechanisms of growth promotion by PGPRs. Since one of the major benefits that rhizobia provide to the plants is fixed nitrogen, it was initially thought that diazotrophic PGPRs might also function in this way. However, not all PGPRs are diazotrophic, and many of those that are diazotrophic fix only limited amounts of nitrogen. Frequently, this amount is only enough for their own needs and is not sufficient to the host plant's nitrogen requirements (Hong et al. 1991). Some diazotrophic PGPRs still provide their plant hosts with a portion of the fixed nitrogen that they require; however, even for these PGPRs, nitrogen fixation is only a minor component of the benefit they offer to the plant (Chanway and Holl 1991).

ePGPRs influence vegetal growth in different ways, depending on the species and strain. To promote plant growth free-living rhizobacteria resort to more than one mechanism (Glick et al. 1999). Apart from nitrogen fixation, several ePGPRs are also capable of providing sufficient iron (Fe) levels to the plant in soils that exhibit low concentrations of this element (Wang et al. 1993) or even of other important minerals, such as phosphates (Singh and Kapoor 1998). Some ePGPRs can produce and secrete low-molecular-weight (400–1,000 Da) iron-binding molecules (siderophores) with a high affinity for Fe^{3+} (Gray and Smith 2005). Although iron is one of the most abundant minerals on Earth, in the soil it is

relatively unavailable for direct assimilation by several organisms. This is because in aerobic soils iron is found predominantly in the form of Fe^{3+}, mainly as a constituent of oxyhydroxide polymers with extremely low solubility, about 10^{-18} M at neutral pH. Minimal concentrations of iron required for normal growth of plants range from 10^{-9} to 10^{-4} M, depending on other nutritional factors (Neilands et al. 1987). Similarly, minimal iron concentrations for the optimal growth of many microbes are approximately 10^{-5} to 10^{-7} M (Lankford 1973). To overcome this problem, soil microorganisms secrete low-molecular-weight iron-binding molecules (siderophores) that bind Fe^{3+}, transport it back to the microbial cell, and then make it available for the microbial growth (Leong 1986).

The iron–siderophore binding also prevents the proliferation of pathogens due to the sequestration of iron from the environment. Some ePGPRs that present this property include *Pseudomonas putida* and *P. aeruginosa*. *P. putida* inhibits the growth of *Fusarium oxysporum*, a pathogen that affects tomatoes (Vandendergh and Gonzalez 1984), while *P. aeruginosa* inhibits the growth of *Pythium*, another pathogen that attacks tomatoes (Buysens et al. 1994).

Oppositely to microbial pathogens, plants do not suffer negative effects of iron depletion by ePGPRs. Some plants may capture the bacterial iron–siderophore complex, transporting it into its cells, where iron is released from the siderophores and is made available to the plant (Crowley et al. 1988). The production of siderophores has also been reported for *Azospirillum lipoferum* (Saxena et al. 1986; Shah et al. 1992), *A. brasilense* (Bachhawat and Ghosh 1987), and *Azotobacter vinelandii* (Demange et al. 1988; Knosp et al. 1984).

Phosphorus (P) exists in nature in a variety of organic (derived from microorganisms and plants) and inorganic (originating from applied P fertilizers) forms that are insoluble or very poorly soluble (Paul and Clark 1989). In fact, phosphorus is one of the least soluble elements in the natural environment, with less than 5% of the total soil phosphate content being available to the plants (Dobbelaere et al. 2003). Therefore, the addition of phosphate fertilizers has become a common practice in modern agriculture. However, a large portion of the soluble inorganic phosphate applied to soil as fertilizer is rapidly immobilized by the iron and aluminum in acid soils and by calcium in calcareous soils soon after application, thus becoming unavailable to plants (Holford 1997).

Soil microorganisms are able to solubilize insoluble mineral phosphate by producing various organic acids. This results in acidification of the surrounding soil, releasing soluble orthophosphate ions that can be readily taken up by plants. Furthermore, they are able to solubilize organic P compounds through the action of phosphatase enzymes (Garcia et al. 1992). In fact, the major source of phosphatase activity in soil is considered to be of microbial origin. In particular, phosphatase activity is substantially increased in the rhizosphere (Rodríguez and Fraga 1999). Phosphate solubilization has often been cited as a likely mechanism of promotion of vegetable growth by ePGPRs.

A large number of P-solubilizing bacteria (PSB) have been isolated from the rhizosphere of several crops. It was estimated that P-solubilizing microorganisms may constitute 20–40% of the cultivable population of soil microorganisms and that

a significant proportion of them can be isolated from rhizosphere soil (Chabot et al. 1993). There have been a number of reports on plant growth promotion by bacteria that have the ability to solubilize inorganic and/or organic P from soil after their inoculation in soil or plant seeds. The production (by these strains) of other metabolites beneficial to the plant, such as phytohormones, antibiotics, or siderophores, among others, has created confusion about the specific role of phosphate solubilization in plant growth and yield stimulation (Kloepper et al. 1989).

Experiments performed with P-solubilizing diazotrophs are scarce, and the results obtained are quite diverse, varying according to plant or bacterial species. *B. megaterium* and *P. polymyxa* are able to enhance growth and yield but not the P uptake of canola, indicating that P-solubilization is not the main mechanism responsible for positive growth response (de Freitas et al. 1997). Nevertheless, studies with *B. firmus* (Datta et al. 1982) and *P. polymyxa* (Gaur and Ostwal 1972) have confirmed the increase in phosphorus uptake in rice and wheat yields, respectively, after inoculation with these bacteria.

Several reports have examined the ability of different bacterial species to solubilize insoluble inorganic phosphate compounds, such as tricalcium phosphate, dicalcium phosphate, hydroxyapatite, and rock phosphate. Among the bacterial genera with this capacity are *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Rhizobium*, *Burkholderia*, *Achromobacter*, *Agrobacterium*, *Micrococcus*, *Aerobacter*, *Flavobacterium*, and *Erwinia*. There are considerable populations of phosphate-solubilizing bacteria in soil and in plant rhizospheres. These include both aerobic and anaerobic strains, with a prevalence of aerobic strains in submerged soils. A considerably higher concentration of phosphate-solubilizing bacteria is commonly found in the rhizosphere in comparison with nonrhizosphere soil (Rodríguez and Fraga 1999).

Phytohormones are natural plant growth regulators that influence physiological processes, when at low concentrations. Plant growth regulators are classified as auxins (cell differentiation, root and fruit growth, and abscission control), cytokinins (growth regulation, cell differentiation, and plant senescence), gibberellins (cell division and elongation, interruption of dormancy, and increase in fruit growth), abscisic acid (transpiration regulation, interruption of dormancy, and initial seed development), and ethylene (ripening of fruits, promotion of leaf, fruit and leaf abscission, and influence in female sexual expression) (Arshad and Frankenberger 1998; Raven et al. 1996). The production of these growth regulators has been reported in several bacteria including *Gluconacetobacter*, *Azospirillum*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Methylobacterium*, *Erwinia*, *Pantoea*, and *Pseudomonas* (Bastián et al. 1998; Cassán et al. 2001; Fuentes-Ramirez et al. 1993; Koenig et al. 2002; Lucangeli and Bottini 1997; Patten and Glick 1996; Verma et al. 2001) and has been consistently observed in bacteria that live in association with plants.

Phytohormone production is a bacterium–plant interaction mechanism influenced by numerous factors, as well as the plant and microorganism genotypes. Jain and Patriquin (1985) showed that pure *Azospirillum* endophytic strains, or culture filtrates, induced the ramification of wheat roots. The authors also observed that this phenomenon was influenced by the bacterial genome, at strain level, and by the plant's genome, at cultivar level. The same work reported the isolation and

characterization of indole acetic acid (IAA), an auxin produced by the bacterium, which was shown to play a role in root growth.

Although some *Paenibacillus* species are highly efficient in fixing nitrogen, the reason for the stimulation of plant growth is not directly related to this ability, but to its capacity to produce and secrete phytohormones, such as cytokinins (Timmusk et al. 1999) and auxins, especially IAA (Lebuhn et al. 1997).

Auxins (from the Greek *auxein*, to increase) are plant hormones originating from the amino acid tryptophan. The natural auxin is called IAA. Tryptophan is the precursor of IAA. Although there are four different pathways for IAA biosynthesis, all of them originated from tryptophan (Raven et al. 1996). The ability to synthesize phytohormones is widely observed in bacteria associated with plants – 80% of the bacteria isolated from rhizospheres are capable to produce IAA (Zakharova et al. 1999). The first studies were conducted in the 1970s. Tien et al. (1979) demonstrated that *Azospirillum brasiliense*, when exposed to tryptophan, produces IAA and lactic acid, and that IAA production increases by the time. *Bacillus* spp. isolated from the *Phaseolus vulgaris* rhizosphere produces significant amounts of IAA (Srinivasan et al. 1996). The isolates obtained from the rhizosphere of the genera *Enterobacter*, *Xanthomonas*, *Pseudomonas*, *Alcaligenes*, *Azotobacter*, *Acetobacter*, and *Agrobacterium* produce higher amounts of IAA than the soil isolates not associated with the roots (Asghar et al. 2002). In phytopathogenic bacteria, such as *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* and *Pseudomonas syringae* pathovars, IAA is produced from tryptophan via the intermediary indole acetamide and has been related to plant tumors. The beneficial bacteria synthesize IAA mainly through a tryptophan-dependent alternative pathway, from indole-pyruvic acid.

Promotion of root growth is one of the major markers by which the beneficial effect of PGPB is measured. Rapid establishment of roots, whether by elongation of primary roots or by proliferation of lateral and adventitious roots, is advantageous for young seedlings as it increases their ability to anchor themselves to the soil and to obtain water and nutrients from their environment, thus enhancing their chances for survival. Most root-promoting bacteria synthesize IAA, and their effect on plants mimics that of exogenous IAA (Patten and Glick 2002).

Production of IAA, a plant hormone that does not apparently function as a hormone in bacterial cells, may have evolved in bacteria due to its importance in the bacterium–plant relationship. IAA secreted by a bacterium may promote root growth directly by stimulating plant cell elongation or cell division or indirectly by influencing bacterial ACC deaminase activity (1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate, a precursor of acetylene). However, the role of bacterial IAA in plant growth promotion remains undetermined (Patten and Glick 2002).

The response of plants to external (microbially released) IAA can vary from beneficial to deleterious effects, depending on the concentration of IAA in the plant roots. Low IAA concentrations may stimulate growth, while high IAA concentrations may inhibit root development. IAA levels released by rhizosphere bacteria depend on bacterial growth, metabolic activity, and the expression of genes encoding enzymes for IAA biosynthesis (Lambrecht et al. 2000). To assess these effects, different methodologies have been employed, such as the inoculation of

roots with mutant bacteria for the production of IAA or the application of bacterial inocula at different concentrations. Patten and Glick (2002) utilized a *P. putida* strain that secreted high IAA contents and reported an increase of 35–50% in canola's primary root growth. These authors provided direct evidence that bacterial IAA plays an important role in root elongation, when the producing bacterium is associated with the plant. Apart from this, these researchers provided stronger support to the hypothesis that beneficial bacteria produce IAA from pyruvic acid (IPyA), while pathogenic bacteria produce IAA from indole acetamide (IAM) (Manulis et al. 1998; Patten and Glick 1996; Prinsen et al. 1993). Extensive research has been carried out with mutant bacteria lacking the ability to synthesize IAA. These studies reported the existence of more than one tryptophan-dependent biosynthesis pathway for IAA production in the same microorganism. These biosynthesis pathways are classified in terms of their intermediary compounds, such as IAM or IPyA (Dobbelaere et al. 1999; Patten and Glick 1996).

The detection of auxins may be carried out according to a very precise, quantitative method, such as high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) or even by a less accurate method, a specific and sensitive colorimetric reaction that uses the Salkowski reagent (Crozier et al. 1988). Different methodologies utilize the Salkowski reagent; some use microplates while others resort to nitrocellulose (Bric et al. 1991; Sarwar and Kremer 1992).

In a study with *P. polymyxa* strains isolated from wheat roots, Lebuhn et al. (1997) reported the production of IAA and indolic metabolites related to this compound in media supplemented or not with tryptophan. It was also observed that tryptophan greatly increased auxin production by these strains. These findings point out the importance of tryptophan as an IAA precursor. The isolates obtained from the rhizosphere produced more IAA as compared to those obtained directly from soil not associated with rhizosphere, suggesting that specific bacterial genotypes are selected by the host plants.

1.4 Promotion of Plant Growth by Bacilli

There is a long list of studies that demonstrate the beneficial effects of PGPRs, reporting that they promote significant improvement in plant growth and in the yield of several types of crops.

Beneduzi et al. (2008a) investigated several strains of bacilli, mainly species of the genera *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus*, displaying important (PGP) characteristics isolated from seven distinct rice production zones of the Rio Grande do Sul State, south Brazil. Of those 296 isolates, 94 and 148 produced between 0.1 and 30 mg of (IAA) ml^{-1} in vitro after 72 and 144 h of incubation, respectively. Twenty-two isolates were able to solubilize phosphate and 32 isolates produced siderophores. *Paenibacillus* and *Bacillus* genera were the most prominent groups in the rhizosphere and soil populations analyzed. *Paenibacillus borealis* was the most frequent species in both locations. The isolate SVPR30, identified by 16S rRNA gene

Fig. 1.1 The effect of inoculation of a native PGPR isolate on rice growth promotion, 30 days after sprouting. (1) Plant was inoculated with SVPR30 strain; (2) positive control (plant was irrigated with mineral fertilizer solution); (3) negative control (plant was irrigated with distilled water); and (4) plant was inoculated with *Paenibacillus polymyxa* ATCC 10343 strain

sequence analysis as a strain of *Bacillus* sp., was chosen for in vivo greenhouse experiments and proved to be very efficient in promoting a significant increase in the roots and shoot parts of rice plants (Fig. 1.1).

In wheat crops, the genus *Paenibacillus* was the most prominent group in both the rhizosphere (77.8%) and soil (79%). *P. borealis* was the most frequently identified species, followed by *P. graminis*. The remainder of the isolated bacteria belonged to the genus *Bacillus* sp. Indolic compound production [indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), indole-pyruvic acid (IPyA), and IAM] was detected in 33.6 and 26% of the isolates from the rhizosphere and soil, respectively. Among the 311 isolates, 9 were able to solubilize phosphate and 48 were able to produce siderophores. The isolates SBR5, CSR16, and EsR7, identified by the 16S rRNA gene sequence as strains of *Paenibacillus* sp., were chosen for in vivo experiments in a greenhouse and proved to be very efficient in promoting a significant increase in the shoot and dry matter of wheat plants (Beneduzi et al. 2008b; Fig. 1.1).

Strains of *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus*, which are Gram-positive ePGPRs, may be inoculated in separate or in consortium with *Rhizobium* or *Bradyrhizobium* strains, which are Gram-negative iPGPRs, to promote plant growth (Gray and Smith 2005). The inoculation of *P. polymyxa* strain H5, a phosphate-solubilizing bacterium, with *Rhizobium* led to an increase in chickpea yields due to the increase of phosphorus and nitrogen uptake (Alagawadi and Gaur 1988). Colonization and nodulation of soybean with *B. japonicum* strains (Li and Alexander 1988) may increase in media containing *Bacillus* spp., resulting in higher plant dry weight and seed yields.

Bacillus spp. isolated from the rhizosphere of *Phaseolus vulgaris* produced significant amounts of IAA (Srinivasan et al. 1996). IAA promoted root growth and/or nodulation when *R. etli* was added to *P. vulgaris* cultures, causing an increase in nodule weight and number, in nitrogenase activity, and in leghemoglobin content. Applied alone, *Bacillus* spp. also plays a promoting role in the growth of several plants, which may vary depending on the type of soil (Ramos et al. 2003). *Bacillus* strains have also been proved to increase the growth of tomatoes, when used in the plant's culture medium (Yan et al. 2003). *B. subtilis* promoted the growth of peanut seedlings, leading to an increase between 3.5 and 37% in crop yield and to improved germination, seedling emergence, plant nutrition, and root growth (Turner and Blackman 1991). *B. lichenformis* CECT 5106 and *B. pumilus* CECT 5105 inoculation enhanced growth rates of *Pinus* seedlings.

B. cereus UW85 increased soybean nodulation, both in laboratory tests and in the field, as well as in growth chambers (Halverson and Handelsman 1991). Interestingly, field experiments revealed differences in nodulation between 25 and 35 days after seeding; however, as the experiment evolved, differences in nodulation ceased to be detected as of 45 days of seedling. These results evince a promoter effect regarding initial growth, which nevertheless is not sustained in the long run. Yet, initial growth effects may be beneficial in the growth of young plants, assisting them to better cope with environmental stress they may have to face in their future development (Gray and Smith 2005).

Apart from fixing nitrogen, *P. polymyxa* solubilizes phosphorus in soils, produces antibiotics, chitinase, and other hydrolytic enzymes, increases soil porosity, and produces compounds that promote the growth of similar plants in media containing active IAA (Timmusk et al. 1999). It has also been demonstrated that this species increases nutrient uptake by the plant and acts as a biocontrol agent for pathogenic microorganisms (Chanway 1995; Mavingui and Heulin 1994), which is the reason for it been used as a biological control agent against *Fusarium* and *Pythium* (Guemouri-Athmani et al. 2000).

Paenibacillus durus is found in soils and roots of sugarcane, wheat, and other gramineous species. The interesting feature of this species lies in its capacity to biologically fix nitrogen, even in the presence of high nitrate levels, and to produce antimicrobial compounds (Neves and Rumjanek 1998). The capacity to fix nitrogen in vitro exhibited by *P. durus* is higher as compared to other *Paenibacillus* species, and because the bacterium is not affected by the presence of nitrate in the medium, fixing may occur in the presence of fertilizers (Rosado et al. 1996).

Li et al. (2008) conducted a study with soy nodules and isolated 98 nonsymbiotic endophytic bacterial strains that were characterized as being *Pantoea*, *Serratia*, *Acinetobacter*, *Bacillus*, and *Burkholderia*. The inoculation of endophytic bacteria did not lead to any significant effect in soy growth and nodulation, though several strains produced IAA, solubilized phosphate, and fixed nitrogen, a great promise in future studies on the plant growth promotion.

In the search for efficient PGPRs, Ahmad et al. (2008) have isolated and identified 72 bacteria as belonging to *Azotobacter*, *Pseudomonas*, *Mesorhizobium*, and *Bacillus* genera from the rhizospheres of wheat, sugarcane, onion, as well as

chickpea nodules in Aligarh, India. These isolates were tested for antifungal activity. The *Bacillus* and *Pseudomonas* strains isolated were the most efficient and are candidates for further studies on plant growth promotion.

Park et al. (2005) isolated free-living fixing bacteria from the rhizosphere of seven different plants: sesame, maize, wheat, soy, lentil, pepper, and rice in Chungbuk, South Korea. The strains exhibiting nitrogenase activity were identified as *Stenotrophomonas maltophila*, *B. fusiformis*, and *P. fluorescens*. *B. fusiformis* exhibited the highest nitrogenase activity and IAA production rates, demonstrating its potential as rhizobacterium promoter of plant growth.

Other PGPRs isolated from the rhizospheres of melon, alfafa, tomato, cotton, and wheat were analyzed for the production of auxins, nitrogenase and antifungal activity, and also to the improvement in nutrient uptake in cotton and pea in a semiarid region in Uzbekistan (Egamberdiyeva and Höflich 2004). The strains were proved to produce auxins, to fix nitrogen, and to exert antagonistic action against *Verticillium loteritum*. The inoculation of the tested plants with *Pseudomonas alcaligenes* PsA15, *P. denitrificans* PsD6, *P. polymyxa* BcP26, and *Mycobacterium phlei* MbP18 strains led to a significant increase in the growth of root and aerial parts of plants, as well as a higher content of N, P, and K in these plants.

Several strains of *B. subtilis* and *B. cereus* have been isolated and selected in China, due to their ability to promote plant growth and control fungal diseases that affect wheat roots (Ryder et al. 1999). Among these strains is *B. cereus* A47, which has been used in several cultures in that country, stimulating wheat production by around 11%. In turn, *B. subtilis* B908 was used to control rice sheath blight, caused by *Rhizoctonia solani*. Both strains were also tested in two different soils in Australia, in experiments conducted in a greenhouse. These bacteria considerably reduced the severity of diseases caused by *R. solani* and *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*, stimulating also the growth of wheat seedlings (Ryder et al. 1999).

Mena-Violante and Olalde-Portugal (2007) investigated the effect of the inoculation of tomato roots with *B. subtilis* BS13 on the fruit's quality and showed that production, weight, and length of tomatoes were higher in the inoculated group as compared to the negative control. The texture of fruits was also improved, demonstrating that BS13 strain plays a positive role in improving tomato quality, especially concerning size and texture.

Based on the presence of multiple PGP traits, Islam et al. (2009) isolated ten strains from paddy fields, screened for multiple PGP traits, and evaluated for their inoculation effects on canola and rice plants. *Paenibacillus* sp. RFNB4 significantly increased plant height and dry biomass production by 42.3 and 29.5%, respectively. Canola plants and rhizosphere soils inoculated with *Bacillus* sp. RFNB6 exhibited significantly higher nitrogenase activity.

B. megaterium B388, isolated from rhizosphere soil of pine belonging to a temperate Himalayan location, has been characterized by Trivedi and Pandey (2008). The carrier-based formulations of the bacterium resulted in increased plant growth in bioassays. The rhizosphere colonization and the viability of the

cells entrapped in alginate beads were greater in comparison to coal- or broth-based formulations.

A greenhouse experiment was performed by Figueiredo et al. (2008) to evaluate the effects of PGPR on nodulation, biological nitrogen fixation (BNF), and growth of the common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L. cv. *tenderlake*). Beans coinoculated with *Rhizobium tropici* (CIAT899) and *P. polymyxa* (DSM 36) had higher leghemoglobin concentrations, nitrogenase activity, and N_2 fixation efficiency and thereby formed associations of greater symbiotic efficiency. Inoculation with *Rhizobium* and *P. polymyxa* strain Loutit (L) stimulated nodulation as well as nitrogen fixation. PGPR also stimulated specific-nodulation (number of nodules per gram of root dry weight) increases that translated into higher levels of accumulated nitrogen. The activities of phytohormones depended on their content and interactions with *R. tropici* and *Paenibacillus* and/or *Bacillus* (PGPR) strains, which affect the cytokinin content in the common bean.

Orhan et al. (2006) studied the growth promoting effects of two *Bacillus* strains (OSU-142, a nitrogen-fixing bacterium, and M3, which also fixes nitrogen and solubilizes phosphorus) used in consortium or individually in organic raspberry. The plants were evaluated for production, growth, nutrient content in leaves, and variation in nutrient composition. The results showed that *Bacillus* M3 stimulated plant growth and significantly increased yields. The inoculation of raspberry roots and rhizosphere with M3 and OSU-142 (in consortium or individually) caused an expressive improvement in yield (33.9 and 74.9%, respectively) as compared to the control. The levels of N, P, and Ca in leaves were also significantly increased. Similarly, inoculations affected the total levels of N, P, K, Ca, Mg, Fe, Mn, and Zn in soil. These results demonstrated that *Bacillus* M3, whether alone or in consortium with OSU-142, exhibited a high potential to increase yield, growth, and nutrition parameters in organic raspberry.

Karlidag et al. (2007) also tested the effects of *Bacillus* M3 and OSU-142 strains and that of *Microbacterium* FS01 isolated or in consortium on the growth of apple trees. The inoculation of these strains alone or in consortium increased plant growth (aerial part: 16.4–29.6%; diameter of aerial part: 15.9–18.4%) as well as yield (26–28%) and fruit size (13.9–25.5%). Of the nutrients investigated (N, P, K, Mg, Ca, Fe, Mn, and Zn), all were significantly affected (except Mg). The results of that study indicated that *Bacillus* M3, OSU-142, and *Microbacterium* FS0 strains are potential candidates to increase yield, growth, and nutrition of apple trees.

Bacillus OSU-142 was also investigated individually or in consortium with *Pseudomonas* BA-8 strain in yield, growth, and nutrient composition of cherry trees (Esitken et al. 2006). Both bacteria used individually as well as in consortium stimulated plant growth and led to a significant increase in yield. The use of BA-8, OSU-142, or a combination thereof on foliage and flowers led to a marked elevation in yield numbers (16.3, 10.9, and 21.76%), in fruit weight (4.14, 5.37, and 1.24%), and in the plants' aerial parts (11.3, 11.8, and 29.6%), respectively, when compared to controls. Additionally, expressive increases were observed in N, P, and K contents in cherry leaves, while Fe and Zn levels increased with applications of BA-8 and OSU-142 strains in consortium. Mn contents were higher when these two

bacterial strains were used separately. These results suggest that the inoculation of *Pseudomonas* BA-8 and *Bacillus* OSU-142 alone or in consortium may increase yield, growth, and nutrition levels of cherry trees.

1.5 Conclusions

The growing interest in PGPRs emerges from the wish to shed more light on a complex and fascinating biological system and from the potential these organisms have to increase productivity of crop cultures. The strains that exhibit a specific desired characteristic are selected, tested, and then used as an element in agricultural practices, though so far these strategies have not been extensively adopted – in spite of the several well-succeeded examples mentioned in this chapter. In a scenario where a greater number and more efficient bacterial strains are used, agricultural applications of PGPRs shall increase. Efforts made in the last decade have provided better insight into PGPRs and the mechanisms these bacteria utilize to promote plant growth, increasing the commercial interest in these strains (Glick 1995). While PGRPs have been characterized within several different bacterial taxa, many PGPRs developed for commercial applications are *Bacillus* species. These products utilize bacilli in their endospore form, which lends population stability during formulation and shelf life. Among bacilli, the strains of *B. subtilis* are the most widely used PGPRs, due to their capacity to produce antibiotics and consequent reduction in disease occurrence, when they are used as components of seed treatment strategies (Kokalis-Burelle et al. 2006).

Acknowledgments The authors are grateful to Conselho Nacional de Desenvolvimento Científico e Tecnológico (CNPq/Brazil).

References

Ahmad F, Ahmad I, Khan MS (2008) Screening of free-living rhizospheric bacteria for their multiple plant growth promoting activities. Microbiol Res 163:173–181

Alagawadi AR, Gaur AC (1988) Associative effect of *Rhizobium* and phosphate-solubilizing bacteria on the yield and nutrient uptake of chickpea. Plant Soil 105:241–246

Arshad M, Frankenberger WT Jr (1998) Plant growth-regulating substances in the rhizosphere: microbial production and functions. Adv Agron 62:45–151

Asghar HN, Zahir ZA, Arshad M, Khaliq A (2002) Relationship between in vitro production of auxins by rhizobacteria and their growth-promoting activities in *Brassica jucea*. Biol Fert Soils 35:231–237

Bachhawat AK, Ghosh S (1987) Iron transport in *Azospirillum brasilense*: role of the siderophores spirilobactin. J Gen Microbiol 133:1759–1765

Bai Y, Souleimanov A, Smith DL (2002a) An inducible activator produced by *Serratia proteamaculans* strain and its soybean growth promoting activity under greenhouse conditions. J Exp Bot 53:1495–1502

Bai Y, D'Aoust F, Smith DL, Driscoll BT (2002b) Isolation of plant growth-promoting *Bacillus* strains from soybean root nodules. Can J Microbiol 48:230–238

Bashan Y, Levanony H (1990) Current status of *Azospirillum* inoculation technology: *Azospirillum* as a challenge for agriculture. Can J Microbiol 36:591–608

Bastián F, Cohen A, Piccoli P, Luna V, Baraldi R, Bottini R (1998) Production of indole-3-acetic acid and gibberellins A_1 and A_3 by *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* and *Herbaspirillum seropedicae* in chemically defined culture media. Plant Growth Regul 24:7–11

Beneduzi A, Peres D, Vargas LK, Bodanese-Zanettini MH, Passaglia LMP (2008a) Evaluation of genetic diversity and plant growth promoting activities of nitrogen-fixing bacilli isolated from rice fields in South Brazil. Appl Soil Ecol 39:311–320

Beneduzi A, Peres D, Costa PB, Bodanese-Zanettini MH, Passaglia LMP (2008b) Genetic and phenotypic diversity of plant-growth-promoting bacilli isolated from wheat fields in southern Brazil. Res Microbiol 159:244–250

Beneduzi A, Costa PB, Parma M, Melo IS, Bodanese-Zanettini MH, Passaglia LMP (2010) *Paenibacillus riograndensis* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing species isolated from the rhizosphere of *Triticum aestivum*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 60:128–133

Berge O, Fages J, Mulard D, Balandreau J (1990) Effects of inoculation with *Bacillus circulans* and *Azospirillum lipoferum* on crop-yield in field grown maize. Symbiosis 9:259–266

Berge O, Guinebretiére M, Achouak W, Normand P, Heulin T (2002) *Paenibacillus graminis* sp. nov. and *Paenibacillus odorifer* sp. nov., isolated from plant roots, soil and food. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:607–616

Borneman J, Skroch PW, O'Sullivan KM, Palus JA, Rumjanek NG, Jansen JL, Nienhuis J, Triplett EW (1996) Molecular microbial diversity of an agricultural soil in Wisconsin. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:1935–1943

Bric JM, Bostok RM, Silverstone S (1991) Rapid in situ assay for indoleacetic acid production by bacteria immobilized on a nitrocellulose membrane. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:535–538

Brown ME (1974) Seed and root bacterization. Annu Rev Phytopathol 12:181–197

Buysens S, Poppe J, Hofte M (1994) In: Ryder MH, Stephens PM, Bowen DG (eds) Improving plant productivity with rhizosphere bacteria. Commonwealth Science and Industrial Research Organization, Adelaide, pp 139–141

Cassán FD, Lucangeli CD, Bottini R, Piccoli PN (2001) *Azospirillum* spp. metabolize ($17\text{-}17^2\text{-}H_2$) gibberellin A_{20} to ($17\text{-}17^2\text{-}H_2$) gibberellin A_1 in vivo in dy rice mutant seedlings. Plant Cell Physiol 42:763–767

Chabot R, Antoun H, Cescas MP (1993) Stimulation de la croissance du mais et de la laitue romaine par desmicroorganismes dissolvant le phosphore inorganique. Can J Microbiol 39:941–947

Chanway CP (1995) Differential response of western hemlock from low and high elevations to inoculation with plant growth-promoting *Bacillus polymyxa*. Soil Biol Biochem 27: 767–775

Chanway CP, Holl FB (1991) Biomass increase and associative nitrogen fixation of mycorrhizal *Pinus* contorta Dougl. seedlings inoculated with a plant growth promoting *Bacillus* strain. Can J Bot 69:507–511

Chen YX, Mei RH, Lu S, Liu L, Kloepper JW (1996) In: Utkehede RS, Gupta VK (eds) Management of soil-borne disease. M/S Kalyani Publishers, New Delhi, pp 165–184

Choi JH, Im WT, Yoo JS, Lee SM, Moon DS, Kim HJ, Rhee SK, Roh DH (2008) *P. donghaensis* sp. nov., a xylan-degrading and nitrogen-fixing bacterium isolated from east sea sediment. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:189–193

Christner BC, Mosley-Thompson E, Thompson LG, Zagorodnov V, Sandman K, Reeve JN (2000) Recovery and identification of viable bacteria immured in glacial ice. Icarus 144:479–485

Christner BC, Mosley-Thompson E, Thompson LG, Reeve JN (2001) Isolation of bacteria and 16S rDNAs from Lake Vostok accretion ice. Environ Microbiol 3:570–577

Chung YR, Kim CH, Hwang I, Chun J (2000) *Paenibacillus koreensis* sp. nov., a new species that produces an iturin-like antifungal compound. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 50:1495–1500

Crowley DE, Reid CPP, Szaniszlo PJ (1988) Utilization of microbial siderophores in iron acquisition by oat. Plant Physiol 87:680–685

Crozier A, Arruda P, Jasmin JM, Monteiro AM, Sandberg G (1988) Analysis of indole-3-acetic acid and related indoles in culture medium from *Azospirillum lipoferum* and *Azospirillum brasiliense*. Appl Environ Microbiol 54:2833–2837

Daane LL, Harjono I, Barns SM, Launen LA, Palleroni NJ, Häggblom MM (2002) PAH-degradation by *Paenibacillus* spp. and description of *Paenibacillus naphthalenovorans* sp. nov., a naphthalene-degrading bacterium from the rhizosphere of salt marsh plants. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:131–139

Datta M, Banish S, Dupta RK (1982) Studies on the efficacy of a phytohormone producing phosphate solubilizing *Bacillus firmus* in augmenting paddy yield in acid soils of Nagaland. Plant Soil 69:365–373

de Freitas JR, Banerjee MR, Germida JJ (1997) Phosphate-solubilizing rhizobacteria enhance the growth and yield but not phosphorus uptake of canola (*Brassica napus* L.). Biol Fert Soils 24:358–364

Demange P, Bateman A, Dell A, Abdallah M (1988) Structure of azotobactin D, a siderophore of *Azotobacter vinelandii* strain D (CCM 289). Biochemistry 27:2745–2752

Ding Y, Wang J, Liu Y, Chen S (2005) Isolation and identification of nitrogen fixing bacilli from plant rhizospheres in Beijing region. J Appl Microbiol 99:1271–1281

Dobbelaere S, Croonenborghs A, Thys A, Broek AV, Vanderleyden J (1999) Phytostimulatory effect of *Azospirillum brasilense* wild type and mutant strains altered in IAA production on wheat. Plant Soil 212:155–164

Dobbelaere S, Vanderleyden J, Okon Y (2003) Plant growth-promoting effects of diazotrophs in the rhizosphere. Crit Rev Plant Sci 22:107–149

Egamberdiyeva D, Höflich G (2004) Effect of plant growth-promoting bacteria on growth and nutrient uptake of cotton and pea in a semi-arid region of Uzbekistan. J Arid Environ 56:293–301

Elmerich C (1984) Molecular biology and ecology of diazotrophs associated with non-leguminous plants. Biotechnology 2:967–978

Elo S, Suominen I, Kämpfer P, Juhanoja J, Salkinoja-Salonen M, Haahtela K (2001) *Paenibacillus borealis* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing species isolated from spruce forest humus in Finland. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 51:535–545

Esitken A, Pirlak L, Turan M, Sahin F (2006) Effects of floral and foliar application of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on yield, growth and nutrition of sweet cherry. Sci Hortic 110:324–327

Felske A, Wolterink A, Van Lis R, de Vos WM, Akkermans ADL (1999) Searching for predominant soil bacteria: 16S rDNA cloning versus strain cultivation. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 30:137–145

Figueiredo MVB, Martinez CR, Burity HA, Chanway CP (2008) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria for improving nodulation and nitrogen fixation in the common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1187–1193

Fuentes-Ramirez LE, Jimenez-Salgado T, Abarca-Ocampo IR, Caballero-Mellado J (1993) *Acetobacter diazotrophicus*, an indoleacetic acid producing bacterium isolated from sugarcane cultivars of Mexico. Plant Soil 154:145–150

Garbeva P, van Veen JA, van Elsas JD (2003) Predominant *Bacillus* spp. in agricultural soil under different management regimes detected via PCR-DGGE. Microb Ecol 45:302–316

Garcia C, Fernadez T, Costa F, Cerranti B, Masciandaro G (1992) Kinetics of phosphatase activity in organic wastes. Soil Biol Biochem 25:361–365

Gardener BBM (2004) Ecology of *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* spp. in agricultural systems. Symposium: the nature and application of biocontrol microbes: *Bacillus* spp. Phytopathology 94:1252–1258

Gaur AC, Ostwal KP (1972) Influence of phosphate dissolving bacilli on yield and phosphate uptake of wheat crop. Indian J Exp Biol 10:393–394

Glick BR (1995) The enhancement of plant growth by free-living bacteria. Can J Microbiol 41:109–117

Glick BR, Patten CL, Holguin G, Penrose DM (1999) Biochemical and genetics mechanisms used by plant growth promoting bacteria. Imperial College Press, London

Grau FH, Wilson PW (1962) Physiology of nitrogen-fixation by *Bacillus polymyxa*. J Bacteriol 83:490–496

Gray EJ, Smith DL (2005) Intracellular and extracellular PGPR: commonalities and distinctions in the plant–bacterium signaling processes. Soil Biol Biochem 37:395–412

Guemouri-Athmani S, Berge O, Bourrain M, Mavingui P, Thiéry JM, Bhatnagar T, Heulin T (2000) Diversity of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* populations in the rhizosphere of wheat (*Triticum durum*) in Algerian soils. Eur J Soil Biol 36:149–159

Halverson LJ, Handelsman J (1991) Enhancement of soybean nodulation by *Bacillus cereus* UW85 in the field and in a growth chamber. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:2767–2770

Handelsman J, Raffel S, Mester EH, Wunderlich L, Crau CR (1990) Biological control of damping-off of alfalfa seedlings with *Bacillus cereus* UW85. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:713–718

Heyrman J, Swings J (2001) 16S rDNA sequence analysis of bacterial isolates from biodeteriorated mural paintings in the Servilia tomb (Necropolis of Carmona, Seville, Spain). Syst Appl Microbiol 24:417–422

Holford ICR (1997) Soil phosphorus, its measurements and its uptake by plants. Aust J Soil Res 35:227–239

Hong Y, Pasternak JJ, Glick BR (1991) Biological consequences of plasmid transformation of the plant growth promoting rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas putida* GR 12-2. Can J Microbiol 37:796–799

Hong YY, Ma YC, Zhou YG, Gao F, Liu HC, Chen SF (2009) *Paenibacillus sonchi* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing species isolated from the rhizosphere of *Sonchus oleraceus*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:2656–2661

Islam MR, Madhaiyan M, Boruah HPD, Yim W, Lee G, Saravanan VS, Fu Q, Hu H, Sa T (2009) Characterization of plant growth-promoting traits of free-living diazotrophic bacteria and their inoculation effects on growth and nitrogen uptake of crop plants. J Microbiol Biotechnol 9:1213–1222

Jain DK, Patriquin DG (1985) Characterization of a substance produced by *Azospirillum* wich causes branching of wheat root hairs. Can J Microbiol 31:206–210

Karlidag H, Esitken A, Turan M, Sahin F (2007) Effects of root inoculation of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on yield, growth and nutrient elements contents of leaves of apple. Sci Hortic 114:16–20

Kloepper JW, Lifshitz R, Schroth MN (1988) *Pseudomonas* inoculants to benefit plant production. ISI Atlas Sci Anim Plant Sci 1:60–64

Kloepper JW, Lifshitz R, Zablotowicz RM (1989) Free-living bacterial inocula for enhancing crop productivity. Trends Biotechnol 7:39–43

Knosp O, von Tigerstrom M, Page JP (1984) Siderophore mediated uptake of iron in *Azotobacter vinelandii*. J Bacteriol 159:341–347

Koenig RL, Morris RO, Pollaco JC (2002) tRNA is the source of low-level trans-zeatin production in *Methylobacterium* spp. Appl Environ Microbiol 184:1832–1842

Kokalis-Burelle N, Kloepper JW, Reddy MS (2006) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria as transplant amendments and their effects on indigenous rhizosphere microorganisms. Appl Soil Ecol 31:91–100

Lacey LA, Frutos R, Kaya HK, Vail P (2001) Insect pathogens as biological control agents: do they have a future? Biol Control 21:230–248

Lambrecht M, Okon Y, Broek AV, Vanderleyden J (2000) Indole-3-acetic acid: a reciprocal signaling molecule in bacteria–plant interactions. Trends Microbiol 8:298–300

Lankford CE (1973) Bacterial assimilation of iron. Crit Rev Microbiol 2:273–331

Lebuhn M, Heulin T, Hartmann A (1997) Production of auxin and other indolic and phenolic compounds by *Paenibacillus polymyxa* strains isolated from different proximity to plant roots. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 22:325–334

Leong J (1986) Siderophores: their biochemistry and possible role in the biocontrol of plant pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 24:187–209

Li D, Alexander M (1988) Co-inoculation with antibiotic-producing bacteria to increase colonization and nodulation by rhizobia. Plant Soil 108:211–219

Li CY, Massicote HB, Moore LVH (1992) Nitrogen-fixing *Bacillus* sp. associated with Douglas-fir tuberculate ectomycorrhizae. Plant Soil 140:35–40

Li JH, Em TW, Chen WF, Chen WX (2008) Genetic diversity and potential for promotion of plant growth detected in nodule endophytic bacteria of soybean grown in Heilongjiang province of China. Soil Biol Biochem 40:238–246

Lucangeli C, Bottini R (1997) Effects of *Azospirillum* spp. on endogenous gibberellin content and growth of maize (*Zea mays* L.) treated with uniconazole. Symbiosis 23:63–72

Lynch JM (1990) The rhizosphere. Wiley, Chichester

Ma Y, Chen S (2008) *Paenibacillus forsythiae* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing species isolated from rhizosphere soil of *Forsythia mira*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 58:319–323

Ma Y, Xia Z, Liu X, Chen S (2007a) *Paenibacillus sabinae* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing species isolated from the rhizosphere soils of shrubs. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:6–11

Ma Y, Zhang J, Chen S (2007b) *Paenibacillus zanthoxyli* sp. nov., a novel nitrogen-fixing species isolated from the rhizosphere of *Zanthoxylum simulans*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:873–877

Manulis S, Haviv-Chesner A, Brandl MT, Lindow SE, Barash I (1998) Differential involvement of indole-3-acetic acid biosynthetic pathways in pathogenicity and epiphytic fitness of *Erwinia herbicola* pv. *gypsophilae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:634–642

Mavingui P, Heulin T (1994) In vitro chitinase antifungal activity of a soil, rhizosphere and rhizoplane populations of *Bacillus polymyxa*. Soil Biol Biochem 26:801–803

Mena-Violante HG, Olalde-Portugal V (2007) Alteration of tomato fruit quality by root inoculation with plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR): *Bacillus subtilis* BEB-13bs. Sci Hortic 113:103–106

Montefusco A, Nakamura LK, Labeda DP (1993) *Bacillus peoriae* sp. nov. Int J Syst Bacteriol 43:388–390

Neilands JB, Konopka K, Schwyn B, Coy M, Francis RT, Paw BH, Bagg A (1987) In: Winkelmann G, van dre Helm D, Neilands JB (eds) Iron transport in microbes, plants and animals. Verlagsgesellschaft mbH, Weinheim, pp 3–33

Neves MCP, Rumjanek NG (1998) In: Melo IS, Azevedo JL (eds) Ecologia microbiana. EMBRAPA – CNPMA, Jaguariúna, pp 15–60

Nicholson WL (2002) Roles of *Bacillus* endospores in the environment. Cell Mol Life Sci 59:410–416

Okon Y, Labandera-González CA (1994) In: Ryder MH, Stephens PM, Bowen GD (eds) Improving plant productivity with rhizosphere bacteria. Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization, Adelaide, pp 274–278

Orhan E, Esitken A, Ercisli S, Turan M, Sahin F (2006) Effects of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) on yield, growth and nutrients contents in organically growing raspberry. Sci Hortic 111:38–43

Park M, Kim C, Yang J, Lee H, Shin W, Kim S, Sa T (2005) Isolation and characterization of diazotrophic growth promoting bacteria from rhizosphere of agricultural crops of Korea. Microbiol Res 160:127–133

Patten CL, Glick BR (1996) Bacterial biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid. Can J Microbiol 42:207–220

Patten CL, Glick BR (2002) Role of *Pseudomonas putida* indoleacetic acid in development of the host plant root system. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3795–3801

Paul EA, Clark FE (1989) Soil microbiology and biochemistry. Academic, San Diego, CA

Piao CG, Tang WH, Chen YX (1992) Study on the biological activity of yield-increasing bacteria. Chin J Microecol 4:55–62

Priest F (1993) Systematics and ecology of *Bacillus*. In: Losick R, Hoch JA, Sonenshein AL (eds) *Bacillus subtilis* and other gram-positive bacteria, biochemistry, physiology, and molecular genetics. American Society for Microbiology Press, Washington, DC, pp 3–16

Prinsen E, Costacurta A, Michiels K, Vanderleyden J, Van Onckelen H (1993) *Azospirillum brasilense* indole-3-acetic acid biosynthesis: evidence for a non-tryptophan dependent pathway. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 6:609–615

Raaska L, Sillanpää J, Sjöberg A, Suihko M (2002) Potencial microbiological hazards in the production of refined paper products for food applications. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 28:225–231

Ramos B, Lucas Garcia JA, Probanza A, Barrientos ML, Gutierrez Manero FJ (2003) Alterations in the rhizobacterial community associated with European alder growth when inoculated with PGPR strain *Bacillus licheniformis*. Environ Exp Bot 49:61–68

Raven PH, Evert RF, Eichhorn SE (1996) In: Raven PH, Evert RF, Eichhorn SE (eds) Regulacão do crescimento e do desenvolvimento: os hormônios vegetais. Biologia vegetal. Guanabara Koogan SA, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, pp 508–533

Rodríguez H, Fraga R (1999) Phosphate solubilizing bactéria and their role in plant growth promotion. Biotechnol Adv 17:319–339

Rodríguez-Diaz M, Lebbe L, Rodelas B, Heyrman J, de Vos P, Logan NA (2005) *Paenibacillus wynnii* sp. nov., a novel species harbouring the *nif*H gene, isolated from Alexander Island, Antarctica. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:2093–2099

Rosado AS, Seldin L, Wolters AC, van Elsas JD (1996) Quantitative rDNA 16S-targeted polymerase chain reaction and oligonucleotide hybridization for the detection of *Paenibacillus azotofixans* in soil and the wheat rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 19:153–164

Roux V, Raoult D (2004) *Paenibacillus massiliensis* sp. nov., *Paenibacillus sanguinis* sp. nov. and *Paenibacillus timonensis* sp. nov, isolated from blood cultures. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54:1049–1054

Rózycki H, Dahm H, Strzelczyk E, Li CY (1999) Diazotrophic bacteria in root-free soil and in the root zone of pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.) and oak (*Quercus robur* L.). Appl Environ Microbiol 12:239–250

Ryder MH, Yan Z, Terrace TE, Rovira AD, Tang W, Correll RL (1999) Use of strains of *Bacillus* isolated in China to suppress take-all and rhizoctonia root rot, and promote seedling growth of glasshouse grown wheat in Australian soils. Soil Biol Biochem 31:19–29

Sarwar M, Kremer RJ (1992) Determination of bacterially derived auxins using a microplate method. Lett Appl Microbiol 20:282–285

Saxena B, Modi M, Modi VV (1986) Isolation and characterization of siderophores from *Azospirillum lipoferum* D-2. J Gen Microbiol 132:2219–2224

Seldin L, Rosado A, Cruz DW, Nobrega A, van Elsas JD, Paiva E (1998) Comparison of *Paenibacillus azotofixans* strains isolated from rhizoplane, rhizosphere and non-root-associated soil from maize planted in two different Brazilian soils. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3860–3868

Shah S, Karkhanis V, Desai A (1992) Isolation and characterization of siderophore, with antimicrobial activity, from *Azospirillum lipoferum*. Curr Microbiol 25:347–351

Shida O, Takagi H, Kodowaki K, Nakamura LK, Komagata K (1997) Transfer of *Bacillus alginolyticus*, *Bacillus chondroitinus*, *Bacillus curdlanolyticus*, *Bacillus glucanolyticus*, *B. kobensis* and *Bacillus thiaminolyticus* to the genus *Paenibacillus* and emended description of the genus *Paenibacillus*. Int J Syst Bacteriol 47:289–298

Siddiqui ZA, Mahmood I (1999) Role of bacteria in the management of plant parasitic nematodes: a review. Bioresour Tech 69:167–179

Siefert JL, Larios-Sanz M, Nakamura LK, Slepecky RA, Paul JH, Moore ER, Fox GE, Jurtshuk P (2000) Phylogeny of marine *Bacillus* isolates from the Gulf of Mexico. Curr Microbiol 41:84–88

Singh S, Kapoor KK (1998) Effects of inoculation of phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms and an arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus on mungbean grown under natural soil conditions. Mycorrhiza 7:249–253

Slepecky RA, Hemphill HE (1992) In: Balows A, Trüper HG, Dworkin M, Harder W, Schleifer KH (eds) The prokaryotes, a handbook on the biology of bacteria: ecophysiology, isolation, identification, applications, vol 2. Springer, New York, NY, pp 1663–1697

Smalla K, Wieland G, Buchner A, Zock A, Parzy J, Kaiser S, Roskot N, Heuer H, Berg G (2001) Bulk and rhizosphere soil bacterial communities studied by denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis: plant dependent enrichment and seasonal shifts revealed. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:4742–4751

Sorokin ID, Kravchenko IK, Tourova TP, Kolganova TV, Boulygina ES, Sorokin DY (2008a) *Bacillus alkalidiazotrophicus* sp. nov., a diazotrophic, low salt-tolerant alkaliphile isolated from Mongolian soda soil. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 58:2459–2464

Sorokin ID, Zadorina EV, Kravchenko IK, Boulygina ES, Tourova TP, Sorokin DY (2008b) *Natronobacillus azotifigens* gen. nov., sp. nov., an anaerobic diazotrophic haloalkaliphile from soda-rich habitats. Extremophiles 12:819–827

Srinivasan M, Peterson DJ, Holl FB (1996) Influence of IAA producing *Bacillus* isolates on the nodulation of *Phaseolus vulgaris* by *Rhizobium etli*. Can J Microbiol 42:1006–1014

Stahly DP, Andrews RE, Yousten AA (1992) In: Balows A, Trüper HG, Dworkin M, Harder W, Schleifer KH (eds) The prokaryotes, a handbook on the biology of bacteria: ecophysiology, isolation, identification, applications. Springer, New York, NY, pp 1697–1745

Tang W, Pasternak JJ, Glick BR (1994) Stimulation of canola root growth by *Pseudomonas putida* GR 12-2 and its genetically engineered derivatives. Life Sci Adv 13:89–95

Tien TM, Gaskins MH, Hubbell DH (1979) Plant growth substances produced by *Azospirillum brasilense* and their effect on the growth of pearl millet (*Pennisetum americanum* L.). Appl Environ Microbiol 37:1016–1024

Timmusk S, Nicander B, Granhall U, Tillberg E (1999) Cytokinin production by *Paenibacillus polymyxa*. Soil Biol Biochem 31:1847–1852

Trivedi P, Pandey A (2008) Plant growth promotion abilities and formulation of *Bacillus megaterium* strain B 388 (MTCC6521) isolated from a temperate Himalayan location. Indian J Microbiol 48:342–347

Turner JT, Blackman PA (1991) Factors related to peanut yield increases following *Bacillus subtilis* seed treatment. Plant Dis 75:347–353

Vandendergh PA, Gonzalez CF (1984) Methods for protecting the growth of plants employing mutant siderophore producing strains of *Pseudomonas putida*. US Patent No. US4 479936

Verma SC, Ladha JK, Tripathi AK (2001) Evaluation of plant growth promoting and colonization ability of endophytic diazotrophs from deep water rice. J Biotechnol 91:127–141

von der Weid I, Duarte GF, van Elsas JD, Seldin L (2002) *Paenibacillus brasilensis* sp. nov., a new nitrogen-fixing species isolated from the maize rhizosphere in Brazil. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:2147–2153

Wagner-Döbler I, Lünsdorf H, Lübbehüsen T, von Canstein HF, Li Y (2000) Structure and species composition of mercury-reducing biofilms. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:4559–4563

Wang Y, Brown HN, Crowley DE, Szaniszlo PJ (1993) Evidence for direct utilization of a siderophore, ferrioxamine B, in axenically grown cucumber. Plant Cell Environ 16:579–585

Xie GII, Su BL, Cui ZJ (1998) Isolation and identification of N_2-fixing strains of *Bacillus* in rice rhizosphere of the Yangtze River valley. Acta Microbiol Sin 38:480–483

Yan Z, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW (2003) Survival and colonization of rhizobacteria in a tomato transplant system. Can J Microbiol 49:383–389

Yoon J, Seo W, Shin YK, Kho YH, Kang KH, Park Y (2002) *Paenibacillus chinjuensis* sp. nov., a novel exopolysaccharide-producing bacterium. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:415–421

Zakharova EA, Shcherbakov AA, Brudnik VV, Skripko NG, Bulkhin NS, Ignatov VV (1999) Biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid in *Azospirillum brasilense* insights from quantum chemistry. Eur J Biochem 259:572–576

Zhang F, Smith DL (1996) Genistein accumulation in soybean (*Glycine max* L. Merr.) root systems under suboptimal root zone temperatures. J Exp Bot 47:785–792

Chapter 2
Bacillus mojavensis: Its Endophytic Nature, the Surfactins, and Their Role in the Plant Response to Infection by *Fusarium verticillioides*

Charles W. Bacon and Dorothy M. Hinton

2.1 Introduction

Preharvest fungicides are used to control or reduce pathogenic fungi, their inoculum, and infection in hosts that also should reduce the formation of undesirable contaminants such as mycotoxins. However, the emphasis in greater sustainability and an increase in public concern for hazards associated with synthetic chemical pesticides and transgenic plants have produced a resurgence of interest in the use of introduced microorganisms for biological control of plant pathogens. Biological control is another one of the several measures used as pre- and postharvest control of several pathogens including the species of *Fusarium*. Most of these microorganisms are inconsistent in their performance in biological control resulting in reduced commercial development and widespread use. The major reason for this lack of performance is inadequate colonization of the target site, variation in expression of control at that site, and the need for numerous applications. Most of the biocontrol organisms are either soil or surface dwellers and have very little affinity to plants as specific colonizers as evidenced by ineffective controls of disease following repeated applications (see Thomashow and Weller 1990 and Hallmann et al. 1997 for review).

There is a unique group of bacteria that form endophytic associations with plants, and several of these have been reported to be successful in preventing disease development. The uses of bacterial endophytes in agriculture for general and specific biological control applications are current, widespread (Chanway 1996; Hallmann et al. 1997; Kobayashi and Palumbo 2000; Reinhold-Hurek and Hurek 1998; Sturz et al. 2000), and might afford protection to host plants similar to those provided by fungal endophytes.

C.W. Bacon (✉) • D.M. Hinton
USDA, ARS, Russell Research Center, 950 College Station Road, P.O. Box 5677, Athens, GA 30604, USA
e-mail: charles.bacon@ars.usda.gov

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_2,

Bacterial endophytes can be distinguished from nonbacterial endophytes by their unique behavior with plant hosts. Large numbers of bacterial species are endophytic and are regarded as symbiotic with plants as biotrophic and several of these form mutualistic endophytic associations (Hallmann et al. 1997; Chanway 1996, 1998; Bacon and Hinton 2006; Kobayashi and Palumbo 2000; Bacon and Hinton 2006). These bacterial endophytes actively colonize above- (foliage) and below-ground (root) host tissues and establish long-term associations, actually lifelong natural associations, without doing substantive harm to the host. These associations are to be distinguished from transient bacteria, usually dormant or latent infections, which form associations as happenstances that will not survive long. Endophytic bacteria are further distinguished by controlling the growth of several fungi, bacteria, and nematodes (Bacon and Hinton 2006; Hallmann et al. 1997). Endophytic bacteria include both obligate and facultative species. These bacteria offer several advantages for control of pathogenic fungi, and they are expected to control both endophytic fungi, such as *Fusarium verticillioides*, and epibiotic to endophytic species of other *Fusarium*.

Bacillus mojavensis Roberts, Nakamura, and Cohan was distinguished from the *Bacillus subtilis* complex on the basis of whole-cell fatty acid composition, divergence in DNA sequence, and resistance to genetic transformation (Roberts et al. 1994). The type of this bacterium was an isolate from the Mojave Desert, California, which served as the specific epithet for this and the other desert isolates as *B. mojavensis* Roberts, Nakamura, and Cohan. This group of species in addition to the desert origins has additional physiological traits that serve as characteristics of the species. All strains of this species are antagonistic to fungi and are all endophytic. These traits suggest that this species has outstanding traits as an endophytic biocontrol agent.

The genus *Bacillus* has several traits in common and one that is emerging is the ability to produce specific lipopeptide biosurfactants such as surfactins A, B, and C, pumilacidin, esperin, lichenysin, fengycin, iturin, the bacillomycin, mycosubtilin, surfactants 86, arthrofactin, and the fungicines. We recently discovered that this species also produced a mixture of closely related cyclic lipopeptide isoforms of the biosurfactant, surfactin A (Snook et al. 2009; Fig. 2.1). Among the many anticipated uses of surfactin, this biosurfactant is inhibitory to fungi, some bacteria, mycoplasmas, and viruses (Bonmatin et al. 2003; Desai and Banat 1997; Georgiou et al. 1992; Peypoux et al. 1999; Seydlova and Svobodova 2008).

In addition to *B. mojavensis*, the surfactins are produced by *B. subtilis*, *B. licheniformis*, *B. pumilus*, and *B. amyloliquefaciens*. Only two other genera are reported as producer of lipopeptide biosurfactants and these include *Serratia marcescens* that produces serrawettin W2 and species of *Pseudomonas* that produces the putisolvins and arthrofactin (Desai and Banat 1997; Matsuyama et al. 1992).

A major thrust is on bacterial endophytes that offer biocontrol potential for fungal endophytes such as *Fusarium* species. This genus consists of several species that are endophytic (Kuldau and Yates 2000), and one species in particular is *F. verticillioides* (synonym *Fusarium moniliforme*), Holomorph: *Gibberella*

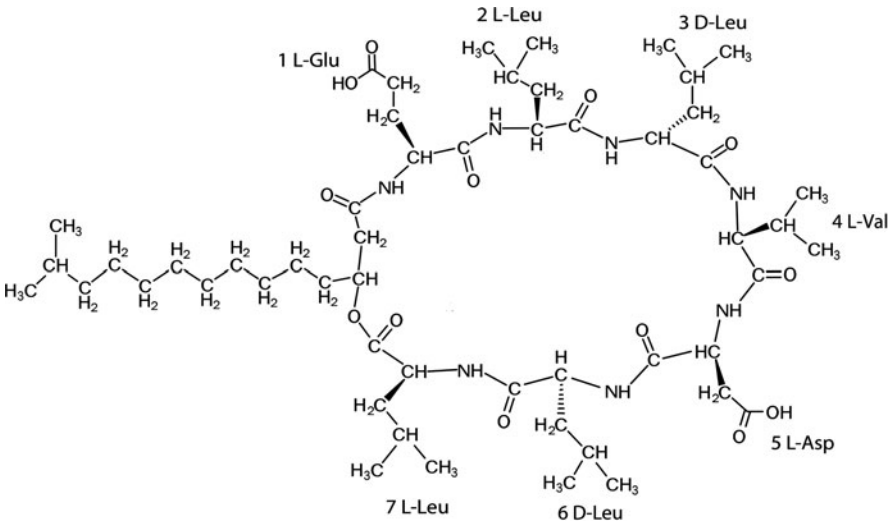


Fig. 2.1 Structure of surfactin A, Leu[7]-surfactin with the amino acid sequence of Glu, Leu, Leu, Val, Asp, Leu, Leu. Surfactin B has an amino acid sequence Glu, Leu, Leu, Val, Asp, Leu, and note for this isomer Val at position 7. Surfactin C has an amino acid sequence of Glu, Leu, Leu, Val, Asp, and note for this isomer Ile at position 7

moniliformis Wineland, a pathogen of maize and other crops. In maize, it produces the fumonisin mycotoxins that are toxic to horses, swine, poultry, and are correlated with human toxicity (Bullerman 1996; Marasas et al. 1988, 2004; Riley et al. 1993; Ross et al. 1992; Voss et al. 2001).

Since the fumonisins are common occurrence on maize, most probably due to the endophytic nature of *F. verticillioides*, it is imperative to find a control for both the endophytic infection and the saprophytic state. The endophytic state serves both as a source of mycotoxin production and as an infection source. The endophytic state also makes it difficult to control by fungicides registered for use on food crops. *B. mojavensis* has the potential to control infections by *F. verticillioides* and for reducing the content of fumonisin in maize (Bacon et al. 2001). However, the practical uses of bacterial endophytes under field conditions are problematic. The basis for this we feel is due to the unknown mechanism or mechanisms responsible for biocontrol by endophytic bacteria. Such mechanisms obviously are complicated by genetics of biocontrol and target organisms, interacting biotic and abiotic factors, and most importantly competing organisms. Further, there might be several mechanisms operating within a given environment, each operating for specific species of biocontrol organism. Intuitively, competitive exclusion is used to describe competition between two organisms for the same niche. What is described as competitive exclusion is envisioned as replacing one organism with another is too simplistic. The method of obtaining dominance or excluding another from a niche is operationally a complex scenario of which very little is known. In this regard, nutrition is often used as the explanation, although most theories encompass

an antagonistic response such as the production of an antibiotic. In the instance of *B. mojavensis* versus *F. verticillioides*, antibiotic production by the biocontrol organisms is suggested since the production of antagonistical substances is observed on Petri plates.

Surfactins are produced by the majority of strains of *B. mojavensis* tested (Snook et al. 2009). Further, since all *B. mojavensis* strains examined are endophytic, we believe this species can offer valuable biocontrol information from which we can draw conclusions and extend to other bacterial endophytes. Moreover, *B. mojavensis* along with other *Bacillus* species produce surfactins, which implies that there is a natural role in the ecology of a species for surfactin and others in this class of biosurfactants (Ron and Rosenberg 2001). We review the chemistry of surfactin, surfactin production in this natural endophytic species, as well as the biocontrol potential for surfactins. We also review the biocontrol activities and host–bacterial relations along with in planta growth properties. The target of our control is primarily *F. verticillioides* and other endophytic species of fungi, although other pathogens might equally fit the model and be controlled as well.

2.2 Surfactin Chemistry and Structural Features

The surfactins consist of a group of several surface-active agents produced by microorganisms and conveniently grouped as biosurfactants because they are surfactants of microbial origin, and they are readily biodegradable. Thus, they are environmentally friendly. Surfactin is one of the small molecular weight lipopeptide biosurfactants that range from 1,003 to 1,127 Da (Cooper et al. 1989). Surfactin was first isolated from *B. subtilis* by Arima et al. (1968), and the name assigned to it is due to its surfactant activity (Arima et al. 1968). The complete structure was determined as a macrolide lipopeptide, which was confirmed by Kakinuma et al. (1969). Since this initial discovery, surfactin serve as the major class of this cyclic lipopeptides.

The surfactins consist of a polar end of seven α-amino acids and an acyl chain of hydrophobic β-hydroxy fatty acids. The amino acids are arranged in the chiral sequence LLDLLDL with hydrophobic amino acids located at carbons 2, 3, 4, 6, and 7, while hydrophilic amino acids are located at carbons 1 and 5 as glutamyl and aspartyl, respectively (Fig. 2.1). Surfactin is rated one of the most biologically active biosurfactant that has been discovered (Kakinuma et al. 1969).

Surfactin is soluble in polar and nonpolar solvents due to the hydrophilic and hydrophobic moieties, which explains most of its many attributes. Either moiety has the chemical ability to partition interfaces between different surface polarities. This class is a highly active compound with high ratings for detergency, foaming, dispersing, and emulsifying qualities. While surfactins belong to the major group of biosurfactants, they are microbial in origin and have several advantages over chemical derivatives or surfactants and these include lower toxicity, higher biodegradability, and ability to remain biologically active over a wide range of pH values

and temperatures (Cameotra and Makkar 1998). Again this is due to the amino acid composition, and specifically aspartic acid and glycine are the major amino acids that make surfactin amendable to microbial degradation and chemical decompositions.

According to Seydlova and Svobodova 2008, surfactin is the most powerful biosurfactants. It lowers the surface tension of water from 72 to 27 mN m^{-1} at a concentration as low as 10 μM. Further, surfactin is amphoteric, possessing both a positive and negative charge. This low molecular weight biosurfactant is characterized due to this weight as having the basic property of lowering surface, interfacial tensions efficiently (Cooper 1980) and other physiochemical properties (Bonmatin et al. 2003). Additional structural features of surfactin and other small molecular weight biosurfactants such as binding to heavy metals, detachment and attachment to and from surfaces, increasing surface, biofilm, and emulsifier production have been reviewed (Ron and Rosenberg 2001).

2.2.1 In Vitro Production and Heterogeneity of Surfactins

Surfactin was originally discovery from a nutrient broth culture of *B. subtilis* (Arima et al. 1968). Current procedures for most producing organisms are based on strains of *B. subtilis* cultured on a variety of synthetic and natural media (Das and Mukherjee 2007) and mixed fermentation procedures and with a variety of incubation temperatures (Makkar and Cameotra 1998). The initial media used to screen strain were the synthetic minimal mineral salt medium (Cooper et al. 1981) or on a semisynthetic medium (Landy et al. 1948). The yield of surfactin by *B. mojavensis* on either of these is very low, and in most instances, there is no surfactin produced at all by some strains, including submerged or stationary cultures. In our experience, the synthetic media reported above do not induce the synthesis of surfactin in *B. mojavensis*. However, the nutrient broth and nutrient broth amended with agar are excellent media and more surfactin is produced on the nutrient agar than broth (Snook et al. 2009). Nutrient agar is by far the best in terms of yield, although another medium that works well is a modified nutrient solution made from cottonseed formulation, Pharmamedia (Traders Protein, Southern Cotton Oil Company), amended with nutrient broth (Snook et al. 2009). On these media, most *B. mojavensis* strains tested produced a variety of isomers (Table 2.1). Some strains produce high levels of the desirable C-14 and C-15 alkyl chain lengths (unpublished data).

The biosynthesis of surfactins is nonribosomal (Desai and Banat 1997; von Dohren 1995) as is the synthesis of most secondary metabolites of bacteria. Regulation of this process is very complex because genes encoding nonribosomal peptide synthetases are organized into operons (Marahiel et al. 1997). The synthesis and regulation involve modular nonribosomal peptide synthetases that are transcriptionally induced under nutritionally limiting or stressful conditions (Desai and Banat 1997; Davis et al. 1999). Thus, the poorer the medium usually the better the product, which is the case of *B. mojavensis* as attempts at increasing the yield of

Table 2.1 Percentage of isolates producing specific surfactin isoforms by *B. mojavensis* in culture

Acyl chain length	% Producing[a] surfactins	% Producing none
C11	28	72
C12	28	72
C13	58	42
C14	51	49
C15	58	42
C16	12	88
C17	15	85

[a]A total of 33 strains from all the major deserts were cultured on the nutrient broth amended with Pharmamedia, a cotton seed product, and tested for specific isoforms of surfactin after 30 h of incubation

surfactins by increasing or modifying carbohydrate and nitrogen levels result in luxuriant growth but no surfactin. Under each domain of a module, the seven amino acids of surfactin are bound to carriers, activated and chemically united to produce the characteristic head. Additional domains such as epimerizations within the module modify or catalyze specific amino acids to produce either D- or L-amino acids.

It was also reported that stressful conditions also induce sporulation by *Bacillus* species and indeed whose sporulation specific locus have been identified and shown to transcribe the synthesis of surfactin due to promoting transcription of the surfactin synthetase operon but only when glucose is in excess (Marahiel et al. 1993). In general, surfactin is induced by nitrogen starvation (Davis et al. 1999), although Marahiel et al. (1993) indicate that it is repressed by glutamate. There are variations in specifics of surfactin fermentation requirements, which are strain specific. For example, in one strain of *B. mojavensis* (synonym *B. licheniformis* JF-2), maximum biosurfactant synthesis occurs during the log phase, but when the cells enter stationary phase, which is controlled by a promoter gene, it stops the synthesis of surfactin and that which is produced is absorbed by the producing cells (Lin 1996). This indicates that the series of genes are controlled by extracellular environmental factor during dense cell growth and its associated biochemical pathways suggesting a "quorum sensing mechanism."

Resorption of surfactin might be an explanation for data published earlier (Bacon and Hinton 2002), indicating that on nutrient agar all strains were antagonistic to *F. verticillioides*, but 42% were negative for surfactin C15, the most biologically active form (Table 2.1). Perhaps these stains reabsorbed the surfactins, but remained toxic when the fungal and bacterial cells interact during the in vitro assay for toxicity on nutrient agar surfactin. This form of inhibition was referred to as surface contact inhibition in that early work (Bacon and Hinton 2002). Yet to be explained is the ability of strains of any species to tolerate massive production of surfactin without self-destruction.

In summary, surfactin biosynthesis is regulated by genes relating to nutrient limiting conditions, which apparently are under transcriptional control. Surfactin biosynthesis and sporulation are coregulated under nutrient poor condition. Thus,

measures to increase its production under laboratory conditions should include a limit of nitrogen sources and concentration as well as amounts of carbon available to cell, usually under log phase. Strategy to improve strain for product formation might be achieved by altering specific cultivation conditions and by genetic manipulation (Abu-Ruwaida et al. 1991; Das and Mukherjee 2007; Davis et al. 1999).

2.2.2 *Surfactin Biocontrol Features*

The acyl chain length varies from C13 to C16 fatty acids that are linear, *iso*-, or *anteiso*-branched. The terminal amino acid is linked to the carboxyl group of the fatty acid and the carboxyl terminus is linked to the hydroxy or amino group of the acid resulting in a lactone cyclic peptide configuration with a hydrophobic tail. There are three structural analogues of surfactin, A (Fig. 2.1), B, and C, in which each differs in the sequence of amino acid, particularly in position 7. The essential difference is that Leu located at position 7 of surfactin A is replaced by valine and isoleucine in surfactin B and C, respectively (Baumgart et al. 1991).

Substitution of specific amino acids with other L- or D-amino acids exerts a change on the entire lipopeptide structure that modifies both the chemistry and biological activity of the molecule (Kikuchi and Hasumi 2002). For example, lichenysin is another cyclic heptapeptide with similarity to surfactin, except Glu in surfactin as opposed to the presence of Gln in lichenysin which confers a remarkable decrease in biological activity compared to surfactin (Konz et al. 1999). However, in lichenysin the makeup and length of the fatty acid tail also affect antimicrobial activity (Seydlova and Svobodova 2008; Yakimov et al. 1996), which was not measured in the Konz et al. (1999) work, but speculated here as being important for activity of surfactin to which it is structurally similar. Further, it was noted that surfactant activity also varied with the branching type in an increasing order from *anteiso* to *iso* to *normal*, which imparts the highest biocontrol activity relative to fungal toxicity (Maget-Dena and Ptak 1995; Yakimov et al. 1996). Thus, *normal* alkyl chains are more active than *iso* and *anteiso* being last active, but as observed in Table 2.1, several isomers coexist in the same extract that might be more active due to synergism. Although, of several strains tested, 42% did not produce any surfactins, they were all antagonistic to *Fusarium verticillium* (Bacon and Hinton 2002), suggesting the role of additional inhibitors, resorption of surfactin as described above, or failure of an inhibitory substance to diffuse into the test medium (and see below). The pattern of β-hydroxy fatty acids synthesized depends on the branched amino acids in the medium such as valine and isoleucine (Besson et al. 1992).

The physical characteristics of surfactins increase the benefits as biocontrol agents. Most lipopeptides are physically active over a variety of conditions and it is expected that surfactins will follow this generalization. Surfactin is active at below room temperature, and up to 80 or 100°C, and over a range of pH values from 3 to 11 (Cameotra and Makkar 1998; Joshi et al. 2008; Makkar and Cameotra

1998). *B. mojavensis* is an osmophile that tolerates seawater and salt concentrations up to 50 g l^{-1} and capable of anaerobic growth at 45°C (Javaheri et al. 1985; Janneman et al. 1983). However, we do not know if surfactin and other biocontrol modulators are produced or active at this concentration of salt. Further, *B. mojavensis* JF-2 is capable of anaerobic growth, provided DNA or deoxyribonucleoside are supplied to the medium (Folmsbee et al. 2004). The ability to tolerate high salt concentrations, extreme pH, and other factors describes the versatility of the bacterium to most environments.

The major uses of biosurfactants such as surfactin are for bioremediation of oil recovery and spills as well as emulsifiers, detergents, and cleaners, with some small uses in the cosmetic industry (Rahman et al. 2006). Worldwide well over 17 million tons of biosurfactants are produced and used for these industrial purposes (Whalley 1995). Surfactins specifically have a large range of applications for use in medicine (Rodrigues et al. 2006).

Very little of this was used for agriculture and almost none for biocontrol uses as advanced here. The anticipated uses in agriculture are expected to include biocontrol of phytopathogenic fungi, mycoplasmas, viral, and as an antitumor agent. Surfactin is also inhibitory to some extracellular enzymes, and evidence indicates that it has biocontrol activity over mosquito larva (Das and Mukherjee 2006; Geetha et al. 2010). To our knowledge, the only reported use of a biosurfactant as a biocontrol is against three zoosporic plant pathogens: *Pythium aphanidermatum*, *Phytophthora capsici*, and *Plasmopara lactucea-radicis* (Stanghellini and Miller 1997). The uses of endophytic bacteria as biocontrol agents while widespread are not specifically designed for use in the in situ endophytic production of a biosurfactant as a biocontrol for specific disease of plants. Thus, the field is wide open for uses of specific biosurfactants for the control of specific diseases.

2.3 Plant–Bacterial Endophytic Relationships

Bacterial endophytes as intended here are those that are strictly intercellular (Bacon and Hinton 2002; Chanway 1998; McCully 2001), although the bacterium may colonize either below, above, or both plant axes. Our definition continues to exclude those species that are only transient dwellers of the intercellular habit which can and do within their life cycle become intracellular, oftentimes invading xylem tissues which usually become problematic and cause diseases in plants. Further, xylem endophytes, while not causing a disease, are viewed as a problem since endophytes that live within it are considered not ideal endophytes for biocontrol uses since such infected vessels are weakened and become nonfunctional and therefore detrimental to the plant (McCully 2001). *B. mojavensis* is associated with plants as biotrophic symbionts, but it is not known if this association is obligate or facultative, since all strains are readily isolated from soils (as spores) and their natural colonization from desert habitats such as plants have not been

documented. It is logical to assume that this species naturally inhabits desert plants as endophytes. However, we do know that under experimental conditions, the preferred niches colonized are roots and seedling stems immediately upon germination and the association remains throughout the life of the plant.

The method by which infection occurs is extremely important not only from a biotechnological viewpoint but also from understanding the basic biology of this bacterium. The infection process of *B. mojavensis* occurs from the topical application to seed, where we assume the infection takes place directly from cuts and abrasion of roots during the germination process. Upon germination the roots and mesocotyl are already infected and this infection is perpetuated throughout the plant axis during the entire season (Bacon and Hinton 2002). There are no direct studies on how plants are initially infected and most studies suggest that infection is accomplished through breaks, tares, or wounds of the roots of seedling during either germination or shortly thereafter (Patriquin and Dobereiner 1978). Foliage and stem infection can take place through the pores and stomatas. As we are dealing with nonpathogenic bacteria, there is very little evidence that they possess the arsenal of hydrolytic enzymes that are used to gain entry into roots and leaves characteristic of plant pathogens. We see no evidence for the activity of hydrolytic enzymes characteristic of pathogenic bacteria during or after infection of plants by *B. mojavensis*.

B. mojavensis and other bacterial endophytes benefit from inhabiting the plant's interior because it is a protected niche in which there is a constant source of nutrition. However, the concentrations of such nutrients have been reported as being sparse, suggesting that intercellular bacteria might live under oligotrophic conditions. This, however, is not correct as intercellular spaces are actually high in organic and inorganic nutrients (see review of Bacon and Hinton (2006)) necessary to support the growth of a complex intraspecific mixture of endophytes (Bacon and Hinton 2006; Canny 1995; Dong et al. 1994; Kursanov and Brovchenko 1970). This is due to the recent consideration that the apoplasm, the intercellular spaces, and symplast are structurally the same. Nutrients within the apoplasm are similar to and in similar concentrations as those in the symplasm. Nutrient concentrations in the apoplasm and symplasm are interactive with the phloem, dispelling the earlier notion that the apoplasm is relatively free of nutrients. Indeed, current research indicates that nutrient transport within plant tissues is considered to occur through an apoplastic route via the cell wall continuum and via the symplastic route via the plasmodesmata (Canny 1995).

Bacterial endophytes in general and *B. mojavensis* in particular are not oligotrophs, but rather copiotrophs. Thus, the intercellular space in maize is rich in substances necessary to support the oligotrophic growth of *B. mojavensis* supporting the observation of large numbers of bacterial cells observed in the several intercellular spaces (Fig. 2.2). Additional information on bacterial-induced morphological and chemical changes within cellular types of the endophytic niche has been described in an earlier review (Bacon and Hinton 2006). These morphological changes are presumably harmless as diseases are not observed, not even under stresses such as drought.

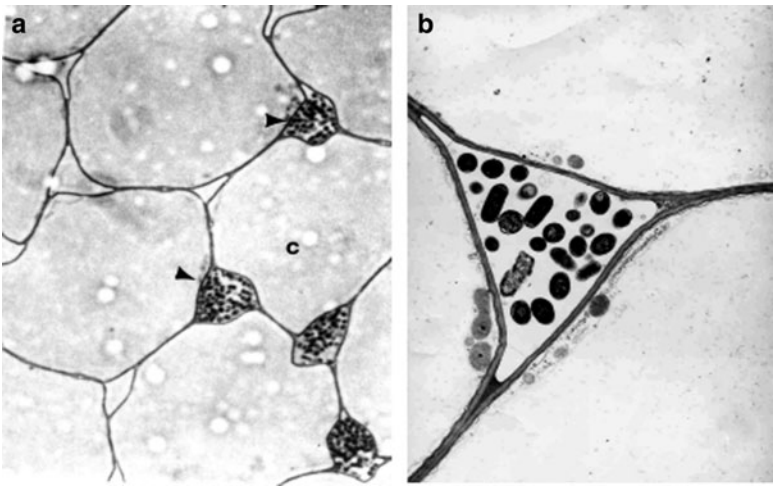


Fig. 2.2 *Bacillus mojavensis* in the intercellular spaces of maize: (**a**) Light microscopy showing bacterial cells located within the intercellular spaces of the cortex, c, of maize root (*arrow*), 40×. (**b**) Transmission electron micrograph of maize root showing bacteria between the intercellular spaces formed by three adjacent cells, 7,250× (Hinton and Bacon 1995)

2.4 Plant Growth Effects

Plant growth responses to bacteria are well established for several crop plants and we presented evidence of the effect of *B. mojavensis* on maize and bean growth indicating growth enhancements on both a monocot and a dicot (Figs. 2.3 and 2.4). The factors responsible for growth enhancements are unknown, but might reflect the exogenous production of phytohormones such as ethylene, auxins, and cytokinins. We have not examined the in vitro production of plant growth hormones by *B. mojavensis*, and it has been demonstrated that a plant-associated bacteria (Kuklinsky-Sobral et al. 2004) but not necessarily endophyte as defined in this review can produce hormones. However, it is not uncommon for bacteria to produce phytohormones, which have been demonstrated for several species (Arshad and Frankenberger 1991). Growth enhancements are also observed on *B. mojavensis*-infected maize plants grown in the presence of pathogenic isolates of *F. verticillioides* (Fig. 2.3).

In addition to the production of phytohormones plant growth, other factors of abiotic nature should also be considered. Other plant growth effects attributed to endophytic bacteria are enhanced mineral uptake such as the solubilizing of bound soil iron and phosphorus and by providing the plant with siderophores and nitrogen (Sturz et al. 2000; Surette et al. 2003). The siderophore producing ability of *B. mojavensis* has been demonstrated, but its interaction at the maize root level has not been determined (unpublished). Additional effects are those that interact with soil bacterial population, prior crop history and the buildup of soil bacteria and

Fig. 2.3 Effects of *Bacillus mojavensis* endophytic infection on plant growth: *Left*, growth of maize shoot inoculated with bacterium; *Middle*, inoculated with *Fusarium verticillioides*; *Right*, inoculated with the fungus and bacterium (Bacon and Hinton 2002)

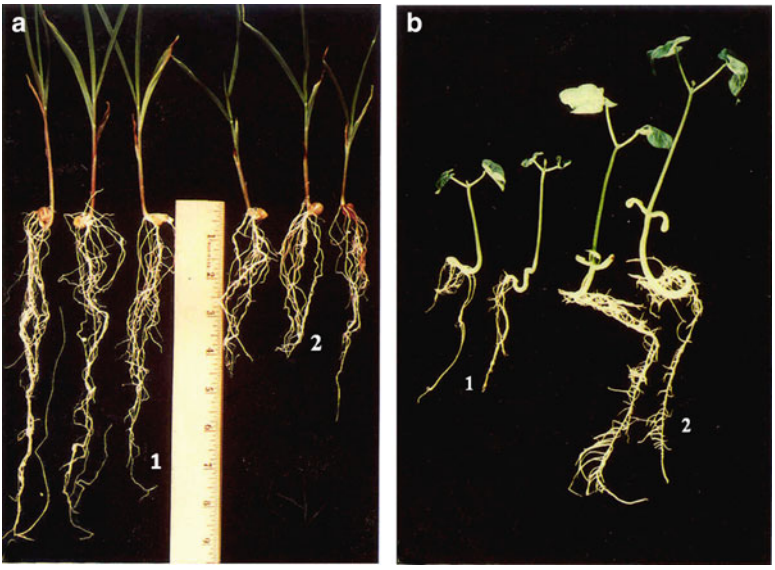


Fig. 2.4 (**a**) Effects of bacterium on maize root growth, (1) and without the bacterium (2). (**b**) Effects of bacterium on 2-week-old growth of beans inoculated without (1), and with bacterium (2); (Bacon and Hinton 2002)

the resulting benefits derived from allelopathy as indicated in the above section on transformation. In addition to soil nitrogen, i.e., a root effect, recent evidence has indicated the endophytic fixation of nitrogen in rice by a leaf endophyte isolated from wild rice by a species of *Herbaspirillum* (Elbeltagy et al. 2001), and similar

analyses by other foliage endophytes such as in sorghum (James et al. 1997). In rice it has been estimated that as much as 200 kg N ha^{-1} $year^{-1}$ can be produced by the use of endophytes in plants (Ladha and Reddy 1995). Thus, nitrogen fixation can be transferred to endophytic bacteria, which can be accomplished through the use of *B. mojavensis* and if necessary by genetic alteration to accomplish the task.

The discussion above describes direct effects on plant growth by the bacterium. There are other effects that relate to plant health, which bacterial endophytes such as *B. mojavensis* might relieve. It is anticipated that with the control of pathogenic organisms, plant growth can be maximized with basic cultural condition. The resulting growth is due to lack of parasitisms and diseases, as well as decreased susceptibility to abiotic stresses such as drought and frost tolerance or resistance.

2.5 Product Transformations

Maize and other cereals produce a group of phytoanticipins the benzoxazinones and their decomposition products (benzoxazolinones and their methyl derivatives) as part of a constitutive defense system capable of deterring insects and pathogenic fungi (Niemeyer 1988). In addition to serving as defensive metabolites, they possess allelopathic qualities (Singh et al. 2003). Due to this very wide spectrum of biological activity, they are commonly referred to as a group of allelochemicals and offer a great deal of promise for natural controls of pests. The main benzoxazinones produced by maize are 2,4-dihydroxy-7-methoxy-2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4*H*)-one and its dimethoxy derivative 2,4-dihydroxy-6,7-dimethoxy-1,4-benzoxazin-3 (4*H*)-one with the former occurring in greater concentrations (Cambier et al. 2000; Whitney and Mortimore 1959). Since these benzoxazinones are highly toxic and reactive, they are also toxic to the plant but are stored as the nontoxic conjugate, a glycoside. The mechanism is put into operation from injury from insects or pathogenic response and are degraded to their unstable and highly toxic agluconic forms, which spontaneously decompose to the corresponding nonplant toxic benzoxazolinones, such as MBOA (6-methoxy-2-benzoxazolinone) and BOA (benzoxazolin-2-one) (Niemeyer 1988). These toxic decomposition products are very stable and remain in debris and maize stubble. Over time apparently maize pathogens have developed resistance to these benzoxazolinones, which is offered as the major reason why maize fields are characterized by fungi that are predominantly maize pathogens with resistance to MBOA and BOA (Glenn 2001; Glenn and Bacon 1998) as observed in *F. verticillioides* (Glenn et al. 2001). Thus, MBOA and BOA are found in plant debris and soil as stable degradation products of DIMBOA and DIBOA, which are considered useful allelochemicals for other uses (Fomsgaard et al. 2004) but are of no consequence for biocontrol of maize pathogens.

It was recently discovered that *B. mojavensis* has the ability to tolerate the benzoxazolinones and in fact transforms BOA and MBOA into 2-amino-3H-phenoxazin-3-one (APO), which is stable and very toxic transformation product to

F. verticillioides and other maize pathogens (Bacon et al. 2007). This substance is now a much better fungicide than the original BOA since *F. verticillioides* is not resistance to it. The results indicate that the bacterium metabolizes a plant metabolite, preventing the usual series of transformations of this same metabolite by *F. verticillioides* and other maize fungal pathogens to nontoxic products, resulting in the accumulation of APO. Thus, an enhanced biocontrol is suggested by this in vitro study. Additional evidence of biotransformation by *B. mojavensis* and other novel enzymatic activities have yet to be reported presumably due to the relative recent attempts at exploiting this species.

2.6 Fungal–Bacterium Interaction

The successful use of a biocontrol bacterium depends on its value under field condition to control the target species, usually a pathogenic fungus that may be equally competitive within specific environments. *F. verticillioides* produces a number of secondary metabolites some of which are considered as antibiotics providing this fungus with a competitive edge. Fusaric acid (5-butylpicolinic acid) was first implicated in the pathogenesis of tomato wilt cause by *F. oxysporum* f.sp. *lycopersici*. Fusaric acid is now known to be a common metabolite of the genus *Fusarium* (Bacon et al. 1996) and other biological activities are assigned to it. It is a mild mycotoxin (Porter et al. 1995; Voss et al. 1999) and is pharmacologically active (Porter et al. 1995; Ballio 1981; Bungo et al. 1999).

In addition to mammalian toxicity, fusaric acid is toxic to vegetative growth of plants in general (Corden and Diamond 1959; D'Alton and Etherton 1984; Drysdale 1984; Marrè et al. 1993) as well as to a variety of physiological processes of plants (Luz et al. 1990; Marrè et al. 1993; Mace and Solit 1966; MacHardy and Beckman 1981; Sanwal and Waygood 1961). Thus, plants infected with *Fusarium* species, endophytic and otherwise, should also show degrees of growth restrictions, provided fusaric acid is produced in planta.

Fusaric acid also has antibiotic effects on both Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria including *Bacillus*, *Paenibacillus*, and *Pseudomonas* species (Arias 1985; Landa et al. 2002; Luz et al. 1990; Notz et al. 2002; Schnider-Keel et al. 2000). We have determined that high levels of fusaric acid exhibited toxicity to some strains of *B. mojavensis* (Table 2.2) (Bacon et al. 2006). This indicates that the endophytic states of *Fusarium* species might have a competitive edge over *B. mojavensis* and any other biocontrol bacterium sensitive to fusaric acid. Fusaric acid sensitivity is not established since the data use what might be considered high concentrations of fusaric acid. These levels are, however, low enough and do not show a response to maize and are within the concentrations used by others to demonstrate. We have developed mutants of *B. mojavensis* that are tolerant to fusaric acid at these concentrations and higher. These mutants might prove superior under field conditions provided all the other qualities such as endophytism and surfactin production are maintained. Fusaric acid is a common contaminate in

Table 2.2 Inhibitory activity of fusaric acid (100 μg ml^{-1}) on the specific rate of growth of *Bacillus mojavensis* strains and their antagonism to *F. verticillioides* (Bacon et al. 2006)

Strains	Origin	% Fusaric acid inhibition[a] (100 g ml^{-1})
RRC 101	Corn, Italy	59a
RRC 112	Mutant of 101	81b
NRRL B-14698^T	Mojave	92b
NRRL B-14699	Mojave	21c
NRRL B-14700	Mojave	76a
NRRL B-14703	Gobi	91a
NRRL B-14708	Gobi	0d
NRRL B-14706	Gobi	26c
NRRL B-14710	Gobi	87b
NRRL B-14714	Sahara	64a
NRRL B-14716	Sahara	77a
NRRL B-14817	Sahara	62a
NRRL B-14824	Sahara	69a

[a]Percentage of fusaric acid inhibition was determined within a 48-h incubation period at 30°C. Values represent the means of six replicate cultures. Means within a column followed by a different letter were significantly different at a *P* value of 0.05 according to Fisher's protected least significant difference test

feedstuffs made from maize (Smith and Sousadias 1993), indicating its natural occurrence. Nevertheless, fusaric acid and possibly other *Fusarium* specific metabolites must be considered a major problem with the use of this and other bacteria. The manner by which fusaric acid tolerance is expressed, i.e., production of an extracellular degrading enzyme or it is impermeable to membrane-regulated transport, is not known but must be determined before such mutant will have a valid place to control the growth of *Fusarium* species under field conditions.

2.7 Conclusion

Endophytic bacteria as defined in this review describe *B. mojavensis* as a bacterium that dwells within the intercellular spaces of plants, is highly compatible with plants, it does not impose negative reactions to the plant, and its interactive metabolism with the host influences growth, maturations, and tolerance to diseases. *B. mojavensis* offers additional qualities of being competitive with some fungi, particularly those that are also endophytic by the production of isomers of surfactins, a biosurfactant that is described as being the most potent known of the lipopeptide group. The surfactins are very active, and are readily degradable, thus increasing its desirability for use in biological controls. The target group of fungi such as *F. verticillioides* and the other *Fusarium* species are also endophytic and competent in production of similar antibiotics some of which are toxic to bacteria. However, there are strains naturally resistant and laboratory generated mutants that should obviate this problem. These should compete well under field conditions with

F. verticillioides resulting in mycotoxin reduction because under controlled conditions the fumonisin mycotoxins were considerably reduced. Several plasmids have been identified useful for transformation of *B. mojavensis* with several fluorescent proteins to serve as ecological marker for field studies (Olubajo and Bacon 2008). This species of bacteria also produces a battery of extracellular specific enzymes capable of the transformation of maize phytoanticipins into more stable and fungitoxic compounds. Its role in related environmental processes such as phytoremediation is noteworthy, which while not a direct plant growth response is an important process that should facilitate plant growth. Current technology can be used to modify *B. mojavensis* for application in increasing the nutritional value of agronomic plants that are lacking in specific animal and human growth requirements. The process, surrogately transformation of plants, offers an alternative to genomic transformation of plants, which is controversial and objectionable to some.

References

Abu-Ruwaida AS, Banat IM, Haditiro S, Salem A, Kadri M (1991) Isolation of biosurfactant – producing bacteria: product characterization and evaluation. Acta Biotechnol 10:315–324

Arias JA (1985) Secretary organelle and mitochondrial alterations induced by fusaric acid in root cells of *Zea mays*. Physiol Plant Pathol 27:149–158

Arima K, Kakinu TG, Tamura G (1968) Surfactin, a crystalline peptidelipid surfactant produced by *Bacillus subtilis*: isolation, characterization and its inhibition of fibrin clot formation. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 31:488–494

Arshad M, Frankenberger WT (1991) Microbial production of plant hormones. In: Keister BD, Cregan PB (eds) The rhizosphere and plant growth. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 327–334

Bacon CW, Hinton DM (2002) Endophytic and biological control potential of *Bacillus mojavensis* and related species. Biol Control 23:274–284

Bacon CW, Hinton DM (2006) Bacterial endophytes: the endophytic niche, its occupants, and its utility. In: Gnanamanickam SS (ed) Plant-associated bacteria. Springer, The Netherlands, pp 155–194

Bacon CW, Porter JK, Norred WP, Leslie JF (1996) Production of fusaric acid by *Fusarium* species. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:4039–4043

Bacon CW, Yates IE, Hinton DM, Meredith F (2001) Biological control of *Fusarium moniliforme* in maize. Environ Health Perspect 109:325–332

Bacon CW, Hinton DM, Hinton A (2006) Growth-inhibiting effects of concentrations of fusaric acid on the growth of *Bacillus mojavensis* and other biocontrol *Bacillus* species. J Appl Microbiol 100:185–194

Bacon CW, Hinton DM, Glenn AE, Macias FA, Marin D (2007) Interaction of *Bacillus mojavensis* and *Fusarium verticillioides* with a benzoxazolinone (BOA) and its transformation products, APO. J Chem Ecol 33:1885–1897

Bacon CW, Hinton DM, Mitchell TR, Snook ME, Olubajo B (2010) Surfactin production and molecular characterization of *Bacillus mojavensis* strains. J Biocontrol (still in review)

Ballio A (1981) Structure-activity relationships. In: Durbin RD (ed) Toxins in plant disease. Academic, New York, pp 395–441

Baumgart R, Kluge B, Ullrich C, Vater J, Ziessow D (1991) Identification of amino acid substitutions in the lipopeptide surfactin using 2D NMR spectroscopy. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 177:998–1005

Besson F, Tenoux I, Hourdou M, Michel G (1992) Synthesis of β-hydroxy fatty acids and β-amino acid fatty acids by strains of *Bacillus subtilis* producing iturinic antibiotics. Biochim Biophy Acta 1123:51–58

Bonmatin J, Laprevote O, Peypoux F (2003) Diversity among microbial cyclic lipopeptides: iturins and surfactins. Activity-structure relationships to design new bioactive agents. Comb Chem High Throughput Screen 6:541–556

Bullerman LB (1996) Occurrence of *Fusarium* and fumonisins on food grains and in foods. Adv Exp Med Biol 392:27–38

Bungo T, Shimojo M, Masuda Y, Choi YH, Denbow DM, Furuse M (1999) Induction of food intake by a noradrenergic system using clonidine and fusaric acid in the neonatal chick. Brain Res 826:313–316

Cambier V, Hance T, De Hoffmann E (2000) Variation of DIMBOA and related compounds content in relation to the age and plant organ in maize. Phytochemistry 53:223–229

Cameotra S, Makkar R (1998) Synthesis of biosurfactants in extreme conditions. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 50:520–529

Canny MJ (1995) Apoplastic water and solute movement: new rules for an old space. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Mol Biol 46:215–236

Chanway CP (1996) Endophytes: they're not just fungi. Can J Bot 74:321–322

Chanway CP (1998) Bacterial endophytes: ecological and practical implications. Sydowia 50:149–170

Cooper DG (1980) Surface active compounds from microorganisms. Adv Appl Microbiol 26:229–253

Cooper DG, MacDonald CR, Duf SFB, Kosaric N (1981) Enhances production of surfactin from *Bacillus subtilis* by continuous product removal and metal cation additions. Appl Environ Microbiol 42:408–412

Cooper DG, Liss SN, Longay R, Zajic JE (1989) Surface activities of *Mycobacterium* and *Pseudomonas*. J Ferment Technol 59:97–101

Corden ME, Diamond AE (1959) The effect of growth-regulating substances on disease resistance and plant growth. Phytopathology 49:68–72

D'Alton A, Etherton B (1984) Effects of fusaric acid on tomato root hair membrane potentials and ATP levels. Plant Physiol 74:39–42

Das K, Mukherjee AK (2006) Assessment of mosquito larvicidal potency of cyclic lipopeptides produced by *Bacillus subtilis* strains. Acta Trop 97:168–173

Das K, Mukherjee AK (2007) Comparison of lipopeptide biosurfactants production by *Bacillus subtilis* strains in submerged and solid state fermentation systems using a cheap carbon source: some industrial applications of biosurfactants. Process Biochem 42:1191–1199

Davis DA, Lynch HC, Jarley J (1999) The production of surfactin in batch culture by *Bacillus subtilis* ATCC 21222 is strongly influenced by the conditions of nitrogen metabolism. Enzyme Microb Technol 25:322–329

Desai JD, Banat IM (1997) Microbial production of surfactants and their commercial potential. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 61:47–64

Dong Z, Canny MJ, McCully ME, Roboredo MR, Cabadilla CF, Ortega E, Rodés R (1994) A nitrogen-fixing endophyte of sugarcane stems. A new role for the apoplast. Plant Physiol 105:1139–1147

Drysdale RB (1984) The production and significance in phytopathology of toxins produced by species of *Fusarium*. In: Moss MO, Smith JE (eds) The applied mycology of *Fusarium*. Cambridge University Press, New York, pp 95–105

Elbeltagy A, Suzuki H, Minamisawa K (2001) Endophytic colonization and *in planta* nitrogen fixation by a *Herbaspirillum* sp. isolated from wild rice species. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:5285–5293

Folmsbee MJ, McInerney MJ, Nagle DP (2004) Anaerobic growth of *Bacillus mojavensis* and *Bacillus subtilis* requires deoxyribonucleosides or DNA. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:5252–5257

Fomsgaard IS, Mortensen AG, Carlsen SCK (2004) Microbial transformation products of benzoxazolinone and benzoxazinone allelochemicals – a review. Chemosphere 54:1025–1038

Geetha I, Manonmani AM, Paily KP (2010) Identification and characterization of a mosquito pupicidal metabolite of a *Bacillus subtilis* subsp. *subtilis* strain. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 86:1737–1744

Georgiou G, Lin SG, Sharma MM (1992) Surface-active compounds from microorganisms. Biotechnology 10:60–65

Glenn AE (2001) Detoxification of maize antimicrobial compounds by the endophytic fungus *Fusarium verticillioides* and the significance to plant-fungus interactions. Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Georgia, Athens

Glenn AE, Bacon CW (1998) Detoxification of benzoxazinoids by *Fusarium moniliforme* and allies. Phytopathology 88:S-S32

Glenn AE, Hinton DM, Yates IE, Bacon CW (2001) Detoxification of corn antimicrobial compounds as the basis for isolating *Fusarium verticillioides* and some other *Fusarium* species from corn. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:2973–2981

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914

Hinton DM, Bacon CW (1995) *Enterobacter cloacae* is an endophytic symbiont of corn. Mycopathologia 129:117–125

James EK, Olivares FL, Baldani JI, Döbereiner J (1997) *Herbaspirillum*, an endophytic diazotroph colonizing vascular tissue in leaves of *Sorghum bicolor* L Moench. J Exp Bot 48:785–797

Javaheri M, Jenneman GE, McInerney MH, Duncan KE (1985) Anaerobic production of a biosurfactant by *Bacillus licheniformis* JF-2. Appl Environ Microbiol 50:698–700

Joshi C, Bharucha JS, Yadav S, Nerukar A, Desai AJ (2008) Biosurfactant production using mollasses and whey under thermophilic conditions. Bioresour Technol 99:195–199

Kakinuma A, Oachida A, Shina H, Sugino M, Isano M, Tanura G, Arima K (1969) Confirmation of the structure of surfactin by mass spectrometry. Agric Biol Chem 33:1669–1672

Kikuchi T, Hasumi K (2002) Enhancement of plasminogen activation by surfactin C: augmentation of fibrinolysis in vitro and in vivo. Biochim Biophys Acta 1596:234–245

Kobayashi DY, Palumbo JD (2000) Bacterial endophytes and their effects on plants and uses in agriculture. In: Bacon CW, White JF Jr (eds) Microbial endophytes. Dekker, New York, pp 199–233

Konz D, Doekel S, Marahiel MA (1999) Molecular and biochemical characterization of the protein template controlling biosynthesis of the lipopeptide lichenysin. J Bacteriol 181:133–140

Kuklinsky-Sobral K, Araujo WL, Mendonça C, Geran LC, Pískala A, Azevedo JL (2004) Isolation and characterization of soybean-associated bacteria and their potential for plant growth promotion. Environ Microbiol 6:1244–1251

Kuldau GA, Yates IE (2000) Evidence for *Fusarium* endophytes in cultivated and wild plants. In: Bacon CW, White JF Jr (eds) Microbial endophytes. Dekker, New York, pp 85–117

Kursanov AL, Brovchenko MI (1970) Sugars in the free space of leaf plates: their origin and possible involvement in transport. Can J Bot 48:1243–1250

Ladha JK, Reddy PM (1995) Introduction: assessing opportunities for nitrogen fixation in rice – a frontier project. Plant Soil 194:1–10

Landa BB, Cachinero-Díaz JM, Lemanceau P, Jiménez-Díaz RM, Alabouvette C (2002) Effect of fusaric acid and phytoanticipins on growth of rhizobacteria and *Fusarium oxysporum*. Can J Microbiol 48:971–985

Landy M, Warren GH, Roseman SB, Colio LG (1948) Bacillomycin: an antibiotic from *Bacillus subtilis* active against pathogenic fungi. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 67:539–541

Lin S-C (1996) Biosurfactants: recent advances. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 66:109–120

Luz JM, Paterson RRM, Brayford D (1990) Fusaric acid and other metabolite production in *Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. vasinfectum*. Lett Appl Microbiol 11:141–144

Mace ME, Solit E (1966) Interactions of 3-indoleacetic and 3-hydroxytryamine in fusarium wilt of banana. Phytopathology 56:245–247

MacHardy WE, Beckman CH (1981) Vascular wilt fusaria: infection and pathogenesis. In: Nelson PE, Toussoun TA, Cook RJ (eds) Fusarium: diseases, biology, and taxonomy. The Pennsylvania State University Press, University Park, pp 365–390

Maget-Dena R, Ptak M (1995) Interfacial properties of surfactin with membrane models. Biophys J 68:1937–1943

Makkar RS, Cameotra SS (1998) Production of biosurfactants at mesophilic and thermophilic conditions by a strain of *Bacillus subtilis*. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 20:48–52

Marahiel MA, Nakano MM, Zuber P (1993) Regulation of peptide antibiotic production in *Bacillus*. Mol Microbiol 7:631–636

Marahiel MA, Stachelhaus T, Mootz HD (1997) Modular peptide synthetases involved in nonribosomal peptide synthesis. Chem Rev 97:2651–2673

Marasas WFO, Kellerman TS, Gelderblom WCA, Coetzer JAW, Thiel PG, Van der Lugt JJ (1988) Leukoencephalomalacia in a horse induced by fumonisin B1 isolated from *Fusarium moniliforme*. Onderstepoort J Vet Res 55:197–203

Marasas WFO, Riley RT, Hendricks KA, Stevens VL, Sadler TW, Gelineau-van Waes J, Missmer SA, Cabrera J, Torres O, Gelderblom WCA, Allegood J, Martínez C, Maddox J, Miller JD, Starr L, Sullards MC, Roman AV, Voss KA, Wang E, Merrill AH Jr (2004) Fumonisins disrupt sphingolipid metabolism, folate transport, and neural tube development in embryo culture and in vivo: a potential risk factor for human neural tube defects among populations consuming fumonisin-contaminated maize. J Nutr 134:711–716

Marrè MT, Vergani P, Albergoni FG (1993) Relationship between fusaric acid uptake and its binding to cell structures by leaves of *Egeria densa* and its toxic effects on membrane permeability and respiration. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 42:141–157

Matsuyama T, Kaneda K, Nakagawa Y, Isa K, Hara-Hotta J, Yano I (1992) A novel extracellular cyclic lipopeptide which promotes flagellum-dependent spreading growth of *Serratia marcescens*. J Bacteriol 174:1769–1776

McCully ME (2001) Niches for bacterial endophytes in crop plants: a plant biologist's view. Aust J Plant Physiol 28:983–990

Niemeyer HM (1988) Hydroxamic acids (4-hydro-1,4-benzozazin-3-ones), defence chemical in the Gramineae. Phytochemistry 27:3349–3358

Notz R, Maurhofer M, Dubach H, Haas D, Défago G (2002) Fusaric acid-producing strains of *Fusarium oxysporum* alter 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol biosynthetic gene expression in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0 in vitro and in the rhizosphere of wheat. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:2229–2235

Olubajo BA, Bacon CW (2008) Electrotransformation of *Bacillus mojavensis* with fluorescent protein markers. J Microbiol Methods 74:102–105

Patriquin DG, Dobereiner J (1978) Light microscopy observations of tetrazolium-reducing bacteria in the endorhizosphere of maize and other grasses in Brazil. Can J Microbiol 24:734–742

Peypoux E, Monmatin JM, Wallach J (1999) Recent trends in the biochemistry of surfactin. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 51:553–563

Porter JK, Bacon CW, Wray EM, Hagler WM (1995) Fusaric acid in *Fusarium moniliforme* cultures, corn and feeds toxic to livestock and the neurochemical effects in the barin and pineal gland in rats. Nat Toxin 3:91–100

Rahman KSM, Street G, Lord R, Kane G, Rahman TJ, Marchant R, Banat M (2006) Bioremediation of petroleum sludge using bacterial consortium with biosurfactant. In: Singh SN, Tripathi RD (eds) Environmental bioremediation technologies. Springer, Berlin, pp 391–408

Reinhold-Hurek B, Hurek T (1998) Life in grasses: diazotrophic endophytes. Trends Microbiol 6:139–144

Riley RT, Norred WP, Bacon CW (1993) Fungal toxins in foods: recent concerns. Annu Rev Nutr 13:167–189

Roberts MS, Nakamura LK, Cohan FM (1994) *Bacillus mojavensis* sp. nov., distinguishable from *Bacillus subtilis* by sexual isolation, divergence in DNA sequence, and differences in fatty acid composition. Int J Syst Bacteriol 44:256–264

Rodrigues L, Banat IM, Teixeira J, Oliveira R (2006) Biosurfactants: potential applications in medicine. J Antimicrob Chemother 57:609–618

Ron EZ, Rosenberg E (2001) Natural roles of biosurfactants. Environ Microbiol 3:229–236

Ross PF, Rice LG, Osweiler GD, Nelson PE, Richard JL, Wilson TM (1992) A review and update of animal toxicoses associated with fumonisin-contaminated feeds and production of fumonisins by *Fusarium* isolates. Mycopathologia 117:109–114

Sanwal BD, Waygood ER (1961) The effect of fusaric acid on the oxidative phosphorylation of plant mitochondria. Experientia 17:174–175

Schnider-Keel U, Seematter A, Maurhofer M, Blumer C, Duffy BK, Gigot-Bonnefoy C, Reimmann C, Notz R, Defago G, Hass D, Keel C (2000) Autoinduction of 2,4-diacetylphoroglucinol biosynthesis in the biocontrol agent *Pseudomonas fluorescens*CHA0 and repression by the bacterial metabolites salicylate and pyoluteorin. J Bacteriol 182:1215–1225

Seydlova G, Svobodova J (2008) Review of surfactin chemical properties and the potential biomedical applications. Cent Eur J Med 312:123–133

Singh HP, Batish DR, Kohli RK (2003) Allelopathic interactions and allelochemicals: new possibilities for sustainable weed management. Crit Rev Plant Sci 22:239–311

Smith TK, Sousadias MG (1993) Fusaric acid content of swine feedstuffs. J Agric Food Chem 41:2296–2298

Snook ME, Mitchell T, Hinton DM, Bacon CW (2009) Isolation and characterization of Leu7-surfactin from the endophytic bacterium *Bacillus mojavensis* RRC 101, a biocontrol agent for *Fusarium verticillioides*. Agric Food Chem 57:4287–4292

Stanghellini ME, Miller RM (1997) Biosurfactants: their identity and potential efficacy in the biological control of zoosporic plant pathogens. Plant Dis 81:4012

Sturz AV, Christie BR, Nowak J (2000) Bacterial endophytes: potential role in developing sustainable systems of crop production. Crit Rev Plant Sci 19:1–30

Surette MA, Sturz AV, Lada RR, Nowak J (2003) Bacterial endophytes in processing carrots (*Daucus carota* L. var. sativus): their localization, population density, biodiversity and their effects on plant growth. Plant Soil 253:381–390

Thomashow LS, Weller DM (1990) Role of antibiotics and siderophores in biocontrol of take-all disease of wheat. Plant Soil 129:93–99

Von Dohren H (1995) Peptides. In: Vining LC, Stuttard C (eds) Genetics and biochemistry of antibiotic production. Butterworth-Heineman, Boston, MA, pp 121–171

Voss KA, Porter JK, Bacon CW, Meredith FI, Norred WP (1999) Fusaric acid and modification of the subchronic toxicity to rats of fumonisins in *F-moniliforme* culture material. Food Chem Toxicol 37:853–861

Voss KA, Riley RT, Norred WP, Bacon CW, Meredith FI, Howard PC, Plattner RD, Collins TFX, Hansen DK, Porter JK (2001) An overview of rodent toxicities: liver and kidney effects of fumonisins and *Fusarium moniliforme*. Environ Health Perspect 109:259–266

Whalley G (1995) Green pressures are driving force behind surfactants. Manuf Chem 11:38–40

Whitney NJ, Mortimore CG (1959) An antifungal substance in the corn plant and its effect on growth of two stalk-rotting fungi. Nature 183:341

Yakimov MM, Fredrickson HL, Timmis KN (1996) Effect of heterogeneity of hydrophobic moieties on surface activity of lichenysin A, a lipopeptide biosurfactant from *Bacillus licheniformis*. Biotechnol Appl Biochem 23:13–18

Chapter 3
Use of Plant-Associated *Bacillus* Strains as Biofertilizers and Biocontrol Agents in Agriculture

Rainer Borriss

3.1 Introduction

In spite of limited arable land coupled with rising demand of a steadily increasing human population, food supply is a global challenge making production of high-quality food, free from unacceptable levels of chemicals, a pressing need (Table 3.1).

Paradoxically, this increased demand has led to the development of agricultural practices that are undesired and increase disease pressure on plants. An extreme example, impressively illustrating our situation, was recently reported (Guo et al. 2010). Overuse of N-fertilizer contributes substantially to regional soil acidification in China. Since 1980, crop production has increased with rapidly increasing N-fertilizer consumption. Decreasing N use efficiency, mainly due to increasing soil acidification, results from this practice. More and more N-fertilizer is being lost to the environment, causing further negative environmental impacts.

It has been estimated that approximately one third of the food crop is destroyed every year due to attack by insects, pathogenic fungi, bacteria, and nematodes. Current worldwide potato crop losses, due to late blight caused by pathogenic fungus *Phytophthora infestans*, are at $6.7 billion, for instance (Haverkort et al. 2008). At present, the major strategies against damages caused by plant pathogens are chemical pesticides or resistant plant cultivars. However, there are major limitations in using both strategies. Firstly, agrochemicals do not prevent all diseases, and toxic residues can accumulate in the soil and food chain. Therefore, the use of many agrochemicals was banned or restricted, because of environmental and health risks.

R. Borriss (✉)
Bacterial Genetics/Institute of Biology, Humboldt University Berlin, Chausseestr. 117, 10155 Berlin, Germany

ABiTEP GmbH, Glienicker Weg 185, 12489 Berlin, Germany
e-mail: rainer.borriss@rz.hu-berlin.de; rborriss@abitep.de

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_3,

Table 3.1 Development of world population and arable land for food production

Year	World population (billion)	Arable land and permanent crops (billion hectares)	Farmland per person (hectares)
1950	2.5	1.3	0.52
1975	4.1	1.4	0.34
2000	6.1	1.5	0.25
2025	8.0	1.5	0.19
2025	9.2	1.5	0.16

Source: United Nations, Riggs J (2009) 8th International PGPR workshop, Portland

Secondly, resistance of genetically resistant cultivars is often broken by the pathogen within a few years and frequently accompanied by a reduction in yield (Fry 2008). Typically, there is a lack of acceptance among the public for genetically modified (GM) crops.

Environment-friendly biotechnological approaches, such as the use of microbial biopesticides (Box 3.1), offer alternatives to chemical control of plant diseases and pests. Among these alternatives, the development of bioformulations, which are manufactured from plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPRs) with biocontrol activity (Lugtenberg and Kamilova 2009), is exemplary and their use is steadily increasing.

Although development of biological products based on beneficial microorganisms seems to be a very recent and "modern" approach, the first product named "bacteriological fertilizer for the inoculation of cereals" was marketed, as early as 1897, under the proprietary name "Alinit" by "Farbenfabriken vorm. Friedrich Bayer & Co." of Elberfeld, Germany, today's Bayer AG. The product was based on a *Bacillus* species now known by its taxonomic name *Bacillus subtilis*. According to the contemporary literature, the use of Alinit raised yields up to 40% (Kilian et al. 2000). Although biological control is subject of academic research for more than 50 years, the next successful attempt to apply endospore-forming bacilli in large scale was performed nearly 100 years after Alinit was commercialized. In the 1990s, several PGPR-based products became commercially available in the USA. Earlier attempts to commercialize products containing fluorescent pseudomonads failed due to lack of long-term viability (Kloepper et al. 2004). Intensive screening and field testing led to commercial development of diverse *Bacillus* strains as biological control agents (McSpadden Gardener and Fravel 2002) (Table 3.2).

Plant rhizosphere is a highly competitive environment in which bacteria are abundantly present due to availability of nutrients secreted by the plant root. Some of these bacteria which are living within or in the vicinity of plant roots and supporting plant growth are generally referred as being "PGPRs" (Kloepper et al. 1980). In many cases, their plant-growth-promoting activity is linked with their ability to suppress soil-borne plant pathogens (bacteria and microfungi), occurring in the competing microflora ("biocontrol"). Different mechanisms are discussed in this context. Besides production of antimicrobial ("antibiotics") and nematocidal compounds, also stimulation of plant-induced systemic resistance (ISR) and subtle

Box 3.1 Chemopesticides and Biopesticides

The total market for global and synthetic pesticides is valued at $26.7 billion in 2005 and is expected to decline to $25.3 billion in next years. The challenge of new and more stringent chemical pesticide regulations, combined with increasing demand for agriculture products with positive environmental and safety profiles, is boosting interest in biopesticides.

Biopesticides are defined by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) as pesticides derived from natural materials, such as animals, plants, bacteria, and certain minerals. The industry is still considered a niche sector, accounting for around 2% of the overall global pesticide market. It is expected that its share of the market will increase, at an annual average growth rate 9.9%, to over 4.2% corresponding $1 billion by now (2010).

The EPA defines three kinds of biopesticides: microbial, consisting of microorganisms; biochemical, which are naturally occurring substances such as extracts and pheromones; and plant-incorporated protectants, which are substances that plants produce from genetic material added to the plant. Some players include macrobials, such as beneficial insects and nematodes, as another biopesticide type. Genetically modified crops, however, are generally excluded.

While biopesticides are typically seen as an alternative to synthetic chemicals, some as the medium-sized biopesticide company AgraQuest see biopesticides as complementary to conventional pesticides already on the market. It is possible that the emerging low-chemical pesticide sector, where biopesticides can be added in a spray program to reduce the amount of synthetics to their lowest label rate, becomes an interesting alternative to selling biopesticides exclusively into the niche organic market. According to Meadows-Smith (AgraQuest), this sector will grow to be worth $5–10 billion by 2017 [http://www.icis.com, June 9, 2009 (Source: ICB)].

pathogen–biocontrol interactions contribute to the suppressive effect (Haas and Defago 2005). In other PGPRs, termed "biofertilizer," plant growth promotion (PGP) dominates. The mechanisms that are involved in this process can include nitrogen fixation, phosphate and mineral solubilization, and the production of macromolecule degrading enzymes (amylases, proteases, and hemicellulases), phytohormones (auxin, cytokinin, and gibberellins), and volatile growth stimulants (such as ethylene and 2,3-butanediol). In recent years, PGPRs are increasingly commercially applied in agriculture to enhance yield of crops and vegetables and to reduce use of harmful agrochemicals (e.g., chemical fertilizers and pesticides; see Box 3.2). Representatives of such plant-beneficial bacteria are widely spread among Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria, but in recent years representatives of *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* have been attracting main attention. Main subject of present and past research concerning molecular principles, which are underlying beneficial interactions between bacteria and the plant, is *Pseudomonas fluorescens*

Table 3.2 Examples for commercial use of *Bacillus*-based bioformulations in agriculture

Commercial name	*Bacillus* strain	Known properties	Company
Kodiak™	*Bacillus subtilis* GB03	EPA-registered (1992) biological seed treatment fungicide (e.g., *Rhizoctonia* and *Fusarium*) with demonstrable PGR activity. Efficient in cotton, beans and vegetables	Bayer Crop Science, North Carolina, NC (former Gustafson, LLC)
Yield Shield®	*Bacillus pumilus* GB34 (=INR7)	EPA-registered biofungicide, elicits ISR	
BioYield™	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* GB99 + *Bacillus subtilis* GB122	Combination of strong ISR activity (IN937a = GB99) with PGR activity (GB03 = GB122)	
Subtilex®	*Bacillus subtilis* MBI600, isolated from phylloplane of Vicia faba	EPA-registered biofungicide (*Fusarium*, *Rhizoctonia*, *Alternaria*, *Aspergillus*)	Becker Underwood Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada
VAULT®	*Bacillus subtilis* MBI600 + rhizobia strains	Produced by "BioStacked® Technology" (2004), enhancing growth soy beans and pea nuts	
SERENADE®	*Bacillus subtilis* QST713	Biofungicide for prevention, suppression, and control of soil born plant pathogens. It protects vegetables, fruit, nut and vine crops	AgraQuest Inc., Davis, California, CA
SONATA®	*Bacillus pumilus* QST2808	EPA-registered biofungicide, powdery mildew control	AgraQuest Inc., Davis, California, CA
RhizoVital® 42 liquid	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42	Biofertilizer, plant-growth-promoting activity, provides protection against various soil-borne diseases	ABiTEP GmbH, Berlin, Germany
RhizoPlus®	*Bacillus subtilis* FZB24[a]	Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacterium and biocontrol agent. It can be used for potatoes, corn, vegetables, fruits and also turf. Registered by BBA	ABiTEP GmbH, Berlin, Germany
Taegro®	*Bacillus subtilis* FZB24[a]	EPA-registered biofungicide for use in North America	Earth Biosciences Inc., USA/now acquired by *Novozymes Biologicals, Inc*., Salem, Virginia, VA
POMEX	*Bacillus subtilis* CMB26	Microbial fungicide, control and inhibition germination effect on powdery mildew, *Cladosporium fulvum* and *Botrytis cinerea*	NIN Co. Ltd., South Korea

[a]FZB24 has to be renamed "*B. amyloliquefaciens*" due to its similarity to the group of plant-associated *B. amyloliquefaciens* strains (Idriss et al. 2002). In fact, the whole genomic sequence of FZB24 is nearly 100% identical with that of FZB42 (Michael Rey, Novozymes, Inc., personal communication)

Box 3.2 Agriculture Chemical Firms' Interest in Biopesticides Rises
In recent years, use of biologicals in plant protection is steadily increasing and begins to replace in part chemical pesticides. This development is also more and more recognized by large chemical companies, hitherto exclusively focused on the production of chemicals. Combining traditional chemical seed treatment with *Bacillus*-based treatments becomes an interesting alternative. Bayer Crop Science sells two EPA-registered biofungicides that are composed of PGPR: Kodiak® concentrate and Yield Shield®. Moreover, the same company acquired BioNem, the biological assets, and technology of AgroGreen, Ashdod, Israel, in March 2009. AgroGreen is a leading company in the bionematocides business, including the development of BioNem (active ingredient: *Bacillus firmus*). Novozymes has acquired Earth Biosciences Inc., a small company devoted to the production of biopesticides, in October 2006, and started to sell *B. subtilis* FZB24, for instance. Other large crop protection industry players – Arysta Life Science (Japan), Makhteshim Agan (Israel), and FMC (USA), just to name a few – have collaborated with smaller biopesticide companies to develop their own biocontrols. DuPont signed an agreement in June 2007 to provide Marrone Bio Innovations (MBI) with exclusive access to natural product discoveries for development as biopesticide products. In April 2009, BASF signed a licensing, supply, and distribution deal for California, US-based AgraQuest's Serenade biofungicide, which has received Annex I registration in the EU. Through the agreement, BASF gains right to Serenade for foliar and drench applications in countries throughout Europe, Africa, Middle East, Asia, and Latin America.
http://www.farmchemicalsinternational.com September 2009.

(Haas and Defago 2005). The whole genome of strain *P. fluorescens* Pf5 was sequenced in the year 2005 (Paulsen et al. 2005), as the first representative of PGP rhizobacteria. Unfortunately, despite the great progress already obtained in *Pseudomonas* research, the commercial use of this bacterium in agriculture is limited due to difficulties in preparing stable and long-living bioformulations, competitive to chemical pesticides (see above). Focus is made on describing our present knowledge about endospore-forming PGPRs (*Bacillus* spp. and *Paenibacillus polymyxa*).

3.2 Bacilli as Biofungicides and Biofertilizers: Advantages and Disadvantages

At present, bacilli are by far the most widely used bacteria on biopesticide market in North America. Advantages and disadvantages of their application are summarized in Table 3.2. Vast majority of these products (market share 79%) are

Table 3.3 Microbial products on Annex 1 Dir. 91/414/EEC or in the registration process (*–xx*) and time frame for processing of dossiers in the EU and the USA (EPA)

Product	Organism	EU period (month.year)	EU time frame (months)	EPA time frame (months)
Preferal®	*Paecilomyces fumosoroseus*	5.94–6.01	85	60
Contans®	*Coniothyrium minitans*	11.98–8.03	57	15
Cedomon®	*Pseudomonas chlororaphis*	1.96–4.04	99	–
AQ10®	*Ampelomyces quisqualis*	2.96–10.04	104	?
Spodex®	*Baculovirus*	7.97–*xx*	>90	12
Prestop®	*Gliocladium catenulatum*	3.99–10.04	67	13
Serenade®	*Bacillus subtilis*	5.00–*xx*	>56	14
Sporodex®	*Pseudomyza flocculosa*	3.01–*xx*	>46	39
Bioact®	*Paecilomyces lilacinus*	10.02–*xx*	>27	11
Average time period			>70	23.4

According to Ehlers (2006)

Table 3.4 Importance of biopesticides in North America

Estimated North American biopesticide market by product type				
	Sales (US$)			
	Canada	Mexico	USA	Total
Bt aizawai/kurstaki	4,100,000	12,000,000	35,150,000	51,250,000
Bt H14	500,000	1,000,000	20,000,000	21,500,000
Bacillus sphaericus	30,000	–	4,000,000	4,030,000
Bacillus subtilis	20,000	–	10,000,000	10,020,000
Other bacteria	50,000	50,000	1,050,000	1,150,000
Virus-based products	10,000	20,000	1,000,000	1,030,000
Fungus-based products	10,000	2,000,000	9,750,000	11,760,000
Protozoa-based products	–	–	50,000	50,000
Nematodes	200,000	50,000	8,000,000	8,250,000
Total	4,920,000	15,120,000	89,000,000	109,040,000

Report prepared by CPL Business Consultants, July 2006. http://www.bio-pesticides.org

still bioinsecticides mainly prepared from *Bacillus thuringiensis*, *B. kurstaki*, and *B. sphaericus*. However, *B. subtilis* and its closest relatives are increasingly used as biofertilizers and biofungicides with a market share exceeding 9% in the year 2006 (Table 3.4). The successful use of such spore formulations is sometimes hampered by varying success after application due to our insufficient knowledge about the molecular principles underlying their beneficial effects (Emmert and Handelsman 1999). Another problem hindering use of biopesticides, especially in

Europe, is the costly and time-consuming registration procedure, which largely follows rules developed for synthetic pesticides; thus, many possibly irrelevant investigations, e.g., on the ecotoxicology are requested. Costly risk assessment studies and long-term evaluation of dossiers keep these products off the market. EU Annex I inclusion for the microorganism *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* (the active ingredient of the product Cedomon®) took more than 8 years and an investment of over 2.5 million €. This situation cannot attract monetary inputs into the biocontrol sector. Compared to the biocontrol market in the USA (59 BCAs registered), the market in Europe is exposed to major restrictions, resulting in only five BCAs included in Annex I. More strikingly, the time frame for the EU evaluation of dossiers is >70 months compared with ca. 23 months for the same products in the USA (Table 3.3).

3.3 *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* and *Paenibacillus polymyxa*: Plant-Growth-Promoting Endospore-Forming Bacteria with Biocontrol Activity

These two Gram-positive, aerobic, endospore-forming bacteria with plant-growth-promoting activity are investigated more deeply for their potential to suppress plant-pathogenic microflora and to stimulate plant growth. Both bacteria belong to the order Bacillales, but are distantly related to each other. The genera *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 (family 1 *Bacillaceae*) are closely related to *B. subtilis* type strain 168, but are distinguished by its ability to form biofilms and to support plant growth and to suppress plant pathogens living in plant rhizosphere. It was isolated from soil infested with plant pathogens (Krebs et al. 1998) and is successfully commercialized as biofertilizer by ABiTEP GmbH (http://www.abitep.de/). The beneficial action of FZB42 and its closely related "cousin" FZB24 with respect to that of PGP and biocontrol is well documented (Bochow 1992; Dolej and Bochow 1996; Kilian et al. 2000; Schmiedeknecht et al. 1998, 2001; Grosch et al. 1999; Bochow et al. 2001; Yao et al. 2006; Burkett-Cadena et al. 2008). The genome of FZB42 was the first Gram-positive PGPR that has been completely sequenced (Chen et al. 2007). *Paenibacillus polymyxa* E681 (family 5 *Paenibacillaceae*) belongs to a group of facultative anaerobic Bacillales, in that their ellipsoid spores swell the mother cell (Fritze 2004). The full genome of E681, about 5 Mbp in size, was also sequenced at the same time as FZB42 by the Genome Research Center at Korea Research Institute of Bioscience and Biotechnology (S-H Park personal communication), but unfortunately, the whole sequence is not published till now. *P. polymyxa* E681 was isolated from the rhizosphere of winter barley grown in Korea and is known to suppress plant diseases and produce antimicrobial compounds and phytohormones (Phi et al. 2008a, b). Besides the beneficial effects exerted by *P. polymyxa*, e.g., against oomycete plant pathogens, inoculation of *Arabidopsis thaliana* by *P. polymyxa* (in the absence of biotic or abiotic stress) results in 30%

reduction in plant growth, indicating a "mild" pathogenic effect (Timmusk and Wagner 1999; Timmusk et al. 2009). Our experiments performed with the natural *P. polymyxa* isolate M1 and *A. thaliana* corroborated this surprising finding suggesting that *P. polymyxa* is to be considered as a "deleterious" rhizobacterium (DRB, Timmusk et al. 2005).

Comparison of the several findings obtained with the two bacteria should allow some general conclusions about the molecular basis of plant–bacilli interactions. In our comparative genome analysis, we will include recent results obtained from the genome of nonplant-associated *B. amyloliquefaciens* type strain DSM7.

3.4 *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42: Taxonomy and Comparative Genomics

The complete genome sequence of the *B. subtilis* strain 168 (Kunst et al. 1997) is used successfully to advance our understanding of *Bacillus* physiology, but strain 168 has no known activities related to PGP and biocontrol. Therefore, the genome sequences of *Bacillus* strains, successfully used in improving plant growth and health, should provide insights into the genetic basis for biological control in this species. Pioneering work of Joshi and McSpadden Gardener (2006) reveals that sequences of genes involved in antibiotic production are useful in discriminating the plant-beneficial bacilli from common soil bacteria. The genomes of two commercialized strains were compared with *B. subtilis* 168 by suppressive subtractive hybridization. It rules out that the most effective biocontrol strains, GB03, QST713, MB1600, and FZB42, are closely related and share multiple genetic elements responsible for pathogen suppression.

Taxonomic trees calculated from *gyrA* and *cheA* nucleotide sequences suggested that plant-associated (PGPR) *B. amyloliquefaciens* strains, such as FZB42, and other strains with PGP and biocontrol activity, such as FZB24 (RhizoPlus®), GB03 (Kodiak), and QST713 (Serenade), are closely related to a group of plant-associated or endophytic *Bacillus* strains (Chen et al. 2009a), which are forming an own ecomorph distinct from the *B. amyloliquefaciens* type strain DSM7^T (Reva et al. 2004).

A comparative analysis between the genome sequences of the plant-associated FZB42 (Fig. 3.1) with the genome of *B. amyloliquefaciens* DSM7^T revealed obvious differences in the variable part of the genomes, while the core genomes were found very similar. FZB42 and DSM7^T have in common 3,345 genes (CDS) in their core genomes; 547 coding sequences, CDS (DSM7^T), and 344 CDS (FZB42) were singletons. The core genome shared by both strains exhibited 97.89% identity on amino acid level. *B. subtilis* DSM10^T shared a similar number of CDS with the two *B. amyloliquefaciens* strains, 3,222 CDS with DSM7^T, and 3,182 with FZB42, respectively. The number of genes representing the core genome from strains

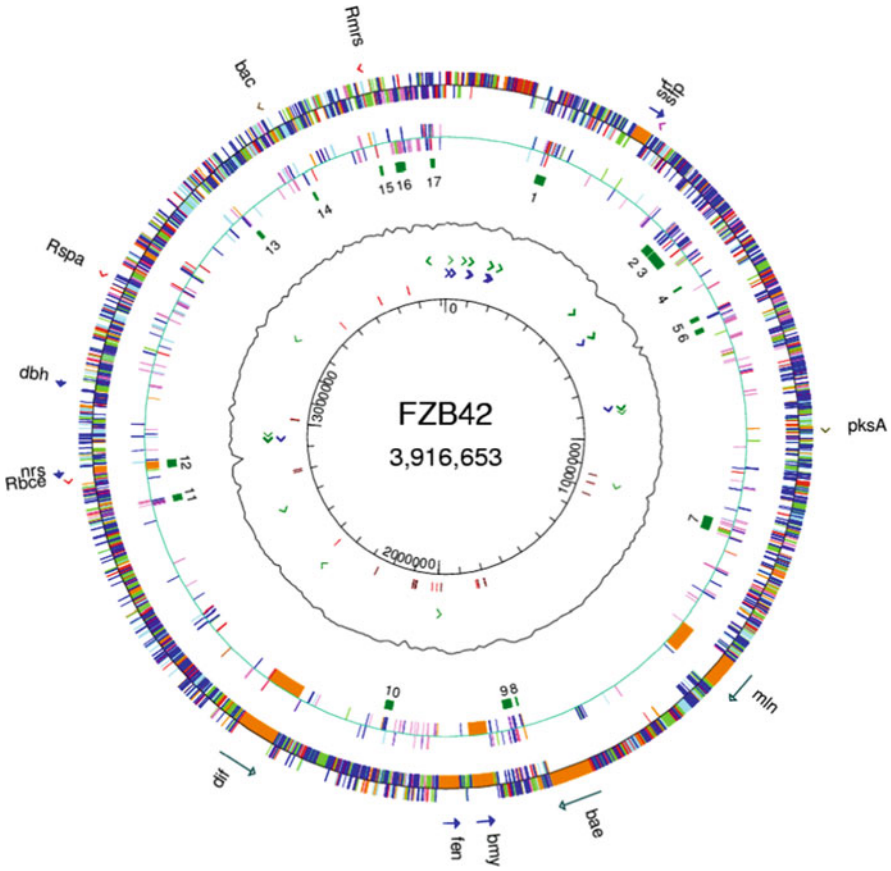


Fig. 3.1 *The genome of B. amyloliquefaciens FZB42*. The likely origin of replication was defined by similarities to the corresponding regions in *B. subtilis* and *B. licheniformis*. The first nucleotide pair of the *B. amyloliquefaciens* genome was defined congruent with *B. subtilis* as the A:T nucleotide pair located 412 bps upstream from *dnaA*. *Outmost circle*: genes and gene clusters involved in synthesis and export (detoxification) of secondary metabolites: *srf* surfactin; *sfp* phosphopantheteinyl-transferase; *pksA* regulator polyketide synthesis; *mln* macrolactin; *bae* bacillaene; *bmy*, bacillomycin D; *fen* fengycin; *dif* difficidin; Rbce, bacitracin export; nrs, hypothetical dipeptide; dbh, bacillibactin; Rspa, subtilin immunity; *bac*, bacilysin; Rmrs, mersacidin immunity. *First circle*: all genes in color code according to their functions: cell envelope and cellular processes, *green*; information pathways, *orange*; intermediary metabolism, *pink*; other functions, *red*; unknown, *black*. *Second circle*: genes not conserved in *B. subtilis* including four giant gene clusters involved in synthesis of secondary metabolites (*orange*); *third circle*: the numbered 17 DNA islands (*green*), *fourth circle*: GC content profile, *fifth circle*: rRNAs (*green*), *sixth circle*: tRNAs (*cyan*), *seventh circle*: prophages (*black*), transposons, and IS elements (*red*), *eighth circle*: scale (bp)

FZB42, DSM7^T, and *B. subtilis* DSM10^T was calculated as being 3,098 and their identity was 92.25% (Borriss unpublished result).

B. amyloliquefaciens strains are distinguished by their potential to synthesize nonribosomally a huge spectrum of different secondary metabolites, many of them with antibacterial and/or antifungal action (Schneider et al. 2007). A survey of the genomes of four other *B. subtilis* strains (http://www.bacillusgenomics.org/bsubtilis/) and that of *B. amyloliquefaciens* DSM7^T corroborated that strains belonging to *B. subtilis sensu stricto* and *B. amyloliquefaciens* type strain did not produce the polyketides difficidin and macrolactin and are often impaired in their ability to produce lipopeptides other than surfactin.

The members of the *B. amyloliquefaciens* DSM7^T-related clade secrete a starch-liquefying alpha-amylase (*amyA*) with high industrial potential, while *B. subtilis* secretes a saccharifying enzyme. Sequences of both genes are not similar. Unlike DSM7^T, the genome of FZB42 did not contain the *amyA* sequence, corroborating an earlier finding of Reva et al. (2004), who were unable to amplify *amyA*-like sequences in plant-associated *B. amyloliquefaciens* strains. Instead, FZB42 and FZB24 genomes possessed an *amyE*-like gene, resembling that of *B. subtilis*.

Environmental and industrial *B. subtilis*-group strains secrete different hydrolases enabling them to use external cellulosic and hemicellulosic substrates present in plant cell walls. Two of these enzymes, endo-1,4-β-glucanase or carboxymethylcellulase (CMCase, cellulase, EC 3.2.1.4) and endo-1,4-β-xylanase (xylanase, 1,4-β-xylan xylanohydrolase, EC 3.2.1.8), are encoded in *B. subtilis* 168 by the genes *eglS* and *xynA*, respectively (Wolf et al. 1995). The same genes were also present in the genome of FZB42, but were absent in *B. amyloliquefaciens* DSM7^T.

Strains *B. amyloliquefaciens* DSM7^T, FZB42, and *B. subtilis* DSM10^T evolved independent restriction modification (RM) systems without sequence similarity. Moreover, we found that other representatives of the plant-associated *B. amyloliquefaciens* ecomorph evolved unique RM systems, different from FZB42. On the contrary, type II restriction modification genes present in DSM7^T shared 98% (methyltransferase) and 100% (restrictase) identity, respectively, with the *Bam*HI system known for *B. amyloliquefaciens* H (Roberts et al. 1977).

The genome of FZB42 harbors nine gene clusters directing nonribosomal synthesis of bioactive peptides and polyketides (Fig. 3.1). In total, FZB42 dedicates about 340 kb, corresponding to 8.5% of the whole genome to nonribosomal synthesis of antimicrobial compounds and siderophores (Chen et al. 2007). For comparison, the genomes of nonplant-associated DSM7^T and *B. subtilis* 168^T devote only 4–5% of their whole-genome capacity for synthesis of such compounds, suggesting that FZB42 became adapted to the highly competitive environment of plant rhizosphere (see below). *P. polymyxa* genome contains two gene clusters, involved in nonribosomal synthesis of fusaridicin and polymyxin, respectively (Choi et al. 2008, 2009, B. Niu, unpublished results).

According to the results of our genome comparison, we assume that *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 and DSM7^T belong to taxonomically related but distinct units, and the high number of unique genes (singletons) supports classifying of both strains into separate taxonomic units.

3.5 Plant–Bacteria Interactions

Land plants and bacteria have shared the same environment for approximately 360–480 million years (Kenrick and Crane 1997). The contact between them has developed into various dependencies on both sides. Competition, predation, parasitism, mutualism, and detritivory can be drawn as the main categories of interactions, although they may be confounded in the course of the relationship (Begon et al. 2006). Plants and certain rhizobacteria (PGPRs) form mutually beneficial associations mediated through an exchange of chemical metabolites.

3.5.1 Colonization of Plant Roots by B. amyloliquefaciens *and* P. polymyxa

Occurrence of *B. subtilis* and its closest relatives is not restricted to soil, but they are common inhabitants of plant root zones, probably because of biofilm formation. Efficient colonization of plant roots and ability to compete with other microorganisms present in rhizosphere is a precondition for beneficial action of PGP bacteria, such as FZB42 and E631. Though plant-associated bacilli are less competitive in the rhizosphere than pseudomonads (see above), several examples for colonization of the roots by representatives of, e.g., *B. subtilis*/*amyloliquefaciens* and *P. polymyxa* were reported. The well-known Kodiak strain GB03 is thought to survive on seeds until planted and then uses seed exudates during seed germination, directionally multiplying to reach young roots, and maintaining a robust population in the presence of field crops via plant–microbial interactions (Kloepper et al. 2004). The minimum bacterial density in the soil for triggering observable plant response is ca. 10^4 colony-forming units (cfu) per root. GB03 can maintain populations of 10^5 cfu/root for over 60 days after planting (Kokalis-Burelle et al. 2006). Biocontrol strain *B. subtilis* 6051 adheres to root surfaces of *Arabidopsis*, where it forms biofilms and produces surfactin (Bais et al. 2004).

Some representatives of several *Bacillus* species are able to invade inner tissues of various species of plants, where these microorganisms play an important role in plant protection and PGP. They belong to species generally recognized as free-living soil organisms including *B. amyloliquefaciens* (Reva et al. 2002), *B. cereus* (Pleban et al. 1997), *B. insolitus* (Bell et al. 1995), *B. licheniformis* (Reva et al. 2002), *B. megaterium* (McInroy and Kloepper 1995), *B. pumilus* (McInroy and Kloepper 1995), *B. subtilis* (Mishagi and Donndelinger 1990), and *Paenibacillus polymyxa* (Shishido et al. 1999). A novel species, named *B. endophyticus*, isolated from the inner tissues of cotton plants, is also described (Reva et al. 2002).

FZB24 strain, closely related to FZB42 (Idriss et al. 2002), was used to coat tomato seeds under in vitro conditions. The seeds were cultivated on Gelrite Murashige-Skoog-medium. FZB24 colonized the root from the treated seeds and closely followed its growth in the rhizosphere region, so that a 0.4–0.8 mm thick

film of bacteria was formed around the root. However, the number of FZB24 cells as a percentage of the total number of microorganisms was found to steadily decrease in the course of time. Potatoes from three practical field trials in 1998 were harvested to determine the number of *Bacillus* sp. found on the potatoes. The number of bacilli from the plots in which the seed tubers had been treated with FZB24® was not higher than that yielded from untreated seed tubers (Kilian et al. 2000). Our experiments performed with maize seedlings treated with green fluorescent protein (GFP), labeled FZB42 strain (B. Fan, unpublished results), revealed that colonization preferentially takes place at the junction area, where lateral roots and root hairs emerge from primary root. The number of FZB42 microcolonies decreased steadily toward root tips. Junction regions in the vicinity of root hairs were preferentially colonized by FZB42. Bacteria grew along root hairs or even forming clusters, circling a root hair. Images obtained by scanning electron microscopy revealed that FZB42 is able to form biofilm-like structures on the root hair surface. In contrast, colonization of *Arabidopsis* roots in a gnotobiotic system took place in the vicinity of root tips (Fig. 3.2), suggesting that colonization strategy is dependent on the host plant. However, no bacteria, invading root epidermis layer cells, were detected indicating that FZB42 grew as a non-endophyte, only able to colonize root surface (B. Fan,

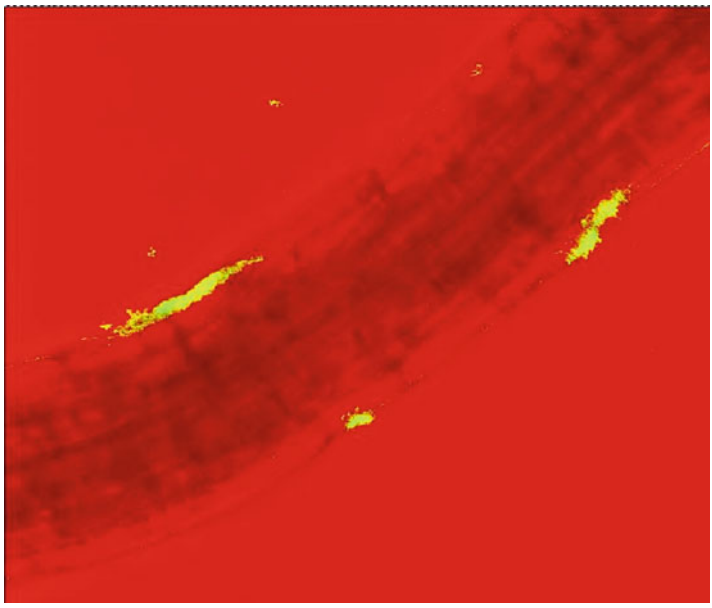


Fig. 3.2 *Colonization of plant roots by GFP-labeled FZB42*. GFP+-labeled strain BF02mut, a derivative of FZB42 (B. Fan, unpublished), forms microcolonies, appearing as *yellow* spots onto the *red* surface of the Arabidopsis primary root, grown in a gnotobiotic system. The confocal scanning laser microscopy (CLSM) image was taken 7 days after inoculation with BF02mut (with courtesy of B. Fan, Bacterial Genetics, Humboldt University Berlin)

unpublished results). Recently, we demonstrated that bacilli used for PGP in culture plants can persist for several months in the natural environment. FZB42 applied to greenhouse cultures of *Antirrhinum majus* was detected 5 months after its application, in soil and at plant remnants, long time after the flowers were harvested (Fig. 3.3).

P. polymyxa was also tagged with the GFP and used for colonizing roots in a gnotobiotic system and in a soil system. In the gnotobiotic system, roots were at first colonized at the tips of the primary roots. A biofilm consisting of bacterial cells and a semitransparent material suggestive of an extracellular matrix was formed within 2 h. *P. polymyxa* cells were able to enter intercellular spaces and to cause a remarkable damage of plant roots. However, they did not spread to the leaves (Timmusk et al. 2005). *P. polymyxa* has a tendency to colonize and to invade plant roots more heavily than FZB42. It is an example for the delicate balance between beneficial and deleterious effects exerted by the same plant-associated bacterium, which can be considered as PGPR and deleterious rhizobacterium, as well.

Rhizosphere competence is linked to the capability of forming sessile, multicellular communities (biofilms) on the surface of root cells ("rhizoplane"). They can be defined as a structured community of cells encased in a self-produced extracellular matrix (Hall-Stoodley et al. 2004). In liquid stand culture, *B. amyloliquefaciens*

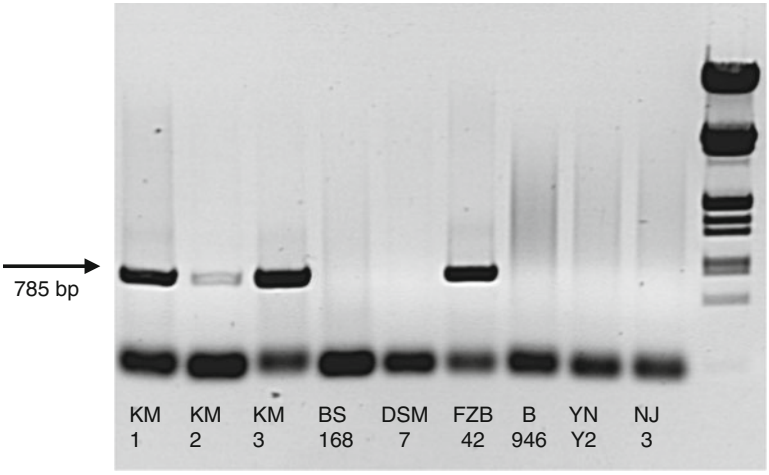


Fig. 3.3 *Detection of FZB42, reisolated from environmental samples*. Five months after its inoculation to Snapdragon plants (Antirhinum major) grown in Chenggong County, Kunming, Yunnan province, China, soil samples were taken and used for reisolation of FZB42. Colonies with the typical morphology of FZB42 were obtained after several steps of enrichment and analyzed for the presence of an unique 785 bp DNA fragment, only present in FZB42, by PCR with the primers: PRBrm5215: tgatggagtaaataataaggctgg, and PRBrm6000: aatacatctaaagttgcatccacc. Agarose gel electrophoresis revealed presence of the 785 bp DNA fragment in the reisolates (KM1-3) and in FZB42. No 785 bp fragment was detected in *B. subtilis* 168, *B. amyloliquefaciens* DSM7T, and other plant-associated *B. amyloliquefaciens* strains isolated from China and belonging to the same ecotype as FZB42 (B946, Chinese Agricultural University, Beijing, Y2, Yunnan Agricultural University, Kunming, and NJ B3, Nanjing Agricultural University, Nanjing)

FZB42 cells formed robust pellicles at the liquid–air interface, whereas domesticated *B. subtilis* strains form thin, fragile pellicles (Chu et al. 2006). It is known that formation of biofilms in *B. subtilis* is a complex process that includes secretion of surfactin lipopeptide (Bais et al. 2004). FZB42 *srf* mutant strains, unable to synthesize surfactin, were impaired in biofilm formation. Double mutants (*sfp yczE*) unable to synthesize 4′-phosphopantetheine-transferase were heavily impaired in forming biofilm and resembled domesticated *B. subtilis* 168. *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 contains the complete set of genes involved in biofilm and fruiting body formation in *B. subtilis*, including the 15-gene exopolysaccharide that holds chains of cells together in bundles (Kearns et al. 2005). An additional gene cluster in the *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 genome, which participates in either exopolysaccharide or lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis, was without counterpart in the nonplant-associated *B. subtilis* 168 and *B. amyloliquefaciens* DSM7^{T}. *Sip* W is a signal peptidase responsible for processing of at least two proteins that play a role in forming the *B. subtilis* biofilm matrix: *Tas* A and *Yqx* M. *Tas* A is a protein component of the biofilm matrix and its correct localization depends on the presence of *Yqx* M (Branda et al. 2006; Chu et al. 2006). The unique genes RBAM00750, RBAM00751, and RBAM00754 encode proteins with a collagen-related GXT structural motif and are probably involved in surface adhesion or biofilm formation (Chen et al. 2007). These and other genes involved in biofilm formation in bacilli are governed by complex, regulatory networks consisting of several transcription factors such as Spo0A, DegU, and AbrB (Hamon and Lazazzera 2001; Hamon et al. 2004).

Motility is another prerequisite for active colonization of plant root cells by bacteria. *B. amyloliquefaciens* displayed a robust swarming phenotype. Both the protein encoded by *swr*A and the lipopeptide surfactin are thought to be essential for swarming motility. These proteins permit colonization of surfaces and nutrient acquisition through their surface wetting and detergent properties (Kearns et al. 2005). Furthermore, a *swr*A gene homologue, sharing 88% identity to *swr*A wild-type alleles present in environmental *B. subtilis* isolates, is in the *B. amyloliquefaciens* genome (Chen et al. 2007).

3.5.2 *Effect of Root Exudates on Root-Colonizing Bacilli*

Interactions between rhizobacteria and the root surface are poorly understood. This is especially true for PGP bacilli, where studies describing plant–bacterial interactions are rare. Signaling events on the root surface, e.g., oxidative burst, lead to crosstalk in plant–pathogen relationship. Oxidative burst is connected with production of large amounts of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and is one of the earliest responses of plants upon microbial attack (Laloi et al. 2004). Beneficial *B. subtilis* FB17 was also recognized by plants by a chemical-dependent cascade, which is independent of the salicylic acid (SA), jasmonic acid (JA), or ethylene pathways. FB17 did not colonize on the roots of NahG, a transgenic Arabidopsis

line for salicylate hydroxylase that produces catechol as the degradation product of SA, suggesting that catechol may play a direct role in inhibiting *B. subtilis* biofilm formation on the NahG roots. The authors concluded that root-derived catechol production elevates ROS, which in turn suppresses *B. subtilis* biofilm formation (Rudrappa et al. 2007).

Root exudates provide energy-rich organic acids that are metabolized within hours by soil microorganisms (Jones et al. 2003), while PGPRs generate an array of biologically active compounds that elicit growth promotion and ISR, in plants.

Constituents of root exudates belong to three classes: (1) low-molecular weight, (2) high-molecular weight, and (3) volatiles. Low-molecular-weight compounds represent the main portion and consist of sugars, amino acids, organic acids, phenolics, vitamins, and various secondary metabolites (Uren 2007). Interestingly, root and seed exudates are different in respect of amino acids (His + Gly, Thr, Ala, Tyr, Val, Phe, Ile, and Leu), citrate, and sugars. Amount of these compounds was found higher in seed than in root exudates (Costa-Carvailhis 2010). High-molecular-weight compounds consist of mucilage and proteins, while carbon dioxide, certain secondary metabolites, alcohols, and aldehydes constitute volatiles (Ortiz-Castro et al. 2009). Root exudates such as malic acid contain signaling molecules attracting *B. subtilis* to the root (Rudrappa et al. 2008).

Our preliminary proteomic analysis suggested that root exudates, prepared from maize seedlings, upregulate enzymes, probably involved in response to oxidative stress generated in plant roots by, for example, thiol peroxidase or enzymes catabolizing compounds secreted by plant roots. Enzymes of this type include bacillopeptidase F, γ-glutamyl transpeptidase, and phosphotransacetylase (which act on organic acids). The hook-associated flagellar proteins HAP1 and HAP2 and the HAG flagellin are differently affected by exudates secreted by plant roots. Although level of the *flgK* gene product HAP1 was reduced in the presence of root exudates, expression of the *fliD* and *hag* gene products (HAP2 and HAG) was upregulated. Flagellin proteins are thought to elicit a host basal defense against potential pathogens. It is likely that variations of the flagellins and other exposed bacterial proteins during colonization surfaces of plant roots might enhance tolerance of *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 against unfavorable plant responses and thereby contribute to its competence in the rhizosphere.

3.5.3 Bacterial Compounds, Beneficial for Plant Growth

Widely accepted mechanisms for PGP include bacterial synthesis of plant hormones (Loper and Schroth 1986), breakdown of plant-produced ethylene by bacterial production of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase (Glick et al. 1999), a mechanism mainly investigated in Gram-negative PGPR and here not further discussed, and increased mineral and nitrogen availability in soil (Lin et al. 1983). In addition, a blend of volatiles, especially 2,3-butanediol produced by selected PGP *Bacillus* strains GB03 and IN937a, enhance growth of *Arabidopsis*

seedlings (Ryu et al. 2003). Later experiments demonstrated that besides PGP, the same volatiles also mediate ISR in plants. Volatiles produced by FZB42 exerted the same beneficial effects on plant growth and ISR as described for GB03 and IN937a (Borriss and Ryu, unpublished).

Plants and microorganisms abound with natural chemicals, many of them are volatiles. Ethylene, a molecule from other chemical development, was the first gaseous hormone discovered (Bleeker and Kende 2000). Selected PGP *Bacillus* strains release a blend of volatile components (VOCs). The volatiles 3-hydroxy-2-butanone (acetoin) and 2,3-butanediol, released by PGPR *B. subtilis* GB03 and *B. amyloliquefaciens* IN937A, trigger enhanced plant growth (Ryu et al. 2003). To synthesize 2,3-butanediol, *B. subtilis* converts pyruvate into acetolactate by the enzyme-acetolactate synthase, encoded by the *alsS* gene, followed by conversion of α-acetolactate to acetoin by the *alsD*-encoded-acetolactate decarboxylase (Renna et al. 1993). This alternative pathway for pyruvate catabolism is favored under low pH or oxygen-limiting conditions (Ramos et al. 2000). Recently, the metabolic step from acetoin to 2,3-butanediol was shown as being catalyzed by acetoin reductase/2,3-butanediol dehydrogenase (AR/BDH), encoded by the *bdhA* gene (Nicholson 2008). The *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB2 genome harbors all the three genes involved in 2,3-butanediol synthesis and a plant-growth-promoting effect of volatiles released by FZB42 was demonstrated with divided Petri dishes (I plates) that contain a center partition so that only airborne signals could be transmitted between bacteria and *Arabidopsis* seedlings. FZB42 strains with knockout mutations in *alsS* and *alsD* genes did not trigger plant growth under same conditions (Fig. 3.4).

At present, some progress in elucidating the mechanism of bacterial VOC action on plants is made. Work, performed in the Paré laboratory, showed that emitted bacterial volatiles trigger growth promotion in *Arabidopsis* by regulating auxin homeostasis. Gene expression for auxin synthesis was upregulated in aerial regions of GB03-exposed plants; auxin accumulation decreased in leaves and increased in roots due to activation of basipetal auxin transport. In consequence, cell elongation in leaves was enhanced due to a decrease in indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) concentration, while formation of lateral roots is enhanced at higher auxin concentrations. In addition, cell expansion was also affected positively by activation of cell wall loosening enzymes. In summary, VOCs secreted by selected PGPR may trigger sustained PGP by an optimized coordination between root and leaf development (Zhang et al. 2007).

Besides stress, exerted by different pathogens (biotic stress), plants are often exposed to different kinds of abiotic stress exerted by drought, salt, nutrient deficiency, or excess of heavy metals. Similar as in biotic stress, PGPRs can act as elicitors of tolerance against these kinds of abiotic stress (induced systemic tolerance or IST) as stated by Yang et al. (2009). Inoculation with *Paenibacillus polymyxa* enhances drought tolerance of *Arabidopsis thaliana* (Timmusk and Wagner 1999). Volatiles emitted from PGPR GB03 are involved in IST against salt stress. It is assumed that plant perception of bacterial VOC causes a tissue-specific regulation of Na^+ homeostasis under salt stress (Ryu et al. 2004a). PGP representatives of several *Bacillus* spp., including *B. megaterium*, *B. mucilaginosus*,

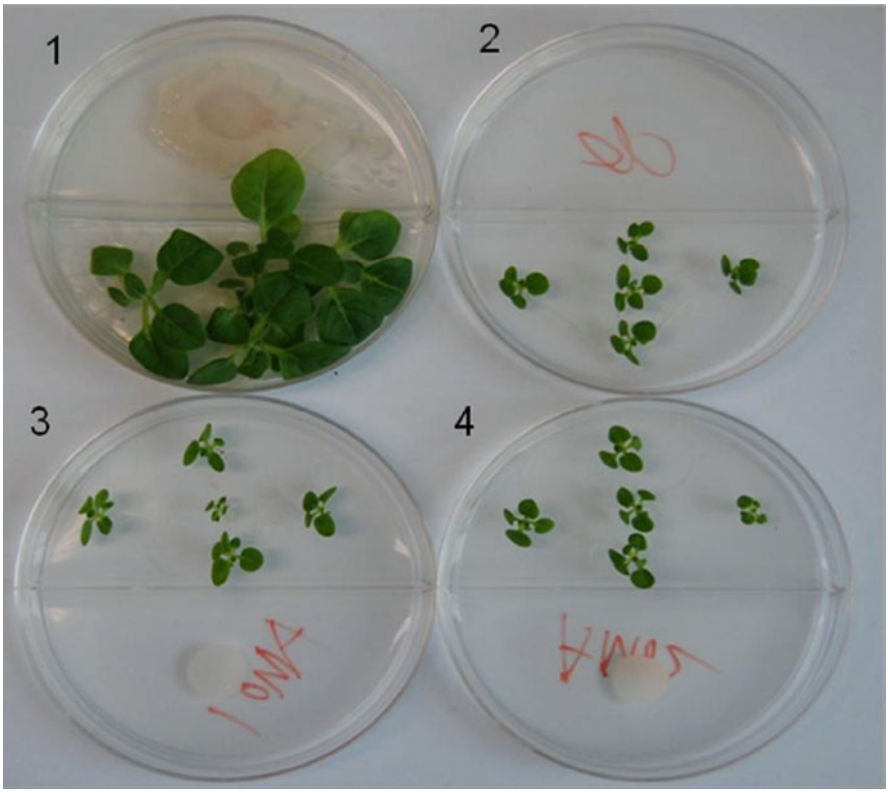


Fig. 3.4 *Influence of volatiles emitted by FZB42 on plant growth*. The picture was taken 4 weeks after inoculation of Arabidopsis with FZB42 (1), and the mutant strains, unable to produce volatiles due to defects in the *alsD* (3) and *alsS* (4) gene, respectively. The water control is indicated by 2. For further details, see text (with courtesy of Ryu C-M, KRIBB, Daejeon, South Korea)

and *B. subtilis*, are successfully used in bioremedation of heavy metals (Zhuang et al. 2007).

The well-documented plant-growth-promoting effect by root-colonizing *Bacillus* and *Paenibacillus* strains (Kloepper et al. 2004; Timmusk and Wagner 1999) is at least partially due to the bacterial production of plant hormones such as IAA, cytokinins, and gibberellins (Bloemberg and Lugtenberg 2001; Bottini et al. 2004). IAA-based PGP effects are detected in 80% of bacteria isolated from the rhizosphere (Loper and Schroth 1986); however, reports demonstrating production of auxins by Gram-positive free-living soil bacteria are scarce. Massive synthesis of IAA by the Gram-positive phytopathogen *Rhodococcus fascians* indicates a delicate balance between beneficial and detrimental effects in dependence on IAA concentration (Vandeputte et al. 2005). GC-MS verifies gibberellin production by *B. pumilus* and *B. licheniformis* (Gutierrez-Mañero et al. 2001). Representatives of the *B. subtilis*/*amyloliquefaciens* group are able to produce substances with auxin

(IAA)-like bioactivity. The presence of IAA-like compounds in the culture filtrates of several members of this group, including FZB42, is detected by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay tests with IAA-specific antibodies, when those strains are grown at low temperature and low aeration rate (Idris et al. 2004).

Analyses by GC-MS performed with culture filtrates of FZB42 demonstrated the presence of IAA. In the presence of 5 mM tryptophan, a fivefold increase in IAA secretion was monitored. In addition, in the *trp* auxotrophic strains E101 (*trpBA*) and E102 (*trpED*), and in two other strains bearing knockout mutations in genes probably involved in IAA metabolism, the amount of IAA in the culture fluid is diminished. Notably, these mutant strains are less efficient in promoting plant growth, indicating that Trp-dependent synthesis of auxins and PGP is functionally related in *B. amyloliquefaciens* (Idris et al. 2007).

Similar to FZB42, *Paenibacillus polymyxa* synthesizes IAA from the main precursor tryptophan (Lebuhn et al. 1997). Screening of a mini-Tn10 insertional mutant library reveals few genes, possibly involved in the regulation of IAA biosynthesis in this bacterium (Phi et al. 2008a). In contrast to FZB42, the genome of E681 harbors four open reading frames (ORFs) with similarity to indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase (IPDC), a key enzyme in indole-3-pyruvic acid (IPA) pathway. One of the ORFs, PP2_01257 was expressed in *Escherichia coli* and the purified recombinant protein was characterized as IPDC. Results of the IAA intermediates accumulated in the E681 culture corroborate that the IPA pathway plays a central role in the IAA production by *P. polymyxa* E681 in the presence of exogenous Trp (Phi et al. 2008b). Results obtained with FZB42 and E681 suggest existence of different Trp-dependent pathways of IAA synthesis in both Gram-positive bacteria. While the IPA pathway with IPDC as key enzyme seems to be the major route of IAA synthesis in *P. polymyxa*, the pathway of IAA synthesis in *B. amyloliquefaciens* remains elusive, but results of our gene knockout study favor a pathway in which the gene products of *ysnE* (putative IAA transaminase) and *yhcX* (putative nitrilase) take part. Production of other plant hormones, which can also affect plant growth, e.g., gibberellins, was ruled out in FZB42 (Idris et al. 2007).

3.6 Biofertilizer Function

Bacilli are omnipresent in agricultural soils and many of them are able to colonize plant roots (see Sect. 3.5). Increasing costs for chemical fertilizers and increasing environmental problems are linked with massive use of agrochemicals; PGP bacilli contribute to adequate plant nutrition and reduce negative environmental effect of soil fertilization. There are some encouraging examples of PGPRs that enable crops to maintain productivity with reduced rates of fertilizer applications (Borriss et al. 2006; Kumar et al. 2009; Maheshwhari et al. 2011). Extensive field trials conducted with FZB24 over several years with maize, potatoes, and cotton (Yao et al. 2006) resulted in an increase of yield of about 7.5–10%. Best results were obtained if application of bacilli to potato tubers was combined with use of chemical fungicides.

In such cases, an increase of tuber yield up to 40% was obtained. Reduction of the amount of chemical fertilizer (N–P–K) was also achieved.

3.6.1 Soil Aggregation

The effects of soil aggregation on root growth were extensively studied, because aggregation is involved in plant nutrient uptake. Aggregation of soil in the rhizosphere depends on many factors, such as physical properties, climatic conditions, and biological activities. Close to the surface of roots, soil structure can be modified directly by rhizodeposition or indirectly by stimulation of microbial growth in the rhizosphere. For example, secretion of polysaccharides is characteristic of root cell surfaces and is stimulated by the presence of bacteria in the rhizosphere. In fact, it has been shown that the rhizobacterium *P. polymyxa* utilized sucrose, a major carbon component of wheat root exudates, to synthesize levan, a fructosyl polymer, composed of residues linked to two to six with branches linked two to one. Synthesis of levan is accomplished by a sucrose-inducible β-fructosyl-transferase, called levansucrase, and encoded by the *sacB* gene (Steinmetz 1993). Wheat inoculation experiments with *P. polymyxa* CF43 wild-type and a mutant strain deficient in the levansucrase SacB reveal that both strains display equivalent root colonization efficiency. However, while inoculation with C43 wild type increases root adhering soil mass, addition of the *sacB* mutant strain is without effect, suggesting that levan synthesis by *P. polymyxa* contributes directly to soil adherence at the plant roots (Bezzate et al. 2000). The *sacB* gene is also present in the FZB42 genome.

3.6.2 Nitrogen and Nitrite Extrusion

A major challenge for the development of sustainable agriculture is the use of nitrogen-fixing bacteria, which are able to assimilate gaseous N_2 from the atmosphere. Biofertilization accounts for approximately 65% of the nitrogen supply to crops worldwide (Bloemberg and Lugtenberg 2001). The most efficient nitrogen fixers are root nodulating *Rhizobium*, *Sinorhizobium*, *Mesorhizobium*, and *Bradyrhizobium*. All these strains form a host-specific symbiosis with leguminous plants and their nitogenase complex is extremely sensitive against oxygen. Free-living nitrogen-fixing rhizobacteria such as *Azospirillum*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Acetobacter*, and *Azoarcus* use a nitrogenase complex that functions under low oxygen conditions. *P. polymyxa* belongs to this group; however, its ability to fix nitrogen does not significantly contribute to the total nitrogen supply and can be neglected in this respect. However, strains belonging to the related species *Paenibacillus azotofixans* were shown to be efficient nitrogen fixers. They are prevalent in the rhizosphere of several crops and forage grasses (Seldin et al. 1998).

Nitrite secreted by FZB42 might enhance root architecture. The strict aerobic *B. subtilis* and *B. amyloliquefaciens* do not possess nitrogenase complex and are unable to support plants in assimilating gaseous N_2 from the atmosphere. However, *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 has a nitrite-extrusion protein, NarK, which is turned on in the presence of plant root exudates (Unpublished). In low amounts, nitrite released by bacteria has been documented to cause phytohormonal effects in graminaceous species, being even more active than IAA in some root assays (Bothe et al. 1992). It is suggested that ascorbate associated with nitrite also plays a role in the enhanced formation of root hairs and lateral roots (Bothe et al. 1992). Under acidic conditions, nitrite forms nitrous acid and nitric oxide (NO) (Lundberg 2008). Nonenzymatic NO-releasing substances enhance root tip expansion in a dose-dependent manner and even act by similar signal transduction pathways than IAA (Gouvea et al. 1997). It is, thus, tempting to speculate that in case of *B. amyloliquefaciens* the extrusion of nitrite is an additional mechanism involved in PGP.

3.6.3 Mineral-Solubilizing Bacteria and Phytase Activity

Phosphorus is often a limiting nutrient in soils, because of processes such as adsorption, precipitation, or conversion to the organic form. Therefore, more than 80% of phosphorus fertilizers can become unavailable for plant uptake (Holford 1997), leading to phosphate accumulation that eventually contaminates surface and groundwater. Phosphate runoff is associated with eutrophication of surface waters, resulting in increased fish mortality (Malakoff 1998). This environmental impact of chemical fertilization can be attributed, in part, to low uptake efficiency by plants. One the other hand, phosphorous is highly reactive with iron, aluminum, and calcium in soils, which can result in precipitation of up to 90% of the soil phosphorous, thus making it largely unavailable to plants. Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms (PSMs) are ubiquitous in soils and could play an important role in supplying P to plants in a more environment-friendly and sustainable manner (Gyaneshwar et al. 2002).

The two main forms of phosphorus found in soils are inorganic orthophosphate (P_i) and organic phosphate pool, which is mostly constituted by phytic acid (inositol hexaphosphate). In previous in vitro studies, done under soilless, sterile conditions, we showed that biofertilization exerted by extracellular bacterial phytase under conditions of phosphate limitation and in the presence of phytate can contribute to the plant-growth-promoting activity in *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB45 (Idriss et al. 2002; Makarewicz et al. 2006). Further, Ramirez and Kloepper (2009) applied FZB45 to Chinese cabbage (*Brassica rapa*), grown in soil with known P-related properties. Although there was a significant interaction between inoculum concentration and P-regime, bacterial inoculation only increased fresh shoot weight and plant P_i content at high rate of phytate. Thus, to their results, phytase action is only beneficial under conditions of low soil P content and sufficient phytate availability.

Moreover, plant growth stimulation, found in the presence of FZB45, also depends on IAA produced by the bacteria, suggesting that the two beneficial effects might act together. A transgenic strain, NKTS-3, harboring a chromosomal integrated phytase gene, was found especially efficient in supporting growth of tobacco plants under phosphorous-deficient conditions (Li et al. 2007).

3.7 Biological Control of Soil and Airborne Plant Diseases

Several commercial products such as spores of *B. subtilis* strain GB03 (Kodiak®, Gustafsson, Inc., Plano, TX) are used as biocontrol agent (BCA) for treatment of cotton (*Gossypium* sp.) diseases. The recent success of Kodiak® in the cotton market in the USA has largely been due to the integration of a stable biological control agent (BCA) formulation with standard chemical fungicides as part of integrated pest management (Brannen and Kenney 1997). The principal component of Serenade (Agraquest Inc., Davis, CA) is *B. subtilis* strain QST713. This product is labeled for the management of a variety of plant diseases including early blight, fire blight, downy mildew, and tomato leaf spots. Subtilex (Becker Underwood, Ames, IA) contains *B. subtilis* strain MB1600, which is active against *Fusarium*, *Aspergillus*, and *Rhizoctonia* spp. attack on roots of soybean and peanut and against *Botrytis* spp. infection of vines, strawberry, cucumber, powdery mildew of tomato, and brown rust of cereals. A number of *B. subtilis* strains were integrated successfully into several pest management programs (Jacobsen et al. 2004). For example, Fusarium wilt of chickpea is suppressed more effectively by *B. subtilis* GB03 on the partially resistant cultivar than on a susceptible cultivar (Hervas et al. 1998).

Some progress is made in recent years in understanding molecular basis for biological control of plant pathogens by plant-beneficial bacilli. It is obvious now that two mechanisms are efficient in suppressing plant pathogens, i.e., production of antifungal and antibacterial secondary metabolites, and ISR.

3.7.1 Nonribosomal Lipopeptides

Suppression of the competitive plant-pathogenic microflora within the rhizosphere by secreted antifungal and antibacterial lipopeptides and polyketides is important for promotion of plant growth by FZB42 (Chen et al. 2006). Several hundred wild-type *B. subtilis* strains were collected with the potential to produce numerous antibiotics, including predominantly peptides, e.g., the surfactins, the fengycins, and the iturins (Stein 2005). These lipopeptides are amphiphilic molecules and vary in their peptide and fatty acid moieties (Hofemeister et al. 2004). Surfactins show weak antibiotic activity, but strong hemolytic and surfactant properties (Kowall et al. 1998), whereas fengycins are potent antifungal agents (Vanittanakom et al. 1986) and iturins show a great molecular diversity and differ in their hemolytic,

antibacterial, and antifungal properties (Peypoux et al. 1999) Lipopeptides (Box 3.3) and polyketides (Box 3.4) consist of monomeric building blocks as amino acids or organic acids which are linked together by assembly lines of giant modularly organized peptide synthetases (NRPS) and polyketide synthases (KS), respectively.

The genome of *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 harbors three gene clusters for the nonribosomal synthesis of lipopeptides surfactin, fengycin, and bacillomycin D (Koumoutsi et al. 2004; Chen et al. 2007). The cyclic lipopeptides fengycin and especially bacillomycinD act against soil-borne plant-pathogenic fungi (e.g., *Fusarium* spp. and *Rhizoctonia solani*). Interestingly, bacillomycin D and fengycin can exert a synergistic antagonistic effect when applied together (Koumoutsi et al. 2004).

In the genome of E681, two giant gene clusters directing nonribosomal synthesis for polymyxin (Choi et al. 2009) and fusaricidin (Choi et al. 2008) are present.

Box 3.3 Nonribosomal Synthesis of Lipopeptides

Although diverse in structure, nonribosomally synthesized peptides have a common mode of biosynthesis, the multicarrier thiotemplate mechanism (Stein et al. 1996). They are assembled on very large protein templates called peptide synthetases (NRPS) that exhibit a modular organization, allowing polymerization of monomers in an assembly-line-like mechanism (Doekel and Marahiel 2001). Each elongation cycle in nonribosomal peptide biosynthesis needs the cooperation of three basic domains. (1) The A-domain (adenylation domain) selects its cognate amino acid and generates an enzymatically stabilized aminoacyl adenylated. This mechanism resembles the aminoacylation of tRNA synthetases during ribosomal peptide biosynthesis. (2) The PCP domain (peptidyl-carrier domain) is equipped with a 4′-phosphopantetheine (PPan) prosthetic group to which the adenylated amino acid substrate is transferred and bound as thioester. A 4′-phosphopantetheine-transferase (PPTase) converts the apo-form of the PCP into its holo-form by loading the Ppan-cofactor to an active serine. *B. subtilis* Sfp is a prototype of PPTases with wide substrate tolerance. Sfp-PPTase plays an essential role in priming nonribosomal peptide synthetases, siderophore synthetases (e.g., bacillibactin), and polyketide synthases. It can covalently convert specific serine residues in peptidyl- as well as in acyl- and aryl-carrier proteins/domains (PCP, ACP, and ArCP) to generate their active holo-forms. This occurs by tethering the phosphopantetheinyl moiety of the cosubstrate coenzyme A (CoA) in phosphodiester linkage to the hydroxymethyl side chain of the conserved active serine residue in the CP domain (Walsh et al. 1997). (3) The formation of a new peptide bond is catalyzed by condensation domains (C domains). The linear organization of such core units (1–3) ensures the coordinated elongation of the peptide product. The assembly of the multifunctional proteins of the peptide synthetases is reflected in its genetic organization following the colinearity rule (Duitman et al. 1999).

Box 3.4 Nonribosomal Synthesis of Polyketides
Polyketides belong to a large family of secondary metabolites that include many bioactive compounds with antibacterial, immunosuppressive, antitumor, or other physiologically relevant bioactivities. Their biosynthesis is accomplished by stepwise decarboxylative Claisen condensations between the extender unit and the growing polyketide chain, generating enzyme-bound β-ketoacyl intermediates. Before a subsequent round of chain extension, a variable set of modifying enzymes can locally introduce structural variety. Similar to the nonribosomal synthesis of peptides, the PKS multienzyme system uses ACPs that are posttranslationally modified with the 4′-phosphopantetheine prosthetic group to channel the growing polyketide intermediate during elongation process. Type I PKS are modularly organized giant synthases, each module of which usually contains a β-ketoacyl synthase (KS), an acyltransferase (AT), and the ACP as essential and basic domains that may be complemented by a variable set of additional domains. The order of the modules dictates the sequence of biosynthetic events, and the generally observed colinearity between PKS structure and biosynthetic steps was shown to permit combinatorial manipulation of type I PKS in order to generate novel compounds (Chen et al. 2006).

Polymyxin was also detected in *P. polymyxa* M1 (Dr. Qi Wang, CAU, Beijing) (Ben Niu, unpublished).

Fusaricidin, encoded by the *fus* gene cluster in *P. polymyxa* (Choi et al. 2008), has an excellent antifungal activity against plant-pathogenic fungi, such as *Fusarium oxysporum* and *Leptosphaeria maculans*, causing black root of canola (Beatty and Jensen 2002). Another example for nonribosomal peptide synthesis in bacilli is production of the linear aminopolyol antibiotic zwittermicin A (ZmA) encoded by the *zma*A gene cluster in *Bacillus cereus* UW85. This antibiotic has diverse biological activities, such as suppression of disease in plants caused by protists, inhibition of fungal and bacterial growth, and amplification of the insecticidal activity of the toxin protein from *B. thuringiensis* (Kevany et al. 2009). Use of lipopeptides, produced by bacilli, as sustainable and environment-friendly biofungicides for treatment of fungal diseases in crops and vegetables is a promising approach.

3.7.2 Nonribosomal Synthesized Polyketides

Besides peptides, polyketides are one of the largest families of secondary metabolites having antimicrobial, immunosuppressive, antitumor, or other physiologically relevant bioactivities. Although polyketides are widespread secondary

metabolites from bacteria, only a few of them are isolated from *Bacillus* species. Therefore, their corresponding biosynthetic gene clusters remained hitherto widely unexplored. Recently, we assigned the complete polyketide synthase (PKS) gene clusters to *Bacillus* antibiotics (Chen et al. 2006). This was done with the industrially relevant *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 as a model organism. Three PKS operons were located at sites around 1.4 Mbp (*pks2*), 1.7 Mbp (*pks1*), and 2.3 Mbp (*pks3*) clockwise distant from the replication origin of the *B. amyloliquefaciens* genome (Koumoutsi et al. 2004), which is 3.916 kb in size. All three gene clusters show a modular organization typical for type I PKS systems, implying that FZB 42 has the biosynthetic machinery for the production of at least three different kinds of polyketides. With the help of cassette mutagenesis in combination with advanced mass spectrometric techniques, such as MALDI-TOF-MS and HPLC-ESI-MS, two polyketides, bacillaene and difficidin/oxydifficidin (Fig. 3.5), were identified,

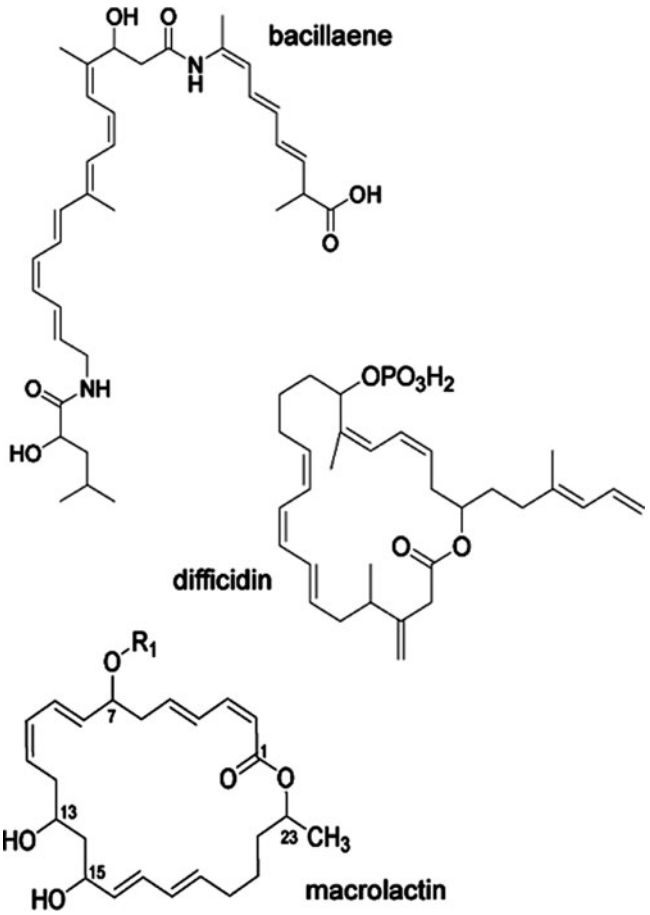


Fig. 3.5 Chemical structure of the polyketides synthesized in FZB42

which are encoded by gene clusters *pks*1 (*bae*) and *pks*3 (*dfn*) (Chen et al. 2006). The *bae* gene cluster is also present in the genome of the model organism *B. subtilis*. Recently, the groups of Clardy and Walsh resolved the structure of bacillaene from *B. subtilis* (Butcher et al. 2007).

Using a similar strategy, the *pks2* cluster is assigned as responsible for synthesis of another polyketide with antibacterial properties, macrolactin (Schneider et al. 2007). The macrolactins consist of 24-membered ring lactones, which also bear modifications, as the attachment of glucose-pyranoside and the appearance of linear analogues. Earlier, macrolactins have gained special interest with the discovery of 7-*O*-malonyl macrolactin A, which is active against methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococci* (Romero-Tabarez et al. 2006).

3.7.3 Ribosomal Synthesized Peptides (Lantibiotics and Bacteriocins)

Peptide antibiotics with interresidual thioether bonds as unique feature are defined as lantibiotics (lanthionine containing antibiotics). Lanthionine formation occurs through posttranslational modification of ribosomally synthesized precursor peptides including dehydration of serine and threonine residues, respectively, and subsequent addition of neighboring cysteine thiol groups. Based on structural properties, two lantibiotic types are distinguishable. Type A lantibiotics (21–38 amino acid residues) exhibit a more linear secondary structure and kill Gram-positive target cells by forming voltage-dependent pores into the cytoplasmic membrane. Self-protection (immunity) against lantibiotics is based on ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter homologous proteins that export the lantibiotic from the cytoplasmic membrane into the extracellular space.

B. subtilis harbors several gene clusters involved in ribosomal synthesis of antimicrobial peptides. *SpaS* and *spaBTC* are involved in the biosynthesis of subtilin, a 32-amino-acid pentacyclic lantibiotic, while *spaIFEG* confers self-immunity. The biocontrol *B. subtilis* strain A1/3 produces Ericin (Stein et al. 2002). Ericin S and subtilin only differ in four amino acid residues, and the antimicrobial properties of both the lantibiotics are comparable. The lantibiotic mersacidin belongs to the type B lantibiotics, which exhibit a more globular structure. It inhibits cell wall biosynthesis by complexing lipid II. The mersacidin gene cluster consists of the structural gene *mrsA*, as well as genes involved in posttranslational modification (*mrsM* and *mrsD*), transport (*mrsT*), immunity (*mrsFEG*), and regulation (*mrsR1*, *mrsR2*, and *mrsK2*). Recently, production of mersacidin has been detected in Chinese biocontrol strain Y2 (Vater and Borriss, unpublished), a strain closely related with FZB42. Despite availability of complete genome sequence, for several years no bacteriocins were detected in FZB42. But we have assigned two gene clusters involved in ribosomal synthesis of two

modified peptide compounds in FZB42. One of the two compounds, related to microcinB with a molecular mass 1336 ($M + H^+$), had only weak antibacterial activity, while the other, a representative of group I cyclic bacteriocins with a molecular mass of 6,382, exhibited strong antibacterial activity mainly directed against Gram-positive bacteria (Scholz and Borriss, unpublished).

3.7.4 A Case Study: Combined Use of Bacilysin and Difficidin Against Fire Blight

Fire blight caused by *Erwinia amylovora* is the most serious bacterial disease in apple and pear. During the last four decades, it has spread throughout Europe. In 2007, heavy outbreaks of fire blight led to severe losses for apple growers in Germany, Austria, and Switzerland. Since sanitation methods could not stop the spread of the disease, fire blight management by using appropriate biocontrol agents is a pressing need. Effective control can be achieved through application of streptomycin sulfate, a method widely used in North America. However, the use of streptomycin has been banned by the European authorities, due to risk of development of antibiotic resistance in nontarget bacteria. Search of an environment-friendly biological alternative is a permanent task of present research. Recently, two products based on *B*. "*subtilis*" are registered for blight control in Europe: Serenade® based on strain QST713 and Biopro® based on strain BD170 (Broggini et al. 2005).

We identified two compounds, produced by FZB42, with strong antagonistic effect against *E. amylovora*, the polyketide difficidin (see above), and bacilysin, a dipeptide whose synthesis does not depend on *Sfp*. The bacilysin molecule contains an L-alanine residue at the N terminus and a proteinogenic amino acid, L-anticapsin, at the C terminus. Antibiotic action is achieved by the anticapsin moiety, which becomes released after uptake in susceptible cells and blocks glucosamine synthetase, an essential enzyme of cell wall biosynthesis. Mutant strains with knockout mutation in the Sfp encoding gene (unable to produce any lipopeptides and polyketides) are still able to inhibit *E. amylovora* due to bacilysin, whose production is not affected (Chen et al. 2009b). In contrast to difficidin, bacilysin is rather stable, and search for strains with high bacilysin production is a promising approach in the further development of an efficient and sustainable biocontrol agent, based on PGP bacilli.

3.7.5 Induced Systemic Resistance

Certain bacteria trigger a phenomenon known as ISR. ISR occurs when the plant's defense mechanisms are stimulated and primed to resist infection by pathogens, a

process similar to systemic acquired resistance (SAR). SAR develops when plants successfully activate their defense mechanisms in response to primary infection of their aerial parts by a pathogen, notably when the latter induces a hypersensitive reaction through which it becomes limited in a local necrotic lesion of brown, desiccated tissue. As SAR, ISR is effective against different types of pathogens but differs from SAR in that the inducing PGPR bacterium is colonizing roots and does not cause visible symptoms on the host plant (van Loon et al. 1998). PGPRs that colonize root systems with seed applications and protect plants against foliar diseases include *Pseudomonas fluorescens*, *P. putida*, *B. subtilis*, *B. pumilus*, and *Serratia marcescens* (Ryu et al. 2004a). A major distinction between ISR and SAR is the dependence of the latter on the accumulation of salicylic acid (SA). However, majority of PGPRs that activate ISR appear to do so via a SA-independent pathway involving jasmonate and ethylene signals. Early observations about systemic disease protection in greenhouse experiments were reported for *B. pumilus* and *B. mycoides* (Bargabus et al. 2002, 2004). Field trials showed that *B. pumilus* INR7 reduced the incidence of cucurbit wilt disease caused by *Erwinia tracheiphila* (Zehnder et al. 2001). Ability to act as bioprotectants via ISR has been demonstrated for both Gram-negative and Gram-positive PGPR (Compant et al. 2005). Strains *B. amyloliquefaciens* IN937a, *B. subtilis* IN937b, and *B. pumilus* SE34 and INR7 were found especially efficient in stimulating plant ISR directed against pathogenic fungi, bacteria, viruses, and insects (Kloepper et al. 2004). Several bacterial traits (i.e., flagellation and production of siderophores and lipopolysaccharides) have been proposed to trigger ISR. In endospore-forming Gram-positive bacteria, volatiles play a key role in this process, besides their role in PGP (Ryu et al. 2005). Arabidopsis seedlings exposed in divided Petri dishes to PGPR *B. subtilis* GB03 and *B. amyloliquefaciens* IN937a for 10 days developed significantly less symptomatic leaves 24 h after inoculation with the soft rot-causing pathogen *Erwinia carotovora ssp. carotovora*. Compounds 2,3-butanediol and 3-hydroxy-2-butanone (acetoin) were released consistently as the most abundant volatiles from GB03 and IN937a (Ryu et al. 2004a).

Transgenic tobacco plants with herbicide resistance gene were used to test effect of FZB24 on expression of genes involved in plant defense against pathogens. All three promoters were activated by the treatment with FZB24, though partly with different intensities. The *prp1* promoter responded particularly strongly, independent if bacteria were applied by soil treatment by drenching or leaf treatment by spraying (Kilian et al. 2000). Volatiles released by FZB42 grown in I plates did also elicit ISR in *Arabidopsis thaliana* seedlings, afterward treated with plant pathogen *Xanthomonas campestris*. Moreover, mutant strains bearing *alsS* and *alsD* mutations were found severely attenuated in eliciting ISR in the plants under same experimental conditions, suggesting that, in fact, 2,3-butanediol and acetoin are the main compounds in stimulating ISR response by PGPR *Bacillus* sp. (Ryu, Johti, and Borriss, unpublished).

Ryu et al. (2004a) reported that screening of *Arabidopsis* signaling pathway mutants revealed that only in the ethylene-insensitive line *ein2* when exposed

to VOCs emitted from strain GB03 was the severity of disease symptoms not ameliorated. This suggests that an ethylene-dependent signaling pathway in eliciting ISR by GB03 exists. Interestingly, in case of IN937a ISR signaling pathway was found ethylene-independent (Ryu et al. 2004a). Rhizobacteria-mediated ISR did generally not require SA, but in case of *Serratia marcescens*-mediated protection against Cucumber mosaic virus (CMV), a signaling pathway dependent on jasmonic acid was proposed (Ryu et al. 2004b). Taken together, these results and in spite of the different volatile profiles detected also in closely related species as GB03 and IN937a (Farag et al. 2006), it seems that strain-specific signaling pathways for ISR were induced by specific PGPR strains.

3.7.5.1 Comparison of FZB42 with Related Strains

A survey of genetic markers associated with biological control activity of "*B. subtilis*" revealed that nine markers could be amplified from the commercialized *Bacillus* strains GB03 (Kodiak®), QST713 (Serenade), and MBI600 (Subtilex), except *ituC*, which was not detected in GB03 (Joshi and McSpadden Gardener 2006). Those markers could not be amplified in other *Bacillus* strains including plant-growth-promoting IN937a and IN937b. The authors conclude that the most effective biocontrol strains of *B. subtilis* shared multiple genetic elements responsible for pathogen suppression. Moreover, a close phylogenetic relationship among the three commercialized biocontrol strains was postulated. Another "cousin" of FZB42, plant-associated *B. amyloliquefaciens* strain GA1, resembles FZB42 in nonribosomal synthesis of the same spectrum of lipopeptides and polyketides (Arguelles-Arias et al. 2009).

3.8 Conclusions and Outlook

More than 20 years had passed, since Kloepper et al. (1989) firstly reviewed prospects of PGPR for crop productivity, and many of the concepts, discussed in that early review, were validated by succeeding research, mainly performed with *Pseudomonas* spp. Although biocontrol strains of fluorescent pseudomonads have contributed greatly to the understanding of the mechanisms that are involved in phytostimulation and disease suppression, biological preparations from spore-forming *Bacillus* spp. are preferred, because their long-term viability facilitates the development of commercial products (Haas and Defago 2005). Unfortunately, their success in agricultural application is still hampered by insufficient knowledge about basic mechanisms of interactions between PGP and plants, although some progress has been made in recent years. In order to overcome this problem, we

propose to choose *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 as model strain for PGP bacilli for the following reasons:

1. The strain (BGSC strain number 10A6 and DSMZ strain number DSM 23117) and its whole-genome sequence is freely available (GenBank accession: CP000560), despite the fact that the strain is commercialized by ABiTEP GmbH Berlin and successfully used in agri- and horticulture applications (http://www.abitep.de/en/Research.html).
2. In contrast to most environmental *Bacillus* strains, *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 is naturally competent and amenable to genetic transformation using a modified one-step protocol, originally developed for *B. subtilis* 168 (Idris et al. 2007). In order to assign unknown gene functions, we generated numerous mutants impaired in many distinct functions, such as production of extracellular enzymes, secondary metabolites, biofilm formation, alternative factors, and PGP. Some are already deposited at Bacillus Genetic Stock Center, Ohio, OH (BGSC); the others can be obtained after request from Humboldt University, Berlin.
3. Strain derivatives of FZB42 were marked by stable chromosomal integration of genes encoding for GFP+ and other fluorescenct proteins. Those strains were found extremely useful for studying root colonization after bacterial inoculation (Fan and Borriss, unpublished).
4. A transposon library of FZB42 using the mariner transposon TnYLB-1 was generated and successfully used to screen for mutants impaired in PGP, production of small peptides, and nematocidal activity.
5. Microarrays with oligonucleotides, representing the complete set of FZB42 open reading frames and numerous intergenic sequences harboring candidate small (regulatory) RNAs for transcriptomic studies are available.
6. Even a great number of protein spots obtained after 2D gel electrophoresis of the FZB42 cytoplasmic fraction and the secretome were assigned by MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry.
7. Last but not least, *B. amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 is closely related to other known PGP bacilli (QST713, GB03, A1/3, and GA1). According to sequence homologies established on genomic and selected gene level (e.g., *gyrA* and *cheA*), FZB42 forms, together with other plant-associated bacilli, an own ecomorph, distantly related to the *B. amyloliquefaciens* type strain DSM7^{T} (Reva et al. 2004).

We hope that the community of scientists, interested on exploiting PGP bacilli, will choose FZB42 as a paradigm for research on that group of bacteria with a high potential to substitute or at least to replace, in part, such agrochemicals.

Acknowledgments I dedicate this article to Prof. (em.) Dr. Helmut Bochow, former chair of Plant Pathology at Humboldt University Berlin. Prof. Bochow did pioneering research with plant-growth-promoting bacilli and was one of the first who recognized importance of those bacteria in increasing crop yield and quality. I thank all the present and former members of my laboratory and the many colleagues and friends with whom I worked together in the exciting field of plant growth promotion and biocontrol during the last decade. Their trustful collaboration and innovative work made it possible to write this review.

References

Arguelles-Arias A, Ongena M, Halimi B, Lara Y, Brans A, Joris B, Fickers P (2009) *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* GA1 as a source of potent antibiotics and other secondary metabolites for biocontrol of plant pathogens. Microb Cell Fact 8:63

Bais HP, Fall R, Vivanco JM (2004) Biocontrol of *Bacillus subtilis* against infection of *Arabidopsis* roots by *Pseudomonas syringae* is facilitated by biofilm formation and surfactin production. Plant Physiol 134:307–319

Bargabus RL, Zidack NK, Sherwood JW, Jacobsen BJ (2002) Characterization of systemic resistance in sugar beet elicited by a non-pathogenic, phyllosphere colonizing *Bacillus mycoides*, biological control agent. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 61:289–298

Bargabus RL, Zidack NK, Sherwood JW, Jacobsen BJ (2004) Screening for the identification of potential biological control agents that induce systemic acquired resistance in sugar beet. Biol Control 30:342–350

Beatty PH, Jensen SE (2002) *Paenibacillus polymyxa* produces fusaricidin-type antifungal antibiotics active against *Leptosphaeria maculans*, the causative agent of black leg disease of canola. Can J Microbiol 48:159–169

Begon M, Townsend CA, Harper JL (2006) Ecology: from individuals to ecosystems. Blackwell, Malden, MA

Bell CR, Dickie GA, Harvey WLG, Chan JWYF (1995) Endophytic bacteria in grapevine. Can J Microbiol 41:46–53

Bezzate S, Aymerich S, Chambert R, Czarnes S, Berge O, Heulin T (2000) Disruption of the *Paenibacillus polymyxa* levansucrase gene impairs its ability to aggregate soil in the wheat rhizosphere. Environ Microbiol 2:333–342

Bleeker AB, Kende H (2000) Ethylene: a gaseous signal molecule in plant. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 16:1–18

Bloemberg GV, Lugtenberg BJ (2001) Molecular basis of plant growth promotion and biocontrol by rhizobacteria. Curr Opin Plant Biol 4:343–350

Bochow H (1992) Phytosanitary effects of *Bacillus subtilis* as a biocontrol agent. Meded Fac Landbouww Rijksuniv Gent 57(2b):387–393

Bochow H, El-Sayed SF, Junge H, Stavropoulo A, Schmiedeknecht G (2001) Use of *Bacillus subtilis* as biocontrol agent. IV. Salt-stress tolerance induction by *Bacillus subtilis* FZB24 seed treatment in tropical vegetable field crops, and its mode of action. J Plant Dis Prot 108: 21–30

Borriss R, Bochow H, Junge H (2006) Use of *Bacillus subtilis/amyloliquefaciens* FZB strains for plant growth promotion and biocontrol. In: 7th international workshop on plant growth promoting rhizobacteria, Program and abstract book, Noordwijkerhout, The Netherlands, p 15

Bothe H, Korsgen H, Lehmacher T, Hundeshagen B (1992) Differential-effects of Azospirillum, auxin and combined nitrogen on the growth of the roots of wheat. Symbiosis 13:167–179

Bottini R, Cassán F, Piccoli P (2004) Gibberellin production by bacteria and its involvement in plant growth promotion and yield increase. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 65:497–503

Branda SS, Chu F, Kearns DB, Losick R, Kolter R (2006) A major protein component of the *Bacillus subtilis* biofilm matrix. Mol Microbiol 59:1229–1238

Brannen PM, Kenney DS (1997) Kodiak® – a successful biological-control product for suppression of soil-borne plant-pathogens of cotton. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 19:169–171

Broggini GAL, Duffy B, Holliger E, Schärer HJ, Gessler C, Patocchi A (2005) Detection of the fire blight biocontrol agent *Bacillus subtilis* BD170 (Biopro®) in a Swiss apple orchard. Eur J Plant Pathol 111:93–100

Burkett-Cadena M, Kokalis-Burelle N, Lawrence KS, van Santen E, Kloepper JW (2008) Suppressiveness of root-knot nematodes mediated by rhizobacteria. Biol Control 47:55–59

Butcher RA, Schroeder FC, Fischbach MA, Straight PD, Kolter R, Walsh D, Clardy J (2007) The identification of bacillaene, the product of the pksX megacomplex in *Bacillus subtilis*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:1506–1509

Chen XH, Vater J, Piel J, Franke P, Scholz R, Schneider K, Koumoutsi A, Hitzeroth G, Grammel N, Strittmatter AW, Gottschalk G, Süssmuth R, Borriss R (2006) Structural and functional characterization of three polyketide synthase gene clusters in *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB 42. J Bacteriol 188:4024–4036

Chen XH, Koumoutsi A, Scholz R, Eisenreich A, Schneider K, Heinemeyer I, Morgenstern B, Voss B, Hess WR, Reva O, Junge H, Voigt B, Jungblut PR, Vater J, Süssmuth R, Liesegang H, Strittmatter A, Gottschalk G, Borriss R (2007) Comparative analysis of the complete genome sequence of the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42. Nat Biotechnol 25:1007–1014

Chen XH, Koumoutsi A, Scholz R, Schneider K, Vater J, Süssmuth R, Piel J, Borriss R (2009a) Genome analysis of *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42 reveals its potential for biocontrol of plant pathogens. J Biotechnol 140:27–37

Chen XH, Scholz R, Borriss M, Junge H, Mögel G, Kunz S, Borriss R (2009b) Difficidin and bacilysin produced by plant-associated *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* are efficient in controlling fire blight disease. J Biotechnol 140:38–44

Choi SK, Park SY, Kim R, Lee CH, Kim J, Park SH (2008) Identification and functional analysis of the fusaricidin biosynthetic gene of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* E681. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 365:89–95

Choi SK, Park SY, Kim R, Kim SB, Lee CH, Kim JF, Park SH (2009) Identification of a polymyxin synthetase gene cluster of *Paenibacillus polymyxa* and heterologous expression of the gene in *Bacillus subtilis*. J Bacteriol 191:3350–3385

Chu F, Kearns DB, Branda SS, Kolter R, Losick R (2006) Targets of the master regulator of biofilm formation in *B. subtilis*. Mol Microbiol 59:1216–1228

Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clement C, Barka EA (2005) Use of plant growth promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4951–4959

Costa-Carvailhis L (2010) Transcriptional profiling of Bacillus amyloliquefaciens FZB42 in response to seed and root exudates collected under different nutrient regimes. PhD thesis, Stuttgart-Hohenheim

Doekel S, Marahiel MA (2001) Biosynthesis of natural products on modular peptide synthetases. Metab Eng 3:64–77

Dolej S, Bochow H (1996) Studies of the mode of action of *Bacillus subtilis* culture filtrates in the model pathosystem tomato seedling – *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *Radicis-lycopersici*. Meded Fac Landbouww Rijksuniv Gent 61(2b):483–489

Duitman EH, Hamoen LW, Rembold M, Venema G, Seitz H, Saenger W, Bernhard F, Reinhardt R, Schmidt M, Ullrich C, Stein T, Leenders F, Vater J (1999) The mycosubtilin synthetase of *Bacillus subtilis* ATCC 6633: a multifunctional hybrid between a peptide synthetase, an amino transferase, and a fatty acid synthase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:13294–13299

Ehlers RE (2006) Einsatz der Biotechnologie im biologischen Pflanzenschutz. Schriftenreihe der Deutschen Phytomedizinischen Gesellschaft eV 8:17–31 (in German)

Emmert EAB, Handelsman J (1999) Biocontrol of plant disease: a Gram-positive perspective. FEMS Microbiol Lett 171:1–9

Farag MA, Ryu CM, Sumner LW, Pare PW (2006) GC-MS SPME profiling of rhizobacterial volatiles reveals prospective inducers of growth promotion and induced systemic resistance in plants. Phytochemistry 67:2262–2268

Fritze D (2004) Taxonomy of the Genus *Bacillus* and related genera: the aerobic endospore-forming bacteria. Phytopathology 94:1245–1248

Fry W (2008) *Phytophthora infestans*: the plant (and R gene) destroyer. Mol Plant Pathol 9:385–4002

Glick BR, Patten CN, Holguin B, Penrose DM (1999) Biochemical and genetic mechanisms used by plant growth promotion bacteria. Imperial College Press, London, pp 1–13

Gouvea CMCP, Souza JF, Magalhaes ACN, Martins IS (1997) NO-releasing substances that induce growth elongation in maize root segments. Plant Growth Regul 21:183–187

Grosch R, Junge H, Krebs B, Bochow H (1999) Use of *Bacillus subtilis* as biocontrol agent. III. Influence *Bacillus subtilis* fungal root diseases yield soilless culture. J Plant Dis Prot 106:568–580

Guo JH, Liu XJ, Zhang Y, Shen JL, Han XW, Zhang WF, Christie P, Goulding KWT, Vitousek PM, Zhang FS (2010) Significant acidification in major Chinese croplands. Science 327:1008–1010

Gutierrez-Mañero FJ, Ramos-Solano B, Probanza A, Mehouachi J, Tadeo FR, Talon M (2001) The plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria *Bacillus pumilus* and *Bacillus licheniformis* produce high amounts of physiologically active gibberellins. Physiol Plant 111:206–211

Gyaneshwar P, Naresh Kumar G, Parekh LJ, Poole PS (2002) Role of soil microorganisms in improving P nutrition of plants. Plant Soil 245:83–93

Haas D, Defago G (2005) Biological control of soil-borne pathogens by fluorescent *Pseudomonas*. Nat Rev Microbiol 3:307–319

Hall-Stoodley L, Costerton JW, Stoodley P (2004) Bacterial biofilms: from the natural environment to infectious diseases. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:95–108

Hamon MA, Lazazzera BA (2001) The sporulation transcription factor Spo0A is required for biofilm development in *Bacillus subtilis*. Mol Microbiol 42:1199–1209

Hamon MA, Stanley NR, Britton RA, Grossman AD, Lazazzera BA (2004) Identification of AbrB-regulated genes involved in biofilm formation by *Bacillus subtilis*. Mol Microbiol 52:847–860

Haverkort AJ, Boonekamp PM, Hutten R et al (2008) Social costs of late blight in potato and prospects of durable resistance through cisgenic modification. Potato Res 51:47–57

Hervas A, Landa B, Datnoff LE, Jimenez-Diaz RM (1998) Effects of commercial and indigenous microorganisms on Fusarium wilt development in chickpea. Biol Control 13:166–176

Hofemeister J, Conrad B, Adler B, Hofemeister B, Feesche J, Kucheryava N et al (2004) Genetic analysis of the biosynthesis of non-ribosomal peptide- and polyketide-like antibiotics, iron uptake and biofilm formation by *Bacillus subtilis* A1/3. Mol Genet Genomics 272:363–378

Holford ICR (1997) Soil phosphorus: its measurement, and its uptake by plants. Aust J Soil Res 35:227–239

Idris EE, Bochow H, Ross H, Borriss R (2004) Use of *Bacillus subtilis* as biocontrol agent. VI. Phytohormone like action of culture filtrates prepared from plant growth-promoting *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB24, FZB42, FZB45 and *Bacillus subtilis* FZB37. J Plant Dis Prot 111:583–597

Idris EES, Iglesias DJ, Talon M, Borriss R (2007) Tryptophan dependent production of indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) affects level of plant growth promotion by *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 20:619–626

Idriss EES, Makarewicz O, Farouk A, Rosner K, Greiner R, Bochow H, Richter T, Borriss R (2002) Extracellular phytase activity of *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB 45 contributes to its plant growth-promoting effect. Microbiology 148:2097–2109

Jacobsen BJ, Zidack NK, Larson BJ (2004) The role of *Bacillus*-based biological control agents in integrated pest management systems: plant diseases. Phytopathology 94:1272–1275

Jones DL, Dennis PG, Owen AG, van Hees PAW (2003) Organic acid behavior in soils – misconceptions and knowledge gaps. Plant Soil 248:31–41

Joshi R, McSpadden Gardener BB (2006) Identification and characterization of novel genetic markers associated with biological control activities in *Bacillus subtilis*. Phytopathology 96:145–154

Kearns DB, Chu F, Rudner R, Losick R (2005) A master regulator for biofilm formation by *Bacillus subtilis*. Mol Microbiol 55:739–749

Kenrick P, Crane PR (1997) The origin and early evolution of plants on land. Nature 389:33–39

Kevany BM, Rasko DA, Thomas M (2009) Characterization of the complete zwittermicin A biosynthesis gene cluster from *Bacillus cereus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:1144–1155

Kilian M, Steiner U, Krebs B, Junge H, Schmiedeknecht G, Hain R (2000) FZB24® *Bacillus subtilis* – mode of action of a microbial agent enhancing plant vitality. Pflanzenschutz Nachr Bayer 1:72–93

Kloepper JW, Leong J, Teintze M, Schroth M (1980) Enhancing plant growth by siderophores produces by plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Nature 286:885–886

Kloepper JW, Lifshitz R, Zablotowicz RM (1989) Free-living bacterial inocula for enhancing crop productivity. Trends Biotechnol 7:39–44

Kloepper JW, Ryu CM, Zhang S (2004) Induced systemic resistance and promotion of plant growth by *Bacillus* spp. Phytopathology 94:1259–1266

Kokalis-Burelle N, Kloepper JW, Reddy MS (2006) Plant growth-promotion rhizobacteria as transplant amendments and their effect on indigenous rhizosphere microorganisms. Appl Soil Ecol 31:91–100

Koumoutsi A, Chen XH, Henne A, Liesegang H, Hitzeroth G, Franke P, Vater J, Borriss R (2004) Structural and functional characterization of gene clusters directing nonribosomal synthesis of bioactive cyclic lipopeptides in *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* strain FZB42. J Bacteriol 186:1084–1096

Kowall M, Vater J, Kluge B, Stein T, Franke P, Ziessow D (1998) Separation and characterization of surfactin isoforms produced by *Bacillus subtilis* OKB 105. J Colloid Interface Sci 204:1–8

Krebs B, Höding B, Kübart S, Workie MA, Junge H, Schmiedeknecht G, Bochow H, Hevesi M (1998) Use of *Bacillus subtilis* as biocontrol agent. I. Activities and characterization of *Bacillus subtilis* strains. J Plant Dis Prot 105:181–197 (in German)

Kumar S, Pandey P, Maheshwari DK (2009) Reduction in dose of chemical fertilizers and growth enhancement of Sesame (*Sesamum indicum* L.) with application of rhizospheric competent *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* LES4. Eur J Soil Biol 45:334–340

Kunst F, Ogasawara N, Moszer I, Albertini AM, Alloni G, Azevedo V, Bertero MG, Bessières P, Bolotin A, Borchert S, Borriss R, Boursier L, Brans A, Braun M, Brignell SC, Bron S, Brouillet S, Bruschi CV, Caldwell B, Capuano V, Carter NM, Choi SK, Codani JJ, Connerton IF, Danchin A et al (1997) The complete genome sequence of the gram-positive bacterium *Bacillus subtilis*. Nature 390:249–256

Laloi C, Apel K, Danon K (2004) Latest news in reactive oxygen species. Curr Opin Plant Biol 7:323–328

Lebuhn M, Heulin T, Hartmann A (1997) Production of auxin and other indolic and phenolic compounds by *Paenibacillus polymyxa* strains, isolated from different proximity to plant roots. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 22:325–334

Li X, Wu Z, Li W, Yan R, Li L, Li J, Li Y, Li M (2007) Growth promoting effect of a transgenic *Bacillus mucilaginosus* on tobacco planting. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 74:1120–1125

Lin W, Okon Y, Hardy RWF (1983) Enhanced mineral uptake by *Zea mays* and *Sorgum bicolor* roots inoculated with *Azospirillum brasilense*. Appl Environ Microbiol 45:1775–1779

Loper JE, Schroth MN (1986) Influence of bacterial sources of indole-3-acetic acid biosynthetic on root elongation of sugar beet. Phytopathology 76:386–389

Lugtenberg B, Kamilova F (2009) Plant-growth promoting rhizobacteria. Annu Rev Microbiol 63:541–556

Lundberg JO (2008) Nitric oxide in the gastrointestinal tract: role of bacteria. Biosci Microflora 27:109–112

Maheshwari DK, Kumar S, Kumar B, Pandey P (2011) Co-inoculation of urea and DAP tolerant *Sinorhizobium meliloti* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* as integrated approach for growth enhancement of *Brassica juncea*. Ind J Microbiol 50(4):425–431

Makarewicz O, Dubrac S, Msadek T, Borriss R (2006) Dual role of the PhoP P response regulator: *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB45 phytase gene transcription is directed by positive and negative interaction with the phyC promoter. J Bacteriol 188:6953–6965

Malakoff D (1998) Coastal ecology: death by suffocation in the Gulf of Mexico. Science 281:190–192

McInroy JA, Kloepper JW (1995) Survey of indigenous bacterial endophytes from cotton and sweet corn. Plant Soil 173:337–342

McSpadden Gardener BB, Fravel DR (2002) Biological control of plant pathogens: research, commerzialisation, and application in the USA. Plant Health Progress. doi:10.1094/PHP-2002-0510-01-RV

Mishagi IJ, Donndelinger CR (1990) Endophytic bacteria in symptom-free cotton plants. Phytopathology 9:808–811

Nicholson WL (2008) The *Bacillus subtilis* ydjL (bdhA) gene encodes acetoin reductase/2,3-butanediol dehydrogenase. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:6832–6838

Ortiz-Castro R, Contreras-Cornejo HA, Macias-Rodriguez L, Lopez-Bucio J (2009) The role of microbial signals in plant growth and development. Plant Signal Behav 4:701–712

Paulsen IT, Press CM, Ravel J, Kobayashi DY, Myers GSA, Mavrodi DV et al (2005) Complete genome sequence of the plant commensal *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf-5. Nat Biotechnol 23:873–878

Peypoux F, Bonmatin JM, Wallach J (1999) Recent trends in the biochemistry of surfactin. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 51:553–556

Phi QT, Oh SH, Park YM, Park SH, Ryu CM, Ghim SY (2008a) Isolation and characterization of transposon-insertional mutants from *Paenibacillus polymyxa* E681 altering the biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid. Curr Microbiol 56:524–530

Phi QT, Park YM, Ryu CM, Park SH, Ghim SY (2008b) Functional identification and expression of indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase from *Paenibacillus polymyxa* E681. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:1235–1244

Pleban S, Chernin L, Chet I (1997) Chitinolytic activity of an endophytic strain of *Bacillus cereus*. Lett Appl Microbiol 25:284–288

Ramirez CA, Kloepper JW (2009) Plant growth promotion by *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB45 depends on inoculum concentration and P-related soil properties. 8th International PGPR workshop. Proceedings book. Portland, Oregon, OR

Ramos HC, Hoffmann T, Marino M, Nedjari H, Presecan-Siedel E, Dreesen O, Glaser P, Jahn D (2000) Fermentative metabolism of *Bacillus subtilis*: physiology and regulation of gene expression. J Bacteriol 182:3072–3080

Renna MC, Najimudin N, Winik R, Zahler SA (1993) Regulation of the *alsS*, *alsD*, and *alsR* genes involved in post-exponential-phase production of acetoin. J Bacteriol 175:3863–3875

Reva O, Smirnov VV, Petterson B, Priest FG (2002) *Bacillus endophyticus* sp. nov., isolated from the inner tissues of cotton plants (*Gossypium* sp.). Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:101–107

Reva ON, Dixelius C, Meijer J, Priest FG (2004) Taxonomic characterization and plant colonizing abilities of some bacteria related to *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* and *Bacillus subtilis*. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 48:249–259

Roberts RJ, Wilson GA, Young FE (1977) Recognition sequence of specific endonuclease *Bam*HI from *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* H. Nature 265:82–84

Romero-Tabarez M, Jansen R, Sylla M, Lünsdorf H, Häußler S, Santosa DA, Timmis KN, Molinari G (2006) 7-O-malonyl macrolactin A, a new macrolactin antibiotic from *Bacillus subtilis* active against methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, vancomycin-resistant enterococci and a small-colony variant of *Burkholderia cepacia*. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 50:1701–1709

Rudrappa T, Quinn WJ, Stanley-Wall NR, Bais HP (2007) A degradation product of the salicylic acid pathway triggers oxidative stress resulting in down-regulation of *Bacillus subtilis* biofilm formation on *Arabidopsis thaliana* roots. Planta 226:283–297

Rudrappa T, Czymmek KJ, Pare PW, Bais HP (2008) Root-secreted malic acid recruits beneficial soil bacteria. Plant Physiol 148:1547–1556

Ryu C-M, Farag MA, Hu C-H, Reddy M, Wei H-X, Paré PW, Kloepper JW (2003) Bacterial volatiles promote growth in *Arabidopsis*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:4927–4932

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy M, Wei HX, Kloepper JW, Paré PW (2004a) Bacterial volatiles induce systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis*. Plant Physiol 134:1017–1026

Ryu CM, Murphy JF, Mysore KS, Kloepper JW (2004b) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria systemically protect Arabidopsis thaliana against Cucumber mosaicvirus by a salicylic acid and NPR1-independent and jasmonic acid-dependent signaling pathway. Plant J 39:381–392

Ryu CM, Farag M, Paré PW, Kloepper JW (2005) Invisible signals from the underground: bacterial volatiles elicit plant growth promotion and induce systemic resistance. Plant Pathol J 2:7–12

Schmiedeknecht G, Bochow H, Junge H (1998) Use of *Bacillus subtilis* as biocontrol agent. II. Biological control of potato diseases. J Plant Dis Prot 105:376–386

Schmiedeknecht G, Issoufou I, Junge H, Bochow H (2001) Use of *Bacillus subtilis* as biocontrol agent. V. Biological control of disease on maize and sunflowers. J Plant Dis Prot 108:500–512

Schneider K, Chen XH, Vater J, Franke P, Nicholson G, Borriss R, Süssmuth RD (2007) Macrolactin is the polyketide biosynthesis product of the pks2 cluster of *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* FZB42. J Nat Prod 70:1417–1423

Seldin L, Soares Rosado A, daCruz DW, Nobrega A, vanElsas JD, Paiva E (1998) Comparison of *Paenibacilus azotofixans* strains isolated from rhizoplane, rhizosphere, and non-root-associated soil from maize planted in two different Brazilian soils. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3860–3868

Shishido M, Breuil C, Chanway CP (1999) Endophytic colonization of spruce by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 29:191–196

Stein T (2005) *Bacillus subtilis* antibiotics: structures, syntheses and specific functions. Mol Microbiol 56(4):845–857

Stein T, Vater J, Kruft V, Otto A, Wittmann-Liebold B, Franke P, Panico M, McDowell R, Morris HR (1996) The multiple carrier model of nonribosomal peptide biosynthesis at modular multienzymatic templates. J Biol Chem 271:15428–15435

Stein T, Borchert S, Conrad B, Feesche J, Hofemeister B, Hofemeister J, Entian KD (2002) Two different lantibiotic-like peptides originate from the ericin gene cluster of *Bacillus subtilis* A1/3. J Bacteriol 184:1703–1711

Steinmetz M (1993) Carbohydrate catabolism: enzymes, pathways, and evolution. In: Sonenshein AL, Hoch JA, Losick R (eds) *Bacillus subtilis* and other Gram-positive bacteria. ASM, Washington, DC, pp 157–170

Timmusk S, Wagner EGH (1999) The plant-growth-promoting rhizobacterium *Paenibacillus polymyxa* induces changes in *Arabidopsis thaliana* gene expression: a possible connection between biotic and abiotic stress responses. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12:951–959

Timmusk S, Grantcharova N, Wagner EGH (2005) *Paenibacillus polymyxa* invades plant roots and forms biofilms. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:7292–7300

Timmusk S, van West P, Gow NRA, Huffstutler RP (2009) *Paenibacillus polymyxa* antagonizes oomycete plant pathogens *Phytophthora palmivora* and *Pythium aphanidermatum*. J Appl Microbiol 106:1473–1481

Uren NC (2007) Types, amounts, and possible function of compounds released into the rhizosphere by soil-grown plants. In: Pinton R, Varanini Z, Nannipieri P (eds) The rhizosphere. Biochemistry and organic substances at the soil-plant interface, 2nd edn. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, pp 1–21

Van Loon LC, Bakker PA, Pieterse CMJ (1998) Systemic resistance induced by rhizosphere bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 36:453–483

Vandeputte O, Öden S, Mol A, Vereecke D, Goethals K, El Jaziri M, Prinsen E (2005) Biosynthesis of auxin by the gram-positive phytopathogen *Rhodococcus fascians* is controlled by compounds specific to infect plant tissues. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:1169–1177

Vanittanakom N, Loeffler W, Koch U, Jung G (1986) Fengycin – a novel antifungal lipopeptide antibiotic produced by *Bacillus subtilis* F-29-3. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 39:888–901

Walsh CT, Gehring AM, Weinreb PH, Quadri LEN, Flugel RS (1997) Post-translational modification of polyketide and nonribosomal peptide synthases. Curr Opin Chem Biol 1:309–315

Wolf M, Geczi A, Simon O, Borriss R (1995) Genes encoding xylan and β-glucan-hydrolysing enzymes in *Bacillus subtilis*: characterization, mapping and construction of strains deficient in lichenase, cellulose and xylanase. Microbiology 141:281–290

Yang J, Kloepper JW, Ryu CM (2009) Rhizosphere bacteria help plants tolerate abiotic stress. Trends Plant Sci 14:1–4

Yao AV, Bochow H, Karimov S, Boturov U, Sanginboy S, Sharipov K (2006) Effect of FZB24 *Bacillus subtilis* as a biofertilizer on cotton yields in field tests. Arch Phytopathol Plant Prot 39:1–6

Zehnder GW, Murphy JF, Sikora EJ, Kloepper JW (2001) Application of rhizobacteria for induced resistance. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:39–50

Zhang H, Kim MS, Krishnamachari V, Payton P, Sun Y, Grimson M et al (2007) Rhizobacterial volatile emissions regulate auxin homeostasis and cell expansion in *Arabidopsis*. Planta 226:839–851

Zhuang X, Chen J, Shim H, Bai Z (2007) New advances in plant-growth promoting rhizobacteria for bioremediation. Environ Int 93:406–414

Chapter 4
Mechanisms of Fluorescent Pseudomonads That Mediate Biological Control of Phytopathogens and Plant Growth Promotion of Crop Plants

J. Pathma, R. Kamaraj Kennedy, and N. Sakthivel

4.1 Introduction

Fluorescent pseudomonads are nonenteric, Gram-negative, aerobic, straight, or slightly curved rods, which are nonfermenting and motile belonging to γ-proteobacteria (Galli et al. 1992). They are pervasive bacteria which are common inhabitants of soil, water, and phyllosphere but predominant in plant rhizosphere due to the exudation of organic acids, sugars, and amino acids (Lugtenberg and Dekkers 1999). Fluorescent pseudomonads are the most promising group of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) involved in biocontrol of plant diseases. This group of bacteria also includes a few pathogens and biodegraders. Saprophytic fluorescent pseudomonads are typical inhabitants of agricultural field soils and plant rhizosphere and are involved in several interactions with plants (Schroth et al. 1992). They are capable of utilizing many plant exudates as nutrient (Lugtenberg et al. 1999) and are known to possess important traits in bacterial fitness such as the ability to adhere to soil particles and to the rhizoplane, motility, and prototrophy (de Weger et al. 1994). Members of the genus *Pseudomonas* have very simple nutritional requirements and grow well under normal conditions in mixed populations with other types of microorganisms (Foster 1988). They are metabolically and functionally diverse and promote plant growth directly by phosphorus solubilization, sequestration of iron for plants by siderophores, production of phytohormones (Salisbury 1994; Ayyadurai et al. 2006, 2007; Ravindra Naik and Sakthivel 2006; Ravindra Naik et al. 2008), and lowering of plant ethylene levels (Glick 1995; Glick et al. 1999), and indirectly by suppressing pathogenic microorganisms through antibiotic production (Thomashow et al. 1990; Ayyadurai et al. 2006, 2007; Ravindra Naik and Sakthivel 2006; Ravindra Naik et al. 2008;

J. Pathma • R. Kamaraj kennedy • N. Sakthivel (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Pondicherry University, Kalapet, Puducherry 605014, India
e-mail: puns2005@gmail.com

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_4,

Jha et al. 2009), reduction of iron available to phytopathogens in the rhizosphere (Scher and Baker 1982), synthesis of fungal cell wall-degrading enzymes, and competition with detrimental microorganisms for sites on plant roots. Additionally, fluorescent pseudomonads are capable of inducing a systemic resistance in plants against various phytopathogens (Van Loon et al. 1998; Pieterse et al. 2001). All these traits make fluorescent pseudomonads suitable for application as biological control agents (Sands and Rovira 1971).

Fluorescent pseudomonads are the extensively studied group within the genus *Pseudomonas*. They comprise *P. aeruginosa*, the type species of the genus; *P. aureofaciens*, *P. chlororaphis*, *P. putida* (two biotypes), *P. fluorescens* (four biotypes), and the plant pathogenic species *P. cichorii* and *P. syringae* (Leisinger and Margraff 1979). *Pseudomonas* strains are characterized on the basis of their nutritional features as well as by other phenotypic traits into species and species groups (Stanier et al. 1966). Conclusions of this study were supported by numerical analysis (Sneath et al. 1981) and DNA–DNA hybridization (Palleroni and Doudoroff 1972). The rRNA–DNA hybridizations that revealed five rRNA homology clusters: rRNA groups and all fluorescent pseudomonads fall into one of the five rRNA group (Palleroni et al. 1973). The Guanine-plus-Cytosine (G + C) content of their DNA ranges from 58 to 68 mol% (Palleroni 1975). *P. fluorescens* biovar III has been reported as dominant group of bacteria among fluorescent pseudomonads associated with rhizosphere of rice, the most important food crop of the world (Sakthivel and Gnanamanickam 1989). *P. fluorescens* biovar V constituted more than 75% of fluorescent pseudomonads in at least some areas of the world (Barrett et al. 1986) and represented as the predominant group in Australian soils and wheat rhizosphere (Sands and Rovira 1971). Nearly 90% of fluorescent pseudomonads in Colombia was reported to be *P. putida* (Hernandez et al. 1986). Thus, vast microbial diversity occurs among fluorescent pseudomonads in different geographic origins and this group of bacteria exhibits an array of mechanisms that mediate biocontrol of pathogens and growth promotion of crops.

4.2 Biocontrol Mechanisms

Biocontrol mechanisms such as production of fungal cell wall-degrading enzymes (Lim et al. 1991; Nielsen et al. 1998; Nielsen and Sorensen 1999; Ellis et al. 2000), antimicrobial compounds (James and Gutterson 1986; Gutterson et al. 1988; Thomashow et al. 1990; Natsch et al. 1994), namely, phenazines (Gurusiddaiah et al. 1986; Pierson and Thomashow 1992; Sunish Kumar et al. 2005), phloroglucinols (Dwivedi and Johri 2003), pyrrols (Homma and Suzui 1989; Pfender et al. 1993), polyketides (Kraus and Loper 1995), and peptides (Nielsen et al. 1999, 2000; Sorensen et al. 2001), hydrogen cyanide (Castric 1981; Bagnasco et al. 1998; Rodriguez and Fraga 1999; Siddiqui 2006), siderophores (Hamdan et al. 1991; Meyer et al. 2002), cell wall components (Meziane et al. 2005; Van Loon 2008), competition (van Loon et al. 1998), and induced resistance (van Loon et al. 1998)

also have been identified. Sigma factor genes, *rpoD* and *rpoS*, have been reported to control antibiotic production and enhance the antagonistic activities of fluorescent *Pseudomonas* (Fujita et al. 1994).

A large number of fluorescent pseudomonad species such as *P. putida* (de Freitas and Germida 1991), *P. fluorescens* (Sakthivel and Gnanamanickam 1987), *P. aeruginosa* (Anjaiah et al. 2003; Sunish Kumar et al. 2005), *P. aureofaciens* (now considered as *P. chlororaphis*) (Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998), and *P. pyrrocinia* (de Weger et al. 1986) have been well documented for their antagonistic potential. Specific strains such as *P. fluorescens* 2-79, Pf-5, 96.578, DR 54, *P. aeruginosa* 7NSK2, PNA1, *P. aureofaciens* 30-84, and *P. chlororaphis* PCL1391 suppress disease severities caused by plant pathogens in cotton (Howell and Stipanovic 1980), rice (Mew and Rossales 1986; Sakthivel and Gnanamanickam 1987; Rosales et al. 1995), wheat (Weller and Cook 1983; Weller et al. 1985; Rovira and McDonald 1986), barley (Rovira and McDonald 1986; Iswandi et al. 1987), tomato (Buysens et al. 1996; Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998), potato (Burr et al. 1978; Kloepper et al. 1980; Bakker and Schippers 1987), radish (Kloepper and Schroth 1978; Homma and Suzui 1989), sugar beet (Suslow and Schroth 1982; Nielsen et al. 2000; Thrane et al. 2000, 2001), cassava (Hernandez et al. 1986), chickpea (Anjaiah et al. 2003), soybean (Cattelan et al. 1999), tobacco (Keel et al. 1990), and apple and pears (Jamisiewicz et al. 1991). Antimicrobial metabolites and enzymes produced by fluorescent pseudomonads are listed in Table 4.1.

4.2.1 Fungal Cell Wall-Degrading Enzymes

Production of fungal cell wall-degrading enzymes by microorganisms is frequently involved in the attack of phytopathogenic fungi (Martin and Loper 1999; Nielsen and Sorensen 1999; Picard et al. 2000). Lysis by cell wall-degrading enzymes excreted by microorganisms is a well-known feature of mycoparasitism. Chitinase, β-1,3 glucanase, and cellulase are especially important fungus controlling enzymes due to their ability to degrade the fungal cell wall components such as chitin, β-1,3 glucan, and glucosidic bonds (Potgieter and Alexander 1966; Bartnicki-Garcia and Lippman 1973; Schroth and Hancock 1981; Chet 1987; Lorito et al. 1996). Chitinase excreting microorganisms have been reported as efficient biocontrol agents (Sneh 1981; Ordentlich et al. 1988; Inbar and Chet 1991). Role of chitinase in biological control as well as in plant defense mechanisms has been documented well (Shapira et al. 1989). Nielsen et al. (1998) reported that in the sugar beet rhizosphere fluorescent pseudomonads inhibit plant pathogenic fungi *Rhizoctonia solani* by production of cell wall-degrading endochitinase. Biological control of *Fusarium solani*, mainly via laminarinase and chitinase activities of *P. stutzeri* YPL-1, has been reported (Lim et al. 1991). Fridlender et al. (1993) reported that β-1,3 glucanase-producing *P. cepacia* decreased the incidence of diseases caused by *R. solani*, *S. rolfsii*, and *P. ultimum*.

Table 4.1 Antimicrobial metabolites and enzymes produced by fluorescent pseudomonads

Metabolite/enzymes	Producer strain	References
Fungal cell wall-degrading enzymes		
	P. stutzeri YPL-1	Lim et al. (1991)
Chitinase	*P. aeruginosa* P10	Ayyadurai et al. (2007)
β-1,3 Glucanase	*P. cepacia*	Fridlender et al. (1993)
Laminarinase	*P. stutzeri* YPL-1	Lim et al. (1991)
Phenazines		
	P. fluorescens 2-79	Thomashow and Weller (1988)
Phenazine-1-carboxylic acid	*P. aureofaciens* 30-84	Pierson and Thomashow (1992)
Phenazine-1-carboxamide	*P. aeruginosa* PUPa3	Sunish Kumar et al. (2005)
Dimer of phenazine-1-carboxylic acid	*P. fluorescens* Pf23	Sakthivel and Sunish Kumar (2008)
Pyocyanin	*P. aeruginosa* PAO1	Baron et al. (1997)
Phloroglucinols		
	P. fluorescens Pf-5	Howell and Stipanovic (1979)
	P. fluorescens Q2-87	Vincent et al. (1991)
	P. fluorescens CHAO	Keel et al. (1992)
	P. fluorescens PFM2	Levy et al. (1992)
	P. fluorescens Q8r1-96	Shanahan et al. (1992); Flaishman et al. (1990)
2,4-Diacetyl phloroglucinol	*P. fluorescens* F113	Raaijmakers and Weller (2001)
Pyrrols		
	P. fluorescens BL914	Kirner et al. (1998)
	P. aureofaciens A10338.7	Elander et al. (1968)
	P. cepacia 5.5B	Cartwright et al. (1995)
Pyrrolnitrin	*P. fluorescens* BL915	Ligon et al. (2000)
Polyketides		
	P. fluorescens Pf-5	Howell and Stipanovic (1979)
Pyoluteorin	*P. fluorescens* CHA0	Keel et al. (1992)
Mupirocin	*P. fluorescens* NCIMB10586	El-Sayed et al. (2003)
2,3-Deepoxy-2,3-didehydro rhizoxin	*P. borealis* MA342	Tombolini et al. (1999)
Rhizoxin analogues	*P. fluorescens* Pf-5	Loper et al. (2008)
Peptides		
Tensin	*P. fluorescens* 96.578	Nielsen et al. (2000)
Viscosinamide	*P. fluorescens* DR54	Nielsen et al. (1998)
Amphisin	*Pseudomonas* sp. DSS73	Sorensen et al. (2001)
Masstolides	*P. fluorescens* SS101	de Bruijn et al. (2008)
Volatiles		
	P. fluorescens Pf-5	Voisard et al. (1981)
	P. fluorescens P5, P7, P8, P21	Ayyadurai et al. (2007)
Hydrogen cyanide	*P. pseudoalcaligenes* P4	Ayyadurai et al. (2007)

4.2.2 *Antifungal Metabolites*

Production of an array of antifungal metabolites (James and Gutterson 1986; Gutterson et al. 1988; Thomashow et al. 1990) by fluorescent pseudomonads is considered one of the most important biocontrol traits. With the advent of recombinant DNA technologies, the importance of antibiotic production in biocontrol of fluorescent pseudomonads has been demonstrated using antibiotic-deficient mutants and concerted efforts have been made to study the antifungal metabolites such as phenazines (Gurusiddaiah et al. 1986; Thomashow and Weller 1988; Pierson and Thomashow 1992; Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998), phenolics (Keel et al. 1990, 1992; Vincent et al. 1991), pyrrole-type compounds (Homma and Suzui 1989; Pfender et al. 1993), polyketides (Nowak-Thompson et al. 1994; Kraus and Loper 1995), and peptides (Nielsen et al. 1999, 2000; Sorensen et al. 2001). Antibiotic producing fluorescent pseudomonads, *P. fluorescens* 2-79, Pf-5, CHA0, 96.578, DR 54 (Thomashow et al. 1990; Keel et al. 1992; Nowak-Thompson et al. 1994; Nielsen et al. 1999, 2000), *P. aureofaciens* 30-84 (Pierson and Thomashow 1992), and *P. chlororaphis* PCL1391 (Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998) with varying degree of biocontrol ability have been reported.

4.2.2.1 Phenazines

Phenazines are intensely colored N-containing heterocyclic pigments synthesized by different bacterial strains (Leisinger and Margraff 1979; Budzikiewicz 1993; Stevans et al. 1994). Phenazines exhibit broad-spectrum activity against bacteria and fungi (Sunish Kumar et al. 2005; Ayyadurai et al. 2006, 2007; Ravindra Naik and Sakthivel 2006; Ravindra Naik et al. 2008). Phenazines also play an important role of microbial competition in rhizosphere, including survival and competence (Mazzola et al. 1992). Phenazine-1-carboxylic acid (PCA) has been reported from fluorescent pseudomonads such as *P. fluorescens* (Gurusiddaiah et al. 1986), *P. chlororaphis* (Pierson and Thomashow 1992), and *P. aeruginosa* (Anjaiah et al. 1998). PCA was demonstrated to be effective against various fungal pathogens such as *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*, *Pythium* sp., *Polyporus* sp., and *R. solani* and bacterial pathogens such as *Actinomyces viscosus*, *Bacillus subtilis*, and *Erwinia amylovora* (Gurusiddaiah et al. 1986; Thomashow et al. 1990). Production of phenazine-1-carboxamide (PCN) had been reported in fluorescent pseudomonads such as *P. aeruginosa* and *P. chlororaphis* (Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998; Mavrodi et al. 2001; Sunish Kumar et al. 2005). PCN differs from PCA with a carboxamide ($CONH_2$) group replacing the carboxyl (COOH) group at the first position of the phenazine core. PCN is more stable than PCA and exhibits antifungal activities even in alkaline pH (Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998). Pyocyanin is bluish colored (1-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenazine) and predominantly produced by *P. aeruginosa* (Demange et al. 1987). The antibiotic cyanomycin, from *Streptomyces cyanoflavus* (Funaki et al. 1958), is also known as pyocyanin (Turner and Messenger

1986). Pyocyanin is toxic to a wide range of fungi including *Septoria tritici* and bacteria (Baron et al. 1989; Baron and Rowe 1981; Flaishman et al. 1990; Hassan and Fridovich 1980). Broad-spectrum antifungal activity of PCN has been shown toward the phytopathogens *Pythium*, *Fusarium oxysporum* f.sp. *radiciopersici*, *Sarocladium oryzae*, and *R. solani* (Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998; Sunish Kumar et al. 2005).

4.2.2.2 Phloroglucinols

Phloroglucinols are broad-spectrum antibiotics produced by a variety of bacterial strains. Phloroglucinols are known to induce systemic resistance in plants, thus serving as a specific elicitor of phytoalexins and other similar molecules (Dwivedi and Johri 2003). Production of phenolic antibiotic, 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (DAPG), has been reported from *P. fluorescens* Pf-5, *P. fluorescens* CHA0, and *P. fluorescens* Q2-87 (Fenton et al. 1992; Rosales et al. 1995). The broad-spectrum antimicrobial activity of DAPG produced by fluorescent pseudomonads has drawn great attention in agriculture due to its ability to suppress plant pathogens and play a key role in the biological control (Keel et al. 1992; Thomashow and Weller 1988; Duffy and Defago 1997; Duffy et al. 2004). DAPG-producing strains such as *P. fluorescens* Pf5, CHA0, F113, Q2-87, and Q8r1-96 (Howell and Stipanovic 1980; Vincent et al. 1991; Harrison et al. 1993; Pierson and Weller 1994; Cronin et al. 1997; Raaijmakers and Weller 1998; Duffy and Defago 1999) have been used to suppress the black root rot of tobacco, root rot of tomato, *Pythium* damping-off of cucumber and sugar beet, cyst nematode and soft rot of potato, and take-all disease of wheat. The antagonistic fluorescent pseudomonads producing DAPG that inhabit in banana rhizosphere have been studied earlier (Banerjee and Langhe 1985; Sutra et al. 2000). DAPG is found to exhibit antifungal, antibacterial, and antihelminthic activities (Vincent et al. 1991; Keel et al. 1992; Levy et al. 1992; Harrison et al. 1993; Nowak-Thompson et al. 1994; Bangera and Thomashow 1996; Abbas et al. 2002) as well as phytotoxic properties (Reddi et al. 1969). The compound also exhibits herbicidal activity resembling 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D), a commonly used post-emergence herbicide for the control of many annual broad leaf weeds of cereals, sugarcane, and plantation crops.

4.2.2.3 Pyrrols

Pyrrolnitrin (PRN) (3-chloro-4-(2′-nitro-3′-chlorophenyl) pyrrole) is a broad-spectrum antifungal metabolite first described by Arima et al. (1964). PRN is a secondary metabolite derived from L-tryptophan. It is produced by fluorescent pseudomonads such as *P. fluorescens* (Kirner et al. 1998) and *P. aureofaciens* (Elander et al. 1968). Other variants of PRN such as isopyrrolnitrin, oxypyrrolnitrin, and monodechloropyrrolnitrin have lower antifungal activity. PRN is active against a wide range of deuteromycete, ascomycete, and basidiomycete fungi. PRN has found

its applications in agricultural fungicide as a clinical compound. *P. fluorescens* BL915 has been reported as biocontrol agent in cotton for the suppression of *R. solani* (Ligon et al. 2000). *P. cepacia* 5.5B showed a broad-spectrum antifungal activity toward phytopathogenic fungi including *R. solani* (Cartwright et al. 1995). PRN was also reported as a topical antimycotic for human use and served as a lead molecule for pharmaceutical research.

4.2.2.4 Polyketides

Pyoluteorin (PLT) is the chlorinated antifungal metabolite of mixed polyketide/amino acid origin produced by certain strains of *Pseudomonas* spp. including soil bacterium, *P. fluorescens* Pf-5 (Maurhofer et al. 1992, 1994a; Kraus and Loper 1995; Nowak-Thompson et al. 1997). Strains producing PLT suppress several soil-borne plant diseases (Howell and Stipanovic 1980; Defago et al. 1990; Maurhofer et al. 1994b). PLT is found to be more effective against the damping-off disease causing oomycete, *P. ultimum* (Maurhofer et al. 1992). The mode of its antimicrobial activity is by the selective inhibition of bacterial isoleucyl-tRNA synthetase (Bennett et al. 1999). Mupirocin, the naturally occurring polyketide antibiotic of fluorescent pseudomonads, is also known as pseudomonic acid. Mupirocin produced by *P. fluorescens* NCIMB 10586 is highly active against *Staphylococcus aureus* and a variety of Gram-positive organisms (El-sayed et al. 2003). Mupirocin is also used as a tropical and intranasal antibiotic (Carcanague 1997). The metabolite 2,3-deepoxy-2,3-didehydrorhizoxin (DDR) produced by *P. chlororaphis* MA342 is effective against several phytopathogenic fungi, including net blotch of barley caused by the fungus *Drechslera teres* (Tombolini et al. 1999). Through the insertional mutagenesis and subsequent metabolite profiling in *P. fluorescens* Pf-5, five analogues of rhizoxin, a 16-member macrolides with antifungal, phytotoxic, and antitumor activities were identified as products synthesized from a hybrid polyketide synthase or nonribosomal peptide synthetase gene clusters. The five rhizoxin analogues were reported to show differential toxicity toward two agriculturally important plant pathogens: *Botrytis cinerea* and *Phytophthora ramorum*. The rhizoxin analogues were also reported to cause swelling of rice roots, a symptom characteristic of rhizoxin itself, but were less toxic to pea and cucumber roots. The predominant compound WF-1360 F rhizoxin analogue and the newly described compound 22*Z*-WF-1360 F were reported as most toxic against the two plant pathogens and three plant species. Upon further testing against a panel of human cancer lines, rhizoxin analogues reported to exhibit potent but nonselective cytotoxicity (Loper et al. 2008).

4.2.2.5 Peptide Antibiotics

Peptide antibiotics are predominately produced in both Gram-positive (Katz and Demain 1977) and Gram-negative bacteria (Dowling and O'Gara 1994) by

a nonribosomal multienzymatic peptide synthesis (Kleinkauf and von Dohren 1990). Recently, it has been observed that fluorescent pseudomonads produce a number of different cyclic lipopeptides (CLPs), which are useful in biological control. It is also found that CLP production is a common trait among fluorescent pseudomonads isolated from sugar beet rhizosphere (Nielsen et al. 2002). Cyclic lipodecapeptide, tensin, is produced by *P. fluorescens* 96.578 (Nielsen et al. 2000). Tensin showed potent antagonistic activity against the basidiomycete fungus, *R. solani*. Significant reduction of *R. solani* infection was found in sugar beet seeds treated with tensin-producing strain *P. fluorescens* 96.578 (Nielsen et al. 2000). The mode of action of tensin on *R. solani* is still not clearly perceived. However, it is proposed that the activity might be in synergism with chitinolytic or cell wall-degrading enzymes produced by *P. fluorescens* 96.578 (Nielsen and Sorensen 1999; Nielsen et al. 2000). Viscosinamide is a cyclic lipopeptide produced by *P. fluorescens* DR54 (Nielsen et al. 1999). This compound shows prominent antifungal and biosurfactant properties (Nielsen et al. 2000, 2002; Thrane et al. 2000). It is highly effective against *R. solani*. When *R. solani* mycelium was challenged with purified viscosinamide under in vitro conditions, a number of growth modifications at hyphal tips such as increased branching, swelling, and septation leading to inhibition in radial growth were observed (Thrane et al. 2000). In soil conditions, viscosinamide-producing *P. fluorescens* DR54 is found to reduce the mycelial biomass and sclerotia formation by *R. solani* close to the seed or seedling root surfaces, thus making the fungal biomass inadequate for infection (Thrane et al. 2001). Amphisin is a lipoundecapeptide originating from the nonribosomal biosynthesis by *Pseudomonas* sp. DSS73 (Sorensen et al. 2001). The primary structure is β-hydroxydecanoyl-D-Leu-D-Asp-D-*allo*-Thr-D-Leu-D-Leu-D-Ser-L-Leu-D-Gln-L-Leu-L-Ile-L-Asp.The peptide is a lactone, linking Thr4 Oγ to the C-terminal. It is a close analogue of the cyclic lipopeptides tensin and polypeptin produced by *P. fluorescens* (Nielsen et al. 2000; Sorensen et al. 2001). The antifungal activity of amphisin is found to be more than that of other fluorescent pseudomonad peptide antibiotics such as tensin and viscosinamide (Nielsen et al. 2002). Massetolides are cyclic lipopeptide antibiotics produced by various *Pseudomonas* strains. Three genes were found to be involved in the massetolide A biosynthesis in *P. fluorescens* strain SS101. Massetolide A production is essential in swarming motility of *P. fluorescens* SS101 and plays an important role in biofilm formation (de Bruijn et al. 2008).

4.2.3 Hydrogen Cyanide

Certain strains such as pseudomonads produce hydrogen cyanide (HCN), a volatile antibiotic (Castric 1981), which helps in disease suppression (Bagnasco et al. 1998; Rodriguez and Fraga 1999; Siddiqui 2006; Voisard et al. 1981; Sacherer et al. 1994). HCN and CO_2 are formed from glycine and catalyzed by HCN synthase (Castric 1994). HCN was recognized as the biocontrol factor of *P. fluorescens*

CHA0 as it played an indispensible role in suppression of black root rot of tobacco caused by the fungus *Thielaviopsis basicola* (Voisard et al. 1981) and take-all disease of wheat caused by *G. graminis var. tritici*. However, few reports indicated that the HCN production was detrimental to growth of certain plants and it resulted in reduction of potato yields (Bakker and Schippers 1987). Few strains of fluorescent pseudomonads which failed to exhibit any antagonism in vitro toward *Pythium* and *Rhizoctonia* established successful biological control toward them in field (Kloepper et al. 1991; Lifshitz et al. 1987). Thus, disease suppression by HCN-producing fluorescent pseudomonads may be in part due to the induction of plant resistance (O'Sullivan and O'Gara 1992). Nearly a total of 800 plant species have been reported to liberate cyanide when wounded or attacked by a phytopathogen and thus suppress the cyanide-sensitive pathogens (Mansfield 1983). However, few fungal pathogens of cyanogenic plants are tolerant to cyanide because they can detoxify it by converting it to formamide (Van Etten and Kistler 1984).

4.2.4 Siderophores and Pathogen Suppression

Several species of fluorescent pseudomonads produce a range of iron complexing agents, the siderophores, under iron-limiting conditions, which have a very high affinity for ferric iron. Siderophores reported from pseudomonads so far include pyoverdines, pyochelin, quinolobactin, and ornicorrugatin. Several pyoverdines consisting of a shared dihydroxy-quinoline chromophore joined to an acyl (carboxylic acid or amide) group and a 6–12 amino acid type-specific peptide have been characterized (Budzikiewicz 1993; Meyer 2000; Lamont and Martin 2003). Pyoverdines and pseudobactins produced by a single strain have the same peptide but differ in the nature of acyl group. Fe^{3+} binding sites of pyoverdine are present in the quinoline chromophore and the peptide chain (Budzikiewicz 1993). Strains of pseudomonads utilize heterologous pyoverdines and pseudobactins for iron acquisition and the spectrum of ferrisiderophores used forms the basis of strain identification method termed siderotyping (Meyer et al. 2002; Lamont and Martin 2003). Pyoverdines can be identified by their UV Visible absorption spectrum. The Fe^{3+} complexes show absorption maximum at 400, 320, and 280 nm in correlation with the quinoline system (Poppe et al. 1987). Pyochelins frequently accompany pyoverdines and seem to be responsible for second iron transport system. Pyochelins are implicated to have similar antifungal activities to that of pyoverdines through minimizing availability of iron to other plant deleterious microorganisms. The abundant production of pyochelins was reported in *P. aeruginosa* (Cox et al. 1981). *P. fluorescens* ATCC 17400 has shown to produce quinolobactin siderophore in addition to pyoverdine, which itself results from the hydrolysis of the unstable molecule thioquinolobactin.

P. fluorescens ATCC 17400 was identified as antagonist against the oomycete, *Pythium* sp., which is repressed by iron, suggesting the involvement of siderophores

(Matthijs et al. 2007). A new class of lipopeptidic siderophore, ornicorrugatin, was known to be produced by a pyoverdine-negative mutant of *P. fluorescens* AF76. It is structurally related to the siderophore of *P. corrugata* differing in the replacement of one Dab unit by Orn (Matthijs et al. 2008). Siderophores are thought to sequester the limited iron supply available in the rhizosphere making it unavailable to harmful pathogenic fungi and thereby suppressing fungal growth (Keel et al. 1992). Siderophores such as pyoverdine and pyochelin have been documented well for suppression of *Pythium*-induced damping-off disease of tomato (Buysens et al. 1996). However, it is generally suggested that siderophores of fluorescent pseudomonads do not play a role in biocontrol in iron-rich soils (Campbell et al. 1986). The bacterial iron complexing agents, pyoverdine and salicylate may also act as elicitors for inducing systemic resistance against pathogens in tobacco (Maurhofer et al. 1998; van Loon et al. 1998).

4.2.5 Competition

Biocontrol competition refers to the ability of the beneficial organisms to compete with other harmful organisms and effectively scavenge and utilize the available nutrients and suitable niches, so that it constitutes a significant proportion of the rhizosphere–rhizoplane population (Hattori 1988). Competition for nutrients varies between different rhizospheres depending on the available sources of carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphate, and micronutrients. Competitive exclusion of deleterious organisms in the plant rhizosphere by fluorescent pseudomonads is considered as a significant pathogen-suppressive biocontrol trait (O'Sullivan and O'Gara 1992). Biocontrol of *Fusarium* (Elad and Baker 1985) and *Pythium* (Elad and Chet 1987) species by fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. involves competition. Variations occur in the ability of different fluorescent pseudomonads to colonize a particular root niche (de Weger et al. 1987; Kloepper et al. 1980; Loper et al. 1985; Stephens et al. 1987; van Peer and Schippers 1988). Better root-colonizing ability of the strain is an integration of various factors (de Weger and Lugtenberg 1990; Lam 1990; Weller 1988). Also, various environmental factors such as water content, temperature, pH, soil types, composition of root exudates, mineral content, and other microorganisms confront an organism when it colonizes the root. Fluorescent pseudomonad strain in potato rhizosphere was greater by tenfold in a sandy loam soil than in a clay loam soil (Bahme and Schroth 1987). Variations in colonization potential of different strains of fluorescent pseudomonads can be due in part to specific cell killing by other biological entities such as predaceous protozoans (Acea and Alexander 1988), bacteriophages (Stephens et al. 1987), and *Bdellovibrio* sp., an obligate parasite of some soil Gram-negative bacteria (Scherff 1973). Flagellation is another important requirement for good colonization under certain circumstances (O'Sullivan and O'Gara 1992).

4.2.6 Cell Wall Components

Cell surface components, namely, lipopolysaccharides (LPS) and flagellins have been reported as potent determinants of ISR in plants (Meziane et al. 2005; Van Loon 2008). LPS are indispensable cell wall components of Gram-negative bacteria and have been implicated in the induction of systemic resistance (Dow et al. 2000; Leeman et al. 1995b; Van Loon et al. 1998). Flagellins, the main components of bacterial flagella, are reported to elicit defense responses in plants (Gomez-Gomez and Boller 2000; Zipfel et al. 2004). The outer membrane LPS of biocontrol strains *P. putida* WCS358 (Bakker et al. 2003; Meziane et al. 2005), *P. fluorescens* WCS374 (Leeman et al. 1995b, 1996), and *P. fluorescens* WCS417 (van Peer and Schippers 1992; Leeman et al. 1995a, 1996) and the flagella of *P. putida* WCS358 (Bakker et al. 2003; Meziane et al. 2005) are reported as important components involved in elicitation of ISR. *P. putida* WCS358 and *P. fluorescens* WCS417 and WCS374 were reported to show differential resistance-inducing activities on arabidopsis, tomato, and bean (Bakker et al. 2007). LPS of *P. fluorescens* WCS374 apart from inducing systemic resistance against *Fusarium* wilt diseases of radish (Leeman et al. 1995b) also enhanced its colonization in tomato (Dekkers et al. 1998). The O-antigen of LPS has been shown to be involved in induced systemic resistance of plants, thereby enhancing defense activities against pathogen attack (Van Peer and Schippers 1992). Also, LPS and flagellin are stronger inducers of the oxidative burst, which in turn elicits plants defense mechanisms (Van Loon 2008).

4.2.7 Induced Systemic Resistance

Colonization of the rhizosphere by certain bacteria such as nonpathogenic *Pseudomonas* can trigger a systemic resistance in plants by activating the plants' defense mechanisms phenotypically similar to pathogen-induced systemic acquired resistance (SAR) and this form of induced resistance is referred as rhizobacteria-mediated induced systemic resistance (ISR). Bacterial LPS, siderophores, and salicylic acid (SA) are found to be determinants of ISR. Similar to SAR, ISR is effective against different types of pathogens but differs from SAR in that the inducing PGPRs do not cause visible symptoms on the host plant (van Loon et al. 1998). Scientific studies shows that when PGPRs are applied to seeds or roots, their defense mechanisms are activated (Van Peer et al. 1991). Fluorescent pseudomonads are also involved in the induction of plant resistance against insects and nematodes (Renwick et al. 1991; Zahnder et al. 2001) and specific metabolites produced by these bacteria have been involved in elicitation of defense reactions of the host plants (Van Loon et al. 1998). Similar to classical induced resistance, PGPR-induced resistance is known to produce broad-spectrum resistance, which is correlated with increased amounts of pathogenesis-related (PR) proteins, peroxidases, chitinases, and β-1,3-glucanase in plant tissue. Root colonization by

P. fluorescens CHAO and its derivatives correlates with increased amounts of salicylic acid, a putative resistance signal in leaves (Maurhofer et al. 1994a). ISR is effective under field conditions and offers a natural mechanism for biological control of plant disease.

Research findings revealed that *P. fluorescens* WCS417r-mediated ISR has been found effective against a wide range of pathogens, namely, *F. oxysporum* causing vascular wilts in arabidopsis (Pieterse et al. 1996), carnation (Van Peer et al. 1991), and radish (Leeman et al. 1996), *Alternaria brassicicola* and *Pseudomonas syringae pv. tomato* causing necrotic lesions in radish (Hoffland et al. 1996), and *P. syringae pv. tomato* causing bacterial speck in *Arabidopsis* (Pieterse et al. 1996). *P. putida* 89B–27 offered resistance against *Colletotrichum orbiculare* (Wei et al. 1991), Cucumber mosaic virus (Raupach et al. 1996), *Erwinia tracheiphila* (Kloepper et al. 1993), *F. oxysporum* f.sp. *cucumerinum* (Liu et al. 1995a), and *F. oxysporum* f.sp. *lachrymans* (Liu et al. 1995b) in cucumber. *P. fluorescens* CHAO induced systemic resistance against disease caused by *Thielaviopsis basicola* (Troxler et al. 1997) and Tobacco necrosis virus (Maurhofer et al. 1994a) in tobacco. *P. aeruginosa* 7NSK2 provided resistance against Tobacco mosaic virus (De Meyer and Hofte 1997), while *P. corrugata* 13 and *P. fluorescens* C15 induced resistance in cucumber to crown rot caused by *Pythium aphanidermatum* (Zhou and Paulitz 1994).

4.3 Plant Growth Promotion Mechanisms

Plant growth-promoting ability of these bacteria is due to the production of siderophore (Neilands and Leong 1986; Becker and Cook 1988; Loper 1988), phosphatase (Katznelson and Bose 1959), phytohormones (Keel et al. 1992; O'Sullivan and O'Gara 1992; Salisbury 1994; Patten and Glick 2002), 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase (Preisfeld et al. 2001; Penrose and Glick 2003), and cytokinins (Garcia de Salamone et al. 2001). A number of different fluorescent pseudomonad species such as *P. putida* (Scher and Baker 1982), *P. aeruginosa* (Bano and Musarrat 2003; Sunish Kumar et al. 2005), *P. chlororaphis* (Chin-A-Woeng et al. 1998), and *P. cepacia* (Cattelan et al. 1999) have been reported as PGPR as well as biocontrol strains against phytopathogenic fungi (Garcia de Salamone et al. 2001). Pigments, enzymes, and hormones produced by fluorescent pseudomonads that promote plant growth are listed in Table 4.2.

4.3.1 Phosphate Solubilization

Phosphate solubilizing bacteria are common in the rhizosphere. Secretion of organic acids and phosphatase are common methods of facilitating the conversion of insoluble forms of phosphorus to plant-available forms (Kim et al. 1998; Richardson et al. 2001). Fluorescent pseudomonad species such as *P. chlororaphis*,

Table 4.2 Pigments, enzymes and hormones by fluorescent pseudomonads

Pigments/enzymes/hormones	Producer strain	References
Siderophores		
	P. fluorescens 3551	Loper (1988)
	P. fluorescens CHAO	Maurhofer et al. (1994b)
Pyoverdine	*P. putida* WCS358	Van Wees et al. (1997)
	P. aeruginosa PAO-1	Cox et al. (1981)
	P. fluorescens CHAO	Buysens et al. (1996)
Pyochelin	*P. aeruginosa* 7NSK2	Buysens et al. (1996)
	P. stutzeri KC	Lewis et al. (2000)
	P. fluorescens ATCC 17400	Mossialos et al. (2000)
Pseudomonine	*P. fluorescens* WCS374	Mercado-Blanco et al. (2001)
	P. chlororaphis GN212	Cattelan et al. (1999)
	P. aeruginosa NJ-15	Bano and Musarrat (2003)
	P. aeruginosa PUPa3	Sunish Kumar et al. (2005)
	P. aeruginosa FP10	Ayyadurai et al. (2006)
	P. monteilii FPB59, FPB63	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
	P. plecoglossicida FPB31	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
	P. fluoresens FP7, FP14	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
	P. fulva FP23	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
	P. putida FP2, FP3	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
Phosphatase	*P. mosselii* FP13	Jha et al. (2009)
	P. stutzeri	Gamble et al. (1977)
Denitrifying enzymes	*P. fluorescens* YT101, RTC01	Philippot et al. (1995)
	P. putida GR12-2	Patten and Glick (2002)
	P. aeruginosa PUPa3	Sunish Kumar et al. (2005)
	P. aeruginosa FP10	Ayyadurai et al. (2006)
	P. aeruginosa FPB9, FPB15	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
	P. mosselli FP13	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
Indole-3-acetic acid	*P. monteilii* FPB21	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)
Cytokinins	*P. fluorescens* G20-18	Garcia de Salamone et al. (2001)
1-Aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase	*P. putida* GR12-2	Glick et al. (1994)
	P. aeruginosa Pw60, Pw61	Ravindra Naik et al. (2008)

P. putida, *P. aeruginosa*, *P. monteilii*, *P. plecoglossicida*, *P. fluorescens*, *P. fulva*, and *P. mosselii* have been identified as phosphate solubilizing rhizobacteria (Gaur 1990; Cattelan et al. 1999; Bano and Musarrat 2003; Sunish Kumar et al. 2005; Ravindra Naik et al. 2008; Jha et al. 2009).

4.3.2 Denitrification

Denitrification is an important microbial process in which oxidized nitrogen compounds are used as alternative electron acceptors for energy production when oxygen is limited. Denitrification consists of four reactions by which nitrates are

reduced to dinitrogen by the metalloenzymes such as nitrate reductase, nitrite reductase, nitric oxide reductase, and nitrous oxide reductase. Fluorescent pseudomonads are the most common denitrifiers isolated from temperate soils (Gamble et al. 1977). Fluorescent pseudomonads are able to adapt to limited oxygen conditions by using nitrogen oxides as alternative electron acceptors (Stewart 1988). Respiratory nitrate and nitrite reductase have been described to implicate in the competitiveness of model strains of fluorescent pseudomonad in soil (Philippot et al. 1995; Ghiglione et al. 2000).

4.3.3 Siderophores and Growth Promotion

As described in the earlier section, siderophores are low-molecular-weight ferric-specific chelation agent synthesized and secreted to solubilize iron (Neilands 1981; Abd-Alla 1998). These microbial siderophores stimulate plant growth directly by increasing the iron availability in rhizosphere soil and indirectly by competitive inhibition of growth of phytopathogen with less efficient iron uptake system (Marek-Kozaczuk et al. 1996). Microbial siderophores play an important role in Fe nutrition of plants in neutral and basic soils (Shenker et al. 1992, 1995). Several species of fluorescent pseudomonads produce siderophores and there is evidence that a number of plant species can absorb these bacterial Fe^{3+} siderophore complexes (Becker and Cook 1988; Loper 1988; Bitter et al. 1991). Fluorescent yellow green siderophores have been named as pyoverdines (PVDs) or pseudobactins (Budzikiewicz 1993, 1997). Besides PVD, *P. aeruginosa* produces another siderophore called pyochelin with a lower affinity for iron (III) (Cox et al. 1981). Fluorescent pseudomonad species such as *P. fluorescens*, *P. stutzeri*, and *P. putida* produce pseudomonine (isoxazolidone) (Lewis et al. 2000; Mossialos et al. 2000; Mercado-Blanco et al. 2001).

4.3.4 Phytohormones and Enzymes

Direct promotion of plant growth entails either providing the plant with a compound that is synthesized by the bacterium or facilitating the uptake of certain nutrients from the environment. Fluorescent pseudomonads also produce phytohormone, indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) cytokinins, and vitamins (Salisbury 1994; Streit et al. 1996; Patten and Glick 2002). Fluorescent pseudomonad bacteria also produce ACC deaminase that sequesters the ethylene precursor ACC (Belimov et al. 2001; Penrose and Glick 2003). Due to their potential to enhance plant growth, and participate in carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorous cycling in nature (O'Sullivan and O'Gara 1992), the role of fluorescent pseudomonads in agriculture and environment has been a matter of interest.

4.3.4.1 Indole-3-Acetic Acid

The phytohormone, IAA, is known to be involved in root initiation, cell division, and cell enlargement (Salisbury 1994). This hormone is commonly produced by specific strains of PGPR type of fluorescent pseudomonads (Barazani and Friedman 1999; Sunish Kumar et al. 2005; Ravindra Naik et al. 2008). IAA-producing rhizobacteria have been known to increase root growth and root length, resulting in greater root surface area, which enables the plant to access more nutrients from soil. Patten and Glick (2002) reported the role of IAA-producing *P. putida* in development of the host plant root system.

4.3.4.2 Cytokinins

Cytokinins are a class of phytohormones, which are known to promote cell divisions, cell enlargement, and tissue expansion (Salisbury 1994). Cytokinins are believed to be the signals involved in mediating environmental stress from roots to shoots (Jackson 1993). Production of cytokinins and enhancement of plant growth by strains *P. fluorescens* have been reported (Garcia de Salamone et al. 2001).

4.3.4.3 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-Carboxylate Deaminase

Ethylene is the only gaseous phytohormone. It is also known as the "wounding hormone" because its production in the plant can be induced by physical or chemical perturbation of plant tissues (Salisbury 1994). Among its myriad of effects on plant growth and development, ethylene production can cause an inhibition of root growth. Glick et al. (1998) put forward the theory that the mode of action of some PGPR was the production of ACC deaminase, an enzyme that could cleave ACC, the immediate precursor to ethylene in the biosynthetic pathway for ethylene in plants. ACC deaminase activity would decrease ethylene production in the roots of host plants and result in root lengthening. Wild-type and genetically modified fluorescent pseudomonads were reported as ACC deaminase producers (Glick et al. 1994; Ravindra Naik et al. 2008). Transforming *Pseudomonas* spp. strains with a cloned ACC deaminase gene enabled the bacteria to grow on ACC as a sole source of nitrogen and to promote the elongation of seedling roots (Shah et al. 1998). The growth promotion effects also expressed in stressful situations such as flooded (Grichko and Glick 2001) or heavy metal-contaminated soils (Burd et al. 1998; Belimov et al. 2001).

4.3.5 Vitamins

Vitamins are organic nutritional factors that influence the growth of living organisms. Plants synthesize vitamins (Arrigoni et al. 1992; De Gara et al. 1993)

and their root exudates contain B-group vitamins that enhance the growth of rhizosphere bacteria (Rovira and Harris 1961; Mozafar and Oertli 1993; Azaizeh et al. 1996; Streit et al. 1996). In addition, most soil bacteria and fungi also produce the B-group vitamins (Dahm et al. 1993; Deryło and Skorupska 1993; Rodelas et al. 1993; Sierra et al. 1999; Strzelczyk and Leniarska 1985) that are beneficial for plant growth (Azaizeh et al. 1996; Mozafar and Oertli 1993; Rovira and Harris 1961). These water-soluble vitamins are known to act synergistically with other biologically active substances stimulating growth of plants and microbes (Oertli 1987). Bacterial vitamin production might be one of the several factors affecting microbial competition for root colonization (Streit et al. 1996), bacterial growth stimulation (Marek-Kozaczuk and Skorupska 2001), and symbiotic nitrogen fixation (Deryło and Skorupska 1993). *P. fluorescens* 267 was reported to produce several B-group vitamins, i.e., biotin, thiamine, cobalamine, pantothenic acid, and niacin, which influenced its colonization on clover roots (Marek-Kozaczuk and Skorupska 2001). Several reports demonstrating the beneficial effect of rhizosphere pseudomonad strains on leguminous plants are available (De Freitas et al. 1993; Deryło and Skorupska 1993; Grimes and Mount 1987; Polonenko et al. 1987). Coinoculation of legumes with plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria increased the green and dry matter per plant, the number and weight of nodules, and symbiotic N fixation (Deryło and Skorupska 1993). Under controlled conditions, coinoculation of clover with biotin auxotroph *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv. *trifolii* and vitamin-producing *P. fluorescens* strain 267 stimulated the growth and symbiotic N fixation of clover (Deryło and Skorupska 1993; Marek-Kozaczuk et al. 1996).

4.4 Concluding Remarks

Flourescent pseudomonads are the predominant group of rhizobacteria. This group of bacteria is metabolically and functionally diverse and exhibits multiple mechanisms that mediate their ability to suppress phytopathogens and to promote crop growth and yield. Specific strains of fluorescent pseudomonads could be used as biocontrol agents and biofertilizers in sustainable agriculture. Beneficial effects of fluorescent pseudomonads on plant growth and yield result from competition, root-colonizing potential, phosphate solubilization, sequestration of iron, production of plant growth regulators, vitamins, enhancement of plant nutrient uptake, production of antibiotics, synthesis of fungal cell wall-degrading enzymes, suppression of pathogenic or deleterious microorganisms, and induction of systemic resistance against phytopathogens. Strains that exhibit biocontrol mechanisms and plant growth promotion traits could be used to achieve biological control of phytopathogens. Knowledge of different mechanisms involved in plant growth promotion and disease suppression is essential for the selection and utilization of appropriate biocontrol strains for sustainable agriculture.

Acknowledgments We thank the Department of Biotechnology (DBT), New Delhi, Government of India, for financial support through major research projects awarded to Prof. N. Sakthivel and the Department of Science and Technology (DST), New Delhi, Government of India, for financial support through Funds for Improvement by Science and Technology (FIST) programme coordinated by Prof. N. Sakthivel.

References

Abbas A, Morrisey JP, Marquez PC, Sheehan MM, Delany IR, O'Gara F (2002) Characterization of interaction between the transcriptional repressor *PhlF* and its binding site at the *phlA* promoter in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* F113. J Bacteriol 184:3008–3016

Abd-Alla MH (1998) Growth and siderophore production in vitro of *Bradyrhizobium* (Lupin) strains under iron limitation. Eur J Soil Biol 34:99–104

Acea ML, Alexander M (1988) Growth and survival of bacteria introduced into carbon amended soil. Soil Biol Biochem 20:703–709

Anjaiah V, Koedam N, Nowak-Thompson B, Loper JE, Hofte M, Tambong JT, Cornelis P (1998) Involvement of phenazines and anthranilate in the antagonism of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PNA1 and Tn5 derivatives toward *Fusarium* spp. and *Pythium* spp. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:847–854

Anjaiah V, Cornelis P, Koedam N (2003) Effect of genotype and root colonization in biological control of *Fusarium* wilts in pigeonpea and chickpea by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PNA1. Can J Microbiol 49:85–91

Arima K, Imanaka H, Kousaka M, Fukuda A, Tamura G (1964) Pyrrolnitrin, a new antibiotic substance produced by *Pseudomonas*. Agric Biol Chem 28:575–576

Arrigoni O, De Gara L, Tommasi F, Liso R (1992) Changes in the ascorbate system during seed developments in *Vicia faba* L. Plant Physiol 59:235–238

Ayyadurai N, Ravindra Naik P, Sreehari Rao M, Sunish Kumar R, Samrat SK, Manohar M, Sakthivel N (2006) Isolation and characterization of a novel banana rhizosphere bacterium as fungal antagonist and microbial adjuvant in micropropagation of banana. J Appl Microbiol 100:926–937

Ayyadurai N, Ravindra Naik P, Sakthivel N (2007) Functional characterization of antagonistic fluorescent pseudomonads associated with rhizospheric soil of rice (*Oryza sativa* L.). J Microbiol Biotechnol 17:919–927

Azaizeh A, Neumann G, Marschner H (1996) Effects of thiamine and nitrogen fertiliser form on the number of N_2-fixing and total bacteria in the rhizosphere of maize plants. Z Pflanzenernahr Bodenkd 159:183–188

Bagnasco P, De La Fuente L, Gaultieri G, Noya F, Arias A (1998) Fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. as biocontrol agents against forage legume root pathogenic fungi. Soil Biol Biochem 30:1317–1323

Bahme JB, Schroth MN (1987) Spatial-temporal colonization patterns of a rhizobacterium on underground organs of potato. Phytopathology 77:1093–1100

Bakker AW, Schippers B (1987) Microbial cyanide production in the rhizosphere in relation to potato yield reduction and *Pseudomonas* spp. mediated plant growth stimulation. Soil Biol Biochem 19:451–457

Bakker PAHM, Ran LX, Pieterse CMJ, van Loon LC (2003) Understanding the involvement of rhizobacteria-mediated induction of systemic resistance in biocontrol of plant diseases. Can J Plant Pathol 25:5–9

Bakker PAHM, Pieterse CMJ, Van Loon LC (2007) Induced systemic resistance by fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. Phytopathology 97:239–243

Banerjee N, Langhe DE (1985) A tissue culture technique for rapid clonal propagation and storage under minimal growth conditions of *Musa* (banana and plantain). Plant Cell Rep 4:351–354

Bangera MG, Thomashow LS (1996) Characterization of a genomic locus needed required for synthesis of the antibiotic 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol by the biological control agent *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Q2-87. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 9:83–90

Bano N, Musarrat J (2003) Characterization of a new *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strain NJ-15 as a potential biocontrol agent. Curr Microbiol 46:324–328

Barazani O, Friedman J (1999) Is IAA the major root growth factor secreted from plant-growth-mediating bacteria. J Chem Ecol 25:2397–2406

Baron SS, Rowe JJ (1981) Antibiotic action of pyocyanin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 20:814–820

Baron SS, Teranova G, Rowe JJ (1989) Molecular mechanism of the antimicrobial action of pyocyanin. Curr Microbiol 18:223–230

Baron SS, Teranova G, Rowe JJ (1997) Molecular mechanism of the antimicrobial action of pyocyanin. Curr Microbiol 18:223–230

Barrett EL, Solanes RE, Tang JS, Palleroni NJ (1986) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* biovar V. Its resolution into distinct component groups and the relationship of these groups to other *P. fluorescens* biovars to *P. putida* and to psychrophilic pseudomonads associated with food spoilage. J Gen Microbiol 132:2709–2721

Bartnicki-Garcia S, Lippman E (1973) Fungal cell wall composition. In: Laskin AL, Lechevaluer HL (eds) Handbook of microbiology. Chemical Rubber, Cleveland, pp 229–252

Becker O, Cook RJ (1988) Role of siderophores in suppression of *Pythium* species and production of increased-growth response of wheat by fluorescent pseudomonads. Phytopathology 78:778–782

Belimov AA, Safronova VI, Sergeyeva TA, Egorova TN, Matveyeva VA, Tsyganov VE, Borisov AY, Tikhonovich IA, Kluge C, Preisfeld A, Dietz KJ, Stepanok VV (2001) Characterization of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from polluted soils and containing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. Can J Microbiol 47:642–652

Bennett I, Broom NJP, Cassels R, Elder JS, Masson ND, O'Hanlon PJ (1999) Synthesis and antibacterial properties of β-diketone acrylate bioisosteres of pseudomonic acid A. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 9:1847–1852

Bitter W, Marugg JD, De Weger LA, Tommassen J, Weisbeek PJ (1991) The ferric pseudobactin receptor *PupA* of *Pseudomonas putida* WCS358: homology to *TonB* dependent *Escherichia coli* receptors and specificity of the protein. Mol Microbiol 5:647–655

Budzikiewicz H (1993) Secondary metabolites from fluorescent pseudomonads. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 104:209–228

Budzikiewicz H (1997) Siderophores of fluorescent pseudomonads. Z Naturforsch 52:713–720

Burd GI, Dixon DG, Glick BR (1998) A plant growth promoting bacterium that decreases nickel toxicity in seedlings. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3663–3668

Burr T, Schroth MN, Suslow T (1978) Increased potato yields by treatment of seed pieces with specific strains of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *P. putida*. Phytopathology 68:1377–1383

Buysens S, Heungens K, Poppe J, Hofte M (1996) Involvement of pyochelin and pyoverdine in suppression of *Pythium*-induced damping-off of tomato by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:865–871

Campbell R, Renwick A, Coe SKAM (1986) Antagonism and siderophore production by biocontrol agents, plant growth promoting organisms, and the general rhizosphere population. In: Swinburne TR (ed) Iron, siderophores and plant diseases. Plenum, New York, pp 179–188

Carcanague DR (1997) Novel derivatives of pseudomonic acid. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 7:2805–2808

Cartwright DK, Chilton WS, Benson DM (1995) Pyrrolnitrin and phenazine production by *Pseudomonas cepacia*, strain 5.5B, a biocontrol agent of *Rhizoctonia solani*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 43:211–216

Castric PA (1981) The metabolism of hydrogen cyanide by bacteria. In: Vennesland B, Conn EE, Knowles CJ, Westley J, Wissing F (eds) Cyanide in biology. Academic, London, pp 233–261

Castric P (1994) Influence of oxygen on the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* hydrogen cyanide synthase. Curr Microbiol 29:19–21

Cattelan AJ, Hartel PG, Fuhrmann FF (1999) Screening for plant growth promoting rhizobacteria to promote early soybean growth. Soil Sci Soc Am J 63:1670–1680

Chet I (1987) *Trichoderma*-applications, mode of action and potential as a biocontrol agent of soilborne plant pathogenic fungi. In: Chet I (ed) Innovative approaches to plant diseases. Wiley, New York, pp 137–160

Chin-A-Woeng TFC, Bloemberg GV, Van der Bij AJ, Van der Drift KMGM, Schripse-ma J, Kroon B, Scheffer RJ, Keel C, Bakker PAHM, Tichy H, de Bruijn FJ, Thomas-Oates JE, Lugtenberg BJJ (1998) Biocontrol by phenazine-1-carboxamide producing *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* PCL1391 of tomato root rot caused by *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *radicis-lycopersici*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:1069–1077

Cox CD, Rinehart KL Jr, Moore ML, Cook JC Jr (1981) Pyochelin: novel structure of an iron-chelating growth promoter for *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 78:4256–4260

Cronin D, Moenne-Loccoz Y, Fenton A, Dunne C, Dowling DN, O'Gara F (1997) Role of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol in the interaction of the biocontrol pseudomonad strain F113 with the potato cyst nematode *Globodera rostochiensis*. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:1357–1361

Dahm H, Rozycki H, Strzelczyk E, Li CY (1993) Production of B-group vitamins by *Azospirillum* spp. grown in media of different pH at different temperatures. Zentralbl Mikrobiol 148:195–203

de Bruijn I, de Kock MJD, de Waard P, van Beek TA, Raaijmakers JM (2008) Massetolide A biosynthesis in *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. J Bacteriol 190:2777–2789

De Freitas JR, Germida JJ (1991) *Psuedomonas cepacia* and *Pseudomonas putida* as winter wheat inoculants for biocontrol of *Rhizoctania solani*. Can J Microbiol 37:780–784

De Freitas JR, Gupta VVSR, Germida JJ (1993) Influence of *Pseudomonas syringae* R25 and *Pseudomonas putida* R105 on the growth and nitrogen fixation (acetylene reduction activity) of pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) and field bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). Biol Fert Soils 16:215–220

De Gara L, Paciolia C, Liso P, Stefani A, Blanco A, Arrigoni O (1993) Ascorbate metabolism in mature pollen grains of *Daspyprum villosum* (L.) Brob. during imbibitions. J Plant Physiol 141:504–509

De Meyer G, Hofte M (1997) Salicylic acid produced by the rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2 induces resistance to leaf infection by *Botrytis cinerea* on bean. Phytopathology 87:588–593

de Weger LA, Lugtenberg BJJ (1990) Plant growth stimulating rhizobacteria. In: Heslot H, Davies J, Florent T, Bobichon L, Durand G, Penasse L (eds) Proceedings of the 6th international symposium on genetics of industrial microorganisms, vol 2. Societe Frangaise de Microbiologie, Paris, pp 827–837

de Weger LA, Van Boxtel R, van der Burg B, Gruters RA, Geels FP, Schippers B, Lugtenberg B (1986) Siderophores and outer membrane proteins of antagonistic, plant growth stimulating root-colonizing *Pseudomonas* spp. J Bacteriol 165:585–594

de Weger LA, van der Vlught CIM, WijOes AHM, Bakker PAHMB, Schippers B, Lugtenberg B (1987) Flagella of a plant-growth-stimulating *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain are required for colonization of potato roots. J Bacteriol 169:2769–2773

de Weger LA, Dekkers LC, van der Bij AJ, Lugtenberg BJJ (1994) Use of phosphate-reporter bacteria to study phosphate limitation in the rhizosphere and in bulk soil. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 7:32–38

Defago G, Berling CH, Burger U, Haas D, Kahr G, Keel C, Voisard C, Wirthner P, Wuthrich B (1990) Suppression of black root rot of tobacco and other root diseases by strains of *Pseudomonas fluorescens*: potential applications and mechanisms. In: Hornby D, Cook RJ, Henis Y, Ko WH, Rovira AD, Schippers B, Scott PR (eds) Biological control of soil-borne plant pathogens. CAB International, Oxon, UK, pp 93–108

Dekkers LC, van der Bij AJ, Mulders IHM, Phoelich CC, Wentwoord RAR, Glandorf DCM, Wijffelman CA, Lugtenberg BJJ (1998) Role of the O-antigen of lipopolysaccharide, and possible roles of growth rate and NADH: ubiquinone oxidoreductase (*nuo*) in competitive tomato root-tip colonization by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS365. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:763–771

Demange P, Wendenbaum S, Linget C, Bateman A, MacLeod J, Dell A, Albrecht AM, Abdallah MA (1987) Bacterial siderophores: structures and physicochemical properties of pyoverdines and related compounds. In: Winkelmann G, van der Helm D, Neilands JB (eds) Iron transport in microbes, plants and animals. VCH, Weinheim, pp 189–205

Deryło M, Skorupska A (1993) Enhancement of symbiotic nitrogen fixation by vitamin-secreting fluorescent *Pseudomonas*. Plant Soil 154:211–217

Dow M, Newman MA, Roepenack E (2000) The induction and modulation of plant defense responses by bacterial lipopolysaccharides. Annu Rev Phytopathol 38:241–261

Dowling DN, O'Gara F (1994) Metabolites of *Pseudomonas* involved in the biocontrol of plant disease. Trends Biotechnol 12:133–141

Duffy BK, Defago G (1997) Zinc improves biocontrol of *Fusarium* crown and root rot of tomato by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and represses the production of pathogen metabolites inhibitory to bacterial antibiotic biosynthesis. Phytopathology 87:1250–1257

Duffy BK, Defago G (1999) Environmental factors modulating antibiotic and siderophore biosynthesis by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* biocontrol strains. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:2429–2438

Duffy BK, Keel C, Defago G (2004) Potential role of pathogen signaling in multitrophic plant–microbe interactions involved in disease protection. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:1836–1842

Dwivedi D, Johri BN (2003) Antifungals from fluorescent pseudomonads: biosynthesis and regulation. Curr Sci 85:1693–1703

Elad Y, Baker R (1985) Influence of trace amounts of cations and siderophore-producing pseudomonads on chlamydospore germination of *Fusarium oxysporum*. Ecol Epidemiol 75:1047–1052

Elad Y, Chet I (1987) Possible role of competition for nutrients in biocontrol of *Pythium* damping off by bacteria. Phytopathology 77:190–195

Elander RP, Mabe JA, Hamill RH, Gorman M (1968) Metabolism of tryptophans by *Pseudomonas aureofaciens*VI. Production of pyrrolnitrin by selected *Pseudomonas* species. Appl Microbiol 16:753–758

Ellis RJ, Timms-Wilson TM, Bailey MJ (2000) Identification of conserved traits in fluorescent pseudomonads with antifungal activity. Environ Microbiol 2:274–284

El-Sayed AK, Hothersall J, Cooper SM, Stephens E, Simpson TJ, Thomas CM (2003) Characterization of the mupirocin biosynthesis gene cluster from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* NCIMB 10586. Chem Biol 10:410–430

Fenton AM, Stephens PM, Crowley J, O'Callaghen M, O'Gara F (1992) Exploitation of gene(s) involved in 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol biosynthesis to confer a new biocontrol capability to a *Pseudomonas* strain. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:3873–3878

Flaishman M, Eyal Z, Voisard C, Haas D (1990) Suppression of *Septoria tritici* by phenazine or siderophore deficient mutants of *Pseudomonas*. Curr Microbiol 20:121–124

Foster RC (1988) Microenvironments of soil microorganisms. Biol Fert Soils 6:189–203

Fridlender M, Inbar J, Chet I (1993) Biological control of soilborne plant pathogens by a b-1,3 glucanase-producing *Pseudomonas cepacia*. Soil Biol Biochem 25: 1121–1221

Fujita M, Tanaka K, Takahashi H, Amemura A (1994) Transcription of the principal sigma-factor genes, *rpoD* and *rpoS*, in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is controlled according to the growth phase. Mol Microbiol 13:1071–1077

Funaki M, Tsuchiya F, Maeda K, Kamiya T (1958) Cyanomycin, a new antibiotic. J Antibiot Ser A 11:143–149

Galli E, Barbieri P, Bestetti G (1992) Potential of pseudomonads in the degradation of methylbenzenes. In: Galli E, Silver S, Withold B (eds) *Pseudomonas*: molecular biology and biotechnology. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, DC, pp 268–276

Gamble TN, Betlach MR, Tiedje JM (1977) Numerically dominant denitrifying bacteria from world soils. Appl Environ Microbiol 33:926–939
Garcia de Salamone IE, Hynes RK, Nelson LM (2001) Cytokinin production by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and selected mutants. Can J Microbiol 47:404–411
Gaur AC (1990) Phosphate solubilizing microorganisms as bio-fertilizers. Omega Scientific Publication, New Delhi
Ghiglione JF, Gourbiere F, Potier P, Philippot L, Lensi R (2000) Role of respiratory nitrate reductase in ability of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* YT101 to colonize the rhizosphere of maize. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:4012–4016
Glick BR (1995) The enhancement of plant growth by free living bacteria. Can J Microbiol 41:109–117
Glick BR, Jacobson CB, Schwarze MMK, Pasternak JJ (1994) 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase mutants of the plant growth promoting rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas putida* GR12-2 do not stimulate canola root elongation. Can J Microbiol 40:911–915
Glick BR, Penrose DM, Li J (1998) A model for the lowering of plant ethylene concentrations by plant growth promoting bacteria. J Theor Biol 190:63–68
Glick BR, Patten CL, Holguin G, Penrose DM (1999) Biochemical and genetic mechanisms used by plant growth promoting bacteria. Imperial College Press, London
Gomez-Gomez L, Boller T (2000) FLS2: an LRR receptor-like kinase involved in the perception of the bacterial elicitor flagellin in *Arabidopsis*. Mol Cell 5:1003–1011
Grichko VP, Glick BR (2001) Amelioration of flooding stress by ACC deaminase containing plant growth promoting bacteria. Plant Physiol Biochem 39:11–17
Grimes HD, Mount MS (1987) Influence of *Pseudomonas putida* on nodulation of *Phaseolus vulgaris*. Soil Biol Biochem 6:27–30
Gurusiddaiah S, Weller DM, Sarkar A, Cook RJ (1986) Characterization of an antibiotic produced by a strain of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* inhibitory to *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici* and *Pythium* spp. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 29:488–495
Gutterson N, Ziegle JS, Warren GJ, Layton TJ (1988) Genetic determinants for the catabolite induction of antibiotic biosynthesis in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HV37a. J Bacteriol 170: 380–385
Hamdan H, Weller DM, Thomashow LS (1991) Relative importance of fluorescent siderophores and other factors in biological control of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici* by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* 2-79 and M4-80R. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:3270–3277
Harrison LA, Letrendre L, Kovacevich P, Pierson EA, Weller DM (1993) Purification of an antibiotic effective against *Geumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici* produced by a biocontrol agent, *Pseudomonas aureofaciens*. Soil Biol Biochem 25:215–221
Hassan HM, Fridovich I (1980) Mechanism of the antibiotic action of pyocyanine. J Bacteriol 141:156–163
Hattori T (1988) Soil aggregates as microhabitats of microorganisms. Rep Inst Agric Res Tohoku Univ 37:23–36
Hernandez JM, Laberry R, Lozano JC (1986) Observation on the effect of inoculating cassava (*Manihot esculenta*) plantlets with fluorescent pseudomonads. Phytopathology 117:17–25
Hoffland E, Hakulinen J, van Pelt JA (1996) Comparison of systemic resistance induced by avirulent and nonpathogenic *Pseudomonas* species. Phytopathology 86:757–762
Homma Y, Suzui T (1989) Role of antibiotic production in suppression of radish damping-off by seed bacterization with *Pseudomonas cepacia*. Ann Phytopathol Soc Jpn 55:643–652
Howell CR, Stipanovic RD (1979) Control of *Rhizoctonia solani* on cotton seedlings with *Pseudomonas fluorescens* with an antibiotic produced by the bacterium. Phytopathology 69:480–482
Howell CR, Stipanovic RD (1980) Suppression of *Pythium ultimum* induced damping off cotton seedlings by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and its antibiotic pyoluteorin. Phytopathology 70:712–715
Inbar J, Chet I (1991) Evidence that chitinase produced by *Aeromonas caviae* is involved in the biological control of soil-borne plant pathogens by this bacteria. Soil Biol Biochem 23:973–978

Iswandi A, Bossier P, Vandenabeele J, Verstraete W (1987) Effect of seed inoculation with the rhizopseudomonas strain 7NSK2 on the root microflora of maize (*Zea mays*) and barley (*Hordeum vulgare*). Biol Fert Soils 3:153–158

Jackson MB (1993) Are plant hormones involved in root to shoot communication. Adv Bot Res 19:103–187

James DW, Gutterson NI (1986) Multiple antibiotics produced by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HV37a and their differential regulation by glucose. Appl Environ Microbiol 52:1183–1189

Jamisiewicz W, Yourman L, Roitman J, Mahoney N (1991) Postharvest control of blue mold and grey mold of apples and pears by dip treatment with pyrrolnitrin, a metabolite of *Pseudomonas cepacia*. Plant Dis 75:490–494

Jha BK, Pragash MG, Cletus J, Raman G, Sakthivel N (2009) Simultaneous phosphate solubilization potential and antifungal activity of new fluorescent pseudomonad strains, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *P. plecoglossicida* and *P. mosselii*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25:573–581

Katz E, Demain AL (1977) The peptide antibiotic of *Bacillus*: chemistry, biogenesis and possible functions. Bacteriol Rev 41:449–474

Katznelson H, Bose B (1959) Metabolic activity and phosphate-dissolving capability of bacterial isolates from wheat roots, rhizosphere, and nonrhizosphere soil. Can J Microbiol 5:79–85

Keel C, Wirthner P, Oberhansli T, Voisard C, Burger U, Haas D, Defago G (1990) Pseudomonads as antagonists of plant pathogens in the rhizosphere: role of the antibiotic 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol in the suppression of black root rot of tobacco. Symbiosis 9:327–341

Keel C, Schnider U, Maurhofer M, Voisard C, Laville J, Burger P, Wirthner P, Haas D, Defago G (1992) Suppression of root diseases by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0: importance of the bacterial secondary metabolite, 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 5:4–13

Kim HY, Schlictman D, Shankar S, Xie Z, Chakrabarty AM, Kornberg A (1998) Alginate, inorganic polyphosphate, GTP and ppGpp synthesis co-regulated in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: implications for stationary phase survival and synthesis of RNA/DNA precursors. Mol Microbiol 27:717–725

Kirner S, Hammer PE, Hill DS, Altmann A, Fischer I, Weislo LJ, Lanahan M, van Pee KH, Ligon JM (1998) Functions encoded by pyrrolnitrin biosynthetic genes from *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. J Bacteriol 180:1939–1943

Kleinkauf H, von Dohren H (1990) Nonribosomal biosynthesis of peptide antibiotics. Eur J Biochem 192:1–15

Kloepper JW, Schroth MN (1978) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria on radishes. Proceeding of the fourth international conference on plant pathogenic bacteria, Institut national de la researche agronomique, Angers, France, pp 879–882

Kloepper JW, Leong J, Teintze M, Schroth MN (1980) *Pseudomonas* siderophores: a mechanism explaining disease suppressive soils. Curr Microbiol 4:317–320

Kloepper JW, Zablotowicz RM, Tipping EM, Lifshitz R (1991) Plant growth promotion mediated by bacterial rhizosphere colonizers. In: Keister DL, Cregan PB (eds) The rhizosphere and plant growth. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht, The Netherlands, pp 315–326

Kloepper JW, Tuzun S, Liu L, Wei G (1993) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria as inducers of systemic disease resistance. In: Lumsden RD, Vaughn JL (eds) Pest management: biologically based technologies. American Chemical Society Books, Washington, DC, pp 156–165

Kraus J, Loper JE (1995) Characterization of a genomic region required for production of the antibiotic pyoluteorin by the biological control agent *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf-5. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:849–854

Lam ST (1990) Microbial attributes associated with root colonization. In: Baker RR, Dunn PE (eds) New directions in biological control: alternatives for suppressing agricultural pests and diseases. Alan R Liss Inc., New York, pp 767–778

Lamont IL, Martin LW (2003) Identification and characterization of novel pyoverdine synthesis genes in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Microbiology 149:833–842

Leeman M, Van Pelt JA, Den Ouden FM, Heinsbroek M, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B (1995a) Induction of systemic resistance by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in radish cultivars differing in susceptibility to *Fusarium* wilt, using a novel bioassay. Eur J Plant Pathol 101:655–664

Leeman M, Van Pelt JA, Den Ouden FM, Heinsbroek M, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B (1995b) Induction of systemic resistance against *Fusarium* wilt of radish by lipopolysaccharides of *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Phytopathology 85:1021–1027

Leeman M, den Ouden FM, van Pelt JA, Dirkx FPM, Steijl H, Bakker PAHM, Schippers B (1996) Iron availability affects induction of systemic resistance to *Fusarium* wilt of radish by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Phytopathology 86:149–155

Leisinger T, Margraff R (1979) Secondary metabolites of fluorescent pseudomonads. Microbiol Rev 43:422–442

Levy E, Gough FJ, Berlin DK, Guiana PW, Smith JT (1992) Inhibition of *Septoria tritici* and other phytopathogenic fungi and bacteria by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and its antibiotics. Plant Pathol 41:335–341

Lewis TA, Cortese MS, Sebat JL, Green TL, Lee CH, Crawford RL (2000) A *Pseudomonas stutzeri* gene cluster encoding biosynthesis of the CC_{14}-dechlorination agent pyridine-2,6-bis (thiocarboxylic acid). Environ Microbiol 2:407–416

Lifshitz R, Kloepper JW, Kozlowski M, Simonson C, Carlson J, Tipping EM, Zaleska I (1987) Growth promotion of canola (rapeseed) seedlings by a strain of *Pseudomonas putida* under gnotobiotic conditions. Can J Microbiol 33:390–395

Ligon JM, Hill DS, Hammer PE, Torkewitz NR, Hofmann D, Kempf HJ, van Pee KH (2000) Natural products with antifungal activity from *Pseudomonas* biocontrol bacteria. Pest Manage Sci 56:688–695

Lim HS, Kim YS, Kim SD (1991) *Pseudomonas stutzeri* YPL-1 genetic transformation and antifungal mechanisms against *Fusarium solani*, and agent of plant root rot. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:510–516

Liu L, Kloepper JW, Tuzun S (1995a) Induction of systemic resistance in cucumber against *Fusarium* wilt by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Phytopathology 85:695–698

Liu L, Kloepper JW, Tuzun S (1995b) Induction of systemic resistance in cucumber against angular leaf spot by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Phytopathology 85:843–847

Loper JE (1988) Role of fluorescent siderophore production in biological control of *Pythium ultimum* by a *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain. Phytopathology 78:166–172

Loper JE, Haack C, Schroth MN (1985) Population dynamics of soil pseudomonads in the rhizosphere of potato (*Solanum tuberosum* L.). Appl Environ Microbiol 49:416–422

Loper JE, Henkels MD, Shaffer BT, Valeriote FA, Gross H (2008) Isolation and identification of rhizoxin analogs from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf-5 by using a genomic mining strategy. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:3085–3093

Lorito M, Woo SL, Ambrosio MD, Harman GE, Hayes CK, Kubicek CP, Scala F (1996) Synergistic interaction between cell wall degrading enzymes and membrane affecting compounds. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 9:206–213

Lugtenberg BJJ, Dekkers LC (1999) What makes *Pseudomonas* bacteria rhizosphere competent? Environ Microbiol 1:9–13

Lugtenberg BJJ, Kravchenko LV, Simons M (1999) Tomato seed and root exudate sugars: composition, utilization by *Pseudomonas* biocontrol strains and role in rhizosphere colonization. Environ Microbiol 1:439–446

Mansfield JW (1983) Antimicrobial compounds. In: Callowl JA (ed) Biochemical plant pathology. Wiley, Chichester, UK, pp 237–265

Marek-Kozaczuk M, Skorupska A (2001) Production of B-group vitamins by plant growth-promoting *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain 267 and the importance of vitamins in the colonization and nodulation of red clover. Biol Fert Soils 33:146–151

Marek-Kozaczuk M, Deryło M, Skorupska A (1996) *Tn5* insertion mutants of *Pseudomonas* sp. 267 defective in siderophore production and their effect on clover (*Trifolium pratense*) nodulated with *Rhizobium leguminosarum* bv. *trifolii*. Plant Soil 179:269–274

Martin FN, Loper JE (1999) Soilborne plant diseases caused by *Pythium* spp.: ecology, epidemiology, and prospects for biological control. Crit Rev Plant Sci 18:111–181

Matthijs S, Abbaspour Tehrani K, Laus G, Jackson RW, Cooper RM, Cornelis P (2007) Thioquinolobactin, a *Pseudomonas* siderophore with antifungal and anti-*Pythium* activity. Environ Microbiol 9:425–434

Matthijs S, Budzikiewicz H, Schafer M, Wathelet B, Cornelis B (2008) Ornicorrugatin, a new siderophore from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* AF76. Z Naturforsch 63:8–12

Maurhofer M, Keel C, Schnider U, Viosard C, Haas D, Defago G (1992) Influence of enhanced antibiotic production in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain CHA0 on its disease suppressive capacity. Phytopathology 82:190–195

Maurhofer M, Hase C, Meuwly P, Metraux JP, Defago G (1994a) Induction of systemic resistance of tobacco mosaic virus by the root colonizing *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain CHA0: influence of the *gacA* gene of pyoverdine production. Phytopathology 84:139–146

Maurhofer M, Keel C, Haas D, Defago G (1994b) Pyoluteorin production by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain CHA0 is involved in the suppression of *Pythium* damping-off of cress but not cucumber. Eur J Plant Pathol 100:221–232

Maurhofer M, Reimmann C, Schimidli-Sacherer P, Heeb S, Hass D, Defago G (1998) Salicilic acid biosynthetic genes expressed in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain P3 improve the induction of systemic resistance in tobacco against tobacco necrosis virus. Phytopathology 88:678–684

Mavrodi DV, Bonsall RF, Delaney SM, Soule MJ, Phillips G, Thomashow LS (2001) Functional analysis of genes for biosynthesis of pyocyanin and phenazine-1-carboxamide from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PAO1. J Bacteriol 183:6454–6465

Mazzola M, Cook RJ, Thomashow LS, Weller DM, Pierson LS (1992) Contribution of phenazine antibiotic biosynthesis to the ecological competence of fluorescent pseudomonads in soil habitats. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:2616–2624

Mercado-Blanco J, Van der Drift KMGM, Olsson P, Thomas Oates JE, van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM (2001) Analysis of the pmsCEAB gene cluster involved in biosynthesis of salicylic acid and the siderophore pseudomonine in the biocontrol strain *Pseudomonas fluorescens* WCS374. J Bacteriol 183:1909–1920

Mew TW, Rossales AM (1986) Bacterization of rice plants for control of sheath blight caused by *Rhizoctonia solani*. Phytopathology 76:1260–1264

Meyer JM (2000) Pyoverdines: pigments, siderophores and potential taxonomic markers of fluorescent *Pseudomonas species*. Arch Microbiol 174:135–142

Meyer JM, Geoffroy VA, Baida N, Gardan L, Izard D, Lemanceau P, Achouak W, Palleroni NJ (2002) Siderophore typing, a powerful tool for the identification of fluorescent and nonfluorescent pseudomonads. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:2745–2753

Meziane H, Van der Sluis I, Van Loon LC, Hofte M, Bakker PAHM (2005) Determinants of *Pseudomonas putida* WCS358 involved in inducing systemic resistance in plants. Mol Plant Pathol 6:177–185

Mossialos D, Meyer JM, Budzikiewicz H, Wolff U, Koedam N, Baysse C (2000) Quinolobactin, a new siderophore of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* ATCC 17400 whose production is repressed by the cognate pyoverdine. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:487–492

Mozafar A, Oertli JJ (1993) Thiamin (vitamin B1): translocation and metabolism by soybean seedling. J Plant Physiol 142:438–445

Natsch A, Keel C, Pfirter HA, Haas D, Defago G (1994) Contribution of the global regulator gene *gacA* to persistence and dissemination of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* biocontrol strain CHAO introduced into soil microcosm. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:2553–2560

Neilands JB (1981) Microbial iron compounds. Annu Rev Biochem 50:715–731

Neilands JB, Leong SA (1986) Siderophores in relation to plant disease. Annu Rev Plant Physiol 37:187–208

Nielsen MN, Sorensen J (1999) Chitinolytic activity of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* isolates from barely and sugar beet rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 30:217–227

Nielsen MN, Sorensen J, Fels J, Pedersen HC (1998) Secondary metabolite and endochitinase dependent antagonism toward plant-pathogenic microfungi of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* isolates from sugar beet rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3563–3569

Nielsen TH, Christophersen C, Anthoni U, Sorensen J (1999) Viscosinamide, a new cyclic depsipeptide with surfactant and antifungal properties produced by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* DR54. J Appl Microbiol 86:80–90

Nielsen TH, Thrane C, Christophersen C, Anthoni U, Sørensen J (2000) Structure, production characteristics and fungal antagonism of tensin – a new antifungal cyclic lipopeptide from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain 96.578. J Appl Microbiol 89:992–1001

Nielsen TH, Sorensen D, Tobiasen C, Andersen JB, Christophersen C, Givskov M, Sorensen J (2002) Antibiotic and biosurfactant properties of cyclic lipopeptides produced by fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. from the sugar beet rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3416–3423

Nowak-Thompson B, Gould SJ, Kraus J, Loper JE (1994) Production of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol by the biocontrol agent *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf 5. Can J Microbiol 40:1064–1066

Nowak-Thompson B, Gould SJ, Loper JE (1997) Identification and sequence analysis of the genes encoding a polyketide synthase required for pyoluteorin biosynthesis in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf-5. Gene 204:17–24

O'Sullivan DJ, O'Gara F (1992) Traits of *Pseudomonas* spp. involved in suppression of plant root pathogens. Microbiol Rev 56:662–676

Oertli JJ (1987) Exogenous application of vitamins as regulators for growth and development of plants – a review. Z Pflanzenernahr Bodenkd 150:375–391

Ordentlich A, Elad Y, Chet I (1988) The role of chitinase of *Serratia marcescens* for biocontrol of *Sclerotium rolfsii*. Phytopathology 78:84–88

Palleroni NJ (1975) General properties and taxonomy of the genus *Pseudomonas*. In: Clarke PH, Richmond MH (eds) Genetics and biochemistry of *Pseudomonas*. Wiley, Baltimore, USA, pp 1–36

Palleroni NJ, Doudoroff M (1972) Some properties and taxonomic subdivisions of the genus *Pseudomonas*. Annu Rev Phytopathol 10:73–100

Palleroni N, Kunisawa R, Contopoulou R, Doudoroff M (1973) Nucleic acid homologies in the genus *Pseudomonas*. Int J Syst Bacteriol 23:333–339

Patten CL, Glick BR (2002) Role of *Pseudomonas putida* indoleacetic acid in development of the host plant root system. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3795–3801

Penrose DM, Glick BR (2003) Methods for isolating and characterizing ACC deaminase containing plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Physiol Plant 118:10–15

Pfender WF, Kraus J, Loper JE (1993) A genomic region from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf-5 required for pyrrolnitrin production and inhibition of *Pyrenophora tritici-repentis* in wheat straw. Phytopathology 83:1223–1228

Philippot L, Clays-Josserand A, Lensi R (1995) Use of *Tn5* mutants to assess the role of dissimilatory nitrite reductase in the competitive abilities of two *Pseudomonas* strains in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:1426–1430

Picard C, Di Cello F, Ventura M, Fani R, Guckert A (2000) Frequency and biodiversity of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing bacteria isolated from the maize rhizosphere at different stages of plant growth. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:948–955

Pierson LS, Thomashow LS (1992) Cloning of heterologous expression of phenazine biosynthesis locus from *Pseudomonas aureofaciens* 30–84. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 53: 330–339

Pierson EA, Weller DM (1994) Use of mixtures of fluorescent pseudomonads to suppress take-all and improve the growth of wheat. Phytopathology 84:940–947

Pieterse CMJ, Van Wees SCM, Hoffland E, Van Pelt JA, Van Loon LC (1996) Systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis* induced by biocontrol bacteria is independent of salicylic acid and pathogenesis related gene expression. Plant Cell 8:1225–1237

Pieterse CMJ, Van Pelt JA, Van Wees J, Ton SCM, Leon-Kloosterziel KM, Keurentijes JJB, Verhagen BWM, van Knoester M, Bakker PAHM, Van Loon LC (2001) Rhizobacteria-mediated induced systemic resistance trigging, signaling and expression. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:51–61

Polonenko DR, Scher FM, Kloepper JW, Singleton CA, Laliberte M, Zaleska I (1987) Effects of root colonizing bacteria on nodulation of soybean roots by *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. Can J Microbiol 33:498–503

Poppe K, Taraz K, Budzikiewicz H (1987) Pyoverdine type siderophores from *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Tetrahedron 43:2261–2272

Potgieter H, Alexander M (1966) Susceptibility and resistance of several fungi to microbial lysis. J Bacteriol 91:3204–3208

Preisfeld A, Belimov AA, Dietz KJ, Safronova VI, Stepanok VV, Sergeyeva TA, Egorova TN, Matveyeva VA, Tsyganov VE, Borisov AY, Tikhonovich IA, Kluge C (2001) Characterization of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from polluted soils and containing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. Can J Microbiol 47:642–652

Raaijmakers JM, Weller DM (1998) Natural plant protection by 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing *Pseudomonas* spp. in take-all decline soils. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:144–152

Raaijmakers JM, Weller DM (2001) Exploiting genotypic diversity of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing *Pseudomonas* spp.: characterization of superior root-colonizing *P. fluorescens* strain Q8r1-96. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:2545–2554

Raupach GS, Liu L, Murphy JF, Tuzun S, Kloepper JW (1996) Induced systemic resistance in cucumber and tomato against cucumber mosaic cucumovirus using plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR). Plant Dis 80:891–894

Ravindra Naik P, Sakthivel N (2006) Functional characterization of a novel hydrocarbonoclastic *Pseudomonas* sp. strain PUP6 with plant-growth-promoting traits and antifungal potential. Res Microbiol 157:538–546

Ravindra Naik P, Raman G, Badri Narayanan K, Sakthivel N (2008) Assessment of genetic and functional diversity of phosphate solubilizing fluorescent pseudomonads isolated from rhizospheric soil. BMC Microbiol 8:230

Reddi TK, Khudiakov YP, Borovkov AV (1969) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain 26.0, producing phytotoxic substances. Mikrobiologiia 38:909–913

Renwick A, Campbell R, Coe S (1991) Assessment of in vivo screening systems for potential biocontrol agents of *Gaeumannomyces graminis*. Plant Pathol 40:524–532

Richardson AE, Hadobas PA, Hayes JE, O'Hara JE, Simpson RJ (2001) Utilization of phosphorus by pasture plants supplied with myo-inositol hexaphosphate is enhanced by the presence of soil microorganisms. Plant Soil 229:47–56

Rodelas B, Salmeron V, Martinez-Toledo MV, Gonzales-Lopez J (1993) Production of vitamins by *Azospirillum brasilense* in chemically defined media. Plant Soil 153:97–101

Rodriguez H, Fraga R (1999) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria and their role in plant growth promotion. Biotechnol Adv 17:319–339

Rosales AM, Thomashow LS, Cook RJ, Mew TW (1995) Isolation and identification of antifungal metabolite produced by rice associated antagonistic *Pseudomonas* spp. Phytopathology 85: 1028–1032

Rovira AD, Harris IR (1961) Plant root excretion in relation to the rhizosphere effect. V. The exudation of B-group vitamins. Plant Soil 19:199–211

Rovira AD, McDonald HJ (1986) Effects of the herbicide chlorosulfuron on *Rhizoctonia* bare patch and take-all of barley and wheat. Plant Dis 70:879–882

Sacherer P, Defago G, Haas D (1994) Extracellular protease and phospholipase C are controlled by global regulatory gene *gacA* in the biocontrol strain *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0. FEMS Microbiol Lett 116:155–160

Sakthivel N, Gnanamanickam SS (1987) Evaluation of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* for suppression of sheath-rot disease and for enhancement of grain yields in rice (*Oryza sativa* L). Appl Environ Microbiol 53:2056–2059

Sakthivel N, Gnanamanickam SS (1989) Incidence of different biovars of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in flooded rice rhizospheres in India. Agric Ecosyst Environ 25:287–298

Sakthivel N, Sunish Kumar R (2008) Dimer of phenazine-1-carboxylic acid and to the process of preparation thereof. USPTO 7, 365, 194 B2, 9 Apr, 2008

Salisbury FB (1994) The role of plant hormones plant environment interactions. In: Wilkinson RE (ed) Plant environment interactions. Dekker, New York, pp 39–81

Sands DC, Rovira AD (1971) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* biotype G, the dominant fluorescent pseudomonads in south Australian soils and wheat rhizosphere. J Appl Bacteriol 34:261–275

Scher FM, Baker R (1982) Effects of *Pseudomonas putida* and a synthetic iron chelator on induction of soil suppressiveness to *Fusarium* wilt pathogens. Phytopathology 72:1567–1573

Scherff RH (1973) Control of bacterial blight of soybean by *Bdellovibrio bacteriovorus*. Phytopathology 63:400–402

Schroth MN, Hancock JG (1981) Selected topics in biological control. Annu Rev Microbiol 35:453–476

Schroth MN, Hidebrand DC, Panopoulos N (1992) Phytopathogenic pseudomonads and related plant-associated pseudomonads. In: Balows A, Truper HG, Dworkin M, Harder W, Schleifer KH (eds) The prokaryotes: a handbook on the biology of bacteria: ecophysiology, isolation, identification, applications. Springer, New York, pp 3104–3131

Shah S, Li J, Moffatt BA, Glick BR (1998) Isolation and characterization of ACC deaminase genes from two different plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 44:833–843

Shanahan P, O'Sullivan DJ, Simpson P, Glennon JD, O'Gara F (1992) Isolation of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol from a fluorescent pseudomonad and investigation of physiological parameters influencing its production. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:353–358

Shapira R, Ordenthch A, Chet I, Eppenheim AB (1989) Control of plant diseases by chitinase expressed from cloned DNA in *Escherichia coli*. Phytopathology 79:1246–1249

Shenker M, Oliver I, Helmann M, Hadar Y, Chen Y (1992) Utilization by tomatoes of iron mediated by a siderophore produced by *Rhizopus arrhizus*. J Plant Nutr 15:2173–2182

Shenker M, Ghirlando R, Oliver I, Helmann M, Hadar Y, Chen Y (1995) Chemical structure and biological activity of rhizoferrin-a siderophore produced by *Rhizopus arrhizus*. Soil Sci Soc Am J 59:837–843

Siddiqui ZA (2006) PGPR: prospective biocontrol agents of plant pathogens. In: Siddiqui ZA (ed) PGPR: biocontrol and biofertilization. Springer, The Netherlands, pp 111–142

Sierra S, Rodelas B, Martinez-Toledo MV, Pozo C, Gonzales-Lopez J (1999) Production of B-group vitamins by two *Rhizobium* strains in chemically defined media. J Appl Microbiol 86:851–858

Sneath PHA, Stevens M, Sackin MJ (1981) Numerical taxonomy of *Pseudomonas* based on published records of substrate utilization. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 47:423–448

Sneh B (1981) Use of rhizosphere chitinolytic bacteria for biological control of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *diunthi* in carnation. Phytopathology 100:251–256

Sorensen D, Nielsen TH, Christophersen C, Sorensen J, Gajhede M (2001) Cyclic lipoundecapeptide amphisin from *Pseudomonas* sp. strain DSS73. Acta Crystallogr C 57:1123–1124

Stanier RY, Palleroni NJ, Doudoroff M (1966) The aerobic pseudomonads: a taxonomic study. J Gen Microbiol 43:159–217

Stephens PM, O'Sullivan M, O'Gara F (1987) Influence of bacteriophages on the colonization of strains of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in the rhizosphere of sugarbeet. Appl Environ Microbiol 53:1164–1167

Stevans AM, Dolan KM, Greenberg EP (1994) Synergistic binding of the *Vibrio fischeri LuxR* transcriptional activator domain and RNA polymerase to lux promoter region. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91:12619–12623

Stewart V (1988) Nitrate respiration in relation to facultative metabolism in enterobacteria. Microbiol Rev 52:190–232

Streit WR, Joseph CM, Phillips DA (1996) Biotin and other water-soluble vitamins are key growth factors for alfalfa root colonization by *Rhizobium meliloti* 1021. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 5:330–338

Strzelczyk E, Leniarska U (1985) Production of B-group vitamins by mycorrhizal fungi and actinomycetes isolated from the root zone of pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.). Plant Soil 86:387–394

Sunish Kumar R, Ayyadurai N, Pandiaraja P, Reddy AV, Venkateswarlu Y, Prakash O, Sakthivel N (2005) Characterization of antifungal metabolite produced by a new strain *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PUPa3 that exhibits broad-spectrum antifungal activity and biofertilizing traits. J Appl Microbiol 98:145–154

Suslow TV, Schroth MN (1982) Rhizobacteria of sugar beets: effects of seed application and root colonization on yield. Phytopathology 72:199–206

Sutra L, Risede JM, Gardan L (2000) Isolation of fluorescent pseudomonads from the rhizosphere of banana plants antagonistic towards root necrosing fungi. Lett Appl Microbiol 31:289–293

Thomashow LS, Weller DM (1988) Role of a phenazine antibiotic from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in biological control of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*. J Bacteriol 170:3499–3508

Thomashow LS, Weller DM, Bonsall RF, Pierson LS (1990) Production of the antibiotic phenazine 1-carboxylic acid by fluorescent *Pseudomonas* species in the rhizosphere of wheat. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:908–912

Thrane C, Nielsen MN, Nielsen TH, Olsson S, Sorensen J (2000) Viscosinamide-producing *Pseudomonas fluorescens* DR54 exerts a biocontrol effect on *Pythium ultimum* in sugar beat rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 33:139–146

Thrane C, Nielsen MN, Sorensen J, Olsson S (2001) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* DR54 reduces sclerotia formation, biomass development, and disease incidence of *Rhizoctonia solani* causing damping-off in sugar beet. Microb Ecol 42:438–445

Tombolini R, vander Gaag DJ, Gerhardson B, Jansson JK (1999) Colonization pattern of the biocontrol strain *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* MA342 on barely seeds visualized by using green fluorescent protein. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:3674–3680

Troxler J, Berling CH, Moenne-Loccoz Y, Keel C, D'efago G (1997) Interactions between the biocontrol agent *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0 and *Thielaviopsis basicola* in tobacco roots observed by immunofluorescence microscopy. Plant Pathol 46:62–71

Turner JM, Messenger AJ (1986) Occurrence, biochemistry and physiology of phenazine pigment production. Adv Microb Physiol 27:211–275

Van Etten HD, Kistler HC (1984) Microbial enzyme regulation and its importance for pathogenicity. In: Kosuge T, Nester EW (eds) Plant–microbe interactions. Macmillan, New York, pp 42–68

Van Loon LC (2008) Manipulating the plant's innate immune system by inducing resistance. Phytoparasitica 36:103–106

Van Loon LC, Bakker PAHM, Pieterse CMJ (1998) Systemic resistance induced by rhizosphere bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 36:453–483

Van Peer R, Schippers B (1988) Plant growth responses to bacterization with selected *Pseudomonas* spp. strains and rhizosphere microbial development in hydroponic cultures. Can J Microbiol 35:456–463

Van Peer R, Schippers B (1992) Lipopolysaccharides of plant-growth promoting *Pseudomonas* sp. strain WCS417r induce resistance in carnation to *Fusarium* wilt. Neth J Plant Pathol 98:129–139

Van Peer R, Niemann GJ, Schippers B (1991) Induced resistance and phytoalexin accumulation in biological control of *Fusarium* wilt of carnation by *Pseudomonas* sp. strain WCS417r. Phytopathology 81:728–733

van Wees SCM, Pieterse CMJ, Trijssenaar A, Van T, Westende YAM, Hartog F, van Loon LC (1997) Differential induction of systemic resistance in *Arabidopsis* by biocontrol bacteria. Molecular Plant-Microbe Int 10:716–724

Vincent MN, Harrison LA, Brackin JM, Kovacevich PA, Mukerji P, Weller DM, Pierson EA (1991) Genetic analysis of the antifungal activity of a soil borne *Pseudomonas aureofaciens* strain. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:2928–2934

Voisard C, Keel C, Haas D, Defago G (1981) Cyanide production in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* helps suppress black root rot of tobacco under gnotobiotic conditions. EMBO J 8:351–358

Wei G, Kloepper JW, Tuzun S (1991) Induction of systemic resistance of cucumber to *Colletotrichum orbiculare* by select strains of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Phytopathology 81:1508–1512

Weller DM (1988) Biological control of soilborne plant pathogens in the rhizosphere with bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 26:379–407

Weller DM, Cook RJ (1983) Suppression of take-all of wheat by seed treatments with fluorescent pseudomonads. Phytopathology 73:463–469

Weller DM, Zhang BX, Cook RJ (1985) Application of a rapid screening test for selection of bacteria suppressive to take all of wheat. Plant Dis 69:710–713

Zahnder GW, Murphy JF, Sikora EJ, Kloepper JW (2001) Application of rhizobacteria for induced resistance. Eur J Plant Pathol 107:39–50

Zhou T, Paulitz TC (1994) Induced resistance in the biocontrol of *Pythium aphanidermatum* by *Pseudomonas* spp. on cucumber. J Phytopathol 142:51–63

Zipfel C, Robatzek S, Navarro L, Oakeley E, Jones JDG, Felix G, Boller T (2004) Bacterial disease resistance in *Arabidopsis* through flagellin perception. Nature 428:764–767

Chapter 5
Role of *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* in Crop Improvement

Javier A. Andrés, Marisa Rovera, Lorena B. Guiñazú, Nicolás A. Pastor, and Susana B. Rosas

5.1 Introduction

Alfalfa (*Medicago sativa* L.) is worldwide in distribution. It is the most important forage legume grown in the semiarid Argentinean Pampas because of the quality of the nutrients that it provides (Viglizzo 1995). Furthermore, its root system improves and conserves soil structure and consequently promotes soil fertility (Vance 1997). Soybean (*Glycine max* L.) cultivation is also continuously expanding in Argentina. In fact, its production has been accelerating during the last decade, making this country one of the main world exporters (Lattanzi 2002).

Interactions between plants and microorganisms and among rhizosphere microorganisms are largely unknown and available literature revealed that these interactions are complex and depend on multiple traits (Lugtenberg and Dekkers 1999). Stimulation of growth by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) (Kloepper et al. 1989) has been attributed to an increase in the mobilization of insoluble nutrients and subsequent enhancement of nutrient uptake by plants (de Freitas et al. 1997; El-Komy 2005), production of plant growth regulators (Derylo and Skorupska 1993; Dubeikovsky et al. 1993) and suppression of deleterious soil bacteria and phytopathogenic fungi (Fridlender et al. 1993; Weller

J.A. Andrés (✉)
Laboratorio de Interacción Microorganismo – Planta, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas, Físico-Químicas y Naturales, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina

Laboratorio de Microbiología Agrícola, Facultad de Agronomía y Veterinaria, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina
e-mail: jandres@ayv.unrc.edu.ar; jandresjov@yahoo.com.ar

M. Rovera • L.B. Guiñazú • N.A. Pastor • S.B. Rosas
Laboratorio de Interacción Microorganismo – Planta, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas, Físico-Químicas y Naturales, Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Campus Universitario, X5804BYA Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_5,

and Thomashow 1993; Liu et al. 1995). Several *Pseudomonas* strains display plant growth-promoting (PGP) activities and have been investigated due to their widespread distribution in soil, ability to colonize the rhizospheres of host plants, and capacity to produce a range of compounds that are antagonistic to a number of plant pathogens (Rodríguez and Pfender 1997; Ross et al. 2000).

Diversity studies of *Pseudomonas* spp. and their PGP potential is important not only for understanding their ecological role in the rhizosphere and the interaction with plants, but also for biotechnological applications (Berg et al. 2002).

Pseudomonas chlororaphis, *Pseudomonas aureofaciens* and *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* were considered as separate species until 1989, when *P. aureofaciens* was proposed as a later heterotypic synonym of *P. chlororaphis* with *P. aurantiaca* remaining as a separate species. More recently, Peix et al. (2007) reclassified *P. aurantiaca* as a synonym of *P. chlororaphis* based on analysis of the almost complete 16 S rRNA gene. These authors suggested the location of *P. aurantiaca* as a novel subspecies of *P. chlororaphis*.

P. aurantiaca SR1 (or *P. chlororaphis subsps. aurantiaca* SR1) strain was isolated from soybean rhizosphere in the area of Río Cuarto, Córdoba, Argentina, at the Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto (UNRC) experimental field (33°07′ latitude S; 64°14′ longitude W; 421 m above sea level), from a typical sandy loam Hapludoll soil. This strain was initially classified as *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* by the BIOLOG (Biolog Inc., Hayward, CA) system (Rosas et al. 2001) and, more recently, by amplification and sequencing of a partial fragment from the 16 S rRNA gene.

5.2 Rhizosphere Colonization

The beneficial effect of the introduction in soil of a bacterium capable of promoting plant growth or exercising biological control of pathogens is related to its root colonization capacity (Benizri et al. 2001). It has been shown that *P. chlororaphis* mutants affected in root colonization are unable to eliminate the causal agent of the tomato foot and root rot disease (Chin-A-Woeng et al. 2000). On the other hand, coinoculation of *P. fluorescens* and *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* increased the colonization of rhizobia on soybean roots, nodule number and acetylene reduction activity (ARA) as reported by Chebotar et al. (2001). Moreover, addition of sterile spent medium of *P. fluorescens* increased the growth of *B. japonicum* in yeast mannitol broth (YMB, Vincent 1970), indicating that *P. fluorescens* may have released substances that increased the rhizobial populations.

The colonization of the soybean and alfalfa root system by *P. aurantiaca* SR1 is shown in Table 5.1. Mean comparisons were conducted using the least significant difference (LSD) test ($P < 0.05$). The density of adhering bacteria on soybean and alfalfa seeds was 5.8×10^5 CFU/seed and 1.2×10^5 CFU/seed, respectively. The tracking of the population density of *P. aurantiaca* SR1 was carried out by counting those colonies that expressed SR1's characteristic orange pigment.

Table 5.1 Root colonization by *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* in soil at different days after planting

	Bacterial densities in root (CFU/g root wet weight)	
Days after planting	Soybean	Alfalfa
10	4.8×10^5	7.1×10^4
15	3.0×10^5	3.0×10^4
25	2.0×10^4	4.0×10^3

Values within the same column followed by different letters were significantly different ($p < 0.05$)

Twenty-five days after seedling emergence, bacterial populations declined in both soybean and alfalfa root systems; however, the lower counts of *P. aurantiaca* SR1 suggested its establishment in the tested legume rhizosphere. The level of alfalfa roots colonization by *P. aurantiaca* SR1 was slightly lower than that observed in the same crop plant by Villacieros et al. (2003), who used *P. fluorescens* strain F113.

In addition, *P. aurantiaca* SR1 possesses the capacity to colonize the root system of wheat and it behaves as an endophyte strain in several crops (Rosas et al. 2005; Carlier et al. 2008; Rosas et al. 2009).

5.3 Growth Promotion Mechanisms

Several direct and indirect mechanisms to promote plant growth are present in *P. aurantiaca* SR1 as follows:

5.3.1 Indole Acetic Acid Production

Phytohormones synthesis is the most important direct PGP trait, besides biological nitrogen fixation. There are reports that suggest that PGPR synthesize several different phytohormones that enhance various developmental stages of plants and most of the attention has been focused on the role of auxins. Auxins are a class of plant hormones; the most common and well characterized is indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), which is known to stimulate both rapid and long term responses in plants.

IAA produced by microbes colonizing the seed or root surfaces is proposed to act in conjunction with endogenous IAA to stimulate cell proliferation and/or elongation and enhance the host's uptake of minerals and nutrients from the soil (Patten and Glick 2002; Suzuki et al. 2003). The growth of plants treated with IAA-secreting PGPR is affected by the amount of IAA that the bacterium produces. Thus, PGPR facilitate plant growth by altering the hormonal balance within the affected plant (Glick 1995; Vessey 2003; Asghar et al. 2004; Kang et al. 2006).

Figure 5.1 shows the growth curve and IAA production by *P. aurantiaca* SR1. The concentration of IAA in the supernatant began to increase consistently after

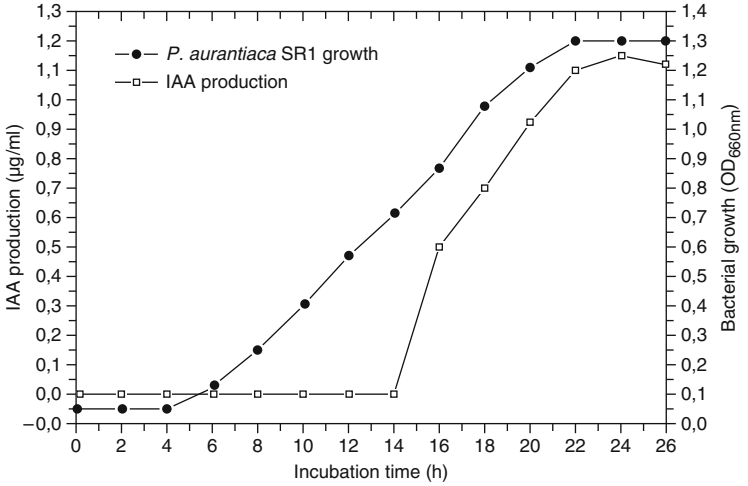


Fig. 5.1 Bacterial growth and IAA production by *P. aurantiaca* SR1 in 20% TSB medium. Culture was stopped after reaching the stationary phase

14 h of incubation and reached its highest level (11.7 µg/ml) at the end of the exponential growth phase or early stationary phase (24 h). Thereafter, there was a decrease in IAA synthesis by *P. aurantiaca* SR1.

In a recent study, Mehnaz et al. (2009) did not detect IAA production by *P. aurantiaca* PB-St2, a PGPR isolated from sugarcane stem. Our observations are in good agreement with other studies that suggested induction of IAA production during the stationary phase of culture, probably because of the induction of key enzymes involved in IAA biosynthesis (Oberhansli et al. 1990; Patten and Glick 2002; Ayyadurai et al. 2006).

5.3.2 Biocontrol Activity

Certain fluorescent pseudomonads are known to promote plant growth by producing metabolites able to inhibit bacteria and fungi that are deleterious to plants (Keel et al. 1990; Maurhofer et al. 1991; Hill et al. 1994). Some of these disease-suppressive antibiotic compounds have been chemically characterized and include phenazine-1-carboxylic acid (PCA), pyrrolnitrin, pyoluteorin, 2,5-dialkylresorcinol and 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (DAPG) (Thomashow et al. 1990; Keel et al. 1992; Kraus and Loper 1995; Nielsen et al. 1998; Dwivedi and Johri 2003). The results obtained by both the application of molecular techniques and direct isolation methods have demonstrated unequivocally that these antibiotics are produced in the spermosphere and the rhizosphere and are very important in suppressing soilborne plant pathogens (Bonsall et al. 1997; Ross et al. 2000; de Leij et al. 2002). DAPG produced by fluorescent pseudomonads is considered as a major

determinant in the biocontrol activity of PGPR. The broad-spectrum antibiotic DAPG has wide antifungal, antibacterial, antihelminthic, nematicidal and phytotoxic activity (Cronin et al. 1997; Raaijmakers et al. 2002). Information of the production of antifungal metabolites by *P. aurantiaca* strains are scarce. Esipov et al. (1975) describe the production of "a new antibiotically active fluoroglucide" in *P. aurantiaca*. Then, a possible route of synthesis of 2,5-Dialkylresorcinol in *P. aurantiaca* was proposed by Nowak-Thompson et al. (2003). Mandryk et al. (2007) reported new antimicrobial compounds produced by *P. aurantiaca*, having molecular formulas of $C_{18}H_{36}NO$ (molecular mass 282.8; antibacterial activity) and $C_{20}H_{31}O_3$ (molecular mass 319.3; antifungal activity). Reports about PCA production by *P. aurantiaca* could not be found, although Peix et al. (2007) used the production of PCA as a characteristic feature of *P. aureofaciens* and *P. aurantiaca* when they reclassified these species. A new method for obtaining regulatory mutants of *P. aurantiaca* capable of overproduction of phenazine antibiotics was described by Feklistova and Maksimova (2008).

Quorum sensing is the major way by which many bacteria regulate production of antifungal factors and N-hexanoyl homoserine lactone (HHL) is a compound that indicates the presence of a quorum sensing mechanism. Feklistova and Maksimova (2008) and Mehnaz et al. (2009) reported the production of N-HHL by *P. aurantiaca* B-162 and *P. aurantiaca* PB-St2, respectively.

P. aurantiaca SR1 produces an orange pigment associated with a strong in vitro antifungal activity against different pathogenic fungi such as *Macrophomina phaseolina, Rhizoctonia solani, Pythium* spp., *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum, Sclerotium rolfsii, Fusarium* spp. and *Alternaria* spp. (Rosas et al. 2001). The antifungal compound is secreted by the bacterium when culture media such as tryptic soy agar, nutrient agar or minimum media supplemented with tryptone or peptone are used. Among the tested carbon sources, mannitol and saccharose have been found to induce pigment production while glucose acts as a repressor (Rovera et al. 2000).

In our study, an antifungal compound was isolated from *P. aurantiaca* SR1 grown on plates containing 25% tryptic soy agar (TSA-Britania Laboratory, Argentina), incubated at 30°C for 5 days. The antibiotic produced by *P. aurantiaca* SR1 was confirmed as DAPG using thin-layer chromatography (TLC), high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and spectrometric techniques, and tested for antibiosis toward the phytopathogenic fungi *M. phaseolina*.

To purify the antifungal compound, a 0.5 ml volume of crude extract was spotted on thin-layer plates coated with silica gel 60, 20 by 20 cm (Merck) and developed in chloroform/methanol (98:2 vol/vol). The thin-layer chromatography of the isolated compound was compared with standard DAPG (Toronto Research Chemicals Cat. No. 10365500). The fluorescing and absorbing bands developed on plates were observed under long- and short-wavelength UV light. All bands and blank areas were separately removed from the plates and eluted with 100% acetone (70 ml). The silica residue was removed by centrifugation and the supernatant was transferred to a second set of microcentrifuge tubes. Each fraction was concentrated by evaporating the acetone and tested in vitro for antifungal activity.

Aliquots of 0.1 ml of the acetone elutes were placed directly onto TSA plates and were maintained under a laminar air flow until the acetone evaporated. Potato dextrose agar (PDA) plugs (5 mm) of *M. phaseolina* were placed in the center of the plates and incubated at 28°C for 5–7 days. The control consisted of a *M. phaseolina* PDA plug onto the surface of plates containing TSA medium after 0.1 ml of acetone had evaporated. The spots were identified by irradiating plates with UV light (350 and 245 nm). Only one spot showed antifungal activity (Rf: 0.35 in chloroform/methanol 98:2 vol/vol) (Table 5.2). A similar behavior was observed using chloroform:acetone (2:1) as eluant, with a Rf of 0.54. The active fraction (dissolved in methanol) was further analyzed by HPLC (Fig. 5.2). The isolated active compound was also analyzed by spectrometric techniques. UV–visible absorption spectra were recorded on a Shimadzu UV-2401PC spectrometer. ^{1}HNMR spectra were recorded on a Varian Gemini spectrometer at 300 MHz.

Table 5.2 Relative mobility (Rf) and antifungal activity against *Macrophomina phaseolina* of each band obtained from the TLC from *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* SR1 culture media

Band number	Relative mobility (Rf)	Antifungal activity
1	0.03	(−)
2	0.06	(−)
3	0.13	(−)
4	0.22	(−)
5	0.25	(−)
6	0.35	(+)
7	0.39	(−)
8	0.60	(−)

TLC in chloroform/methanol (98:2 vol/vol). The bands were observed by illumination at 254 and 350 nm. (+) inhibition. (−) no inhibition

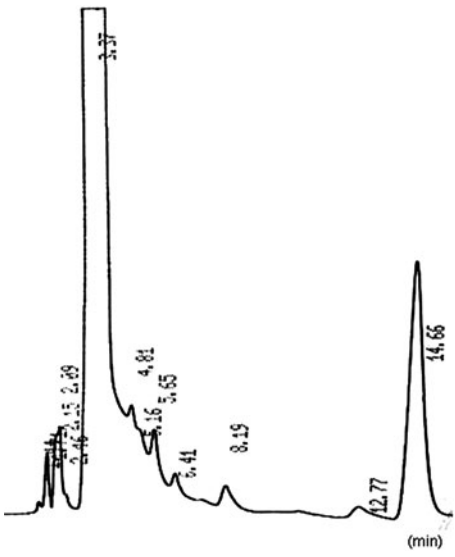


Fig. 5.2 HPLC chromatogram of DAPG (retention time 14.66 min) produced by *P. aurantiaca* SR1

Mass spectra were taken with a Varian Matt 312 operating in E.I. mode at 70 eV. IR spectra were recorded with a Nicolet Impact 400 FT-IR.

The UV–visible absorption spectrum of the active compound in methanol showed two bands at λ 267 and 328 nm. These bands are characteristic of $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ and $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ transitions of aromatic rings bearing a carbonyl chromophore, which is characteristic for DAPG (Bonsall et al. 1997).

The Fourier transform infrared (FTIR) spectrum showed the presence of a broad absorption at 3,421 cm^{-1}, typically corresponding to a bound OH stretching, and bands at 2,923 and 2,852 cm^{-1}, which can be attributed to the C–H stretching. A strong absorption band was observed at 1,689 cm^{-1} that is recognized as a stretching of the carbonyl group. Also, medium sharp bands were shown at 1,463 and 1,384 cm^{-1} and a strong band centered at 1,074 cm^{-1}. Thus, the IR spectrum of the active sample was in agreement with the DAPG spectrum (Fig. 5.3). The mass spectrum and fragmentation of the isolated compound showed a match with that reported for DAPG, with peaks at 177, 195 (100%), 210 (M). Studies of ^{1}HNMR in acetone confirmed the DAPG structure.

P. aurantiaca SR1, formulated as an inoculant that contains 2.4×10^9 CFU/g peat, was able to produce the antifungal compound in rhizosphere soil. Genetic studies demonstrated the role of DAPG in biological control, which is complemented by direct isolation of DAPG from the rhizosphere (Bonsall et al. 1997). This effect was deduced from the antifungal activity of the residue resulting from the extraction made with organic solvents from soybean and alfalfa root systems inoculated. The TLC that was performed with the extract showed the presence of an active "band" with a value of Rf: 0.35, visualized under an UV light illuminator. The chromatography revealed the same profile as that obtained in the in vitro assays. The purification of the compound by HPLC revealed a similar profile to

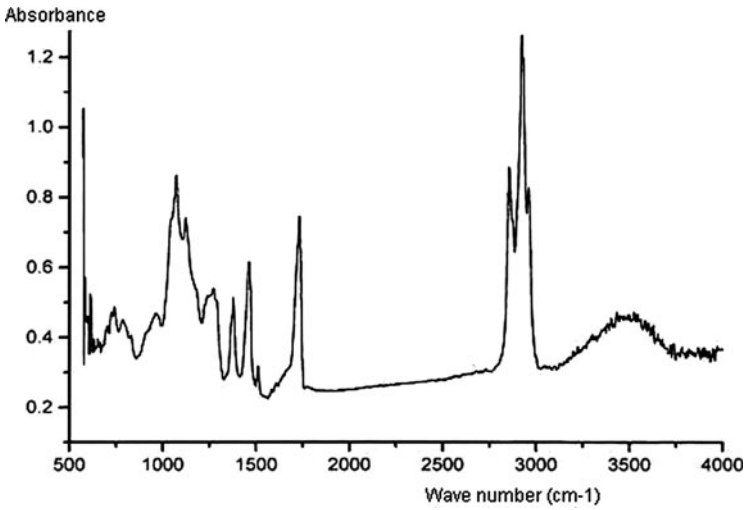


Fig. 5.3 FT-IR spectrum of DAPG produced by *P. aurantiaca* SR1

that of the compound extracted from the bacterial growth in culture medium and it is comparable with the pure standard. The TLC control (soybean and alfalfa roots from uninoculated seeds) did not present the "band" with an Rf of 0.35, indicating that other native microorganisms did not produce the compound. The antifungal compound was still detected 25 days after seedling. This detection had correlation with *P. aurantiaca* SR1 viability in the rhizosphere.

In other studies, we showed that *P. aurantiaca* SR1 produces siderophores and hydrogen cyanide (HCN). One way that microorganisms can prevent the proliferation of phytopathogens, and thereby facilitate plant growth, is through the production and secretion of low molecular mass iron-binding molecules (siderophores) with a very high affinity for iron. These bind most of the Fe^{+3} that is available in the rhizosphere, and, as a result, effectively prevent any pathogens in the immediate vicinity from proliferating because of lack of iron (Glick 1995; Rachid and Ahmed 2005; Viswanathan and Samiyappan 2007). The bacterium that originally synthesized the siderophores takes up the iron-siderophore complex by using a receptor that is specific for the complex (O'Sullivan and O'Gara 1992). Furthermore, some plants have mechanisms for binding the bacterial iron-siderophore complex and then releasing the iron so that it can be used by the plant (Wang et al. 1993). We tested the production of siderophores by *P. aurantiaca* SR1 using the Chrome azurol S method described by Alexander and Zuberer (1991). Plates were incubated at 28°C for 5 days and colonies exhibiting an orange halo were considered to be siderophore producers.

Certain PGPR strains produce volatile antibiotics, of which HCN is the most important; this compound inhibits the cytochrome oxidase of many organisms. The producing strains possess an alternate cyanide-resistant cytochrome oxidase and are relatively insensitive to HCN (Voisard et al. 1989; Rudrappa and Baiss 2008). HCN production by *P. aurantiaca* SR1 was determined as described by Bakker and Schippers (1987) in 10% TSA amended with glycine (4.4 g/l). A change in color, from yellow to orange-brown, of filter paper impregnated with 0.5% picric acid – 2% sodium carbonate indicated production of cyanide.

5.4 Legume Responses to Inoculation with *P. aurantiaca* SR1

Bacteria belonging to the genera *Rhizobium*, *Bradyrhizobium*, *Mesorhizobium*, *Sinorhizobium* and *Azorhizobium* can interact with leguminous plant roots to form nodules, which function as sites for atmospheric nitrogen fixation (Relic et al. 1994). In addition, bacteria that promote nodulation of legumes by rhizobia are referred to as nodulation-promoting rhizobacteria (NPR) (Kloepper et al. 1988). However, these NPR include diverse groups of microorganisms such as *Azospirillum* (Hamaoui et al. 2001), *Azotobacter* (Tilak et al. 2006), *Pseudomonas* (Villacieros et al. 2003), *Bacillus* (Bai et al. 2003), *Paenibacillus* (Figueiredo et al. 2008), *Streptomyces* (Samac et al. 2003) and *Serratia* (Lucas García et al. 2004). Coinoculation studies with PGPR and *Rhizobium*/*Bradyrhizobium* spp. have been shown to increase root

and shoot weight, plant vigor, N_2 fixation and grain yield in various legumes including common bean (Grimes and Mount 1984), green gram (Sindhu et al. 1999), pea (Bolton et al. 1990) and soybean (Dashti et al. 1998; Rosas et al. 2006). Knight and Langston-Unkefer (1988) found that inoculation of nodulating alfalfa roots by a toxin-releasing *Pseudomonas syringae pv. tabaci* significantly increased plant growth, nitrogenase activity, nodule number, total nodule weight and nitrogen yield under controlled growth conditions. In other study, Pandey and Maheshwari (2007) reported cooperation between two rhizobacteria belonging to two distant genera, *Burkholderia* sp. and *S. meliloti*. They are rhizospheric isolates with the ability to produce IAA and solubilize inorganic phosphate. The two strains were tested on *Cajanus cajan* in sterile soil. Single inoculation of either resulted in significant increase in seedling length and weight, but an exceptional increase in seedling growth was recorded when coinoculating.

The *P. aurantiaca* and *S. meliloti* strains were maintained on 20% TSA medium. The coexistence of *P. aurantiaca* SR1 with *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 (Rosas et al. 2006) and *B. japonicum* E109 (Instituto Nacional de Tecnología Agropecuaria, Argentina) was tested. For this, *P. aurantiaca* SR1 was streaked along one side of Petri plates containing 20% TSA and parallel streaks of the respective rhizobia strains were made on the other side. Both strains were separated by a distance of 5 mm. Rhizobia was inoculated at the same time with *P. aurantiaca* and when *P. aurantiaca* growth was evident (normally after 48 h). Inhibition of rhizobial growth was measured after 5 days at 28°C. In a further experiment, we assessed the effects of the *P. aurantiaca* SR1 culture supernatant on *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 and *B. japonicum* E109 growth. *P. aurantiaca* SR1 was grown for 21 h in 20% TSB and the liquid culture was centrifuged at 6,000 rpm for 10 min at 4°C. The supernatant was filter-sterilized through a 0.22-μm Whatman filter and aliquots (0.2 ml) were placed directly onto 20% TSA agar plates. Then, *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 was streaked on this medium and it was incubated for 5 days at 28°C.

P. aurantiaca SR1 did not show any inhibitory effect neither on *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 nor on *B. japonicum* E109 in the coexistence assays performed at different times. Moreover, the exposure to the culture filtrate of strain SR1 did not affect the rhizobial growth.

Also, the combined effect of *P. aurantiaca* SR1 and *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 on growth and nodulation of alfalfa and *P. aurantiaca* SR1 and *B. japonicum* E109 on soybean growth under aseptic conditions was determined in this study. Rhizobia were routinely grown on yeast extract mannitol (YEM) solid medium (Vincent 1970) and *P. aurantiaca* SR1 on TSB medium. Bacterial cultures were raised to a level of 7×10^8 cfu ml^{-1} for *S. meliloti* 3Doh13, 1×10^9 cfu ml^{-1} for *B. japonicum* E109 and 4.5×10^8 cfu ml^{-1} for *P. aurantiaca* SR1.

First, soybean seeds were disinfected for 20 min with 0.4% calcium hypochlorite solution and alfalfa seeds were scarified by shaking for 15 min in concentrated sulfuric acid; then, seeds were disinfected with 70% ethanol for 3 min and washed with repeated changes of sterile, distilled water (Andrés et al. 1998; Rosas et al. 2006).

Second, seeds were treated with a culture of each rhizobial strain and *P. aurantiaca* by mixing culture broths of both the inoculant strains in a 1:1 ratio (v/v). One gram of

alfalfa seeds and ten grams of soybean seeds were inoculated with 2 ml of the single or mixed bacterial suspension, and average populations of bacteria on inoculated seeds were in the order of 1×10^5 cfu alfalfa seed^{-1} and 3×10^5 cfu soybean seed^{-1}, determined by dilution plate technique. Seeds (at least five seeds per treatment) were placed in tubes containing 10 ml of 0.1 M phosphate buffer (pH 7.4). Tubes were vortexed for 2 min and serial dilutions plated on 20% TSA and incubated at 28°C. Colonies were counted after 72 h.

Eight alfalfa or four soybean bacterized seeds were sown in plastic pots (15 cm diameter) filled with autoclaved perlite/sand (2:1). Plants were kept in a chamber under controlled conditions: 16 h light at 28°C and 8 h dark at 16°C, and a light intensity of 220 μE m^{-2} s^{-1}. Pots were watered alternately with sterile, distilled water and an N-free Jensen solution (Vincent 1970). N-control was watered in the same manner, but with the addition of 0.5% KNO_3 l^{-1} to the original Jensen solution. Each independent treatment was replicated three times.

Forty-five days after sowing, plants were harvested in order to evaluate shoot length, root length, shoot dry weight, root dry weight, nodule number and N content (only in alfalfa shoot). All samples were oven dried (at 70–80°C) for 48 h and weighed. The total N content was determined by a modified Kjeldahl method (Baker and Thompson 1992) by treating 100 mg sample with 1.25 g of catalytic mix (potassium sulfate:mercuric oxide, in a 24:1 relation) and 2.5 ml of conc. H_2SO_4. The mixture was digested for 40 min. Then, the ammonia liberated by alkalinization with NaOH solution was separated by distillation and collectical (as ammonium borate) in a 4% boric acid. Ammonium was determined by titration with a 0.02 N HCl. An automatic analyzer of N (Kjeltec Auto 1030, Tecator, Sweden) was used.

The composite inoculation of *P. aurantiaca* with *S. meliloti* increased the plant length, shoot and root dry weights and total N content in comparison to inoculation with *S. meliloti* alone or uninoculated control (Table 5.3). The dry matter accumulation in root and shoot and N-content in aerial parts increased significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) with respect to the N-control.

Nodulation on root systems of alfalfa plants following coinoculation with *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 and *P. aurantiaca* SR1 was increased by 34% compared to single inoculation. However, this did not correlate with the dry weight of nodules. The shoot and root dry weights of coinoculated plants were 1.09 and 1.24 times higher, respectively, than those observed for *S. meliloti*-inoculated alfalfa plants and 1.64 and 1.7 times with respect to uninoculated controls. The coinoculation of *P. aurantiaca* SR1 and *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 significantly enhanced nodulation at 45 days of growth.

The coinoculation of *B. japonicum* E109 – *P. aurantiaca* SR1 promoted an increase in shoot and root dry biomass, but not in the number of nodules, compared with single inoculation with *B. japonicum* (Table 5.4). The shoot and root dry weight of coinoculated plants were 1.24 and 1.35 times, respectively, greater than that of *B. japonicum*-inoculated soybean and 1.85 and 1.93 times with respect to uninoculated controls. The coinoculation of seeds with antibiotic-producing bacteria and rhizobia strains resistant to these compounds were proposed as a

Table 5.3 Effect of coinoculation of alfalfa with *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* SR1 and *Sinorhizobium meliloti* 3Doh13 on seedling growth and symbiotic parameters under sterile conditions

Microbial treatment	Shoot length ($cm.plant^{-1}$)	Shoot dry weight ($mg.plant^{-1}$)	Root length ($cm.plant^{-1}$)	Root dry weight ($mg.plant^{-1}$)	Number of nodules ($no.plant^{-1}$)	Dry weight of nodules ($mg.plant^{-1}$)	Shoot N ($mg.g^{-1}$)
Uninoculated control	5.68 ± 0.51	52 ± 3.4	6.72 ± 0.43	20 ± 0.8	_	_	41.9
Control + N	7.51 ± 0.6	76.2 ± 4.3	12.61 ± 0.33	25.8 ± 0.8	_	_	48.2
S. meliloti 3DOh13	7.08 ± 0.43	78.2 ± 5.1	10.28 ± 0.52	27.3 ± 1.4	7.5 ± 0.9	5.6 ± 0.5	47.6
S. meliloti 3DOh13 + *P. aurantiaca* SR1	8.20 ± 0.29	85.8 ± 4.5	13.78 ± 0.47	34 ± 5.1	10.1 ± 0.6	5.8 ± 0.7	50.7

Values within the same column followed by the same letter are not significantly different according to LSD ($p \leq 0.05$)
Experiments were repeated three times and results represent the mean per treatment of 25 plants for each treatment

Table 5.4 Effect of coinoculation of soybean with *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* SR1 and *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* E109 on seedling growth and symbiotic parameters under sterile conditions

Microbial treatment	Shoot length ($cm.plant^{-1}$)	Shoot dry weight ($mg.plant^{-1}$)	Root length ($cm.plant^{-1}$)	Root dry weight ($mg.plant^{-1}$)	Number of nodules ($no.plant^{-1}$)	Dry weight of nodules ($mg.plant^{-1}$)
Uninoculated control	49.1 ± 7.2	531 ± 86	22.6 ± 3.2	180 ± 25	_	_
Control + N	58.3 ± 4	1,002 ± 33	27.7 ± 2.5	332 ± 11	_	_
B. japonicum E109	54.6 ± 6.1	790 ± 25	26.3 ± 3.4	256 ± 9.1	28.8 ± 5.4	32 ± 4
B. japonicum E109 + *P. aurantiaca* SR1	57.3 ± 2.1	983 ± 21	24.9 ± 5.1	347 ± 13	25.5 ± 6.5	48 ± 6

Values within the same column followed by the same letter are not significantly different according to LSD ($p \leq 0.05$)
Experiments were repeated three times and results represent the mean per treatment of 25 plants for each treatment

way of reducing the detrimental interactions in the rhizosphere and thereby enhancing the colonization and nodulation of legume roots by rhizobia (Li and Alexander 1988).

5.5 Conclusion

Extensive studies have demonstrated that PGPRs could have an important role in agriculture, improving crop productivity. In recent years, emphasis on the use of two or more microorganisms has been made with the aim of maximizing beneficial

plant growth responses. It is important to identify the best strains of beneficial microbes, elucidate the mechanisms involved in growth promotion, to verify their compatibility and combined efficiency, both in vitro and in vivo, and employ such a combined inoculum in a real agricultural situation.

In this chapter, we describe the indole-3-acetic acid production by *P. aurantiaca* SR1 as well as the isolation and purification of a metabolite involved in the antibiosis capacity of this strain. The chemical characterization revealed that the cited compound is DAPG and its production was qualitatively detected in the in vitro assays and in the rhizosphere.

The *P. aurantiaca* strain was able to establish in the rhizosphere environment of the crop from which it was isolated (soybean) and also showed the capacity of colonizing the root system of alfalfa. It is interesting to note that although *P. aurantiaca* SR1 exerts a biocontrol effect on plant pathogenic fungi, probably due to the production of the secondary metabolites DAPG, HCN and siderophores, it does not interfere with rhizobial strains.

To summarize, we have shown that *P. aurantiaca* SR1 strain acted synergistically with *S. meliloti* 3Doh13 and *B. japonicum* E109 in promoting growth and symbiotic parameters of alfalfa and soybean under sterile conditions. It suggests a potential use of combinations of this strain and rhizobia in improving growth of these legumes. Our results are a contribution in the selection of bacterial strains for the formulation of new inoculants.

Acknowledgments This research was supported by Secretaría de Ciencia y Técnica of Universidad Nacional de Río Cuarto, Agencia Nacional de Promoción Científica y Tecnológica (ANPCyT) and Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones Científicas y Técnicas (CONICET), Argentina.

References

Alexander DB, Zuberer DA (1991) Use of chrome azurol S reagents to evaluate siderophore production by rhizosphere bacteria. Biol Fertil Soils 12:39–45

Andrés JA, Correa NS, Rosas SB (1998) Alfalfa and soybean seed and root exudates treated with thiram inhibit the expression of rhizobia nodulation genes. Phyton Int J Exp Bot 62:47–53

Asghar HN, Zahir ZA, Arshad M (2004) Screening rhizobacteria for improving the growth, yield and oil content of canola (*Brassica napus* L.). Aust J Agric Res 55:187–194

Ayyadurai N, Ravindra Naik P, Sreehari Rao M, Sunish Kumar R, Samrat SK, Manohar M, Sakthivel N (2006) Isolation and characterization of a novel banana rhizosphere bacterium as a fungal antagonist and microbial adjuvant in micropropagation of banana. J Appl Microbiol 100:926–937

Bai Y, Zhou X, Smith DL (2003) Enhanced soybean plant growth resulting from coinoculation of *Bacillus* strains with *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. Crop Sci 43:1774–1781

Baker WH, Thompson TL (1992) Determination of total nitrogen in plant samples by Kjeldahl. In: Plank CO (ed) Plant analysis reference procedures for the southern region of the United States, Series Bulletin 368, The University of Georgia, pp 13–16

Bakker AW, Schippers B (1987) Microbial cyanide production in the rhizosphere in relation to potato yield reduction and *Pseudomonas* spp. mediated plant growth-stimulation. Soil Biol Biochem 19:451–457

Benizri E, Baudoin E, Guckert A (2001) Root colonization by inoculated plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Biocontr Sci Technol 11:557–574

Berg G, Roskot N, Steidle A, Eberl L, Zock A, Smalla K (2002) Plant-depended genotypic and phenothypic diversity of antagonistic rhizobacteria isolated from different *Verticillium* host plants. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3328–3338

Bolton H Jr, Ellio LF, Turco RF, Kennedy AC (1990) Rhizoplane colonization of pea seedlings by *Rhizobium leguminosarum* and a deleterious root colonizing *Pseudomonas sp*. and effects on plant growth. Plant Soil 123:121–124

Bonsall RF, Weller DM, Thomashow LS (1997) Quantification of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol produced by fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. in vitro and in the rhizosphere of wheat. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:951–955

Carlier E, Rovera M, Rossi Jaume AD, Rosas SB (2008) Improvement of growth, under field conditions, of wheat inoculated with *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* SR1. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:2653–2658

Chebotar VK, Asis CA Jr, Asao S (2001) Production of growth-promoting substances and high colonization ability of rhizobacteria enhance the nitrogen fixation of soybean when coinoculated with *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. Biol Fertil Soils 34:427–432

Chin-A-Woeng TFC, Bloemberg GV, Mulders IHM, Dekkers LC, Lugtenberg BJJ (2000) Root colonization by phenazine-1-carboxamide-producing bacterium *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* PCL 1931 is essential for biocontrol of tomato foot and root rot. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 10:79–86

Cronin D, Moënne-Loccoz Y, Fenion A, Dunne C, Dowling DN, O'Gara F (1997) Role of 2,4-diacethylphloroglucinol in the interactions of the biocontrol Pseudomonad strain F113 with the potato cyst nematode *Globodera rostochiensis*. Appl Environ Microbiol 63: 1357–1361

Dashti N, Zhang F, Hynes R, Smith DL (1998) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria accelerate nodulation and increase nitrogen fixation activity by field growth soybean [*Glycine max* (L) Merr.] under short season conditions. Plant Soil 200:205–213

de Freitas JR, Banerjee MR, Germida JJ (1997) Phosphate-solubilizing rhizobacteria enhance the growth and yield but not phosphorus uptake of canola (*Brassica napus* L.). Biol Fertil Soils 24:358–364

De Leij FA, Dichon-Hardy J, Lynch JM (2002) Effect of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol-producing and non-producing strains of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* on root development of pea seedlings in three different soil types and its effect on nodulation by *Rhizobium*. Biol Fertil Soils 35:114–121

Derylo M, Skorupska A (1993) Enhancement of symbiotic nitrogen fixation by vitamin-secreting fluorescent *Pseudomonas*. Plant Soil 54:211–217

Dubeikovsky AN, Mordukhova EA, Kochetkov VV, Polikarpova FY, Boronin AM (1993) Growth promotion of blackcurrant softwood cuttings by recombinant strain *Pseudomonas fluorescens* BSP53a synthesizing and increased amount of indole-3-acetic acid. Soil Biol Biochem 25:1277–1281

Dwivedi D, Johri BN (2003) Antifungals from fluorescent pseudomonads: biosynthesis and regulation. Curr Sci 85:1693–1703

El-Komy HMA (2005) Coimmobilization of *A. lipoferum* and *B. megaterium* for plant nutrition. Food Technol Biotechnol 43:19–27

Esipov SE, Adanin VM, Baskunov BP, Kiprianova EA, Garagulia AD (1975) New antibiotically active fluoroglucide from *Pseudomonas aurantiaca*. Antibiotiki 20:1077–1081

Feklistova IN, Maksimova NP (2008) Obtaining *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* strains capable of overproduction of phenazine antibiotics. Microbiology 77:176–180

Figueiredo MVB, Martínez CR, Burity HA, Chanway CP (2008) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria for improving nodulation and nitrogen fixation in the common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). W J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1187–1193

Fridlender M, Inbar J, Chet I (1993) Biological control of soil borne plant pathogens by a ß-1,3-glucanase-producing *Pseudomonas cepacia*. Soil Biol Biochem 25:1211–1221

Glick BR (1995) The enhancement of plant growth by free-living bacteria. Can J Microbiol 41:109–117

Grimes HD, Mount MS (1984) Influence of *Pseudomonas putida* on nodulation of *Phaseolus vulgaris*. Soil Biol Biochem 16:27–30

Hamaoui B, Abbadi JM, Burdman S, Rashid A, Sarig S, Okon Y (2001) Effects of inoculation with *Azospirillum brasilense* on chickpea (*Cicer arietinum*) and faba beans (*Vicia faba*) under different growth conditions. Agronomie 21:553–560

Hill DS, Stein RI, Torkewitz NR, Morse AM, Howell CR, Pachlatko JP, Becker JO, Ligon JM (1994) Cloning of genes involved in the synthesis of pyrrolnitrin from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and role of pyrrolnitrin synthesis in biological control of plant disease. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:78–85

Kang BR, Yang KY, Cho BH, Han TH, Kim IS, Lee MC, Anderson AJ, Kim YC (2006) Production of idole-3-acetic acid in the plant-beneficial strain *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* O6 is negatively regulated by the global sensor kinase GacS. Curr Microbiol 52:473–476

Keel C, Wirthner PH, Oberhansii TH, Voisard C, Burger P, Hass D, Défago G (1990) Pseudomonads as antagonists of plants pathogens in the rhizosphere role of the antibiotic 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol in the suppression of black root rot of tobacco. Symbiosis 9:327–341

Keel C, Snider U, Maurhofer M, Voisard C, Laville J, Burger P, Wirthner PH, Hass D, Défago G (1992) Suppression of root diseases by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0: importance of the secondary metabolite 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 5:4–13

Kloepper JW, Hume DT, Scher FM, Singleton C, Tipping B, Laliberte M, Franley K, Kutchaw T, Simonson C, Lifshitz R, Zaleska I, Lee L (1988) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria on canola (rapeseed). Plant Dis 72:42–46

Kloepper JW, Lifshitz R, Zablotowicz RM (1989) Free-living bacterial inocula for enhancing crop productivity. Trends Biotechnol 7:39–43

Knight TJ, Langston-Unkefer PJ (1988) Enhancement of symbiotic dinitrogen fixation by a toxin-releasing plant pathogen. Science 241:951–994

Kraus J, Loper JE (1995) Characterization of a genomic region required for production of the antibiotic pyoluteorin by the biological control agent *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Pf-5. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:849–854

Lattanzi AR (2002) Manejo del cultivo de la soja en Argentina–Actualizaciones. In: Baigorri EJ (ed) Instituto Nacional de Tecnología Agropecuaria (INTA). Marcos Juárez, Argentina, p 3

Li DM, Alexander M (1988) Co-inoculation with antibiotic-producing bacteria to increase colonization and nodulation by rhizobia. Plant Soil 108:211–219

Liu L, Kloepper JW, Tuzun S (1995) Induction of systemic resistance in cucumber against *Fusarium* wilt by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Phytopathology 85:695–698

Lucas García JA, Probanza A, Ramos B, Barriuso J, Gutiérrez Mañero FJ (2004) Effects of inoculation with plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and *Sinorhizobium fredii* on biological nitrogen fixation, nodulation and growth of *Glycine max* cv Osumi. Plant Soil 267:143–153

Lugtenberg BJJ, Dekkers LC (1999) What makes *Pseudomonas* bacteria rhizosphere competent? Environ Microbiol 1:9–13

Mandryk MN, Kolomiets E, Dey ES (2007) Characterization of antimicrobial compounds produced by *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* S-1. Pol J Microbiol 56:245–250

Maurhofer M, Keel C, Schnider U, Voisard C, Haas D, Défago G (1991) Influence of enhanced antibiotic production in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* CHA0 on its disease suppressive capacity. Phytopathology 82:190–195

Mehnaz S, Noreen Baig D, Jamil F, Weselowski B, Lazarovits G (2009) Characterization of a phenazine and hexanoyl homoserine lactone producing *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* strain PB-St2, isolated from sugarcane stem. J Microbiol Biotechnol 19:1688–1694

Nielsen MN, Sørensen J, Fels J, Pedersen HC (1998) Secondary metabolite and endochitinase-dependent antagonism toward plant-pathogenic microfungi of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* isolates from sugar beet rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3563–3569

Nowak-Thompson B, Hammer PE, Hill DS, Stafford J, Torkewitz N, Gaffney TD, Lam ST, Molnár I, Ligon JM (2003) 2,5-dialkylresorcinol biosynthesis in *Pseudomonas aurantiaca*: novel head-to-head condensation of two fatty acid-derived precursors. J Bacteriol 185:860–869

O'Sullivan DJ, O'Gara F (1992) Traits of fluorescent *Pseudomonas* spp. involved in suppression of plant root pathogens. Microbiol Rev 56:662–676

Oberhansli T, Defago G, Hass D (1990) Indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) synthesis in the biocontrol strain CHAO of *Pseudomonas fluorescens*: role of tryptophan side chain oxidase. J Gen Microbiol 137:2273–2279

Pandey P, Maheshwari DK (2007) Two-species microbial consortium for growth promotion of *Cajanus cajan*. Curr Sci 92:1137–1142

Patten CL, Glick BR (2002) The role of *Pseudomonas putida* indoleacetic acid in the development of the host plant root system. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3795–3801

Peix A, Valverde A, Rivas R, Igual JM, Ramírez-Bahena MH, Mateos PF, Santa-Regina I, Rodríguez-Barrueco C, Martínez-Molina E, Velázquez E (2007) Reclassification of *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* as a synonym of *Pseudomonas chlororaphis* and proposal of three supspecies, *P. chlororaphis subsp. chlororaphis* subsp. nov., *P. chlororaphis subsp. aureofaciens* subsp. nov., comb. nov. and *P. chlororaphis subsp. aurantiaca* subsp. nov., comb. nov. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:1286–1290

Raaijmakers JM, Ulami M, de Souza JT (2002) Antibiotic production by bacterial biocontrol agents. Antonie van Leenwenhoek 81:537–547

Rachid D, Ahmed B (2005) Effect of iron and growth inhibitors on siderophores production by *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Afr J Biotechnol 4:697–702

Relic B, Perret X, Estrada-García MT, Kopcinska J, Golinowski W, Krishnan HB, Pueppke SG, Broughton WJ (1994) Nod factors of *Rhizobium* are a key to the legume door. Mol Microbiol 13:171–178

Rodríguez F, Pfender WF (1997) Antibiosis and antagonism of *Sclerotinia homeocarpa* and *Drechslera poae* by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* PF-5 in vitro and in planta. Phytopathology 87:614–621

Rosas SB, Altamirano FE, Schröder E, Correa NS (2001) In vitro biocontrol activity of *Pseudomonas aurantiaca*.. Phyton Int J Exp Bot 67:203–209

Rosas SB, Rovera M, Andrés JA, Pastor NA, Guiñazú LB, Carlier E, Avanzini GV, Correa NS (2005) Characterization of *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* as biocontrol and PGPR agent. In: Sorvari S, Toldi O (eds) Endophytes and biocontrol agents. Lapland, Finland, pp 91–99

Rosas SB, Andrés JA, Rovera M, Correa NS (2006) Phosphate-solubilizing *Pseudomonas putida* can influence the rhizobia – legume symbiosis. Soil Biol Biochem 38:3502–3505

Rosas SB, Avanzini GV, Carlier E, Pasluosta CJ, Pastor NA, Rovera M (2009) Root colonization and growth promotion of wheat and maize by *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* SR1. Soil Biol Biochem 41:1802–1806

Ross IL, Alami Y, Harvey PR, Achouak W, Ryder MH (2000) Genetic diversity and biological control activity of novel species of closely related Pseudomonads isolated from wheat field soils in South Australia. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:1609–1616

Rovera M, Cabrera S, Rosas S, Correa N (2000) Characterization of antifungal agent produced by *Pseudomonas aurantiaca* for the use as biocontrol inoculant. In: Pedrosa FO, Hungría M, Yates MG, Newton WE (eds) Nitrogen fixation: from molecules to crop productivity. Kluwer, Dordrecht, p 602

Rudrappa T, Baiss HP (2008) Rhizospheric pseudomonads. Friends or foes? Plant Signal Behav 3:1132–1133

Samac DA, Willert AM, Mc Bride MJ, Kinkel LL (2003) Effects of antibiotic producing *Streptomyces* on nodulation and leaf spot in alfalfa. Appl Soil Ecol 22:55–66

Sindhu SS, Gupta SK, Dadarwal KR (1999) Antagonistic effect of *Pseudomonas spp*. on pathogenic fungi and enhancement of growth of green gram (*Vigna radiata*). Biol Fertil Soils 29:62–68

Suzuki S, He Y, Oyaizu H (2003) Indole-3-acetic acid production in *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HP72 and its association with suppression of creeping bentgrass brown patch. Curr Microbiol 47:138–143

Thomashow LS, Weller DM, Bonsall RF, Pierson LS (1990) Production of the antibiotic phenazine-1-carboxylic acid of fluorescent *Pseudomonas* species in the rhizosphere of wheat. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:908–912

Tilak K, Ranganayaki N, Manoharachari C (2006) Synergistic effects of plant-growth promoting rhizobacteria and *Rhizobium* on nodulation and nitrogen fixation by pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan*). Eur J Soil Sci 57:67–71

Vance C (1997) Enhanced agricultural sustainability through biological nitrogen fixation. In: Legocki A, Bothe A, Pühler A (eds) Biological fixation of nitrogen for ecology and sustainable agriculture. Springer, Berlin, pp 179–186

Vessey JK (2003) Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria as biofertilizers. Plant Soil 255:571–586

Viglizzo EF (1995) El rol de la alfalfa en los sistemas de producción. In: Hijano EH, Navarro A (eds) La alfalfa en la Argentina. Instituto Nacional de Tecnología Agropecuaria (INTA). Buenos Aires, Argentina, pp 260–272

Villacieros M, Power B, Sánchez-Contreras M, Lloret J, Cruezabal RI, Martin M, Fernández-Pinas F, Bonilla I, Wheln C, Dowling DN, Riilla R (2003) Colonization behaviour of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and *Sinorhizobium meliloti* in the alfalfa (*Medicago sativa*) rhizosphere. Plant Soil 251:47–54

Vincent JM (1970) A manual for the practical study of the root nodule bacteria. International biology programme handbook No 15. Blackwell, Oxford, pp 75–76

Viswanathan R, Samiyappan R (2007) Siderophores and iron nutrition on the pseudomonas mediated antagonism against *Colletotrichum falcatum* in sugarcane. Sugar Tech 9:57–60

Voisard C, Keel C, Hass D, Defago G (1989) Cyanide production by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* helps suppress black root rot of tobacco under gnotobiotic conditions. EMBO J 8:351–358

Wang Y, Brown HN, Crowley DE, Szaniszlo PJ (1993) Evidence for direct utilization of a siderophore, ferrioxamine B, in axenically grown cucumber. Plant Cell Environ 16:579–585

Weller DM, Thomashow LS (1993) Advances in rhizobacteria for biocontrol. Curr Opin Biotechnol 4:306–311

Chapter 6
What Is Expected from the Genus *Azospirillum* as a Plant Growth-Promoting Bacteria?

Veronica Massena Reis, Kátia Regina dos Santos Teixeira, and Raúl Osvaldo Pedraza

6.1 The Genus *Azospirillum*

The discovery of the first species of microaerophilic nitrogen-fixing bacteria of the genus *Azospirillum* was due to the introduction of nitrogen-free semisolid media. Under the conditions of oxygen gradient formed in semisolid media, the organisms, attracted by their characteristic aerotaxis, move to the region within this medium where their respiration rate is in equilibrium with the oxygen diffusion rate. They form typical veil-like pellicles approximately 5 mm below the surface, and then they move up close to the surface when, due to their N_2-dependent growth, more and more cells accumulate. After this discovery, several other diazotrophs with the same microaerophilic behavior were also isolated, belonging to other bacterial genera but using the same strategy.

At least 15 *Azospirillum* species have been described, but in terms of physiology and genetics the most studied ones are *A. lipoferum* and *A. brasilense* described by Tarrand et al. (1978). Both are abundant, mainly in tropical areas, associated with forage grasses, maize, wheat, rice, sorghum, sugarcane, and several other plants that also harbor this bacterial genus (Hartman and Baldani 2006; Zambrano et al. 2007). However, besides its association with plants, *Azospirillum* species have also been associated with other environments under extreme conditions of temperature or contamination (Nosko et al. 1994; Eckford et al. 2002; Young et al. 2008). The third species *A. amazonense* was isolated and described in the year 1983 from forage grasses planted in Amazonian region but is also associated with rice,

V. Massena Reis (✉) • K.R. dos Santos Teixeira
Embrapa Agrobiology, BR 465 Km 7, Seropédica, Rio de Janeiro CEP 23851–970, Brazil
e-mail: veronica@cnpab.embrapa.br; katia@cnpab.embrapa.br

R. Osvaldo Pedraza
Faculty of Agronomy and Zootechny, National University of Tucumán, Av. Roca 1900, (4000) Tucumán, Argentina
e-mail: rpedraza@herrera.unt.edu.ar

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_6,

maize and sorghum rhizosphere, and other grasses in the central-south of Brazil (Magalhães et al. 1983; Reis Jr et al. 2006). A group in Germany classified *A. halopraeferans*. It was isolated from kallar grass (*Leptochloa fusca*) growing under saline conditions in Pakistan and seems to be specific to that plant, since attempts to isolate *A. halopraeferans* from other plants growing in saline soil in Brazil failed (Reinhold et al. 1987, 1988). Further on, a new species isolated from rice plants in Iraq was described and named *A. irakense* (Khammas et al. 1989), although subsequently this species has not been reported as isolated from other grasses or any other country its name was validated as *Azospirillum* new species (List No. 39, 1991). In 1997, studies performed in Australia, using analysis of the 16S rDNA sequence of *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *largomobilis*, showed that this bacterium had close relation to the species *A. lipoferum* and *A. brasilense*, but sufficiently distant to guarantee separate species status. On the basis of the phylogenetic evidence, Ben Dekhil et al. (1997) proposed the transfer of the subspecies *C. largomobilis* ssp. *largomobilis* to the genus *Azospirillum* as *Azospirillum largomobile* that was then corrected to *A. largimobile* (Sly and Stackebrandt 1999). New group of *Azospirillum* species continued to be described all around the world. In 2001, it was described and named *A. dobereinerae* in honor to the Brazilian scientist Johanna Döbereiner who initiated the studies of this genus in Brazil (Eckert et al. 2001). Another species was isolated from the paddy soil of a rice plant in 1982 and named as *A. oryzae* in China (Xie and Yokota 2005). Then, using a forage grass planted in China, another species was also described using surface sterilized roots and stems of *Melinis minutiflora* Beauv, and in this case, several modified semisolid media were used to collect 15 new strains of *A. melinis* (Peng et al. 2006). In 2007, using the same medium at pH 7.2–7.4 described by Xie and Yokota (2005), two new strains were identified by a research scientist group from Canada. These isolates were obtained from the rhizosphere of corn planted in Ontario and were named *A. canadense* (Mehnaz et al. 2007a) and *A. zeae* (Mehnaz et al. 2007b). *A. canadense* utilizes other carbon sources not used as the discriminative ones among previously described species as presented in Table 6.1. It uses many organic acids such as malate, pyruvic, acetic, succinic, citric, and formic acids. A newly described *Azospirillum* species was isolated from oil-contaminated soil by a group in Taiwan using nutrient agar. It was named *A. rugosum* as they form colonies that changed to wrinkled appearance on solid agar-medium and could be differentiated from its close phylogenetic relatives (*A. canadense, A. brasilense*, and *A. doebereinerae*) on the basis of carbon source utilization, gelatin hydrolysis, nitrate reduction, and arginine dihydrolase activity (Young et al. 2008). In 2009, two new species were described: *A. palatum* (Zhou et al. 2009) and *A. picis* (Lin et al. 2009). The first one was isolated from soil in China and according to the description is negative for acetylene reduction, do not produce indoles or reduce nitrate and/or nitrite. The second one was from Taiwan from discarded road tar, which generally contains, among other things, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH) and other poisonous or carcinogenic compounds. The *A. picis* fix nitrogen and is also positive for nitrate reductase, but indoles production has not been observed. Most recently another new species have been proposed, *Azospirillum*

Table 6.1 *Azospirillum* species and their pattern of carbon sources utilization

Azospirillum	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A. lipoferum	+	+	−	+	v	+	−	v	+	+	v	−	−	+	v	−	+	+	−	−
A. brasilense	−	v	−	+	−	v	−	+	v	+	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−
A. amazonense	v	+	+	+	+	+	+	−	+	−	+	v	+	−	+	v	+	−	+	+
A. halopraeferans	nd	v	nd	+	nd	−	nd	nd	−	+	nd	nd	nd	+	+	nd	+	−	−	nd
A. irakense	+	+	+	v	+	+	+	−	+	−	−	+	+	−	+	+	v	−	+	+
A. largimobile	+	+	−	+	−	+	+	−	+	+	−	−	−	+	−	−	+	+	nd	−
A. dobereinerae	−	nd	−	+	nd	v	−	v	v	+	−	−	−	+	−	−	−	+	−	−
A. oryzae	nd	+	−	+	nd	+	nd	nd	+	nd	−	−	−	−	nd	+	+	−	−	nd
A. melinis	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	nd	+	+	+
A. canadense	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	nd	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	nd	−	−	−
A. zeae	v	+	−	+	+	+	−	nd	v	+	−	−	−	+	−	−	nd	+	−	−
A. rugosum	−	−	nd	+	nd	nd	nd	+	+	nd	nd	−	−	−	nd	nd	nd	nd	nd	nd
A. palatum	v	v	+	+	nd	nd	nd	nd	+	−	nd	nd	+	+	nd	nd	nd	−	+	+
A. picis	+	+	−	nd	−	+	−	+	+	nd	nd	nd	−	+	−	−	+	+	−	−
A. thiophilum	nd	+	nd	+	nd	+	nd	nd	+	+	nd	−	nd	+	−	−	nd	+	−	−

Carbon sources: 1. N-acetylglucosamine, 2. L-arabinose, 3. D-cellobiose, 4. D-fructose, 5. L-fucose, 6. D-galactose, 7. Gentiobiose, 8. D-gluconate, 9. D-glucose, 10. Glycerol, 11. Myo-inositol, 12. Lactose, 13. Maltose, 14. D-mannitol, 15. D-mannose, 16. L-rhamnose, 17. D-ribose, 18. D-sorbitol, 19. Sucrose, 20. D-trehalose

Data from Eckert et al. (2001), Sly and Stackebrandt (1999), Ben Dekhil et al. (1997), Khammas et al. (1989), Reinhold et al. (1987), Xie and Yokota (2005), Peng et al. (2006), Mehnaz et al. (2007a, b) and Lavrinenko et al. (2010)

Symbols: +, positive; −, negative; v, variable or inconsistent; nd, not determined

thiophilum, isolated from sulfur bacterial mat collected from a sulfide spring in Russia (Lavrinenko et al. 2010). Although it has close relationship with several *Azospirillum* species, this new isolated strain BV-ST is capable of mixotrophic growth under microaerobic conditions with the simultaneous utilization of organic substrates and thiosulfate as electron donor for energy conservation. To summarize the knowledge accumulated about the genus up to now, we can assume that *Azospirillum* spp. are Gram-negative bacteria that belong to the alphaproteobacteria phylum. On the basis of the newly discovered species, they are present in a wide diversity of environments and plants, including not only those of agronomic importance such as cereals, sugarcane, and forage grasses, but also from other plant species such as coffee and fruit plants and orchids. They are aerobic nonfermentative chemoorganotrophs, vibroid and produce several phytohormones, mainly auxins (not described for all species yet). They utilize several carbon sources mainly sugars and sugar alcohols (Table 6.1) and the pattern of carbon utilization has been used for discriminatory purpose among species of the genus.

6.2 Genetics and Biochemistry

Data acquired from more than 30 years of the *Azospirillum* genetic and biochemical traits have been extensively reviewed by Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden (2000). Most structural and regulatory genes related to nitrogen-fixation genes including

nod genes have been identified in *Azospirillum* spp.; however, the mechanism of their regulation at transcriptional and translational levels is still a matter of study. Several research groups have dedicated to study the mechanisms of action of Ntr system, NifA, PII, and several other genes involved in the central nitrogen metabolism of *Azospirillum* (Araújo et al. 2004, 2008; Huergo et al. 2008).

Genes involved in chemotaxis signal transduction in other bacterial species (c*heA,W, Y, B*, and *R*) were identified in *Azospirillum* and most recently a *chsA* -Tn5 mutant strain (74031) isogenic to the *A. brasilense* wild type Sp7 was not impaired in its growth rate but showed reduced motility in soft-agar plates (Carreño-López et al. 2009). The authors observed that the impairment of motility during chemotaxis was not related to alteration of flagella synthesis but to different responses to chemotactic compounds. The deduced protein ChsA contains a sensory PAS domain and an EAL domain suggesting it may be part of the signaling and regulation system of another pathway controlling chemotaxis in *Azospirillum*. This data may reinforce the presence of multiple chemotaxis systems in this genus as previously reported in the literature.

The genome of *Azospirillum* sp B510, an isolate from inner tissue or rice plants, consisted of a single chromosome (~3.311 Mbp) and six plasmids designated as: pAB510a, pAB510b, pAB510c, pAB510d, pAB510e, and pAB510f. The total of 3,416 protein-encoding genes is distributed among the genome and most of the plasmids, but 25% (1,559) have been assigned as hypothetical genes. The high number of rRNA genes, nine sets of *rrns* genes, is also a peculiar characteristic of this species that is not typical of alphaproteobacteria genome, studied so far (Kaneko et al. 2010). Genes other than the *nif* gene cluster that are involved in N_2 fixation and are homologs of *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* USDA110 include *fixABCX, fixNOQP, fixHIS, fixG*, and *fixLJK,* present in the genome of this bacterium. In *A. brasilense*, IAA is generally synthesized from tryptophan via indole-3-pyruvic acid (IPyA), and genes coding enzymes related to this pathway are cotranscribed in this species. Interestingly, no homolog of the *ipdC*, which codes for the key enzyme indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase, or *iaaC* was found in the B510 genome. Otherwise, two putative plant hormone-related genes encoding tryptophan 2-monooxytenase (*iaaM*) and indole-3-acetaldehyde hydrolase (*iaaH*), homologous to genes of *A. tumefaciens* and *P. syringae*, could play this role in IAA biosynthesis via indole-3-acetamide (IAM) pathway. Another relevant data is that in *Azospirillum* sp. B510 genome a homolog of *acdS* gene was identified, although it was previously reported that plant growth promotion (PGP) trait related to ACC (amino cyclopropene carboxylic acid) deaminase activity was absent in *A. brasilense* (Holguin and Glick 2003). Comparison between the *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7 pRhico (plasmid that is responsible for the interaction with plant roots) and pAB510f suggests an evolutionary link and some functional relationship between both. However, remaining portions of pRhico, such as those containing exoC and tRNA genes, were scattered throughout the B510 genome and most of the sequences were poorly conserved, indicating that drastic genome rearrangements had taken place since the two species diverged as posed by Kaneko et al. (2010). During this century the description of new species and the recent publication of the

genome of an *Azospirillum* sp. associated with rice brought new insights into the genetic potential of this genus, not only to agricultural application but also to bioremediation and biocontrol (Bashan et al. 2004; Kaneko et al. 2010).

6.3 Bacterial Behavior in Plants

The associated bacteria capable of stimulating plant growth are generally known as PGPR mainly because of their ability to reduce other bacterial population and competence to establish the association to plant roots (Kloepper and Schroth 1981). However, this term can introduce some bias in its application since not only root-associated bacteria can contribute to PGP mechanisms as also posed by the authors. Thus, in order to include other beneficial plant–bacteria associations besides the root-associated we adopt in this chapter the term plant growth-promoting bacteria (PGPB) according to the definition found in the study by Bashan and Bashan (2005).

Bacterial colonization is well described for *Azospirillum*, especially *A. brasilense*. Attachment to the root system is mediated by the polar flagellum and is followed by an irreversible anchoring of the bacteria after a period of time (Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden 2000). Figure 6.1 shows the biphasic model of the colonization proposed by Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden (2000), but in this case other phenomenon exists with a homologous local strain of *A. brasilense* isolated in Argentina, associated with strawberry roots (Pedraza et al. 2007).

The lateral flagella are not essential during the adsorption phase for the colonization process. But how is the behavior of a population on the root system? Is quorum sensing (QS) involved in this coordinative process? The QS was previously shown to regulate swarming motility in diverse bacteria, notably in *Serratia*

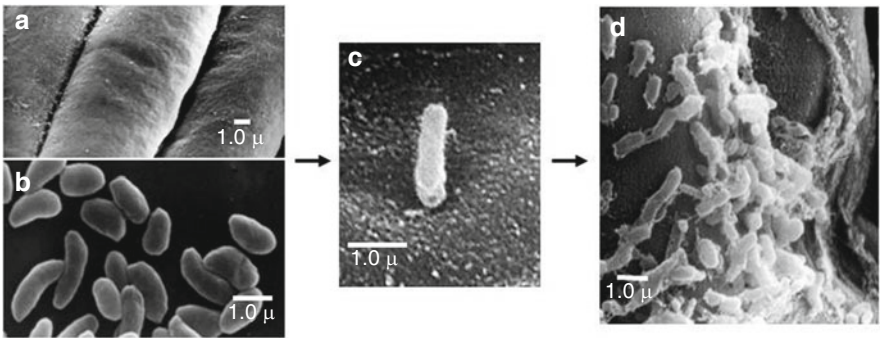


Fig. 6.1 Biphasic attachment process of *A. brasilense* to the root surface. (**a**) Strawberry root surface without inoculation; (**b**) Pure culture of *A. brasilense* REC3; (**c**) First step, *Azospirillum* as a single cell attached to the root surface; (**d**) Second step, bacterial cells forming aggregates and imbibed within the fibrillar material

marcescens (Eberl et al. 1996) and *Yersinia enterocolitica* (Atkinson et al. 2006). Boyer et al. (2008) tested two *A. lipoferum* strains, TVV3 and B518, isolated respectively from the rice rhizosphere (cultivar IR64) in Vietnam and from disinfected stems of rice (cultivar Kasalath) in Japan. In strain TVV3 *luxI* and *luxR* homologs have been identified but could not be inactivated, while strain B518 (isolated as a rice endophyte) produced larger amount of N-acylhomoserine lactones (AHLs) than did the strain TVV3. In order to quench AHLs accumulation in *A. lipoferum*, the *attM* gene from *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*, encoding an AHL-lactonase, was cloned under the constitutive PnptII promoter and conjugated into *A. lipoferum*. The results showed that in *A. lipoferum*, swarming and swimming motilities on semisolid agar plates were not affected by AHL inactivation. However, synthesis of Laf, the main structural component of the lateral flagella responsible for swarming motility in *A. lipoferum*, is impaired in B518 (pBBR1-*attM*), as revealed by proteomic analysis (Boyer et al. 2008). Thus unlike what occurs in a *laf*1 mutant of *A. brasilense* Sp7 that has lost its ability to swarm (Moens et al. 1995), B518 retains its ability to swarm despite the absence of Laf; this could be explained by the putative QS-independent production of biosurfactants implicated in bacterial swarming, as serrawetin in *S. marcescens* (Lindum et al. 1998).

But, is QS a common feature in the *Azospirillum* genus? Vial et al. (2006) used several strains of *Azospirillum* in order to verify if the common molecule of QS is present in this genus. AHL-mediated quorum-sensing in *Azospirillum* appears to be an exception rather than a rule. The authors tested 40 *Azospirillum* strains for their ability to synthesize AHLs. The AHL production was detected in four strains belonging to the *A. lipoferum* species isolated from rice rhizosphere. The authors also imply that other molecules not yet discovered can play a role in this genus, such as 3-hydroxypalmitic acid methyl ester (Clough et al. 1997) as observed in *Ralstonia*, or cis-11-methyl-2-dodecenoic acid described in *Xanthomonas* (Wang et al. 2004), two genera belonging to the alphaproteobacteria phylum as well.

The fact that AHLs are not implicated in regulation of phytostimulatory effects of *A. lipoferum* is an interesting result, as many bacteria possessing AHL-deactivating enzymes are rhizosphere inhabitants (Uroz et al. 2003). Moreover, QS in the rhizosphere can also be disrupted by abiotic factors such as alkaline pH, and by biotic factors, such as AHL mimics produced by some plants (Teplitski et al. 2000).

Bacteria colonize the rhizoplane and are found in high number upon emergence of lateral roots and also near the root cap (de Oliveira et al. 2002). These sites are normally colonized by several bacteria as they exude more carbon sources than other root areas, as they are growing regions. *Azospirillum* as a motile bacterium is capable of navigating in gradients of oxygen, redox molecules and nutrients by constantly monitoring its environmental changes in order to inhabit where it is optimal for surviving and growing. Although there is no strict host specificity in *Azospirillum*–plant associations, a strain-specific chemotaxis was reported; strains isolated from the rhizosphere of a particular plant showed preferential chemotaxis toward chemical compounds found in root exudates of that plant (Bacilio-Jimenéz et al. 2003; Pedraza et al. 2010). These results suggested that chemotaxis may contribute to host-plant specificity and could largely be determined by metabolism.

Furthermore, the specificity of bacterial strains probably reflects the adaptation of the bacteria to the nutritional conditions provided by the plant and can, thus, play an important role in the establishment of *Azospirillum* in the rhizosphere of the host, as previously suggested by Reinhold et al. (1985).

6.4 Plant Growth Promotion: Mechanisms

Azospirillum species influence plant growth through versatile mechanisms; they include N_2 fixation, phytohormone production (e.g., auxins, cytokinins, and gibberellins), increased nutrient uptake, enhanced stress resistance, vitamin production, siderophores and biocontrol, and some of them do P solubilization (Steenhoudt and Vanderleyden 2000; Dobbelaere et al. 2003; Seshadri et al. 2000; Rodriguez et al. 2004). However, the PGP trait ACC (amino cyclopropene carboxylic acid) deaminase activity was absent in *A. brasilense* (Holguin and Glick 2003). Some of these features are discussed as follows:

6.4.1 Phytohormone Production

Hormones exist in nature as molecules that regulate growth, development and differentiation of cells and tissues. They act as chemical messengers and are present in small amounts. In plants we call them phytohormones and they have been, in classical terms, divided into five classes: auxins mostly indole-3-acetic acid – IAA, cytokinins (CK), giberellins (GA), abscisic acid (ABA) and ethylene (ET). However, recently new molecules are also included as regulatory compounds, such as jasmonates, brassinolides, salicylic acid, polyamines, nitrous oxide, and strigolactones that are also related to regulation of the defense reactions of plants against pathogens (Santner et al. 2009). But bacteria also produce a wide variety of these signaling molecules and influence plant growth. *Azospirillum* is a well-known bacterium that produces high amounts of auxins "in vitro" and different pathways are involved in this production. The IAA is the best characterized and the most abundant member of the auxins family (Woodward and Bartel 2005). The best characterized pathways in *Azospirillum* auxin production is via indole-3-acetamide (IAM) and indole-3-pyruvate (IPyA) intermediates, both well described by Spaepen et al. (2007).

The root morphology is altered by the inoculation of *A. brasilense*, and the knowledgement is accumulated on data based on this species as it is one of the oldest ones of the genus. Several mutants of the IAA biosynthetic genes were developed, describing the action of these mutants on the development of the root system (Dobbelaere et al. 1999). Also the environmental conditions regulate the action of the mutants and affect root colonization. For example, IAA production and expression of the key gene *ipcC* have shown to be increased under carbon limitation, during reduction in growth rate and at acidic pH values (Ona et al. 2003,

2005; Vande Broek et al. 2005). This strategy is important when plant exudates become limited, so the signaling molecule is produced by the bacteria and the root senses to continue emitting lateral roots and root hairs, which are sources of exudates to maintain the bacterial population on the roots. Unfortunately, all these measurements are performed under experimentally controlled conditions, with a single bacterial species colonizing the plant. But how these signaling molecules act in nature, with a diverse population of microorganisms competing for a single source of carbon and are influenced by the environment? It is still a gap to solve. The use of model plants such as *Arabidopsis* colonized by PGPB together with quantitative imaging of roots can contribute to a new view of this question.

Azospirillum also produced CK, a phytohormone with a broader group of molecules and derived from ^{6}N-substituted aminopurines. They are widespread among other PGPB and their spectrums do not differ from the molecules produced by plants. CKs are produced in the root tips and developing seeds, and then they are transported to the shoot where they regulate several processes such as cell division, leaf expansion, and delaying of senescence (Spaepen et al. 2009). But in the opposite site of auxins, the insights into the role with plant–microbe interaction are related only to the measurements of bacterial production on bioassays as the development of mutants is not easy to obtain. The effect is based on the balance between auxins and CKs produced by the partners.

Another class of phytohormones that *Azospirillum* also produces is the GA; these compounds are involved in division and elongation of plant cells and influence almost all stages of plant growth. Several species of the genus produce different GAs and, in addition, they metabolize exogenously applied GA. The exact mechanism of production is not described, but Lucangeli and Bottini (1996, 1997) showed that a maize line dwarf-1 (dwarfism induced by inhibitors of the GA biosynthesis) could be reverted by the inoculation with *A. brasilense* and *A. lipoferum*. The species *A. brasilense* also produces ABA, but the mechanism has not yet been proved (Cohen et al. 2008). As all hormones interact with each other, ABA can interfere with the CK pool, as it interferes with its synthesis as cited by Spaepen et al. (2009).

After all these years and with some many new species described, it will be necessary several more years to cover the complexity of *Azospirillum* phytohormone interaction with plants. Furthermore, most of these data are based on "in vitro" tests using cultivated bacteria and measuring the production in a vial. Hence, they cannot be directly correlated with plant exudates (carbon source variable), population size (lower than in vials), and influence of the environment (including biotic and abiotic factors) as it happens in natural environmental conditions.

6.4.2 Siderophore Production

Siderophores are low-molecular-mass (<1,500 Da) compounds with high iron affinity that allows soil microorganisms to sequester and solubilize ferric iron in iron-poor environments, preventing any soil-borne pathogens to proliferate due to iron

limitation (Chaiharn et al. 2009). As other soil bacteria that have to compete with microorganisms for the limited available iron, *A. lipoferum* express siderophore-mediated iron transport systems. QS seems to negatively regulate siderophore synthesis in the strain used by Boyer et al. (2008), the B518, whereas no regulation was observed in TVV3 (the other strains tested by the same authors isolated from the rice rhizosphere). In soil, where the AHL concentration is low due to the small population density, high diffusion or AHL inactivation allows B518 to produce siderophores and thus being more competitive in acquiring iron. Different *A. brasilense* strains, isolated from strawberry plants, produce siderophores (Pedraza et al. 2007), and it was found that the amount produced is related to the origin of the bacterial strain (rhizospheric or endophytic), the endophytic being the best producers.

6.4.3 P-Solubilization

Phosphorus (P) is one of the major elements in plants, but especially in tropical soils, its availability is very low (<5% of the total P pool). Microorganisms can solubilize insoluble mineral P by releasing phosphatases (organic-P) or producing organic acids (release inorganic-P). This process is common for soil bacteria (>40% of culturable ones). About the genus *Azospirillum*, this feature is not entirely known yet as many attempts to determine its P-solubilizing capacities failed due to the experimental conditions (e.g., growth culture media). However, Seshadri et al. (2000) reported in vitro inorganic P-solubilization by *A. halopraeferans*. In addition, in vitro gluconic acid formation and P-solubilization from sparingly soluble phosphorus sources by two strains of *A. brasilense* (Cd and 8-I) and one strain of *A. lipoferum* JA4 were reported by Rodriguez et al. (2004). Strains of *A. brasilense* were capable of producing gluconic acid growing in soluble calcium phosphate medium when their usual fructose carbon source was amended with glucose. At the same time, there was a reduction in pH of the medium and released of soluble phosphate. To a greater extent, gluconic acid production and pH reduction were also observed for *A. lipoferum* JA4. These data add to the very broad spectrum of PGP abilities of this genus.

6.4.4 Nitrogen Fixation

Biological nitrogen fixation (BNF) is a well-described process especially for legume in association with rhizobia. As they possess a nodule that can be counted and plants without nodule or nitrogen fertilizer are complete nitrogen deficient, it was easy to propose the mode of action, describe the amount produced by BNF, and understand the several steps of colonization and fixation.

For other plants that do not possess nodules to fix nitrogen, the contribution is not 100% of the total N accumulated in tissues. The best known results of grasses

are related to sugarcane where it was proved that in controlled condition, 70% of the nitrogen accumulated came from the biological process (Urquiaga et al. 1992) and in field assays it was reduced to 30% (Yoneyama et al. 1997). Then another problem arises, who is the responsible for the BNF observed? As we already know, only 2–3% of the total bacteria are described, and every year new genus and lots of species are described. It is not easy to follow the same for the ecology of a new strain, plant localization, and experiments performed in order to calculate the impact of a single species in the BNF process. So we are describing bacteria without knowing its significance to plant nutrition.

A lot of field assays were performed in order to evaluate the effect of its inoculation on several grasses, and some authors have described them in detail. Okon and Labandera-González (1994) concluded that a significant increase in yields from 5 to 30% could be achieved by the inoculation with *Azospirillum*, especially with lower doses of nitrogen fertilizers. Also the effect was attributed to phytohormone production rather than nitrogen fixation. Fages (1994) showed that the success of using *Azospirillum* is around 50–75%, which is more than the normal measure expected for leguminous inoculation that is around 50%. Sumner (1990) described positive results to *Azospirillum* inoculation and most of the experiments on wheat were performed between 1983 and 1985. Recently, rice cropped under rain-fed conditions in Tucumán, AR, showed clear effects of *Azospirillum* inoculation when compared to N-fertilized noninoculated controls (Pedraza et al. 2009).

6.5 Agricultural Application

The utilization of bacteria as an inoculant product is the ideal goal based on the performance of rhizobial inoculants, especially in Brazil, where 100% of the soybean production use the bacteria and not the fertilizers to obtain 100% of the N necessary for the plant nutrition. After so many years of testing, isolating and describing *Azospirillum*, some efforts were also carried out in relation to have a commercial product using this bacterium. The technology is also based on the rhizobial product that is applied on the seed cover in a mixture with peat or using different kinds of liquid formulations.

At the beginning, only *A. brasilense* was the elected one as inoculant. In the United States, a product called Azo-Green™, produced by a company called Genesis Turfs Forages, was recommended to be applied on the seeds to improve germination, root system, drought resistance, and plant health. In Italy, Germany, and Belgium another product containing a mixture of *A. brasilense* (strain Cd) and *A. lipoferum* (strain Br17) was formulated in a mixture of vermiculite or in liquid formulation. The commercial name was Zea-Nit™ and was produced by Heligenetics and they recommended the reduction of 30–40% of the N fertilization of the plants. In France another AzoGreen™ was used in a maize application in the Agbasar Station, at Northeast of Tongo, Africa, with the increment of 100% in yield using a strain isolated by Fages and Mulard (1988), the CRT-1. In Mexico,

a product called "Fertilizer for Maize" was developed by the University of Puebla and applied in 5,000 ha in 1993 (Okon and Labareda-González 1994). More recently, in 2008, another inoculant product based on *Azospirillum* was developed to coffee plants in Mexico, and its application showed reduction of time during the three phenological plant cycle (Jímenez Salgado – http://www.proyectocinco.com/notas/reportaje04abr08.htm). Uruguay also had a product called Graminante™ that was commercialized as a powder mixed with calcium carbonate.

But regarding these bacteria, which are different for each country, why are they the best ones? Perrig et al. (2007) evaluated phytohormone and polyamine biosynthesis, siderophore production, and phosphate solubilization in two strains (Cd and Az39) of *A. brasilense* used for inoculant formulation in Argentina during the last 20 years. Siderophore production and phosphate solubilization were evaluated in a chemically defined medium, with negative results. Phytohormones IAA, cytokinins called zeatin, GA3, ABA, ethylene, and growth regulators putrescine, spermine, spermidine, and cadaverine (CAD) were found in culture supernatants of both strains. IAA, zeatin, ethylene, and polyamine CAD were found in all two strains. Az39 and Cd showed differential capability to produce the five major phytohormones and CAD in chemically defined medium. This fact has important technological implications for inoculant formulation as different concentrations of growth regulators are produced by different strains or culture conditions.

It is also important to maintain the good quality of the inoculant in order to provide efficient root colonization or invasion. It is necessary to adjust the cell density (10^9 minimum per gram) shelf life, free of contaminants and agronomically proved that the strain applied is capable to maintain the yield in the absence of a reduced dose of nitrogen or improve crop yield, in the presence of nitrogen application (PGPB action). In 2009, a company in Brazil began to sell a product based on *Azospirillum* strains for maize and rice application. In Argentina, there are several companies producing and selling inoculants based on *A. brasilense* that are being applied as solid (powder) or liquid formulations in different commercial crops (e.g., rice, maize, wheat, sunflower, sorghum, etc.).

Presently, with the reality of having to produce more food at a lower cost, without environmental pollution, biological fertilization with PGPB is an alternative for a sustainable agriculture. Although beneficial effects of inoculating with *Azospirillum* sp. has been widely described, the efforts in isolating new strains and assessing their PGP characteristics in natural environmental situations must continue in order to support their agricultural use as inoculant or biofertilizer.

6.6 Final Considerations

From the numerous scientific literature available today, it is clear that the *Azospirillum*–plant interaction is a natural and ubiquitous phenomenon. With the increasing understanding and knowledge of the benefits conferred to the host by this

association, we are one step forward to developing and improving an environment-friendly nutrient source and biocontrol agent for agronomically important crops. But for this, the efforts should be focused not only on describing new species, sometimes based on few bacterial isolates, but also on assessing their PGPB capacities, including their exploitation within the interspecies biodiversity.

Despite the recent advances in its biotechnological use as inoculants or biofertilizers, commercialization of this technology based on *Azospirillum* still demands extensive optimization and comprehensive study of the effects of the application. However, the prospects of this technology are promising if we take into consideration the rising cost and declining reserves of fossil fuels in the world, as well as pollution problems. In this scenario, the progressive installation of this biotechnology would mitigate environmental concerns arising from the use of nitrogenous fertilizers and its costs of acquisition, especially in developing countries, in order to support a sustainable agriculture.

Acknowledgments The authors acknowledge the support of CYTED (409AC0379) and CNPq (49.0013/2009-0) through the DIMIAGRI project. The first and second authors acknowledge the INCT – Instituto Nacional de C & T de Fixação Biológica de Nitrogênio. The third author acknowledges to CIUNT and ANPCyT (PICT 2007 N°472) grants and to Guerrero-Molina MF for providing Fig. 6.1.

References

Araújo LM, Monteiro RA, Souza EM, Steffens MBR, Rigo LU, Pedrosa FO, Chubatsu LS (2004) GlnB is specifically required for *Azospirillum brasilense* NifA acctivity in *Escherichia coli*. Res Microbiol 155:491–495

Araújo LM, Huergo LF, Invitti AL, Gimenes CI, Bonatto AC, Monteiro RA, Souza EM, Pedrosa FO, Chubatsu LS (2008) Different responses of the GlnB and GlnZ proteins upon in vitro uridylylation by the *Azospirillum brasilense* GlnD protein. Braz J Med Biol Res 41:289–294

Atkinson S, Chang CY, Sockett RE, Camara M, Williams P (2006) Quorum sensing in *Yersinia enterocolitica* controls swimming and swarming motility. J Bacteriol 188:1451–1461

Bacilio-Jimenéz M, Aguilar-Flores S, Ventura-Zapata E, Pérez-Campo E, Bouquelet S, Zenteno E (2003) Chemical characterization of root exudates from rice (*Oryza sativa*) and their effects on the chemotactic response of endophytic bacteria. Plant Soil 249:271–277

Bashan Y, Bashan LE (2005) Plant growth-promoting. In: Hillel D (ed) Encyclopedia of soils in the environment, vol 1. Elsevier, Oxford, UK, pp 103–115, 2200 p

Bashan Y, Holguin G, de Bashan LE (2004) *Azospirillum*-plant relationships: physiological, molecular, agricultural and environmental advances (1997–2003). Can J Microbiol 50:521–577

Ben Dekhil S, Cahill M, Stackebrandt E, Sly LI (1997) Transfer of *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *largomobilis* to the genus *Azospirillum* as *Azospirillum largomobile* comb. nov., and elevation of *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *parooensis* to the new type species of *Conglomeromonas*, *Conglomeromonas* parooensis sp. nov. System Appl Microbiol 20:72–77

Boyer M, Bally R, Perrotto S, Chaintreuil C, Wisniewski-Dyé F (2008) A quorum-quenching approach to identify quorum-sensing-regulated functions in *Azospirillum lipoferum*. Res Microbiol 159:699–708

Carreño-López R, Sánchez A, Camargo N, Elmerich C, Baca BE (2009) Characterization of *chsA*, a new gene controlling the chemotactic response in *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7. Arch Microbiol 191:501–507

Chaiharn M, Chunhaleuchanon S, Lumyong S (2009) Screening siderophore producing bacteria as potential biological control agent for fungal rice pathogens in Thailand. W J Microbiol Biotechnol 25:1919–1928

Clough SJ, Lee KE, Schell MA, Denny TP (1997) A two component system in *Ralstonia* (*Pseudomonas*) *solanacearum* modulates production of PhcA-regulated virulence factors in response to 3-hydroxypalmitic acid methyl ester. J Bacteriol 179:3639–3648

Cohen AC, Bottini R, Piccoli P (2008) *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp 245 produces ABA in chemically-defined culture medium and increases ABA content in arabidopsis plants. Plant Growth Regul 54:97–103

Dobbelaere S, Croonenborghs A, Thys A, Vande Broek A, Vanderleyden J (1999) Phytostimulatory effect of *Azospirillum brasilense* wild type and mutant strains altered in IAA production on wheat. Plant Soil 212:155–164

Dobbelaere S, Vanderleyden J, Okon Y (2003) Plant growth-promoting effects of diazotrophs in the rhizosphere. Crit Rev Plant Sci 22:107–149

Eberl L, Winson MK, Sternberg C, Stewart GS, Christiansen G, Chhabra SR, Bycroft B, Williams P, Molin S, Givskov M (1996) Involvement of N-acyl-L-hormoserine lactone autoinducers in controlling the multicellular behaviour of *Serratia liquefaciens*. Mol Microbiol 20:127–136

Eckert B, Weber OB, Kirchhof G, Halbritter A, Stoffels M, Hartmann A (2001) *Azospirillum doebereinerae* sp. Nov., a new nitrogen-fixing bacterium associated with the C4-grass *Miscanthus*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 51:17–26

Eckford R, Cook FD, Saul D, Aislabie J, Foght J (2002) Free-living heterotrophic nitrogen-fixing bacteria isolated from fuel-contaminated Antarctic soils. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:5181–5185

Fages J (1994) *Azospirillum* inoculants and field experiments. In: Okon Y (ed) *Azospirillum*-plant associations. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, pp 87–109

Fages J, Mulard D (1988) Isolement de bactéries rhizosphériques et effect de leur inoculation and pots chez *Zea mays*. Agronomie 8:309–315

Hartman A, Baldani JI (2006) The genus *Azospirillum*. In: Dworkin M, Flaknow S, Rosemberg E, Schleifer K-H, Stackerbrandt E (eds) The prokaryotes, vol 5, 3rd edn. Springer, New York, pp 115–140

Holguin G, Glick BR (2003) Transformation of *Azospirillum brasilense* Cd with an ACC deaminase gene from *Enterobacter cloacae* UW4 fused to the *Tetr* gene promoter improves its fitness and plant growth promoting ability. Microb Ecol 46:122–133

Huergo LF, Merrick M, Monteiro RA, Chubatsu LS, Steffens MBR, Pedrosa FO, Souza EM (2008) In vitro interactions between the PII proteins and the nitrogenase regulatory enzymes dinitrogenase reductase ADP-ribosyltransferase (DraT) and dinitrogenase reductase-activating glycohydrolase (DraG) in *Azospirillum brasilense*. J Biol Chem 284:6674–6682

Kaneko T, Minamisawa K, Isawa T, Nakatsukasa H, Mitsui H, Kawaharada Y, Nakamura Y, Watanabe A, Kawashima K, Ono A, Shimizu Y, Takahashi C, Minami C, Fujishiro T, Kohara M, Katoh M, Nakazaki N, Nakayama S, Yamada M, Tabata S, Sato S (2010) Complete genomic structure of the cultivated rice endophyte *Azospirillum* sp. B510. DNA Res. Advance Access doi: 10.1093/dnares/dsp026

Khammas KM, Ageron E, Grimont PAD, Kaiser P (1989) *Azospirillum irakense* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing bacterium associated with rice roots and rhizosphere soil. Res Microbiol 140:679–693

Kloepper JW, Schroth MN (1981) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria and plant growth under gnotobiotic conditions. Phytopathology 71:642–644

Lavrinenko K, Chernousova E, Gridneva E, Dubinina G, Akimov V, Kuever J, Lysenko A, Grabovich M (2010) *Azospirillum thiophilum* sp. nov., a novel diazotrophic bacterium isolated from a sulfide spring. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.018853-0

Lin S-Y, Young CC, Hupfer H, Siering C, Arun AB, Chen W-M, Lai WA, Shen FT, Rekha PD, Yassin AF (2009) *Azospirillum picis* sp. nov., isolated from discarded tar. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:761–765

Lindum PW, Anthoni U, Christophersen C, Eberl L, Molin S, Givskov M (1998) N-Acyl-L-homoserine lactone autoinducers control production of an extracellular lipopeptide biosurfactant required for swarming motility of *Serratia liquefaciens* MG1. J Bacteriol 180:6384–6388

List No. 39 (1991) Validation of the publication of new names and new combinations previously effectively published outside the IJSB. Int J Syst Bacteriol 41(4):580–581

Lucangeli C, Bottini R (1996) Reversion of dwarfism in dwarf-1 maize (*Zea mays* L.) and dwarf-x rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) mutants by endophytic *Azospirillum* spp. Biocell 20:223–228

Lucangeli C, Bottini R (1997) Effects of *Azospirillum* spp. on endogenous gibberellin content and growth of maize (*Zea mays* L.) treated with uniconazole. Symbiosis 23:63–71

Magalhães FMM, Baldani JI, Souto SM, Kuykendall JR, Döbereiner J (1983) A new acid tolerant *Azospirillum* species. An Acad Bras Ciênc 55:417–430

Mehnaz S, Weselowski B, Lazarovits G (2007a) *Azospirillum canadense* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing bacterium isolated from corn rhizosphere. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:620–624

Mehnaz S, Weselowski B, Lazarovits G (2007b) *Azospirillum zeae* sp. nov., diazotrophic bacterium isolated from rhizosphere soil of *Zea mays*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:2805–2809

Moens S, Michiels K, Keijers V, Vanleuven F, Vanderleyden J (1995) Cloning, sequencing, and phenotypic analysis of laf1, encoding the flagellin of the lateral flagella of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7. J Bacteriol 177:5419–5426

Nosko P, Bliss LC, Cook FD (1994) The association of free-living nitrogen-fixing bacteria with the roots of high Arctic graminoids. Arctic Alpine Res 26:180–186

Okon Y, Labanderas-González C (1994) Agronomic applications of *Azospirillum*: an evaluation of 20 years of worldwide field inoculation. Soil Biol Biochem 26: 1591–1601

Oliveira ALM, Urquiaga S, Döbereiner J, Baldani JI (2002) The effect of inoculating endophytic N2-fixing bacteria on micropropagated sugarcane plants. Plant Soil 242:205–215

Ona O, Smets I, Gysegom P, Bernaerts K, Van Impe J, Prinsen E, Vanderleyden J (2003) The effect of pH on indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) biosynthesis of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7. Symbiosis 35:199–208

Ona O, Van Impe J, Prinsen E, Vanderleyden J (2005) Growth and indole-3-acetic acid biosynthesis of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 is environmentally controlled. FEMS Microbiol Lett 246:125–132

Pedraza RO, Motok J, Tortora ML, Salazar SM, Díaz Ricci JC (2007) Natural occurrence of *Azospirillum brasilense* in strawberry plants. Plant Soil 295:169–178

Pedraza RO, Bellone CH, Bellone SC, Boa Sorte PMF, Teixeira KRS (2009) *Azospirillum* inoculation and nitrogen fertilization effect on grain yield and on the diversity of endophytic bacteria in the phyllosphere of rice rainfed crop. Eur J Soil Biol 45:36–43

Pedraza RO, Motok J, Salazar SM, Ragout AL, Mentel MI, Tortora ML, Guerrero-Molina MF, Winik BC, Díaz-Ricci JC (2010) Growth-promotion of strawberry plants inoculated with *Azospirillum brasilense*. W J Microbiol Biotechnol 26:265–272

Peng G, Wang H, Zhang G, Hou W, Liu Y, Wang ET, Tan Z (2006) *Azospirillum melinis* sp. nov., a group of diazotrophs isolated from tropical molasses grass. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:1263–1271

Perrig D, Boiero ML, Masciarelli OA, Penna C, Ruiz OA, Cassán FD, Luna MV (2007) Plant-growth-promoting compounds produced by two agronomically important strains of *Azospirillum brasilense*, and implications for inoculant formulation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 75:1143–1150

Reinhold B, Hurek T, Fendrik I (1985) Strain-specific chemotaxis of *Azospirillum* spp. J Bacteriol 162:190–195

Reinhold B, Hurek T, Fendrik I, Pot B, Gillis M, Kersters K, Thielemans S, De Ley J (1987) *Azospirillum halopraeferens* sp. nov. a nitrogen-fixing organism associated with roots of Kallar grass (*Leptochloa fusca* (L.) Kunth). Int J Syst Bacteriol 37:43–51

Reinhold R, Hurek T, Baldani I, Döbereiner J (1988) Temperature and salt tolerance of *Azospirillum* spp. from salt affected soil in Brazil. In *Azospirillum* IV: Genetics, Physiology, Ecology, ed. by Klingmüller, W., Springer Verlag, Berlin, pp. 234–241

Reis jr FB, Silva MF, Teixeira KRS, Urquiaga S, Reis VM (2006) Identificação de isolados de *Azospirillum* amazonense associados a *Brachiaria* spp., em diferentes épocas e condições de cultivo e produção de fitormônio pela bactéria. Rev Bras Ciên Solo 28:103–113

Rodriguez H, Gonzalez T, Goire I, Bashan Y (2004) Gluconic acid production and phosphate solubilization by the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Azospirillum* spp. Naturwissenschaften 91:552–555

Santner A, Estelle M (2009) Recent advances and emerging trends in plant hormone signalling. Nature 459:1071–1078

Santner A, Calderon-Villalobos LIA, Estelle M (2009) Plant hormone are versatile chemical regulators of plant growth. Nat Chem Biol 5:301–307

Seshadri S, Muthukumarasamy R, Lakshminarasimhan C, Ignacimuthu S (2000) Solubilization of inorganic phosphates by *Azospirillum halopraeferans*. Curr Sci 79:565–567

Sly LI, Stackebrandt E (1999) Description of *Skermanella parooensis* gen. nov., sp. nov. to accommodate *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *parooensis* following the transfer of *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *largomobilis* to the genus *Azospirillum*. Int J Syst Bacteriol 49:541–544

Spaepen S, Vanderleyden J, Remans R (2007) Indole-3-acetic acid in microbial and microorganism-plant signalling. FEMS Microbiol Rev 31:425–448

Spaepen S, Vanderleyden J, Okon Y (2009) Plant Growth-promoting actions of rhizobacteria. Adv Bot Res 51:283–320

Steenhoudt O, Vanderleyden J (2000) *Azospirillum*, a free living nitrogen-fixing bacterium closely associated with grasses: genetic, biochemistry and ecological aspects. FEMS Microbiol Rev 24:487–506

Sumner ME (1990) Crop responses to *Azospirillum* inoculation. Adv Soil Sci 12:54–123

Tarrand JJ, Krieg NR, Döbereiner J (1978) A taxonomic study of the *Spirillum lipoferum* group, with descriptipn of a new genus, *Azospirillum* gen. nov., and two species, *Azospirillum lipoferum* (Beijerinck) com nov. and *Azospirillum brasilense* sp. nov. Can J Microbiol 24:967–980

Teplitski M, Robinson JB, Bauer WD (2000) Plants secrete substances that mimic bacterial N-acyl homoserine lactone signal activities and affect population density-dependent behaviors in associated bacteria. Mol Plant-Microbe Interact 13:637–648

Uroz S, D'Angelo-Picard C, Carlier A, Elasri M, Sicot C, Petit A, Oger P, Faure D, Dessaux Y (2003) Novel bacteria degrading N-acylhomoserine lactones and their use as quenchers of quorum sensing-regulated functions of plant-pathogenic bacteria. Microbiology 149:1981–1989

Urquiaga S, Cruz KHS, Boddey RM (1992) Contribution of nitrogen fixation to sugarcane: Nitrogen-15 and nitrogen balance estimates. Soil Sci Soc Am J 56:105–114

Vande Broek A, Gysegom P, Ona O, Hendrickx N, Prinsen E, Van Impe J, Vanderleyden J (2005) Transcriptional analysis of the *Azospirillum brasilense* indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase gene and identification of a cis-acting sequence involved in auxin responsive expression. Mol Plant Microbe Inter 18:311–323

Vial L, Cuny C, Gluchoff-Fiasson K, Comte G, Oger PM, Faure D, Dessaux Y, Bally R, Wisniewski-Dyé F (2006) N-acyl-homoserine lactone-mediated quorum-sensing in *Azospirillum*: an exception rather than a rule. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 58:155–168

Wang LH, He Y, Gao Y et al (2004) A bacterial cell–cell communication signal with cross-kingdom structural analogues. Mol Microbiol 51:903–912

Woodward AW, Bartel B (2005) Auxin: regulation, action, and interaction. Ann Bot 95:225–251

Xie C, Yokota A (2005) *Azospirillum oryzae* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing bacterium isolated from the roots of the rice plant *Oryza sativa*. Int J Syst Evol Microb 55:1435–1438

Yoneyama T, Muraoka T, Kim TH, Dacanay EV, Nakanishi Y (1997) The natural 15N abundance of sugarcane and neighbouring plants in Brazil, the Philippines and Miyako (Japan). Plant Soil 189:239–244

Young CC, Hupfer H, Siering C, Ho M-J, Arun AB, Lai W-A, Rekha PD, Shen F-T, Hunn M-H, Chen W-M, Yassin AF (2008) *Azospirillum rugosum* sp. nov., isolated from oil-contaminated soil. Int J Syst Evol Microb 58:959–963

Zambrano ER, Jiménez Salgado T, Tapia Hernández A (2007) Estudio de bacterias asociadas a orquídeas (Orchidaceae). Lankesteriana 7(1–2):322–325

Zhou Y, Wei W, Wang X, Xu L, Lai R (2009) *Azospirillum palatum* sp. nov., isolated from Forest soil in Zhejiang province, China. J Gen Appl Microbiol 55:1–7

Chapter 7
Plasmid Plasticity in the Plant-Associated Bacteria of the Genus *Azospirillum*

Elena I. Katsy

7.1 Introduction

The genus *Azospirillum* is a member of the class Alphaproteobacteria and the family Rhodospirillaceae. This genus was commonly described as gram-negative, nitrogen-fixing, oxidase-positive motile aerobic/microaerophilic bacteria with a DNA G + C content of about 70 mol% and with vibrioid, S-shaped, or helical cells which grow best on salts of organic acids (Tarrand et al. 1978). On the basis of phylogenetic, chemotaxonomic, physiological, and biochemical data, 15 *Azospirillum* species have been validly described to date (Table 7.1). Comparative analyses of the 16S rRNA gene sequences showed that *A. brasilense*, *A. canadense*, *A. rugosum*, and *A. palatum*; *A. lipoferum*, *A. halopraeferens*, *A. largimobile*, *A. doebereinerae*, *A. oryzae*, *A. melinis*, *A. zeae*, *A. picis*, and *A. thiophilum*; and *A. amazonense* and *A. irakense* form three groups of the most closely related *Azospirillum* species (Mehnaz et al. 2007a, b; Lin et al. 2009; Zhou et al. 2009; Lavrinenko et al. 2010).

Azospirilla occur worldwide in a broad range of complex and heterogeneous environments, including soil and the roots, stems, and leaves of cereals, forage grasses, vegetables, and many other plants. These bacteria have been widely used as models for studying the mechanisms of mutually beneficial associative plant–microbial interactions for the past 30 years.

All *Azospirillum* species are motile owing to the presence of flagella. Several species have a mixed type of flagellation. For example, in *A. brasilense*, *A. lipoferum*, and *A. irakense*, a single polar flagellum (Fla) is produced in liquid environments, and numerous lateral flagella (Laf) are induced in addition to Fla on viscous and solid media (Tarrand et al. 1978; Hall and Krieg 1983; Khammas et al. 1989). Fla is responsible for swimming, whereas Laf are used

E.I. Katsy
Institute of Biochemistry and Physiology of Plants and Microorganisms, Russian Academy of Sciences, 13 Prospekt Entuziastov, Saratov 410049, Russia
e-mail: katsy@ibppm.sgu.ru, ei_katsy@mail.ru

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_7,

Table 7.1 List of validly described *Azospirillum* species

Azospirillum species	Type strain	Source	References
A. brasilense	Sp7	Rhizosphere of pangola grass (*Digitaria decumbens*), Brazil	Tarrand et al. (1978)
A. lipoferum	Sp59b	Roots of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*), Brazil	Tarrand et al. (1978)
A. amazonense	Y1	Roots of pangola grass (*Digitaria decumbens*), Brazil	Magalhães et al. (1983)
A. halopraeferens	Au4	Roots of Kallar grass (*Leptochloa fusca*), Pakistan	Reinhold et al. (1987)
A. irakense	KBC1	Roots of rice (*Oryza sativa*), Iraq	Khammas et al. (1989)
A. largimobile	ACM 2041	Water sample from a lake, Australia	Skerman et al. (1983), Ben Dekhil et al. (1997), Sly and Stackebrandt (1999)
A. doebereinerae	GSF71	Roots of Chinese silver grass (*Miscanthus sinensis*), Germany	Eckert et al. (2001)
A. oryzae	COC8	Rhizosphere of rice (*Oryza sativa*), Japan	Xie and Yokota (2005)
A. melinis	TMCY 0552	Stems and roots of molasses grass (*Melinis minutiflora*), China	Peng et al. (2006)
A. canadense	DS2	Rhizosphere of corn (*Zea mays*), Canada	Mehnaz et al. (2007a)
A. zeae	N7	Rhizosphere of corn (*Zea mays*), Canada	Mehnaz et al. (2007b)
A. rugosum	IMMIB AFH-6	Oil-contaminated soil, Taiwan	Young et al. (2008)
A. palatum	ww 10	Forest soil, China	Zhou et al. (2009)
A. picis	IMMIB TAR-3	Discarded road tar, Taiwan	Lin et al. (2009)
A. thiophilum	BV-S	Sulfur bacterial mat from a sulfide spring, Russia	Lavrinenko et al. (2010)

for swarming, i.e., the population's movement across wet surfaces (Hall and Krieg 1983). Chemotactic responses of motile *Azospirillum* strains toward seed and root exudates, a major source of nutrients and signals for rhizobacteria increase the probability that the bacteria find the plant in the soil. Binding of azospirilla to plant surfaces is a next essential phase in the interaction of these bacteria with their hosts. Polar flagella seem to have some adhesive properties and mediate relatively rapid and reversible adsorption of azospirilla to plant roots. Lipopolysaccharides (LPS), exopolysaccharides (EPS), and capsular polysaccharides (CPS) play a role in the subsequent firm anchoring of azospirilla to the plant root surface and in proliferation of these bacteria on the roots. The association of azospirilla with plants generally does not require invasion of plant tissues. However, some strains enter the plant and colonize the root and stem interior (recently reviewed by Barassi et al. 2007).

The well-known plant-growth-promoting activity of azospirilla (Okon and Labandera-Gonzalez 1994) is attributed to the synthesis of plant hormones

(auxins, cytokinins, and gibberellins), deamination of the ethylene precursor 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC), production of nitrite and nitric oxide, nitrogen fixation, phosphate solubilization, biocontrol of phytopathogens, and other activities (for a recent review, see Bashan and de Bashan 2010). The use of a great number of *Azospirillum* strains (including *A. brasilense* Sp7, Cd, and Sp245; *A. lipoferum* Sp59b and 4B; and *A. irakense* KBC1) as plant inoculants under laboratory, greenhouse, and field conditions frequently resulted in acceleration of seed germination; enhancement of root, shoot, and leaf growth; increase in plant nitrogen and protein content and plant disease resistance; and several other beneficial effects (reviewed by Okon and Labandera-Gonzalez 1994; Lucy et al. 2004; Bashan and de Bashan 2010). However, the outcome of inoculation with the same *Azospirillum* strain varied significantly depending on the inoculant delivery system, soil type, climatic conditions, plant species, and many other parameters (Okon and Labandera-Gonzalez 1994; Lucy et al. 2004). Thus, a better understanding of the factors that influence the survival, ecological fitness, and plant-growth-promoting activities of azospirilla would be very useful.

It is accepted that the bacterial lifestyle influences genome size, content, and architecture (Bentley and Parkhill 2004). Accordingly, azospirilla have rather complex genomes. Although the *Azospirillum* genomes vary considerably in size, from 4.8 megabase pairs (Mb) in *A. irakense* to 9.7 Mb in *A. lipoferum* (Martin-Didonet et al. 2000), all of them consist of multiple replicons. Multipartite genomes are also typical of many other alphaproteobacteria, including those interacting with plants (Batut et al. 2004; MacLean et al. 2007). It was supposed that the presence of additional replicons may increase the adaptive potential of bacteria (González et al. 2006).

In *A. brasilense*, *A. lipoferum*, and *Azospirillum* sp. B510, a great number of genetic loci involved in the production of major cell-surface polymers (LPS, EPS, and CPS), components of the motility apparatus, and secondary metabolites important for the *Azospirillum*–plant interactions have been assigned to plasmids (Katzy et al. 1990, 1998; Vanbleu et al. 2004, 2005; Pothier et al. 2008; Prigent-Combaret et al. 2008; Lerner et al. 2009a, b; Kaneko et al. 2010; Katsy et al. 2010; Petrova et al. 2010b).

Several studies have recently shown that the genomes of *A. brasilense*, *A. lipoferum*, and *A. irakense* are quite dynamic and that some plasmids are involved in major genomic rearrangements (Katsy et al. 2002; Petrova et al. 2005a, b, 2010a; Vial et al. 2006; Pothier et al. 2008; Katsy and Prilipov 2009). In this review, I discuss what is currently known about plasmid plasticity in *Azospirillum* and how this genetic plasticity influences the bacterial phenotype.

7.2 General Features of Multipartite *Azospirillum* Genomes

A genomic resource for *Azospirillum* includes the complete genome sequence of the rice endophyte *Azospirillum* sp. B510 (Kaneko et al. 2010). Strain B510, isolated from the surface-sterilized stems of *Oryza sativa* cv. Nipponbare

(Elbeltagy et al. 2001) is closely related to *A. oryzae* COC8 (Xie and Yokota 2005; Kaneko et al. 2010). Inoculation of rice seedlings with *Azospirillum* sp. B510 significantly increased the growth of newly generated leaves and shoot biomass in a greenhouse, as well as tiller numbers and seed yield under paddy field conditions (Isawa et al. 2010). Inoculated rice plants became more resistant to diseases caused by the phytopathogenic fungus *Magnaporthe grisea* and the bacterium *Xanthomonas oryzae* via an unclear mechanism (Yasuda et al. 2009). It should be noted, however, that in field experiments, the effects of *Azospirillum* sp. strain B510 inoculation on the growth of different rice cultivars varied depending on the rice genotype and nitrogen level (Sasaki et al. 2010).

The results of two other projects, focused on the genomes of *A. brasilense* Sp245 (http://genome.ornl.gov/microbial/abra/), a strain isolated from surface-sterilized wheat roots (Baldani et al. 1983), and *A. lipoferum* 4B (http://www.genoscope.cns.fr/), isolated from the rhizosphere of rice (Thomas-Bauzon et al. 1982), have not been published yet.

7.2.1 Plasmids

Plasmids are extrachromosomal replicons that often facilitate adaptations of their hosts to new and hostile environments (Kado 1998). Practically all analyzed *Azospirillum* strains possessed plasmids, ranging in size from 6 kilobase pairs (kb) to more than 1.8 Mb (Martin-Didonet et al. 2000; Kaneko et al. 2010). The plasmid complement seems to play an important role in the beneficial *Azospirillum*–plant associations (Table 7.2).

The genome of *Azospirillum* sp. B510 is arranged into seven replicons: a chromosome of 3.31 Mb and six plasmids, pAB510a–pAB510f, of 0.26–1.46 Mb (Kaneko et al. 2010). Notably, the plasmid constituent of the *Azospirillum* sp. B510 genome encodes more proteins than the chromosome (Table 7.3).

The presence of ribosomal RNA genes on several high-molecular-weight replicons (Caballero-Mellado et al. 1999; Martin-Didonet et al. 2000; Kaneko et al. 2010) supports the idea that at least some *Azospirillum* plasmids should be regarded as "minichromosomes" (Wood et al. 1982). Even a not very large, ~90-MDa (~159-kb) plasmid (p90, or pRhico) (Vanbleu et al. 2004) could not be eliminated from *A. brasilense* Sp7 cells, suggesting that it is essential for the viability of the host strain (Onyeocha et al. 1990).

Plasmids of *A. brasilense*, *A. lipoferum*, and *A. irakense* are prone to frequent rearrangements, leading to the appearance of bacteria with individual plasmid profiles (Matveev et al. 1987; Katsy et al. 1990, 2002; Petrova et al. 2005a, 2010a; Vial et al. 2006). Differences in plasmid contents of the same *Azospirillum* strain kept in different laboratories (Caballero-Mellado et al. 1999; Martin-Didonet et al. 2000; Pothier et al. 2008) could also be attributed (at least in part) to plasmid plasticity. For example, an 85-MDa plasmid (p85) of *A. brasilense* Sp245 and

Table 7.2 Known plasmid-encoded traits potentially important for beneficial *Azospirillum*–plant interactions

Bacterial phenotype	*Azospirillum* strain	Plasmid involved	References	Possible role in *Azospirillum*–plant interaction
Flagellation, motility, and chemotaxis	*A. brasilense* Sp7	pRhico (p90)	Vanbleu et al. (2004)	Bacterial movement toward the plant
	A. brasilense Sp245	p85 and p120	Katzy et al. (1998, 2001), Borisov et al. (2009)	
	Azospirillum sp. B510	pAB510a, pAB510b, pAB510c, pAB510d, and pAB510e	Kaneko et al. (2010)	
	A. brasilense Sp7	pRhico	Vanbleu et al. (2004, 2005), Lerner et al. (2009a, b)	
	A. brasilense Sp245	p85 and p120	Katzy et al. (1998), Borisov et al. (2009), Katsy et al. (2010)	
Cell-envelope and motility apparatus components	*Azospirillum* sp. B510	pAB510a, pAB510d, pAB510e, and pAB510f	Kaneko et al. (2010)	Bacterial establishment on plant surfaces
	A. brasilense Sp245	p85	Katzy et al. (1990)	
Indole-3-acetic acid production	*Azospirillum* sp. B510	pAB510b	Kaneko et al. (2010)	Auxin stimulation of plant growth
	Azospirillum sp. B510	pAB510b	Kaneko et al. (2010)	
ACC-deaminase activity	*A. lipoferum* 4B	a 750-kb plasmid	Prigent-Combaret et al. (2008)	Lowering of plant ethylene levels
	A. brasilense Sp7	p115	Petrova et al. (2010b)	
	A. brasilense Sp245	p85	Petrova et al. (2010b)	
		250-kb (a probable cointegrate of p85 with another plasmid) and ~750-kb		
Nitrite reduction and NO formation	*A. brasilense* Sp245	plasmids	Pothier et al. (2008)	Plant root growth promotion by NO
	Azospirillum sp. B510	pAB510c	Kaneko et al. (2010)	
Uptake of siderophores	*Azospirillum* sp. B510	pAB510a, pAB510d, and pAB510e	Kaneko et al. (2010)	Reduction of iron available to phytopathogens

a 115-MDa plasmid (p115) of *A. brasilense* Sp7 are frequently absent from the plasmid profiles of Sp245 and Sp7 clones. These low-copy-number plasmids (Katsy 1992; Holguin et al. 1999) are incompatible (Katsy 1992) suggesting a common plasmid maintenance mechanism. Preliminary data presume that p85 and p115 could reversibly integrate into other *A. brasilense* replicons (Petrova et al. 2005a, b; Katsy and Prilipov 2009).

Table 7.3 Some features of the sequenced *Azospirillum* sp. B510 genome[a]

GenBank accession number	Circular DNA molecule	Length (kb)	GC content (%)	Coding DNA (%)	Predicted protein encoding genes	IS elements[b]	Prophages	Genomic islands
AP010946	Chromosome	3,311.4	67.8	86	2,893	77	2	6
AP010947	pAB510a	1,455.1	67.6	88	1,131	57	–	–
AP010948	pAB510b	723.8	67.5	89	631	78	–	–
AP010949	pAB510c	681.7	67.4	89	533	20	–	–
AP010950	pAB510d	628.8	68.0	87	519	7	–	1
AP010951	pAB510e	537.3	67.5	87	415	11	–	1
AP010952	pAB510f	261.6	65.9	90	187	30	–	–

[a]Compiled from GenBank records AP010946–AP010952 and from Kaneko et al. (2010)
[b]Total number of complete and partial IS elements

7.2.2 Insertion Sequences

As mentioned above, *Azospirillum* genomes seem to be highly dynamic entities. A significant source of genomic plasticity could be the transposition of insertion sequence (IS) elements, which are widespread in bacteria (Mahillon and Chandler 1998). Transpositions of IS elements may cause gene inactivation or activation of silent genes. Recombination between homologous copies of IS elements provokes DNA inversions or deletions (Mahillon and Chandler 1998). Besides, IS elements can mediate horizontal gene transfer (Heuer and Smalla 2007).

Two IS elements of the *A. brasilense* Sp245 plasmid p85, IS*Azba1* (distantly related to the IS*256* family) and IS*Azba3* (from the IS*5* family/IS*903* group), mediate fusions of p85 with foreign plasmids (Katsy and Prilipov 2009). These IS elements seem to be powerful natural tools useful for the enrichment of the *A. brasilense* genome with novel genetic material. As other factors potentially contributing to the known genetic plasticity of p85, truncated IS*Azba2* of the IS*L3* family and a phage integrase gene were also identified in this plasmid (Katsy and Prilipov 2009).

Two IS elements found on pRhico of *A. brasilense* Sp7 are homologous to the *Bradyrhizobium japonicum* IS elements ID145 and ID270, encoding a transposase and a DNA invertase (Vanbleu et al. 2004).

A striking feature of the *Azospirillum* sp. B510 genome is the abundance of multiple copies of IS elements (Table 7.3). The B510 genome contains 139 complete and 141 truncated copies of IS elements from at least 12 families (IS*3*, IS*5*, IS*21*, IS*66*, IS*110*, IS*256*, IS*630*, IS*701*, IS*1380*, IS*As1*, IS*L3*, and ISNCY). Many of these IS elements are present in more than one copy on the same or on different replicons (Kaneko et al. 2010) and thus represent potential sites for DNA recombination. The presence of redundant IS elements suggests their important role in the *Azospirillum* genome rearrangements.

7.2.3 Prophages

Many bacteriophages contribute to bacterial diversity owing to transduction of new genes and lysogenic conversion (Chibani-Chennoufi et al. 2004).

Several temperate strain-specific *Azospirillum* bacteriophages are known (Elmerich et al. 1982; Germida 1984; Boyer et al. 2008). Interestingly, in stable lysogens of *A. lipoferum* SpBr17, prophage Al-1 was supported as a 22-MDa (~37-kb) plasmid (Elmerich et al. 1982).

Phages isolated from cell lysates after mitomycin C treatment of *A. brasilense* cultures have 62–65-kb genomes (Boyer et al. 2008). In the closely related *A. brasilense* strains Cd and Sp7, practically identical 62.3-kb prophages reside in ~376-MDa (570-kb) plasmids; in addition, the 27.3-kb fragments of these prophages are duplicated in the 90-MDa plasmids (pRhico) (Boyer et al. 2008). In an almost complete nucleotide sequence of pRhico from *A. brasilense* Sp7, six putative prophage genes were identified (Vanbleu et al. 2004).

In *Azospirillum* sp. B510, two diverse prophages span 66.7 and 31.8 kb of the chromosome; an altered copy of the 66.7-kb prophage also resides in the chromosomal DNA (Kaneko et al. 2010).

Since the phages induced from *A. lipoferum*, *A. doebereinerae*, and *Azospirillum* sp. B510 (Boyer et al. 2008; Kaneko et al. 2010) had very small (ca. 10-kb) genomes, they were suggested to be the phage-like gene-transfer elements (GTE) (Boyer et al. 2008). However, no transducing activity has been recorded in any *Azospirillum* phage or GTE yet.

7.2.4 Genomic Islands

The contents of bacterial genomes can be changed quickly and significantly because of horizontal gene transfer and subsequent integration of foreign genetic elements into resident DNAs, where they form "genomic islands" (Dobrindt et al. 2004).

Apart from selfish mobility loci, genomic islands harbor other genes with specific functions. Expression of those genes can change bacterial behavior, increase bacterial fitness, competence in interacting with higher organisms, and adaptability to new environments ("fitness," "ecological," "saprophytic," "symbiosis," "pathogenicity," and other islands) (Dobrindt et al. 2004; Heuer and Smalla 2007).

Sequence analysis of the *Azospirillum* sp. B510 genome revealed six chromosomal and two plasmid (located in pAB510d and pAB510e) regions with typical signs of genomic islands (Kaneko et al. 2010). All the eight regions were located between duplicated portions of tRNA genes; possessed putative genes for integrases, site-specific recombinases, and transposases; and differed from the core genome in G + C content. The sizes of those genomic regions varied from 6.7 kb (chromosomal B510GI03) to 71 kb (B510GIe8 in pAB510e) (Kaneko et al. 2010).

Besides several loci coding for an integrase, transposases, and hypothetical proteins, a 22.6-kb genomic island (B510GId7) from pAB510d includes predicted genes for a transcriptional regulator and two-component sensor histidine kinase and response regulator (GenBank accession number AP010950).

In addition to numerous mobility and recombination loci, the 71-kb genomic island B510GIe8 possesses genes encoding a transcriptional regulator, two-component sensor histidine kinases and response regulators, a hemolysin-type calcium-binding protein, H^+-transporting and Mg^{2+}-importing ATPases, the chemotaxis protein methyltransferase, glycosyltransferases, and other predicted proteins (GenBank accession number AP010951). The genomic islands probably provide *Azospirillum* sp. B510 with some selective advantages.

7.3 Plasmid Dynamics and Phenotypic Variations in Several *Azospirillum* Species

Soil bacteria are supposed to use genetic and phenotypic diversification for survival in harsh and fluctuating environments. Various genomic rearrangements, often involving mobile genetic elements, may be induced in bacteria under specific growth conditions, such as prolonged starvation and oxidative and temperature stresses (Rajeshwari and Sonti 2000; Faure et al. 2004; Foster 2007). The presence of numerous plasmids, IS elements, phage-associated genes, and genomic islands in the *Azospirillum* genomes strongly suggests that these mobile arsenals could often be responsible for the phenotypic and genomic plasticity observed in these bacteria (see below).

7.3.1 Azospirillum brasilense

Azospirilla produce various cell-surface glycopolymers: LPS, EPS, and CPS. In most gram-negative bacteria, LPS consists of the hydrophobic lipid A, a core oligosaccharide, and an O-specific polysaccharide (OPS). A "smooth-type" LPS (S-LPS) possesses all the three structural entities; a "rough-type" LPS (R-LPS) is devoid of OPS; and SR-LPS is formed by lipid A-core capped with a single OPS unit (Raetz and Whitfield 2002).

Multiple open reading frames apparently responsible for the synthesis of LPS, EPS, CPS, and other cell-surface biopolymers were revealed in pRhico of *A. brasilense* strain Sp7 (Vanbleu et al. 2004, 2005; Lerner et al. 2009a, b). These findings may explain why it was not possible to cure the Sp7 cells from pRhico (Onyeocha et al. 1990).

Almost nothing is known about the functions of other *A. brasilense* Sp7 plasmids. However, plasmid rearrangements were found that were accompanied

by alterations in a number of Sp7 traits (Matveev et al. 1987; Petrova et al. 2005a, b, 2010a).

For example, indirect data on the possible involvement of the p115 plasmid in the regulation of bacterial R–S dissociation were obtained (Matveev et al. 1987). After prolonged incubation of *A. brasilense* Sp7 at 40–42°C, a fairly stable variant, Sp7-S, was identified, that had lost the 115-MDa replicon. The replicon loss correlated with persistence of the S phenotype in Sp7-S, i.e., the formation of smooth colonies (Matveev et al. 1987).

The differences between the R- and S-variants of Sp7 presumably resulted from the age-dependent changes in the contributions of two full-length LPS to the architecture of the colony surface rather than from partial or complete loss of OPS (Matora et al. 2003).

After several years of storage of *A. brasilense* Sp7-S at −70°C, its R-, SR-, and S-variants Sp7.1–Sp7.9 were isolated that contained derivatives of pRhico with changed molecular weights (94, 107, 121, 124, and 131 MDa) and structures (Petrova et al. 2005a, 2010a). For example, in *A. brasilense* Sp7.2 and Sp7.4, the new 131-MDa plasmid showed homology to both pRhico and p115 and seemed to be a hybrid of pRhico and a segment of p115 (Petrova et al. 2005a).

It was suggested that at least part of p115 has integrated into the chromosome of the variant Sp7-S, making the genome unstable and prone to DNA rearrangements (Petrova et al. 2005a). The genetic instability of *A. brasilense* Sp7-S may also be due to the specific method of its derivation (incubation at elevated temperature) (Matveev et al. 1987). It should be noted that soil bacteria are often exposed to elevated temperatures in their natural habitats. Upon multiple freezing–thawing of the *A. brasilense* Sp7 culture (which is also quite probable in soil ecosystems), an S-variant, Sp7.K2, was isolated that had also lost p115 (Petrova et al. 2005a).

A close relative of Sp7, *A. brasilense* strain Cd, lacking p115 (Petrova et al. 2005b) was isolated from the roots of bermuda grass after inoculation with Sp7 (Eskew et al. 1977). Both strains were characterized by nearly identical two-dimensional protein maps and DNA restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLP) (De Mot and Vanderleyden 1989; Gündisch et al. 1993; Petrova et al. 2005b). However, subtle differences were revealed in the LPS antigenic structures of Sp7 and Cd (Kirchhof et al 1997; Petrova et al. 2005b). Unlike in *A. brasilense* Sp7-S, further plasmid rearrangements were not detected in *A. brasilense* Cd. In contrast to *A. brasilense* Sp7, Sp7-S, and other *Azospirillum* strains, colonies of strain Cd do not dissociate on minimal synthetic media and retain their S-phenotype over a long time (Petrova et al. 2005b). The genetic causes for the differences in colony morphology and LPS structure in the closely related strains Sp7 and Cd, characterized by distinct plant-associated backgrounds, are of interest.

All the studied phenotypic variants of *A. brasilense* Sp7 retained the ability to swim and swarm. Moreover, the rates of their spreading in soft media were 1.7–2.7 times higher than that in the parent strain Sp7. Several variants of Sp7 have increased resistance to ampicillin and to cationic (cetyltrimethylammonium bromide) and anionic (sodium dodecyl sulfate) surface-active agents. The capability of a

number of Sp7 variants to grow on a minimal medium with cetyltrimethylammonium bromide as the sole carbon source deserves further investigation (Petrova et al. 2005a, b).

Lerner et al. (2010) isolated spontaneous derivatives of *A. brasilense* $Sp7^{-}$, a non-aggregating variant of Sp7, after 12-day starvation ($Sp7_{E}$ and two other variants) or colonization of maize roots (one variant). These derivatives differed from the parent strain in several traits. According to preliminary data, a plasmid rearrangement occurred in the variant $Sp7_{E}$. As compared to *A. brasilense* $Sp7^{-}$ and Sp7, the EPS-overproducing variant $Sp7_{E}$ has modified LPS and EPS, increased resistance to environmental stresses and to some antibiotics, and enhanced biofilm-forming capability (Lerner et al. 2010).

In natural environments, bacteria mainly exist in biofilms, i.e., structured communities embedded into a polymeric extracellular matrix and located at the interface between two media (Nikolaev and Plakunov 2007). The efficiency of biofilm formation by *A. brasilense* Sp7 and its variants was analyzed by Petrova et al. (2010a). It turned out that in Sp7, the above-described plasmid rearrangements (Petrova et al. 2005a) negatively affected biofilm formation on hydrophobic (polystyrene) and (less frequently) hydrophilic (glass) abiotic surfaces (Petrova et al. 2010a).

The *A. brasilense* Sp7 variants lacking p115 and containing the modified pRhico were also less active in plant root colonization during the first hours of interaction (Petrova et al. 2010a). Four to five hours after inoculation of wheat seedlings, the cells of Sp7 actively colonized root tips, hairs, and root fractures. On the next day, the Sp7 biofilms became more compact and multilayered, with cell aggregates starting to form. The overall picture of wheat root colonization by the variants of Sp7 was similar to that observed in the parent strain; however, at the initial steps of formation, their biofilms were thinner (especially in the cases of Sp7.K2 and Cd), single cells could be detected, and no colonization was observed in surface regions remote from the root tip. After 24 h, the wild-type Sp7 strain and all its variants formed cell aggregates on wheat roots; most of them were located on root hairs and tips and in places of root hair initiation, and visible interstrain differences disappeared (Petrova et al. 2010a). Thus, it seems that coordinated expression of the complete set of plasmid genes is important for more rapid adaptation of *A. brasilense* Sp7 to the new environments and for more successful realization of the biofilm development program.

As distinct from many other *Azospirillum* strains colonizing only plant surfaces, *A. brasilense* Sp245 is capable of invading plant roots (Baldani et al. 1983; Assmus et al. 1995). This strain has high potential for producing phytohormones and inducing the branching of roots and root hairs (Jain and Patriquin 1984).

A. brasilense Sp245 possesses LpsI and LpsII with subtle differences between their OPSs and/or core oligosaccharides recognizable with polyclonal antibodies raised against the wild-type LPS (Katzy et al. 1998) and by ion-exchange chromatography (Fedonenko et al. 2004). The OPSs of both LPSI and LPSII are composed of identical pentasaccharide D-rhamnose (D-Rha) repeating units (Fig. 7.1) (Fedonenko et al. 2002).

1
→2)-β-*D*-Rha*p*-(1→3)-α-*D*-Rha*p*-(1→3)-α-*D*-Rha*p*-(1→2)-α-*D*-Rha*p*-(1→2)-α-*D*-Rha*p*-(1→

2
→6)-α-*D*-Gal*p*NAc-(1→4)-β-*D*-Man*p*NAcA-(1→

Fig. 7.1 Structures of the repeating units of the O-specific polysaccharides of *A. brasilense* Sp245 (1) and its variant Sp245.5 (2), which spontaneously lost plasmids p85 and p120 upon the formation of a new, ~300-MDa megaplasmid (Fedonenko et al. 2002, 2010)

A 120-MDa plasmid (p120) of *A. brasilense* Sp245 encodes a number of predicted glycosyltransferases participating in the biosynthesis of LPSI, LPSII, and Calcofluor-binding polysaccharides (CBPS, Cal^+ phenotype), which include both EPS and CPS fractions (Katzy et al. 1998; Katsy et al. 2010).

Interestingly, the same penta-D-rhamnan OPSs were identified in *A. brasilense* SR75 (Fedonenko et al. 2005), Sp107, and S27 and in *A. lipoferum* RG20a (Boiko et al. 2010). At least in two of these strains (*A. brasilense* SR75 and Sp107), 120-MDa plasmids contain a region that is highly homologous to a 14-kb segment of p120 coding for the LPS biosynthesis enzymes. On the other hand, in the genomes of *A. brasilense* SR75 and Sp107, no homology to another (~8.3-kb) segment of p120 was found (Fedonenko et al. 2005; Katsy et al. 2010).

The p85 plasmid of *A. brasilense* Sp245 is known to be involved in tryptophan metabolism, related to auxin production (Katzy et al. 1990), and to encode predicted glycosyltransferases (Katsy et al. 2010), denitrification enzymes (Petrova et al. 2010b), and some other proteins (Katsy and Prilipov 2009; Petrova et al. 2010b).

After an analysis of the plasmid profiles of *A. brasilense* Sp245 strains obtained from different laboratories, Pothier et al. (2008) concluded that the smallest replicon (i.e., p85) probably underwent various independent rearrangements: a deletion of ~10 MDa, a cointegration with another plasmid, and a complete loss by the strain used in the Sp245 genome-sequencing project.

A variant of *A. brasilense* Sp245, named Sp245.5, was characterized that had spontaneously lost p85 and p120 upon the formation of a new ~300-MDa megaplasmid after long-term storage of the bacteria in a rich medium (Katsy et al. 1994, 2002). The wild-type (Sp245) and derivative (Sp245.5) strains have the same acetylene reduction activity; nearly identical SDS-PAGE profiles of the outer membrane proteins, except for an additional 44-kDa protein in Sp245.5 (Katsy et al. 1994); and similar RFLP patterns, except for the loci probably involved in plasmid rearrangement (Katsy et al. 2002). As distinct from the parent *A. brasilense* strain Sp245, Sp245.5 is unable to reduce nitrite and produces about two times less indole-3-acetic acid in the presence of tryptophan (Katzy et al. 1995).

Furthermore, strain Sp245.5 has drastic alterations in the biosynthesis of CBPS (Cal^- phenotype) and possesses a highly heterogeneous LPS, which could not be recognized by polyclonal antibodies raised against the LPS of Sp245 (Katsy et al. 2002). The macromolecular organization of the Sp245.5 LPS differs distinctly from that of the Sp245 LPS. Whereas the core oligosaccharide of the wild-type strain shows a very high degree of substitution with polysaccharide chains, attesting to the

prevalence of S-LPS in the LPS pool (Fedonenko et al. 2002), Sp245.5 displays both S- and R-LPS at an approximate ratio of 2:1 (Fedonenko et al. 2010).

The repeating unit of the OPS of *A. brasilense* Sp245.5 is a disaccharide consisting of residues of *N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine and *N*-acetyl-D-mannosaminuronic acid (Fig. 7.1), which has not been hitherto found in *Azospirillum* (Fedonenko et al. 2010).

Thus, the OPS of *A. brasilense* Sp245.5 differs from the D-rhamnan OPS of the parent strain Sp245 (Fedonenko et al. 2002) in both composition and structure (Fedonenko et al. 2010). It should be noted that *N*-acetyl-D-mannosaminuronic acid is a rare sugar, which, for instance, is present in the enterobacterial common antigen, a cyclic or linear heteropolysaccharide (Lugowski et al. 1983).

The loss of the D-rhamnan OPS by *A. brasilense* Sp245.5 could result from the adaptation of this bacterium to the conditions of several years' storage in a rich medium at room temperature. Probable activation of mobile elements and genetic rearrangements under the above storage conditions could lead to the deletion and/or inactivation of the D-rhamnan LPS biosynthesis genes with simultaneous activation of silent genes and a pathway for the production of OPS with novel monosaccharide composition and structure of the repeating unit.

The dramatic change in the LPS structure correlates with the activation of biofilm formation by *A. brasilense* Sp245.5 on hydrophilic and hydrophobic surfaces. Biofilms formed by its cultures are significantly more pronounced than those of the parent strain Sp245 (Fig. 7.2) (Sheludko et al. 2008).

A. brasilense Sp245.5 retained the flagellation and swimming motility pattern of the wild-type strain. However, its cells swim slower (at a speed of 17.1 ± 0.8 μm/s) than the cells of Sp245 (29.3 ± 0.9 μm/s). On semisolid media, populations of the Sp245.5 cells form "diffuse" spreading zones, whereas the wild-type bacteria form distinct swarming rings. Most probably, the altered spreading phenotype of Sp245.5 is caused by the principal change in the structure of cell-surface polysaccharides, which unbalances important carbohydrate–carbohydrate and protein–carbohydrate interactions (Shelud'ko et al. 2009).

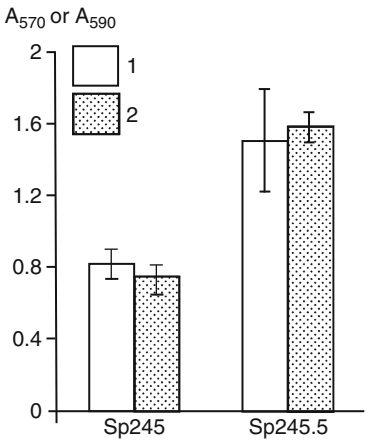


Fig. 7.2 Relative amount of biomass in the *A. brasilense* Sp245 and Sp245.5 biofilms formed on the surfaces of polystyrene (A_{570}) (1) and glass (A_{590}) (2) upon 96-h incubation at 28°C. Crystal violet staining of the biofilms was used. Details of the experiments can be found in Sheludko et al. (2008)

Thus, the spontaneous change in the content and structure of the *A. brasilense* Sp245 plasmids profoundly affects the metabolism, cell-surface polymers, and social activities of this bacterium.

A. brasilense WN1, a strain associated with wheat (Blaha et al. 2006), harbors plasmids of approximately 190, 260, 500, 570, and 650 kb (Vial et al. 2006). This strain showed the capacity for production of stable immotile variants (at a frequency of 3.6×10^{-3} per cell per generation), a process concurrent with a loss of the 260-kb replicon (Vial et al. 2006).

7.3.2 *Azospirillum lipoferum*

Under laboratory conditions, the strain 4B of *A. lipoferum* frequently produces a stable phase variant, named $4V_I$ (Alexandre and Bally 1999). In distinction to the wild-type strain, the $4V_I$ variant assimilates other carbohydrates; lacks a polar flagellum and does not swim; constitutively produces lateral flagella and has enhanced swarming capacity; and does not reduce triphenyltetrazolium chloride (Alexandre and Bally 1999; Alexandre et al. 1999) or nitrous oxide (Vial et al. 2006). When grown at extremely low oxygen concentrations, *A. lipoferum* $4V_I$ produces a stable laccase-positive melanin-producing atypical variant named $4V_{II}$. Neither *A. lipoferum* $4V_I$ nor $4V_{II}$ is able to revert to the wild-type phenotype (Alexandre and Bally 1999).

A. lipoferum 4B was isolated from the rice rhizosphere simultaneously with the immotile laccase-positive strain *A. lipoferum* 4T (Bally et al. 1983), which turned out to be very similar to the variant $4V_{II}$. Proven to be closely related to *A. lipoferum* 4B (Haurat et al. 1994; Vial et al. 2006), *A. lipoferum* 4T was supposed to be a spontaneous variant of 4B (the motile, laccase-negative strain) generated via a two-step phenotypic switching event within the rice rhizosphere (Alexandre and Bally 1999). *A. lipoferum* 4T retained the ability of 4B to efficiently colonize rice roots, but unlike the motile 4B, it needs the roots to be stabilized in sterile soil (Alexandre et al. 1996). Both *A. lipoferum* 4B and 4T coexist in sterile soil and the rice rhizosphere. In the rhizosphere of rice, the frequency of the appearance of stable immotile variants of *A. lipoferum* 4B (similar in other traits to the parent strain) seemed elevated (Alexandre et al. 1996).

In *A. lipoferum* 4B, replicons of 40, 310, 460, 700, 750, ~1,000, ~1,600, and ~2,200 kb were identified (Vial et al. 2006). Both *A. lipoferum* 4T and V_I retained all the replicons of 4B, except for the 750-kb plasmid. Interestingly, this plasmid harbors the *acdS* gene, a predicted product of which deaminates the ethylene precursor ACC and may be involved in determining the plant-growth-promoting activity of *A. lipoferum* 4B (Prigent-Combaret et al. 2008).

A new plasmid of 400 kb, nonhomologous to the lost 750-kb replicon, was detected in *A. lipoferum* 4T (Vial et al. 2006). It remains to be established whether the 400-kb plasmid was present in an integrated form in the genome of *A. lipoferum* 4B or was acquired by strain 4T via horizontal gene transfer from other rhizosphere bacteria.

7.3.3 *Azospirillum irakense*

A. irakense KBC1, a strain isolated from the rhizosphere of rice (Khammas et al. 1989), possesses megaplasmids of approximately 1,050 and 1,400 kb (Vial et al. 2006). At a frequency of up to 10^{-4} per cell per generation, KBC1 produces unstable immotile variants, the subculturing of which gives a mixture of wild-type and variant colonies (at a ratio of about 10 to 1, respectively). The phenotypic switches correlate with a supposed reversible split of the 1,400-kb replicon into 160-kb and 1,240-kb plasmids (Vial et al. 2006).

7.4 Concluding Remarks

As discussed above, in several strains of *A. brasilense*, *A. lipoferum*, and *A. irakense*, spontaneous DNA rearrangements were accompanied by changes in the structure of the major cell-surface polymers, bacterial motility, biofilm-forming capability, resistance to xenobiotics, and other traits potentially important for bacterial survival in soil and for colonization of plants. It is highly probable that the natural intrastrain diversification of azospirilla is the key to their success as ubiquitous environmental bacteria. However, the ecological consequences of the *Azospirillum* plasmid (and, on the whole, genome) plasticity have not been comprehensively studied yet. It seems important to find out how the profound genomic and phenotypic plasticities influence the adaptation of azospirilla to the complex environments such as soil and the phytosphere, as well as their plant-growth-promoting ability.

A challenge lies in determining the molecular mechanisms responsible for frequent genomic rearrangements. The accumulation of several *Azospirillum* genome sequences and the development of new experimental tools for the examination of intercellular and single-DNA-molecules variability (Medini et al. 2008; McCaughan and Dear 2010) are expected to yield more comprehensive knowledge about bacterial genomes as fluid and dynamic entities. These insights would have broader implications for understanding the natural behavior of other rhizobacteria, also prone to phenotypic switches (Achouak et al. 2004; Espinosa-Urgel 2004; Martínez-Granero et al. 2005) and for competent managing of sustainable plant–bacterial associations.

Acknowledgements All my past and present colleagues are gratefully acknowledged for contributing to the work on *A. brasilense* described in this review. This work was supported by grants from the President of the Russian Federation and from the Russian Foundation for Basic Research.

References

Achouak W, Conrod S, Cohen V, Heulin T (2004) Phenotypic variation of *Pseudomonas brassicacearum* as a plant root-colonization strategy. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:872–879

Alexandre G, Bally R (1999) Emergence of a laccase-positive variant of *Azospirillum lipoferum* occurs via a two-step phenotypic switching process. FEMS Microbiol Lett 174:371–378

Alexandre G, Jacoud C, Faure D, Bally R (1996) Population dynamics of a motile and non-motile *Azospirillum lipoferum* strains during rice colonization and motility variation in the rhizosphere. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 19:271–278

Alexandre G, Rohr R, Bally R (1999) A phase variant of *Azospirillum lipoferum* lacks a polar flagellum and constitutively expresses mechanosensing lateral flagella. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:4701–4707

Assmus B, Hutzler P, Kirchhof G, Amann R, Lawrence JR, Hartmann A (1995) In situ localization of *Azospirillum brasilense* in the rhizosphere of wheat with fluorescently labeled, rRNA-targeted oligonucleotide probes and scanning confocal laser microscopy. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:1013–1019

Baldani VLD, Baldani JI, Döbereiner J (1983) Effects of *Azospirillum* inoculation on root infection and nitrogen incorporation in wheat. Can J Microbiol 29:924–929

Bally R, Thomas-Bauzon D, Heulin T, Balandreau J, Richard C, de Ley J (1983) Determination of the most frequent N_2-fixing bacteria in the rice rhizosphere. Can J Microbiol 29:881–887

Barassi CA, Sueldo RJ, Creus CM, Carrozzi LE, Casanovas EM, Pereyra MA (2007) *Azospirillum* spp., a dynamic soil bacterium favourable to vegetable crop production. Dyn Soil Dyn Plant 1:68–82

Bashan Y, de Bashan LE (2010) How the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Azospirillum* promotes plant growth – a critical assessment. Adv Agron 108:77–136

Batut J, Andersson SG, O'Callaghan D (2004) The evolution of chronic infection strategies in the alpha-proteobacteria. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:933–945

Ben Dekhil S, Cahill M, Stackebrandt E, Sly LI (1997) Transfer of *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *largomobilis* to the genus *Azospirillum* as *Azospirillum largomobile* comb. nov., and elevation of *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *parooensis* to the new type species of *Conglomeromonas, Conglomeromonas parooensis* sp. nov. Syst Appl Microbiol 20:72–77

Bentley SD, Parkhill J (2004) Comparative genomic structure of prokaryotes. Annu Rev Genet 38:771–791

Blaha D, Prigent-Combaret C, Mirza MS, Moënne-Loccoz Y (2006) Phylogeny of the 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase-encoding gene *acdS* in phytobeneficial and pathogenic Proteobacteria and relation with strain biogeography. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 56:455–470

Boiko AS, Smol'kina ON, Fedonenko YP, Zdorovenko EL, Kachala VV, Konnova SA, Ignatov VV (2010) O-Polysaccharide structure in serogroup I azospirilla. Microbiology 79:197–205

Borisov IV, Schelud'ko AV, Petrova LP, Katsy EI (2009) Changes in *Azospirillum brasilense* motility and the effect of wheat seedling exudates. Microbiol Res 164:578–587

Boyer M, Haurat J, Samain S, Segurens B, Gavory F, González V, Mavingui P, Rohr R, Bally R, Wisniewski-Dyé F (2008) Bacteriophage prevalence in the genus *Azospirillum* and analysis of the first genome sequence of an *Azospirillum brasilense* integrative phage. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:861–874

Caballero-Mellado J, Lopez-Reyes L, Bustillos-Cristales R (1999) Presence of 16S rRNA genes in multiple replicons in *Azospirillum brasilense*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 178:283–288

Chibani-Chennoufi S, Bruttin A, Dillmann ML, Brüssow H (2004) Phage-host interaction: an ecological perspective. J Bacteriol 186:3677–3686

De Mot R, Vanderleyden J (1989) Application of two-dimensional protein analysis for strain fingerprinting and mutant analysis of *Azospirillum* species. Can J Microbiol 35:960–967

Dobrindt U, Hochhut B, Hentschel U, Hacker J (2004) Genomic islands in pathogenic and environmental microorganisms. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:414–424

Eckert B, Weber OB, Kirchhof G, Halbritter A, Stoffels M, Hartmann A (2001) *Azospirillum doebereinerae* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing bacterium associated with the C_4-grass *Miscanthus*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 51:17–26

Elbeltagy A, Nishioka K, Sato T, Suzuki H, Ye B, Hamada T, Isawa T, Mitsui H, Minamisawa K (2001) Endophytic colonization and in planta nitrogen fixation by a *Herbaspirillum* sp. isolated from wild rice species. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:5285–5293

Elmerich C, Quiviger B, Rosenberg C, Franche C, Laurent P, Döbereiner J (1982) Characterization of a temperate bacteriophage for *Azospirillum*. Virology 122:29–37

Eskew DL, Focht DD, Ting IP (1977) Nitrogen fixation, denitrification, and pleomorphic growth in a highly pigmented *Spirillum lipoferum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 34:582–585

Espinosa-Urgel M (2004) Plant-associated *Pseudomonas* populations: molecular biology, DNA dynamics, and gene transfer. Plasmid 52:139–150

Faure D, Frederick R, Wloch D, Portier P, Blot M, Adams J (2004) Genomic changes arising in long-term stab cultures of *Escherichia coli*. J Bacteriol 186:6437–6442

Fedonenko YP, Zatonsky GV, Konnova SA, Zdorovenko EL, Ignatov VV (2002) Structure of the O-specific polysaccharide of the lipopolysaccharide of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245. Carbohydr Res 337:869–872

Fedonenko YP, Zdorovenko EL, Konnova SA, Ignatov VV, Shlyakhtin GV (2004) Comparison of the lipopolysaccharides and O-specific polysaccharides of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 and its Omegon-Km mutants KM018 and KM252. Microbiology 73:180–187

Fedonenko YP, Borisov IV, Konnova ON, Zdorovenko EL, Katsy EI, Konnova SA, Ignatov VV (2005) Determination of the structure of the repeated unit of the *Azospirillum brasilense* SR75 O-specific polysaccharide and homology of the *lps* loci in the plasmids of *Azospirillum brasilense* strains SR75 and Sp245. Microbiology 74:542–548

Fedonenko YP, Katsy EI, Petrova LP, Boyko AS, Zdorovenko EL, Kachala VV, Shashkov AS, Knirel YA (2010) The structure of the O-specific polysaccharide from a mutant of nitrogen-fixing rhizobacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 with an altered plasmid content. Russ J Bioorg Chem 36:219–223

Foster PL (2007) Stress-induced mutagenesis in bacteria. Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol 42: 373–397

Germida JJ (1984) Spontaneous induction of bacteriophage during growth of *Azospirillum brasilense* in complex media. Can J Microbiol 30:805–808

González V, Santamaría RI, Bustos P, Hernández-González I, Medrano-Soto A, Moreno-Hagelsieb G, Janga SC, Ramírez MA, Jiménez-Jacinto V, Collado-Vides J, Dávila G (2006) The partitioned *Rhizobium etli* genome: genetic and metabolic redundancy in seven interacting replicons. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:3834–3839

Gündisch C, Baur M, Kirchhof G, Bode W, Hartmann A (1993) Characterization of *Azospirillum* strains by RFLP and pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. Microb Releases 2:41–45

Hall PG, Krieg NR (1983) Swarming of *Azospirillum brasilense* on solid media. Can J Microbiol 29:1592–1594

Haurat J, Faure D, Bally R, Normand P (1994) Molecular relationship of an atypical *Azospirillum* strain 4T to other *Azospirillum* species. Res Microbiol 145:633–640

Heuer H, Smalla K (2007) Horizontal gene transfer between bacteria. Environ Biosafety Res 6:3–13

Holguin G, Patten CL, Glick BR (1999) Genetics and molecular biology of *Azospirillum*. Biol Fert Soils 29:10–23

Isawa T, Yasuda M, Awasaki H, Minamisawa K, Shinozaki S, Nakashita H (2010) *Azospirillum* sp. strain B510 enhances rice growth and yield. Microbes Environ 25:58–61

Jain D, Patriquin D (1984) Root hair deformation, bacterial attachment and plant growth in wheat–*Azospirillum* associations. Appl Environ Microbiol 48:1208–1213

Kado CI (1998) Origin and evolution of plasmids. 73:117–126

Kaneko T, Minamisawa K, Isawa T, Nakatsukasa H, Mitsui H, Kawaharada Y, Nakamura Y, Watanabe A, Kawashima K, Ono A, Shimizu Y, Takahashi C, Minami C, Fujishiro T, Kohara M, Katoh M, Nakazaki N, Nakayama S, Yamada M, Tabata S, Sato S (2010) Complete genomic structure of the cultivated rice endophyte *Azospirillum* sp. B510. DNA Res 17:37–50

Katsy EI (1992) Plasmid p85 from *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245: study of the possible host range and incompatibility with plasmids of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7. Mol Gen Mikrobiol Virusol 9:8–10

Katsy EI, Prilipov AG (2009) Mobile elements of an *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 85-MDa plasmid involved in replicon fusions. Plasmid 62:22–29

Katsy EI, Zhuravleva EA, Panasenko VI (1990) Transposon mutagenesis and mobilization of plasmids in the nitrogen-fixing bacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245. Mol Gen Mikrobiol Virusol 2:29–32

Katsy EI, Borisov IV, Mashkina AB, Panasenko VI (1994) Effect of plasmid composition on the chemotaxis reaction of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 associated with Gramineae. Mol Gen Mikrobiol Virusol 2:29–32

Katsy EI, Borisov IV, Petrova LP, Matora LY (2002) The use of fragments of the 85- and 120-MDa plasmids of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 to study the plasmid rearrangement in this bacterium and to search for homologous sequences in plasmids of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7. Russ J Genet 38:124–131

Katsy EI, Petrova LP, Kulibyakina OV, Prilipov AG (2010) Analysis of *Azospirillum brasilense* plasmid loci coding for (lipo)polysaccharides synthesis enzymes. Microbiology 79:216–222

Katzy EI, Iosipenko AD, Egorenkov DA, Zhuravleva EA, Panasenko VI, Ignatov VV (1990) Involvement of the *Azospirillum brasilense* plasmid DNA in the production of indole acetic acid. FEMS Microbiol Lett 72:1–4

Katzy E, Petrova L, Borisov I, Panasenko V (1995) Genetic aspects of indole acetate production in *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245. In: Fendrik I, Del Gallo M, Vanderleyden J, de Zamaroczy M (eds) *Azospirillum* VI and related microorganisms: genetics, physiology, ecology, vol G 37, NATO ASI series. Springer, Berlin, pp 113–119

Katzy EI, Matora LY, Serebrennikova OB, Scheludko AV (1998) Involvement of a 120-MDa plasmid of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 in the production of lipopolysaccharides. Plasmid 40:73–83

Katzy EI, Borisov IV, Scheludko AV (2001) Effect of the integration of vector pJFF350 into plasmid 85-MDa of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 on bacterial flagellation and motility. Russ J Genet 37:129–134

Khammas KM, Ageron E, Grimont PAD, Kaiser P (1989) *Azospirillum irakense* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing bacterium associated with rice roots and rhizosphere soil. Res Microbiol 140:679–693

Kirchhof G, Schloter M, Assmus B, Hartmann A (1997) Molecular microbial ecology approaches applied to diazotrophs associated with non-legumes. Soil Biol Biochem 29:853–862

Lavrinenko K, Chernousova E, Gridneva E, Dubinina G, Akimov V, Kuever J, Lysenko A, Grabovich M (2010) *Azospirillum thiophilum* sp. nov., a diazotrophic bacterium isolated from a sulfide spring. Int J Syst Microbiol 60:2832–2837

Lerner A, Castro-Sowinski S, Valverde A, Lerner H, Dror R, Okon Y, Burdman S (2009a) The *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7 *noeJ* and *noeL* genes are involved in extracellular polysaccharide biosynthesis. Microbiology 155:4058–4068

Lerner A, Okon Y, Burdman S (2009b) The *wzm* gene located on the pRhico plasmid of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7 is involved in lipopolysaccharide synthesis. Microbiology 155:791–804

Lerner A, Valverde A, Castro-Sowinski S, Lerner H, Okon Y, Burdman S (2010) Phenotypic variation in *Azospirillum brasilense* exposed to starvation. Environ Microbiol Rep 2:577–586

Lin SY, Young CC, Hupfer H, Siering C, Arun AB, Chen WM, Lai WA, Shen FT, Rekha PD, Yassin AF (2009) *Azospirillum picis* sp. nov., isolated from discarded tar. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:761–765

Lucy M, Reed E, Glick BR (2004) Applications of free living plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. 86:1–25

Lugowski C, Romanowska E, Kenne L, Lindberg B (1983) Identification of a trisaccharide repeating unit in the enterobacterial common antigen. Carbohydr Res 118:173–181

MacLean AM, Finan TM, Sadowsky MJ (2007) Genomes of the symbiotic nitrogen-fixing bacteria of legumes. Plant Physiol 144:615–622

Magalhães FM, Baldani JI, Souto SM, Kuykendall JR, Döbereiner J (1983) A new acid-tolerant *Azospirillum* species. An Acad Bras Cienc 55:417–430

Mahillon J, Chandler M (1998) Insertion sequences. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 62:725–774

Martin-Didonet CCG, Chubatsu LS, Souza EM, Kleina M, Rego FGM, Rigo LU, Yates MG, Pedrosa FO (2000) Genome structure of the genus *Azospirillum*. J Bacteriol 182:4113–4116

Martínez-Granero F, Capdevila S, Sánchez-Contreras M, Martín M, Rivilla R (2005) Two site-specific recombinases are implicated in phenotypic variation and competitive rhizosphere colonization in *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. Microbiology 151:975–983

Matora LY, Serebrennikova OB, Petrova LP, Burygin GL, Shchegolev SY (2003) Atypical R-S dissociation in *Azospirillum brasilense*. Microbiology 72:60–63

Matveev VY, Petrova LP, Zhuravleva EA, Panasenko VI (1987) Characteristics of dissociation in cultures of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7. Mol Gen Mikrobiol Virusol 8:16–18

McCaughan F, Dear PH (2010) Single-molecule genomics. J Pathol 220:297–306

Medini D, Serruto D, Parkhill J, Relman DA, Donati C, Moxon R, Falkow S, Rappuoli R (2008) Microbiology in the post-genomic era. Nat Rev Microbiol 6:419–430

Mehnaz S, Weselowski B, Lazarovits G (2007a) *Azospirillum canadense* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing bacterium isolated from corn rhizosphere. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:620–624

Mehnaz S, Weselowski B, Lazarovits G (2007b) *Azospirillum zeae* sp. nov., a diazotrophic bacterium isolated from rhizosphere soil of Zea mays. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:2805–2809

Nikolaev YA, Plakunov VK (2007) Biofilm – city of microbes or an analogue of multicellular organisms? Microbiology 76:125–138

Okon Y, Labandera-Gonzalez CA (1994) Agronomic applications of *Azospirillum*: an evaluation of 20 years worldwide field inoculation. Soil Biol Biochem 26:1591–1601

Onyeocha I, Vieille C, Zimmer W, Baca B, Flores M, Palacios R, Elmerich C (1990) Physical map and properties of a 90-MDa plasmid of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7. Plasmid 23:169–182

Peng G, Wang H, Zhang G, Hou W, Liu Y, Wang ET, Tan Z (2006) *Azospirillum melinis* sp. nov., a group of diazotrophs isolated from tropical molasses grass. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:1263–1271

Petrova LP, Borisov IV, Katsy EI (2005a) Plasmid rearrangements in *Azospirillum brasilense*. Microbiology 74:495–497

Petrova LP, Matora LY, Burygin GL, Borisov IV, Katsy EI (2005b) Analysis of DNA, a number of cultural and morphological properties, and lipopolysaccharide structure in closely related strains of *Azospirillum brasilense*. Microbiology 74:188–193

Petrova LP, Shelud'ko AV, Katsy EI (2010a) Plasmid rearrangements and alterations in *Azospirillum brasilense* biofilm formation. Microbiology 79:121–124

Petrova LP, Varshalomidze OE, Shelud'ko AV, Katsy EI (2010b) Localization of denitrification genes in plasmid DNA of bacteria *Azospirillum brasilense*. Russ J Genet 46:801–807

Pothier JF, Prigent-Combaret C, Haurat J, Moënne-Loccoz Y, Wisniewski-Dyé F (2008) Duplication of plasmid-borne nitrite reductase gene *nirK* in the wheat-associated plant growth-promoting rhizobacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:831–842

Prigent-Combaret C, Blaha D, Pothier JF, Vial L, Poirier MA, Wisniewski-Dyé F, Moënne-Loccoz Y (2008) Physical organization and phylogenetic analysis of *acdR* as leucine-responsive regulator of the 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase gene *acdS* in phytobeneficial *Azospirillum lipoferum* 4B and other bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 65:202–219

Raetz CRH, Whitfield C (2002) Lipopolysaccharide endotoxins. Annu Rev Biochem 71:635–700

Rajeshwari R, Sonti RV (2000) Stationary-phase variation due to transposition of novel insertion elements in *Xanthomonas oryzae* pv. oryzae. J Bacteriol 182:4797–4802

Reinhold B, Hurek T, Fendrik I, Pot B, Gillis M, Kersters K, Thielemans S, De Ley J (1987) *Azospirillum halopraeferens* sp. nov. a nitrogen-fixing organism associated with roots of Kallar grass (*Leptochloa fusca* (L.) Kunth). Int J Syst Bacteriol 37:43–51

Sasaki K, Ikeda S, Eda S, Mitsui H, Hanzawa E, Kisara C, Kazama Y, Kushida A, Shinano T, Minamisawa K, Sato T (2010) Impact of plant genotype and nitrogen level on rice growth response to inoculation with *Azospirillum* sp. strain B510 under paddy field conditions. Soil Sci Plant Nutr 56:636–644

Shelud'ko AV, Ponomareva EG, Varshalomidze OE, Vetchinkina EP, Katsy EI, Nikitina VE (2009) Hemagglutinating activity and motility of the bacterium *Azospirillum brasilense* in the presence of various nitrogen sources. Microbiology 78:696–702

Sheludko AV, Kulibyakina OV, Shirokov AA, Petrova LP, Matora LY, Katsy EI (2008) The effect of mutations affecting synthesis of lipopolysaccharides and calcofluor-binding polysaccharides on biofilm formation by *Azospirillum brasilense*. Microbiology 77:313–317

Skerman VBD, Sly LI, Williamson ML (1983) *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* gen. nov. sp. nov., a sodium-sensitive, mixed-flagellated organism from fresh waters. Int J Syst Microbiol 33:300–308

Sly LI, Stackebrandt E (1999) Description of *Skermanella parooensis* gen. nov., sp. nov. to accommodate *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *parooensis* following the transfer of *Conglomeromonas largomobilis* subsp. *largomobilis* to the genus *Azospirillum*. Int J Syst Microbiol 49:541–544

Tarrand JX, Krieg NE, Döbereiner J (1978) A taxonomic study of the *Spirillum lipoferum* group, with descriptions of a new genus, *Azospirillum* gen. nov. and two species, *Azospirillum lipoferum* (Beijerinck) comb. nov. and *Azospirillum brasilense* sp. nov. Can J Microbiol 24:967–980

Thomas-Bauzon D, Weinhard P, Villecourt P, Balandreau J (1982) The spermosphere model: I. Its use in growing, counting, and isolating N_2-fixing bacteria from the rhizosphere of rice. Can J Microbiol 28:922–928

Vanbleu E, Marchal K, Lambrecht M, Mathys J, Vanderleyden J (2004) Annotation of the pRhico plasmid of *Azospirillum brasilense* reveals its role in determining the outer surface composition. FEMS Microbiol Lett 232:165–172

Vanbleu E, Choudhury BP, Carlson RW, Vanderleyden J (2005) The *nodPQ* genes in *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp7 are involved in sulfation of lipopolysaccharides. Environ Microbiol 7:1769–1774

Vial L, Lavire C, Mavingui P, Blaha D, Haurat J, Moënne-Loccoz Y, Bally R, Wisniewski-Dyé F (2006) Phase variation and genomic architecture changes in *Azospirillum*. J Bacteriol 188:5364–5373

Wood AG, Menezes EM, Dykstra C, Duggan DE (1982) Methods to demonstrate the megaplasmids (or minichromosomes) in *Azospirillum*. In: Klingmüller W (ed) *Azospirillum*: genetics, physiology, ecology. Burkhäuser Verlag, Basel, pp 18–34

Xie C-H, Yokota A (2005) *Azospirillum oryzae* sp. nov., a nitrogen-fixing bacterium isolated from the roots of the rice plant *Oryza sativa*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:1435–1438

Yasuda M, Isawa T, Shinozaki S, Minamisawa K, Nakashita H (2009) Effects of colonization of a bacterial endophyte, *Azospirillum* sp. B510, on disease resistance in rice. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 73:2595–2599

Young CC, Hupfer H, Siering C, Ho M-J, Arun AB, Lai W-A, Rekha PD, Shen F-T, Hung M-H, Chen W-M, Yassin AF (2008) *Azospirillum rugosum* sp. nov., isolated from oil-contaminated soil. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 58:959–963

Zhou Y, Wei W, Wang X, Xu L, Lai R (2009) *Azospirillum palatum* sp. nov., isolated from forest soil in Zhejiang province, China. J Gen Appl Microbiol 55:1–7

Chapter 8
Enterobacter: Role in Plant Growth Promotion

Chaitanya Kumar Jha, Abhinav Aeron, Baldev V. Patel, Dinesh K. Maheshwari, and Meenu Saraf

8.1 Introduction

Of all the variables that impact upon plant growth, soil microbial activity is arguably the very complex but plays a very important role in agricultural (or conservation) management. The importance of the microbiota to biogeochemistry has long been appreciated (Conrad 1996). Interactions between plants and microbes have long been known and we are increasingly aware of inter-kingdom communication signals across a broader range of ecological interactions than simple two-species mutualisms. Few would argue the point that the microbiota are an intimate part of the plant ecosystem and that understanding their roles will lead to new management opportunities. By describing patterns of variation in soil microbiota and explaining the basis of their ecological interactions with plants, soil microbial ecologists aim to develop new management tools for plant systems.

Plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) can have an impact on plant growth and development in two different ways: indirectly or directly. The indirect promotion of plant growth occurs when bacteria decrease or prevent some of the deleterious effects of a phytopathogenic organism by one or more mechanisms. On the other hand, the direct promotion of plant growth by PGPR generally entails providing the plant with a compound that is synthesized by the bacterium or facilitating the uptake of nutrients from the environment (Glick 1995). Rhizosphere bacteria multiply to high densities on plant root surfaces where root exudates and root cell lysates provide the ample nutrients. Sometimes, they exceed 100 times to

C.K. Jha • B.V. Patel • M. Saraf (✉)
Department of Microbiology, University School of Sciences, Gujarat University, Ahmedabad 380009, Gujarat, India
e-mail: sarafmeenu@gmail.com

A. Aeron • D.K. Maheshwari
Department of Botany and Microbiology, Faculty of Life Sciences, Gurukul Kangri University, Haridwar 249404, Uttarakhand, India

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_8,

those densities found in the bulk soil (Campbell and Greaves 1990). Certain strains of these plant-associated bacteria stimulate plant growth in multiple ways: (1) they may fix atmospheric nitrogen, (2) reduce toxic compounds, (3) synthesize phytohormones and siderophores, or (4) suppress pathogenic organisms (Bloemberg and Lugtenberg 2001). Research on the "biocontrol" activity of rhizobacteria has seen considerable progress in the recent years. Disease suppression of soilborne pathogens includes competition for nutrients and production of antimicrobial compounds or lytic enzymes for fungal cell walls or nematode structures (Persello-Cartieaux 2003). By contrast, systemic resistance can also be induced by rhizosphere-colonizing *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* species where the inducing bacteria and the challenging pathogen remained spatially separated excluding direct interactions (Ryu et al. 2004).

Family Enterobacteriaceae, in the class Gammaproteobacteria, encompass a wide range of microorganisms including 42 genera in the last edition of Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology (Garrity 2005), but half of the isolates of new or unusual Enterobacteriaceae seem to be misidentified (Farmer 2005). To avoid misidentification of species in future, Paradis et al. (2005) propose the classification of species within Enterobacteriaceae by studying the genes encoding the elongation factor Tu and F-ATPase-β-subunit additionally to the gene encoding the 16S small ribosomal subunit. The genera within the family Enterobacteriaceae that feature members described as plant growth promoting bacteria (PGPB) are *Citrobacter*, *Enterobacter*, *Erwinia*, *Klebsiella*, *Kluyvera*, *Pantoea* and *Serratia*, although some of these genera also contain species reported to be plant pathogens, for example *Erwinia carotovora* (Rodríguez-Díaz et al. 2008). The seven genera mentioned above have undergone changes in their taxonomy in the time elapsed between the two most recent releases of Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology. The genus *Enterobacter* was first described by Hormaeche and Edwards in 1960 (Hormaeche and Edwards 1960). Since *Enterobacter aerogenes* is considered a homotypic synonym to *Klebsiella mobilis* and *Enterobacter agglomerans* is transferred to the genus *Pantoea*, 13 species are left in the genus *Enterobacter*, i.e., *Enterobacter amnigenus*, *Enterobacter cowanii*, *Enterobacter gergoviae*, *Enterobacter intermedius*, *Enterobacter pyrinus*, *Enterobacter sakazakii*, and seven species which are combined in the so-called *Enterobacter cloacae* complex which include *Enterobacter asburiae*, *E. cloacae*, *E. dissolvens*, *E. hormaechei*, *E. kobei*, *E. nimipressuralis*, and *E. cancerogenus*, the senior synonym of *E. taylorae*. This genus contains the *Enterobacter agglomerans* group, which was extremely heterogeneous. Strains previously included in the *E. agglomerans* group have been proposed to be relocated into the genera *Erwinia*, *Leclercia* and *Pantoea*. Another species, *E. intermedius*, was first described as a senior subjective synonym for the species *Kluyvera cochleae* as shown by DNA–DNA hybridization (Brenner and Farmer 2005) but was later transferred to the genus *Kluyvera* as the species *K. intermedia* comb. nov. and *K. cochleae* was demonstrated to be a later synonym of *K. intermedia* (Pavan et al. 2005). PGPB strains must be rhizospheric competent and are able to survive and colonize in the rhizospheric soil (Cattelan et al. 1999). Unfortunately, the interaction between associative PGPR and plants can be

unstable. The good results obtained in vitro cannot always be dependably reproduced under field conditions (Chanway and Holl 1993; Zhender et al. 1999). The variability in the performance of PGPR may be due to various environmental factors that may affect their growth and exert their effects adversely (sometimes) on plant. The role of environmental factors include climate, weather conditions, soil characteristics or the composition or activity of the indigenous microbial flora of the soil can not be ruled out. To achieve the maximum growth promoting interaction between PGPR and nursery seedlings, it is important to discover how the rhizobacteria exerting their effects on plant and whether the effects are altered by various environmental factors, including the presence of other microorganisms (Bent et al. 2001). Therefore, it is necessary to develop efficient strains suitable for field conditions. One possible approach is to explore soil microbial diversity for PGPR having combination of plant growth promoting (PGP) traits and well adapted to particular soil environment. Ahmad and Khan (2010) studied *Enterobacter* for fungicide tolerance and production of PGP traits both in the presence and absence of fungicides. Strain PS2 showed PGP activities even in the presence of fungicides which, however, decreased progressively corresponding with the increase in fungicide concentration. Keeping in view the above constrains, the present chapter was designed to screen certain rhizospheric bacterial isolates belonging to the genera *Enterobacter* for their multiple PGP activities. Microorganisms have developed the mechanisms to cope with a variety of toxic metals for their survival in the environment enriched with such metals. We observed few rhizobacteria tolerant to heavy metals and exhibiting a couple of PGP activities. It was also apparent that more cultures of PGPR isolated from chickpea rhizosphere were tolerant to elevated levels of heavy metals. Burd et al. (1998) found that by decreasing heavy metal toxicity, PGPR increase plant growth. The selection of microorganisms both metal tolerant and efficient in producing PGP compounds can be useful to speed up the recolonization of the plant rhizosphere in polluted soils (Carlot et al. 2002). Heavy metals, at higher concentration, are toxic to cells and may cause cell death by interacting with nucleic acids and enzyme active sites (Ohsumi et al. 1988; Hazel and Williams 1990; Cervantes and Gutierrez-Corana 1994). On the otherhand, *Azotobacter* spp, when inoculated into heavy metal contaminated soil, inhibited N_2 fixation (Briely and Thornton 1983). Chromium-resistant *Pseudomonads*, isolated from paint industry effluents, were able to stimulate seed germination and growth of *Triticum aestivum* in the presence of potassium dichromate (Hasnain and Sabri 1996). It is expected that inoculation with rhizobacteria containing PGP characteristics consequently promote root and shoot growth as well as nodulation. Application of organic acid secreting bacteria for counteracting the toxicity of metal ions to their plant hosts has been developed. *E. asburiae* PS13 isolates from pigeon pea rhizosphere (Gyaneshwar et al. 1999) is known to produce different low molecular weight organic acid depending on the carbon source available. Kavita et al. (2008) reported that mung bean seedlings inoculated with *E. asburiae* PS13, a gluconic acid producer, enhanced plant growth in the presence of phytotoxic levels of Cd^{2+} in gnotobiotic pot experiments as compared to the uninoculated Cd-treated plants. Addition of organic acids to Cd-stressed seedlings

promoted root elongation. Deepa et al. (2010) studied PGP potential of strains NII-0907(*E. aerogenes*), NII-0929 (*E. aerogenes*), NII-0931(*E. cloacea*) and NII-0934 (*E. asburiae*) members of the genus *Enterobacter*. All the four enterobacter species are very good phosphate solubilizers (60.1–79.5 μg/ml/day after tenth day of incubation); indole acetic acid (IAA) producers (23.8–104.8 μg/ml/day after 48 h of incubation); HCN producers and siderophore producers. Studies have been carried out to investigate their influence on cowpea and recorded significant increase in higher root and shoot lengths compared with uninoculated control. Further evaluation of the isolates exhibiting multiple PGP traits on soil–plant system is needed to uncover their efficacy as effective PGPR.

8.2 Plant Growth Promoting Attributes

Enterobacter have the potential to contribute in the development of sustainable agricultural systems. Generally, *Enterobacter* function in three different ways: synthesizing particular compounds for the plants, facilitating the uptake of certain nutrients from the soil, and lessening or preventing the plants from diseases. The mechanisms of PGPR-mediated enhancement of plant growth and yield of many crops are not yet fully understood. However, the possible explanation include (a) the ability to produce a vital enzyme, 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase to reduce the level of ethylene in the root of developing plants thereby increasing the root length and growth; (b) the ability to produce hormones such as auxin, i.e., IAA; (c) a symbiotic nitrogen fixation; (d) antagonism against phytopathogenic bacteria by producing siderophores; and (e) solubilization and mineralization of nutrients, particularly mineral phosphates.

8.2.1 Nitrogen Fixation

Atmospheric N constitutes approximately 80% of the air we breathe. Although abundant and ubiquitous in the air, N is the most limiting nutrient to plant growth because the atmospheric N is not available for plant uptake. Some bacteria are capable of N_2 fixation from the atmospheric N pool. These bacteria form various associations with plants: (a) Many free-living N_2-fixing bacteria occur in soil. (b) Some have adapted to form symbioses; others have intimate endophytic associations with plants. (c) Few live in close association in the plant root zone (rhizosphere) without forming intimate endophytic symbioses. Infact, the amount of N fixed by these different systems is considerable, although variation resulting from environmental conditions or different plant–microbe combinations is vast. The close proximity of these microorganisms to their host plants allows efficient plant use of fixed N and minimizes volatilization, leaching, and denitrification. In

addition to symbiotic bacteria infecting roots, numerous taxa of less intimately associated N_2-fixing bacteria can be considered for crop growth improvement. Examples of such bacteria include *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* and *Herbaspirillum* spp. associated with sugarcane, sorghum, and maize (Triplett 1996; James et al. 1997; Boddey et al. 2000), *Azoarcus* spp. associated with kallar grass (*Leptochloa fusca*) (Malik et al. 1997), and *Enterobacter*, *Klebsiella*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Rhizobium* associated with rice and maize (James 2000).

8.2.2 Siderophore Production

Siderophores are low molecular weight bio-molecules secreted by micro-organisms in response to iron starvation for acquisition of iron from insoluble forms by mineralization and sequestration (Lankford 1973). Although some siderophores are known to chelate other ions, their specificity for iron is the most consistent feature. Lost ability to synthesize siderophores leads to loss of ability to synthesize cyanide and thus marred biocontrol abilities of strain proves the physiological importance of iron (Voisard et al. 1989). Siderophores produced by rhizosphere inhabitants have been studied well and it has been reported that the ability to produce siderophores not only improves rhizosphere colonization of producer strain but also plays an important role in iron nutrition of plant (Vansuy et al. 2007) and antagonism against phytopathogens (Chincholkar et al. 2007; Singh et al. 2008, 2010). Role of siderophores in induced systemic resistance (ISR) in plants was also well appreciated (De Meyer et al. 1999). The presence of an efficient iron uptake system can therefore contribute to protect the host plant against pathogenic infections. *E. coli* K12, *Enterobacter* sp. 638 (Taghavi et al. 2010) are able to synthesize the siderophore enterobactin (EntD, EntF, EntC, EntE, EntB and EntA), secrete (EntS), recover the iron–enterobactin complex using a ferric siderophore uptake system (ExbDB), and extract the iron using an enterobactin esterase (Fes) after internalization of the iron–enterobactin complex. The genes involved in this biosynthesis of enterobactin are grouped with genes encoding two ABC transporters involved in iron uptake (sitABCD and fepCGDB) in a large cluster of 17 genes (Ent638_1111-1128).

8.2.3 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-Carboxylase

ACC deaminase is a multimeric enzyme with a monomeric subunit molecular mass of approximately 35–42 kDa. It is a sulfhydryl enzyme that utilizes pyridoxal 5-phosphate as an essential co-factor. Pyridoxal phosphate is tightly bound to the enzyme in the amount of approximately one molecule per subunit; it displays a characteristic pyridoxaldimine visible absorbance at 418 nm (Jackson 1997). In this case, the substrate, ACC is exuded by plant tissues and is then taken up by the

ACC deaminase-containing microbe (Saraf et al. 2010). There is a wide range (>100-fold) in the level of ACC deaminase activity that is observed in nature from one organism to another so that these organisms may be conceptually divided into two groups: those with either high or low enzyme activity. High ACC deaminase expressing organisms typically bind relatively nonspecifically to a variety of plant surfaces. This group includes most, if not all, rhizosphere and phyllosphere organisms as well as endophytes, all of which can act as a sink for ACC produced as a consequence of plant stress. These organisms display little preference for one particular plant over another. On the other hand, low deaminase-expressing organisms bind only to specific plants or are expressed only in certain tissues, and they do not lower the overall level of ethylene in the plant, but rather prevent a localized rise in ethylene levels. This group includes most, if not all, rhizobia as well as plant ACC deaminases (Glick 1995). Burd et al. (2000) reported on the potential of the ACC deaminase-producing bacterium *Kluyvera ascorbata* SUD165 to protect canola (*Brassica napus*) and tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum*) seeds from the heavy metal toxicity induced by high concentrations of nickel (Ni), lead (Pb), and zinc (Zn). Saravanakumar and Samiyappan (2007) reported that *Pseudomonas fluorescens* TDK1 possessing ACC deaminase activity enhanced the soil salinity resistance of groundnuts and observed increase yields over the groundnuts treated by *Pseudomonas* spp. that lacked ACC deaminase activity. However, the role of ACC deaminase in root colonization in bacteria is unknown (Wang et al. 2002). ACC deaminase from bacteria, *Pseudomonas putida* and *P. fluorescens*, *Enterobacter cloacae* CAL2 and UW4 (Shah et al. 1998), *Kluyvera ascorbata* SUD165 (Burd et al. 1998), and yeast, *Hansenula saturnus* (Honma and Shimomura 1978), and fungus, *Penicillium citrinum* (Jia et al. 2006) have been reported. However, work in this area represents only plant–microbe interaction.

8.2.4 Antimicrobial Compounds

Considerable progress has been made over the past two decades to elucidate the mechanisms by which PGPR suppress diseases. The primary mechanism of biocontrol by fluorescent *pseudomonads* involves production of antibiotics such as 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol (PHL) (Bangera and Thomashaw 1996), pyoluteorin (PLT), pyrrolnitrin (PRN), phenazine-1-carboxyclic acid (PCA), 2-hydroxy phenazines and phenazine-1-carboxamide (PCN). In addition to direct antipathogenic action, antibiotics also serve as determinants in triggering ISR in the plant system and contribute to disease suppression by conferring a competitive advantage to biocontrol agents (Fravel 1988). Synergism between antibiotics and ISR may further increase host resistance to plant pathogens. Some other antibiotics produced by PGPR include pyrrolnitrin, oomycinA, viscosinamide, butyrolactones, kanosamine, zwittermycin-A, aerugine, rhamnolipids, cepaciamide A, ecomycins, pseudomonic acid, azomycin, antitumor antibiotics FR901463, cepafungins (Constantinescu 2001), and antiviral antibiotic karalicin. These antibiotics are

known to possess antiviral, antimicrobial, insect and mammalian antifeedant, antihelminthic, phytotoxic, antioxidant, cytotoxic, antitumour, and PGP activities. The *Enterobacter* sp. 638 genome (Taghavi et al. 2010) encodes a chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (cat, Ent638_1533) which provides resistance to 20 mg/ml chloramphenicol. A precursor of the important electron carrier ubiquinone, 4-hydroxybenzoate, is also known to have antimicrobial activity. In contrast to *E. coli* K12, which is not able to degrade chorismate into 4-hydroxybenzoate and pyruvate, *Enterobacter* sp. 638 possesses the ubiC (Ent638_0243) gene that codes for the putative enzyme able to perform this reaction (Siebert et al. 1996).

8.2.5 Hormonal Signals Involved in Plant Growth Promotion

Most commonly proposed signal molecules for PGP include bacterial synthesis of the auxin, cytokinin, gibberellin, and breakdown of plant produced ethylene by PGPR mediated of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. In the last 5 years, additional signals from microbes have been found to play a role in plant morphogenetic processes, including the *N*-acyl-L-homoserine lactones (AHLs) and volatile organic compounds (VOCs). AHLs belong to a class of bacterial quorum sensing signals from Gram-negative bacteria. These compounds enable bacterial cells to regulate gene expression depending on population density. Very recently, it was found that AHLs can be recognized by plants, alter gene expression in roots and shoots, and modulate defense and cell growth responses. Similarly, bacterial volatiles such as acetoin and 2,3-butanediol produced by certain PGPR can be used for plant–bacteria communication and as a PGP triggers. Some rhizobacteria, such as strains from *B. subtilis*, *B. amyloliquefaciens*, and *Enterobacter cloacae*, promote plant growth by releasing volatiles (Ryu et al. 2003). The highest level of growth promotion was observed with 2,3-butanediol and acetoin. Mutants of *B. amyloliquefaciens* IN937a and *B. subtilis* GB03, blocked in the biosynthesis of these compounds, are inactive in plant growth promotion. More recently, Zhang et al. (2008) observed that *B. subtilis* GB03 increases the photosynthetic efficiency and chlorophyll content of *A. thaliana* through the modulation of endogenous signaling of glucose and abscisic acid sensing; thus the bacterium plays a regulatory role in the acquisition of energy by the plant.

8.3 Molecular Biology and General Features *Enterobacter* sp.

The genome of the gamma-proteobacterium *Enterobacter* sp. 638 (Taghavi et al. 2010), a member of the Enterobacteriaceae, is composed of a single circular chromosome of 4,518,712 bp with an overall G + C content of 52.98%, and of a 157,749 bp plasmid pENT638-1 having an overall G + C content of 50.57%. The chromosome of *Enterobacter* sp. 638 displays a clear GC skew transition, which corresponds with its replication origin (oriC) and terminus. Similar to *E. coli* K12, the oriC site contains a perfect DnaA-binding box (TTATCCACA) (Weigel et al. 1997), which is located

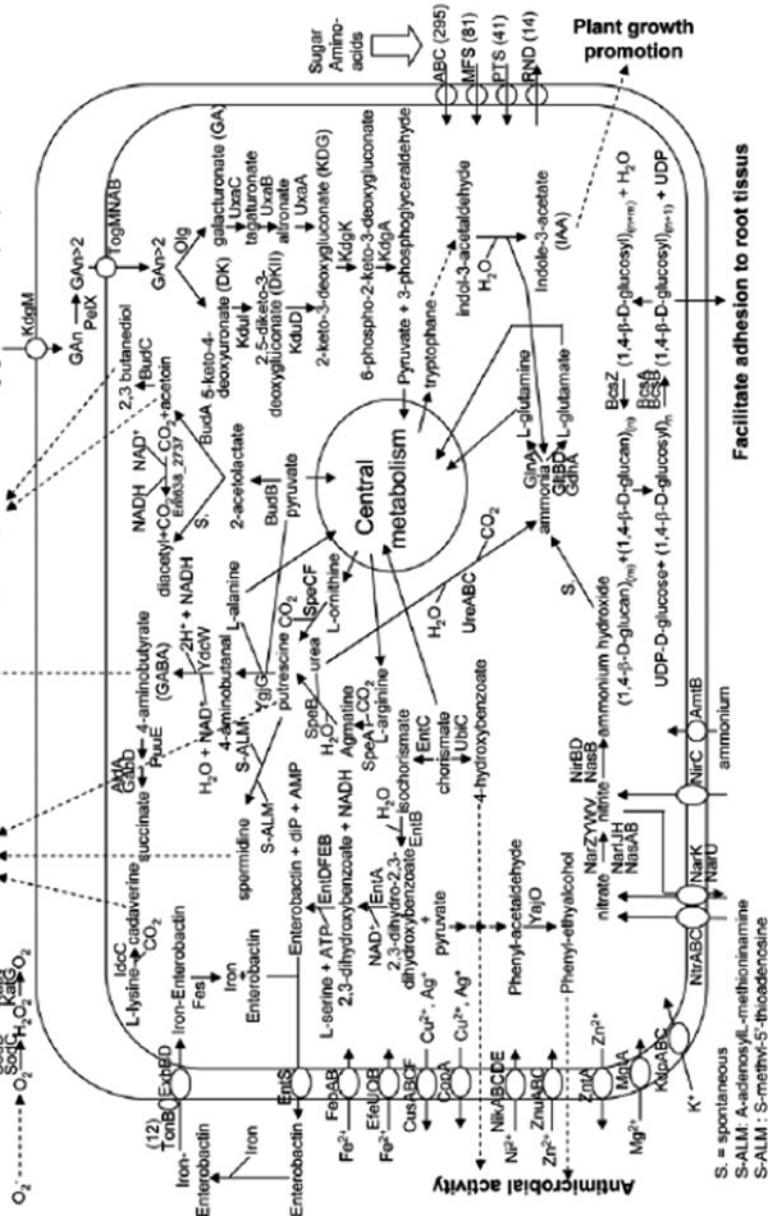


Fig. 8.1 Modified figure adapted from Taghavi et al. (2010). Overview of metabolism and transport in *Enterobacter* sp. 638. Predicted pathways for the interaction between *Enterobacter* sp. 638 and the plant are shown. Export or import of solutes is designated by the direction of the *arrow* through the transporter. The *dash arrows* show the putative function of certain molecular biosynthesized by *Enterobacter* sp. 638 in regard to its plant

31,985 bp upstream of the dnaA ATG start codon (at coordinate 4,487,245 bp). The *Enterobacter* sp. 638 genome encodes 4396 putative coding sequences (CDS), with 4247 CDS encoded on the chromosome representing a coding density of 87.9%. Plasmid pENT638-1 encodes 149 putative CDS having a coding density of 80.4%. After their manual annotation, 3561 CDS (81%) could be assigned to putative biological functions, while 836 CDS (19%) were annotated as hypothetical proteins of unknown function. For the CDS with unassigned functions, conserved hypothetical proteins are represented by 689 CDS (15.7%), while 147 CDS (3.3%) had no homology to any previously reported sequence. Using the COGnitor module from the MaGe system, 3597 CDS (81.8%) could be assigned to one or more COG functional classes. The repartition of *Enterobacter* sp. 638 CDS among the different COG classes is very similar to what is observed for *E. coli* K12 (Blattner et al. 1997). The three most abundant classes are amino acid (E), carbohydrate (G), and inorganic iron (P) transport and metabolism and represent more than 37% of all CDS, pointing to the symbiotic life styles of *Enterobacter* sp. 638 and *E. coli* K12 that require efficient uptake of host-provided nutrients. Seven sets of 5S, 16S, 23S rRNA genes, and one additional 5S rRNA gene were found. A total of 83 tRNA genes with specificities for all 20 amino acids and a single tRNA for selenocysteine have been identified. Based on the genome analysis, *Enterobacter* sp. 638 seems well adapted to survive in the plant rhizosphere because it encodes many transporters involved in carbohydrate, amino-acids, and iron uptake, as well as some heavy metal resistance genes. An overview of the metabolic properties and important transport pathways for interactions between *Enterobacter* sp. 638 and its plant host is presented in Fig. 8.1.

8.4 Selected Species of *Enterobacter*

The concept of introducing PGPR into the rhizosphere using the transplant plug is based on the hypothesis that their establishment in the relatively clean environment of planting media would afford them an opportunity to develop stable populations in the seedling rhizosphere, and that these populations would then persist in the field. This review covers the perspective of few selected species of *Enterobacter* and the role they are playing in plant growth promotion via direct and indirect mechanisms. The further elucidation of different mechanisms involved will help to make these bacteria a valuable partner in future agriculture.

8.4.1 Enterobacter cloacae UW5: Aromatic Amino Acid-Dependent Expression of Indole-3-Pyruvate Decarboxylase and Overexpression of hns Gene

Paradoxically, IAA produced by PGPR has been found to enhance host root system development. Plant roots colonize with the PGPR species *Azospirillum brasilense*

Sp6, *Enterobacter cloacae* UW5, and *Pseudomonas putida* GR12-2 displayed increase in root hair formation, the number and length of lateral roots, and/or primary root length that are dependent on bacterial IAA production.

A number of IAA biosynthetic pathways have been identified in bacteria, most requiring tryptophan as a precursor. Synthesis via the intermediates indole-3-acetamide or indole-3-pyruvate is widespread among IAA-producing bacteria. Most phytopathogens, such as *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* and *P. syringae* pv. *savastonoi*, use the indole-3-acetamide pathway to synthesize IAA (32, 54), while the indole-3-pyruvate pathway is found in many PGPR species, including *A. brasilense* and *E. cloacae*, and in the nonpathogenic epiphytic bacterium *Erwinia herbicola* 299R (Brandl and Lindow 1996; Costacurta et al. 1994). In the latter pathway, the precursor tryptophan is converted to indole-3-pyruvate by tryptophan transaminase, and indole-3-pyruvate is then converted to indole-3-acetaldehyde by indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase (IPDC). IAA is produced after oxidation of indole-3-acetaldehyde by indole-3-acetaldehyde oxidase. The key enzyme in this pathway, IPDC, is encoded by *ipdC*, and elimination of *ipdC* abolishes IAA biosynthesis in *E. cloacae* UW5 and greatly reduces IAA production in *A. brasilense* and *E. herbicola* 299R (Brandl and Lindow 1996; Costacurta et al. 1994).

The activity of *tyrR* in *E. cloacae* UW5 was abolished by insertion of a tetracycline resistant cassette into the coding sequence, creating *E. cloacae* J35. The 2.1-kb tetracycline resistance cassette was amplified using tet-KpnI F and R primers and pJP2 as the template for PCR and then subcloned into pGEM-T Easy. A 1,177-bp *tyrR* fragment, amplified using the primers T1F and T4R, was also subcloned into pGEM-T Easy. The tetracycline resistance cassette was excised from pGEM-T Easy and inserted into a native KpnI site in *tyrR* (708 bp downstream from translation start codon) as a KpnI fragment. The interrupted *tyrR* gene fragment was excised from pGEM-T Easy and cloned into the NotI site in the suicide plasmid pJQ200SK, creating pJQ200TM. pJQ200TM was transformed into calcium chloride-competent *E. coli* S17-1 (*_pir*) cells and subsequently introduced into *E. cloacae* UW5 by conjugation. Double recombinants were identified by tetracycline resistance and gentamicin sensitivity. The site of insertion in the genome was verified by PCR amplification using the primers T1F and T1R (note that the T1R sequence is not present in pJQ200TM). The PCR amplicon generated from the genome of the *tyrR* insertional mutant (*E. cloacae* J35) was 2.1 kb larger than that from the wild-type strain, confirming the replacement of wild-type *tyrR* with the mutant *tyrR* gene fragment. Ryu and Patten (2008) described here that the transcription factor TyrR directly and positively controls *ipdC* expression and IAA production in the PGPR *E. cloacae* UW5 and that TyrR-dependent expression increases in response to exogenous tryptophan. A sequence with only a single base mismatch to the consensus sequence for the TyrR box (TGTAAA-N6-TTTACA) in *E. coli* (Pittard et al. 2005) has been identified in the promoter region of *ipdC* in this bacterium and in other closely related bacteria, even though the promoter sequences are otherwise quite dissimilar. Loss of IAA production and lower levels of *ipdC* expression following disruption of TyrR function through

insertional mutagenesis in mutant strain *E. cloacae* J35 confirmed the requirement for TyrR. The high degree of nucleotide sequence identity to the consensus sequence for the TyrR binding site suggests a strong TyrR protein-promoter DNA interaction. This is supported by the ability of purified TyrR to bind to the *ipdC* promoter fragment containing the TyrR box in vitro, and by the induction of *ipdC* expression, in the absence of an effector molecule. The observed transcription of *ipdC* in the absence of tryptophan supplements to the culture medium may be mediated by binding of endogenous aromatic amino acid cofactors to TyrR. Although TyrR can bind to strong boxes in the absence of cofactors, the addition of aromatic amino acids strengthens the interaction between TyrR and its recognition sequence (Andrews et al. 1991; Pittard et al. 2005). The increased affinity of TyrR for the promoter results in increased transcription, as was observed here by an increase in *ipdC* transcript abundance measured by real-time qRT-PCR and by an increase in *ipdC* promoter driven glucuronidase activity after addition of the TyrR cofactor tryptophan. An *E. cloaca* is an enteric, plant beneficial bacterium that suppresses damping off caused by *Pythium ultimum* on cucumber and other crops. An *Enterobacter cloaca* is a common seed associated bacterium that suppressed seed infections, protecting a number of plant species from *P. ultimum* induced damping off. Plant protection by *E. cloacae* is achieved largely by degradation of long chain unsaturated fatty acids in seed exudates, which eliminates the stimulation of *P. ultimum* sporangia. *E. cloacae* suppresses *P. ultimum* infections when applied as a seed coating of carrot, cotton, cucumber, lettuce, radish, sunflower, tomato, and wheat (Windstam and Nelson 2008).

Cloning and sequencing of the PCR fragment revealed that the transposon was inserted in the 5′ flanking region of a gene with homology to the *hns* gene encoding the small histone-like protein H-NS in *E. coli* and *Enterobacter* spp. (English et al. 2010) H-NS binds predominantly to AT-rich sequences, regions of intrinsic curvature commonly found in promoter sequences, and represses transcription of a large number of genes (Lucchini et al. 2006; Navarre et al. 2006). The expression of 5% of genes in *E. coli* is regulated by H-NS (Hommais et al. 2001), and many of these are important for adaptation to environmental changes such as alterations in temperature, pH, osmolarity, and growth phase (Stella et al. 2006). H-NS has also been noticed to repress genes that have been acquired by bacteria through horizontal gene transfer (Lucchini et al. 2006; Navarre et al. 2006). In addition to its role as a transcriptional repressor, H-NS positively regulates the production of flagellin and several outer membrane porins, lipopolysaccharide biosynthesis, and motility (Ono et al. 2005). Motility is important for plant colonization and conditions in the rhizosphere have been shown to select for motile strains (Martinez-Granero et al. 2006). Production of flagella and lipopolysaccharides has previously been shown to be required for plant colonization (Turnbull et al. 2001); therefore, it may be through the enhancement of one or more of these mechanisms that H-NS over expression in *E. cloacae* J28 promotes colonization of roots. Understanding the role of H-NS in regulating colonization has important implications for the development of robust PGPR strains for agricultural applications. It may be possible through

genetic engineering to enhance the ability of introduced inoculants to competitively colonize the root of crop plants.

8.4.2 Enterobacter ludwigii *sp.: A Novel Species of Plant Growth and Its Clinical Relevance*

This description is based on phylogenetic analyses of partial *hsp60* sequence data collected in a recent population genetic study (Hoffmann and Roggenkamp 2003) as well as on DNA–DNA-hybridization assays and phenotypic characterization performed in the frame of the present study. Phenotypic characterization was performed using API20E, Biotype 100, and a series of conventional tests. *E. ludwigii* strains are Gram-negative rods, motile, catalase positive, oxidase and DNAase negative, fermentative, and non-pigmented in nature. They exhibit the general characteristics of the family Enterobacteriaceae, the genus *Enterobacter*, and the *E. cloacae* complex. Growth occurs after 18–24 h at 15–42°C with an optimum at 36°C on all non-selective media such as Columbia agar with 5% sheep-blood, chocolate, TSA, Luria, or Brain–Heart agar as well as on semi-selective media such as MacConkey or ENDO agar in the form of non-pigmented colonies (Shoebitz et al. 2009).

A detailed biochemical profiling of the species is given in Table 8.1 showing some tests in use for differentiating *E. ludwigii* from the other species of the genus. Its identification is mainly possible by the ability to grow on 3-methyl-D-gluco-pyranose and on myo-inositol. All strains analysed produced a Bush class 1 beta-lactamase rendering resistance to ampicillin, amoxicillin plus clavulanic acid, and cefoxitin in the disk diffusion tests. About 20% of the strains displayed a resistance pattern typical for AmpC hyperproduction (resistance to piperacillin, piperacillin plus tazobactam, cefoxitin, cefotaxime, ceftazidime, and susceptibility to cefepime). All strains are susceptible to trimethoprim plus sulphamethoxazole, gentamicin, meropenem, and ciprofloxacin.

It is widely known that a variety of bacterial species, including PGPRs, can act as biocontrol agents protecting plants from bacterial and fungal diseases (Romero et al. 2007). *P. agglomerans*, a strain closely related to *E. ludwigii* as shown by its 16S rDNA sequence, is able to antagonize *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* (Berg et al. 2002). To assess whether the strain has the capability to act as a biocontrol agent, antagonism towards *Fusarium solani* has been investigated. BNM 0357 strain depicted fungicidal activity on *F. solani* vegetative growth in mixed cultures as well as in cultures in which BNM 0357 and *F. solani* are not in contact. This behavior suggests that bacteria compete with fungal development (e.g., for nutrients in the culture) and also that a diffusible compound could be responsible for the fungal growth inhibition. As expected, *A. brasilense* showed no fungal inhibiting activity. *F. solani* spore germination was also inhibited by strain BNM 035. These results indicate that *E. ludwigii* BNM 0357 is an efficient fungal

Table 8.1 Differentiation of *Enterobacter* species

Species	Biochemical test[a]													
	D-fucose	L-fucose	α-D-melibiose	1-0-methyl-α-galacto-pyranoside	Esculin	α-L-rhamnose	D-arabitol	Dulcitol	Myo-inositol	Adonitol	3-0-Methyl-D-gluco-pyranose	Putrescine	3-Hydroxy-butyrate	Mucate
E. ludwigi sp. nov. cluster V	−	V	+	+	V	+	−	−	+	−	+	−	+	+
Type strain EN-119^T	−	−	+	+	+	+	−	−	+	−	+	−	+	+
E. absuriae	−	−	+ −	+ −	+	+ −		−	+	−	−	− +	+	V
E. kobei	−	−	+	+	−	+	−	V	+	−	−	V	+ −	V
E. hormaechie	V	+	− +	−	−	+	− +	+	−	−	V	−	−	V
E. cloacae	−	−	+	+	−	+	−	−	+	−	−	+	+	V
E. dissolvens	V	V	+	+	+	+	−	−	+	V	−	+	+	+
E. cancerogenus	+[f]	+[e]	−[b]	−[f]	+[b]	+[e]	−[e]	−[b]	−[e]	−[e]	+[e]	+[e]	−[e]	+[e]
E. nimipresuurallius	−[f]	−[e]	+[b]	−[f]	+[b]	+[e]	−[e]	−[b]	−[e]	−[e]	−[f]	−[e]	−[e]	+[e]
E. amnigenus	−[f]	−[e]	+[b]	+[f]	+[b]	+[e]	−[e]	-[b]	−[e]	−[e]	−[f]	−[e]	−[e]	+[e]
E. cowanii	−[c]	−[c]	+[c]	+[f]	+[c]	+[c]	−[c]	+[c]	−[c]	−[c]	−[f]	−[f]	−[f]	+[c]
E. georgoviae	−[f]	V[e]	+[b]	+[f]	+[b]	+[e]	+[e]	−[b]	V[e]	−[e]	−[f]	V[e]	V[e]	−[e]
E. intermedius	−[f]	V[e]	+[b]	+[f]	+[b]	+[e]	−[e]	+[b]	−[e]	−[e]	−[f]	−[e]	−[e]	+[e]
E. pyrinus	−[f]	−[e]	+[d]	−[f]	+[d]	+[d]	+[e]	−[d]	+[d]	−[d]	−[f]	+[f]	−[f]	−[e]
E. sakazakii	−[f]	−[e]	+[b]	+[f]	+[b]	+[e]	−[e]	−[b]	V[e]	−[e]	−[f]	+[e]	−[e]	−[e]

Table adapted from Hoffmanna et al. (2005)

[a]Incubation at 36°C. Symbols: −, 0–10%; − +, 10–20%; V, 20–80%; + −, 80–90%; +, 90–100%

[b]Sources of data according to O'Hara et al. (1989)

[c]Sources of data according to Inoue et al. (2000)

[d]Sources of data according to Chung et al. (1993)

[e]Sources of data according to Grimont and Grimont (1992)

[f]Type strain considered only, no information in literature

antagonist at least towards *F. solani*. Since the *Fusarium* spp. are the causative agent of wilt diseases in a variety of plants of economic interest, it would be interesting to further investigate the capability of *E. ludwigii* BNM 0357 to antagonize the fungus and extend the study to other species of *Fusarium*. BNM 0357 inoculation promoted a slight, statistically significant rise in shoot fresh weight and length, an effect which was not observed at all in plants inoculated with *A. brasilense*. A relatively more significant effect, also restricted to BNM 0357 inoculation, was observed on root fresh weight that increases by 50%. Strengthening of the root system in addition to the capability of the isolate to facilitate solubilization of mineral phosphate could be an important trait for BNM 0357 to improve plant growth depending on the nutritional resources of the soil. In this regard, it is important to emphasize that the Andisol from where BNM 0357 was isolated usually shows high phosphorus sorption capacity (Campillo et al. 2005) making the presence of phosphorus solubilizing microorganisms highly profitable for crops in such soil ecosystem.

8.4.3 *Enterobacter radicincitans* sp.: A Novel Plant Growth Promoting Species

This is based on the report of Kampfer et al. (2005) *E. radicincitans* sp. nov., a PGP species of the family Enterobacteriaceae. According to this study this organism produced acids from various sugars. *E. radicincitans* forms rod-shaped cells 0.8–1.2 mm in length and 1.0–1.6 mm in width, is Gram-negative and motile in nature. Colonies on nutrient agar are beige pigmented, 2–3 mm in diameter and mucoid. The optimum growth temperature is about 30° C, growth does not occur at 10°C and below and at 45°C and above (Kampfer et al. 1991). It is cytochrome oxidase negative and catalase positive. Strain D5/23T showed a positive arginine dihydrolyse reaction and was negative in production of urease, lysine decarboxylase, ornithine decarboxylase but positive to that of Esculin. Tryptophane deaminase, indole production, and H_2S production were negative. The Voges–Proskauer test was positive after 48 h of incubation. Citrate and malonate were positive. Acid was produced from the following compounds: glucose, lactose (after 48 h), sucrose, D-mannitol, dulcitol, salicin, sorbitol, L-arabinose, L-rhamnose, maltose, D-xylose, trehalose, cellobiose, and D-mannose. No acid production was observed for adonitol, inositol, raffinose, methyl-D-glucoside, erythritol, melibiose, and D-arabitol.

Utilization of a wide range of C and N sources that include *N*-acetylglucosamine, L-arabinose, L-arbutine, D-cellobiose, D-galactose, D-fructose, gluconate, D-glucose, D-maltose, D-mannose, L-rhamnose, D-ribose, sucrose, salicine, D-trehalose, D-xylose, D-maltitol, D-sorbitol, D-mannitol, acetate, cis-aconitate, trans-aconitate, citrate, fumarate, glutarate, DL-lactate, L-malate, pyruvate, L-aspartate, L-alanine, L-proline, and L-serine was positive. The following compounds are not utilized as sole sources

of carbon: *N*-acetylgalactosamine, α-D-melibiose, adonitol, i-inositol, putrescine, propionate, adipate, azelate, 4-aminobutyrate, DL-3 hydroxybutyrate, mesaconate, itaconate, 2-oxoglutarate, suberate, β-alanine, L-ornithine, L-phenylalanine, L-histidine, L-leucine, L-tryptophane, 3-hydroxybenzoate, 4-hydroxybenzoate, and phenylacetate. The strain also shows nitrogenase activity, auxine and cytokinine production (Kampfer et al. 2005). This bacterium shows mesophilic, chemoorganotrophic, facultatively anaerobic growth; these biochemicals support substrate utilization profile for *E. radicincitans* with their PGP potentials.

8.4.4 *Enterobacter asburiae* PSI3 *and E. asburiae* PS2: Secreting Organic Acid and Phytotoxic Effect of Cd Metal and Phosphate Solubilization Influenced by Fungicide

Several other bacteria that are known to promote plant growth in the presence of Cd have PGPR characteristics, which are the implicated mechanisms that contribute to the improved growth in presence of Cd stress in their host plants (Safronova et al. 2006; Sinha and Mukherjee 2008). In the present case, the role of organic acid secretion by *E. asburiae* PSI3 in imparting Cd tolerance to mung bean plants was explored by exogenous application of pure organic acids to seedlings cultivated under hydroponics. Under this mode of cultivation (as against in soil), the plantlets were very highly sensitive to Cd and had complete arrest of root elongation at 50 μM $CdCl_2$. This is in agreement with the observation that legume crops are highly sensitive to Cd (Inoune et al. 1994) and also with the report that the extent of the damaging effect of Cd in hydroponics differs from sand culture (Metwally et al. 2005). In soils the reduced toxicity may be due to binding of the metal ion to clay surfaces or to organic matter.

Root elongation rate is an important parameter depicting robustness of the plants, as efficient root development allows exploring for water and mineral nutrients. A decrease in root elongation due to heavy metal has often been reported (Burd et al. 1998; Metwally et al. 2005; Parker and Pedler 1998). When various organic acids were added to plant roots exposed to toxic levels of Cd, there was a partial relief of its effect on root elongation presumably due to the complexation of the metal ions with the acid anion. This was further supported by the reduction in root associated Cd as seen by hematoxylin staining of roots treated with organic acid. Nigam et al. (2000) have argued that metal:organic acid complex is less phytotoxic than the free form of Cd. Parker and Pedler (1998) who described root elongation responses of Al treated *T. aestivum* to exogenously added malate have shown that exogenous addition of organic acid to seedling roots can reduce metal toxicity to plants. Efficacy of different organic acids in the chelation of Cd^{2+}, as determined by hematoxylin competition assay, showed that among the organic

acids tested, citrate and oxalate are most efficient at releasing Cd^{2+} from its hematoxylin complex in compliance with the formation constants (Ryan et al. 2001). Of special interest is the observation that gluconate, a monocarboxylate, is also significantly proficient in binding to Cd^{2+}. Although this acid has never been reported to be secreted by plant roots, it is one of the major organic acids secreted by several rhizosphere bacteria (Goldstein 1995) and may be of significance in microbially mediated alleviation of metal toxicity (Kavita et al. 2008).

Phosphate solubilization potentials of *E. asburiae* strain PS2 was described by Ahmad and Khan (2010). In the presence of varying concentrations of fungicides, P solubilization was checked both qualitatively and quantitatively using a solid and liquid Pikovskaya medium. In general, when the concentration of each fungicide was increased from 1× to 3×, the size of the halo decreased considerably ($p < 0.05$). The effect of three times the recommended rate (3×) of each fungicide was most adverse on the halo formation compared to the recommended (1×) and two times the recommended rate (2×). The order of toxicity of the fungicides at 3× on the halo size (solubilization index) was: tebuconazole > hexaconazole = metalaxyl > kitazin. In addition, the amount of P-solubilized in the liquid medium decreased corresponded with the increasing concentrations of fungicides. Maximum reduction of the P-solubilizing activity of the *E. asburiae* strain PS2 in the broth was found to be 67, 89, and 93% over the control when tebuconazole at 100, 200, and 300 μg/L, respectively, was added to the medium.

8.4.5 *Enterobacter sakazakii* (Cronobacter): Evidence for Plant Association

The isolation of *Cronobacter* organisms has been reported from a wide spectrum of environmental sources including water, soil, dust from households, and food production lines, as well as from foods such as fruits, vegetables, herbs, cereals, and grains. In addition, *Cronobacter* spp. has been isolated from lemon root stocks (Gardner et al. 1982), wheat (Forlani et al. 1995), rice (Yang et al. 1999) and soybean plants (Kuklinsky-Sobral et al. 2004). Some physiological traits exhibited by the organisms showed the ability to produce a yellow pigment (Lehner et al. 2006), the formation of a gum-like extracellular polysaccharide (Lehner et al. 2005) as well as its ability to resist desiccation during long dry periods (Riedel and Lehner 2007) suggest that they might be of environmental origin. However, the natural habitats of *Cronobacter* spp. are still unknown. In a review article by Berg et al. (2005), the rhizosphere was described as a reservoir for several opportunistic human pathogens including species closely related to *Cronobacter* spp., such as *Enterobacter cloacae* (Berg et al. 2005). It was proposed that mechanisms involved in the interaction between plant-associated bacteria and their host plants are similar

to those responsible for pathogenicity in bacteria and that these mechanism may also be involved in colonizing the human body (Rahme et al. 1995; Cao et al. 2001). Schmid et al. (2009) stated that members of the genus *Cronobacter* can be readily isolated from plant roots and that clinical as well as plant isolates are capable of developing epiphytic and endophytic colonization of tomato and maize roots. It is interesting to note that *Cronobacter* spp. can produce factors potentially beneficial to plant growth. This provides evidence for plants as the original natural habitat of *Cronobacter* spp. Other questions such as the mode of entry, potential proliferation of bacteria within plant cells, and/or whether the cells are transported by an (active/passive) mechanism to other parts of the plants (fruits, seeds) will be subject of further investigation.

8.4.6 *Enterobacter cancerogenus*: A Novel Plant Growth Promoting Agent

Enterobacter cancerogenus (can. cer. o'ge. nus. L. n. *cancer*, crab, the disease cancer; L. v. *gigno*, to produce; L. masc. adj. *cancerogenus*, cancer inducing). The bacteria isolated by UroSeviC from poplars (*Populus* species) affected by a canker disease were described and designated *Erwinia cancerogena* in 1966 (UroSevie 1966). Although Lelliott (1974) and Lelliott and Dickey (1984) have indicated that *Erwinia cancerogena* probably is a species of *Enterobacter* because it produces positive reactions for arginine and ornithine decarboxylase, additional data have not been reported to substantiate the suggested change to *Enterobacter*. *Enterobacter cancerogenus* is Gram-negative, straight rods that are motile with peritrichous flagella and are facultatively anaerobic. This species could give positive results for following characteristics: catalase production, nitrate reduction, Voges–Proskauer reaction, KCN tolerance, esculin hydrolysis, β-galactosidase production, utilization of acetate, citrate, glutamate, DL-lactate, malate, succinate, L-alanine, DL-α-alanine, and L-serine, production of acid from L-arabinose, D-xylose, D-ribose, D-glucose, D-lactose, D-galactose, L-rhamnose, D-mannose, D-fructose, D-trehalose, D-cellobiose, D-mannitol, glycerol, salicin, mucate, pyruvate, and α-D-galacturonate. Liquefaction of gelatin at 27°C is evident at 15 days, but exhibits negative for the following characteristics: pigment production, oxidase, the methyl red test, production of deoxyribonuclease, hydrogen sulfide, lipase, lysine decarboxylase, and urease, phenylalanine deamination, reducing substances produced from sucrose, utilization of alginate, benzoate, propionate, and sodium potassium tartrate; production of acid from L-sorbose, melezitose, ethanol, adonitol, i-erythritol, inulin, glycogen, chitin, and D-tartaric acid, production of gas from D-arabinose and myo-inositol (Dickey and Zumoff 1988). *Enterobacter cancerogenes* MSA2 supplemented with 1% carboxymethylcellulose showed overall plant (*Jatropha curcas* L.) growth promotion effect resulting in enhanced root length, fresh root mass, fresh shoot mass, dry root

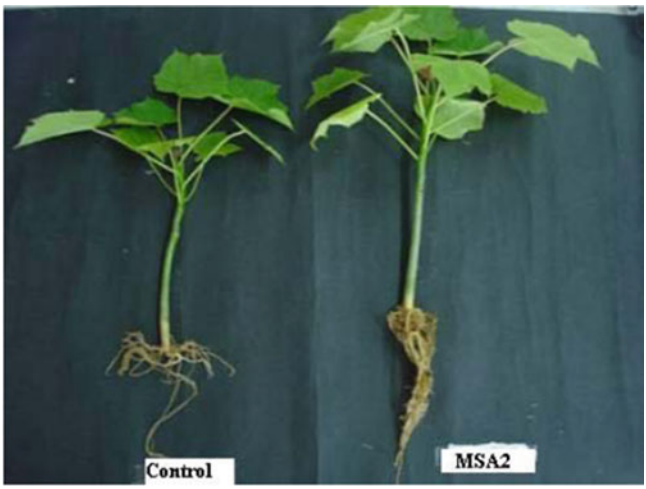


Fig. 8.2 Effect of *Enterobacter cancerogenus* MSA2 on growth of *Jatropha curcas* after 90 DAS in comparison to control

mass, dry shoot mass, number of leaf, chlorophyll content, and biomass over control under the days of experimental observation (Fig. 8.2) (Jha 2011).

8.5 Conclusion

Colonization of the rhizosphere by micro-organisms results in modifications in plant growth and development. This chapter examines the mechanisms involved in growth promotion by plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria of *Enterobacter* species, a common soil bacterium that enhances development of plant root systems and protects host plants against pathogen infection. Continued research with colonization and biofilm formation by these bacterial genera also holds potential for developing biofertilizer and biocontrol agents that may be self perpetuating within the colonizing host plants. Focusing research in these areas may also be aimed to establish *Enterobacter* spp. as promising/potential PGPR. Microbes being an integral component of any soil ecosystem provide life to the soil. Native soils minus microbes are merely dead material. It is now widely being recognized that the presence and abundance of microbial wealth provide soils richness in terms of making available slow release of mineral nutrients, continuous breaking down of complex macro-molecules and natural products into simpler ones to enrich beneficial substances, maintaining physicochemical properties of the soils and most essentially, providing support to the plants in terms of growth enhancement and protection against diseases and pests through their metabolic activities that go on in the soil along day and night.

Acknowledgement Funding for this study was obtained by Lead author, Prof. Meenu Saraf, from British Petroleum International Ltd. (BP). Chaitanya Kumar Jha is thankful to BP international Ltd., for their fellowship.

References

Ahmad M, Khan MS (2010) Plant growth promoting activities of phosphate solubilizing *Enterobacter asburiae* as influenced by Fungicides. Eur Asia J Biosci 4:88–95

Andrews AE, Lawley B, Pittard AJ (1991) Mutational analysis of repression and activation of the *tyrP* gene in *Escherichia coli*. J Bacteriol 173:5068–5078

Bangera MG, Thomashaw LS (1996) Characterization of a genomic locus required for synthesis of the antibiotic 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol by the biological control agent *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Q2-87. Mol Plant Microb Interact 9:83–90

Bent E, Tuzun S, Chanway CP, Enebak S (2001) Alterations in plant growth and in root hormone levels of lodgepole pines inoculated with rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 47:793–800

Berg G, Roskot N, Steidle A, Eberl L, Zock A, Smalla K (2002) Plant-dependent genotypic and phenotypic diversity of antagonistic rhizobacteria isolated from different Verticillium host plants. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3328–3338

Berg G, Eberl L, Hartmann A (2005) The rhizosphere as a reservoir for opportunistic human pathogenic bacteria. Environ Microbiol 7:1673–1685

Blattner FR, Plunkett G, Bloch CA, Perna NT, Burland V (1997) The complete genome sequence of *Escherichia coli* K-12. Science 277:1453–1462

Bloemberg GV, Lugtenberg BJJ (2001) Molecular basis of plant growth promotion and biocontrol by rhizobacteria. Curr Opin Plant Biol 4:343–350

Boddey RM, Da Silva LG, Reis V, Alves BJR, Urquiaga S (2000) Assessment of bacterial nitrogen fixation in grass species. In: Triplett EW (ed) Prokaryotic nitrogen fixation: a model system for analysis of a biological process. Horizon Scientific, Wymondham, UK, pp 705–726

Brandl MT, Lindow SE (1996) Cloning and characterization of a locus encoding an indolepyruvate decarboxylase involved in indole-3-acetic acid synthesis in *Erwinia herbicola*. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:4121–4128

Brenner DJ, Farmer J Jr (2005) In: Garrity GM (ed) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, vol 2. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, pp 587–850

Briely IJ, Thornton I (1983) Primary observation on the effect on heavy metals from mining and smelting on nitrogen-fixing bacteria in some British soils. Miner Environ 1:112–119

Burd GI, Dixan DG, Glick BR (1998) A plant growth promoting bacterium that decreases nickel toxicity in seedlings. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3663–3668

Burd GI, Dixon DG, Glick BR (2000) Plant growth-promoting bacteria that decrease heavy metal toxicity in plants. Can J Microbiol 46:237–245

Campbell R, Greaves MP (1990) Anatomy and community structure of the rhizosphere. In: Lynch JM (ed) The rhizosphere. Wiley, Chichester, England, pp 11–34

Campillo R, Urquiaga S, Undurraga P, Pino I, Boddey RM (2005) Strategies to optimise biological nitrogen fixation in legume/grass pastures in the southern region of Chile. Plant Soil 273:57–67

Cao H, Baldini RL, Rahme LG (2001) Common mechanisms for pathogens of plants and animals. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:259–284

Carlot M, Giacomini A, Casella S (2002) Aspects of plant-microbe interactions in heavy metal polluted soil. Acta Biotechnol 22:13–20

Cattelan AJ, Hartel PG, Fuhrmann JJ (1999) Screening for plant growth rhizobacteria to promote early soybean growth. Soil Sci Soc Am J 63:1670–1680

Cervantes C, Gutierrez-Corana F (1994) Copper resistance mechanism in bacteria and fungi. FEMS Microbiol Rev 14:121–137

Chanway CP, Holl FB (1993) First year yield performance of spruce seedlings inoculated with plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 39:1084–1088

Chincholkar SB, Chaudhari BL, Rane MR, Sarode PD (2007) Fungal phytopathogen suppression using siderophoregenic bio-inoculants. In: Mukerji KG, Chincholkar SB (eds) Biological control of plant diseases: current concepts. Haworth Press, USA, pp 401–417

Chung YR, Brenner DJ, Steigerwalt AG, Kim BS, Kim HT, Cho KY (1993) *Enterobacter pyrinus* sp. nov. an organism associated with brown leaf spot disease of pear trees. Int J Syst Bacteriol 43:157–161

Conrad R (1996) Soil micro-organisms as controllers of atmospheric trace gases (H_2, CO, CH_4, OCS, N_2O, and NO). Microbiol Rev 60:609–643

Constantinescu F (2001) Extraction and identification of antifungal metabolites produced by some *B. subtilis* strains. Analele Institutului de Cercetari Pentru Cereale Protectia Plantelor 31:17–23

Costacurta A, Keijers V, Vanderleyden J (1994) Molecular cloning and sequence analysis of an *Azospirillum brasilense* indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase gene. Mol Gen Genet 243:463–472

De Meyer G, Capieau K, Audenaert K, Buchala A, Metraux JP, Hofte M (1999) Nanogram amounts of salicylic acid produced by the rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* 7NSK2 activate the systemic acquired resistance pathway in bean. Mol Plant Microb Interact 12:450–458

Deepa CK, Dastager SG, Pandey A (2010) Isolation and characterization of plant growth promoting bacteria from non rhizospheric soil and their effect on cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata* (L.) Walp.) seedling growth. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 26:1233–1240

Dickey RS, Zumoff CH (1988) Emended description of *Enterobacter cancerogenus comb.* nov. (formerly *Erwinia cancerogena*). Int J Syst Bacteriol 38:371–374

English MM, Coulson TJD, Horsman SR, Patten CL (2010) Overexpression of hns in the plant growth-promoting bacterium *Enterobacter cloacae* UW5 increases root colonization. J Appl Microbiol 108:2180–2190

Farmer J Jr (2005) In: Garrity GM (ed) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, vol 2B. Springer, New York, pp 694–698

Forlani G, Mantelli M, Branzoni M, Nielsen F, Favilli F (1995) Differential sensitivity of plant-associated bacteria to sulfonylurea and imidazolinone herbicides. Plant Soil 176:243–253

Fravel DR (1988) Role of antibiosis in the biocontrol of plant diseases. Annu Rev Phytopathol 26:75–91

Gardner JM, Feldman AW, Zablotowicz RM (1982) Identity and behavior of xylem-residing bacteria in rough lemon roots of Florida citrus trees. Appl Environ Microbiol 43:1335–1342

Garrity GM (2005) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, vol 2. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, pp 1–1085

Glick BR (1995) The enhancement of plant growth by free-living bacteria. Can J Microbiol 41:109–117

Goldstein AH (1995) Recent progress in understanding the molecular genetics and biochemistry of calcium phosphate solubilization by gram negative bacteria. Biol Agric Hortic 12:185–193

Grimont F, Grimont PA (1992) The genus *Enterobacter*. In: Balows A, Trüper HG, Dworkin M, Harder W, Schleifer KH (eds) The procaryotes. Springer, New York, pp 2797–2815

Gyaneshwar P, Parekh LJ, Archana G, Poole PS, Collins MD, Hustson RA (1999) Involvement of a phosphate starvation inducible glucose dehydrogenase in soil phosphate solubilization by *Enterobacter asburiae PSI3*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 171:223–229

Hasnain S, Sabri AN (1996) Growth stimulation of *Triticum aestivum* seedlings under Cr-stresses by non rhizospheric pseudomonad strains. In: Abstracts of the 7th international symposium on biological nitrogen fixation with non-legumes, p 36

Hazel JR, Williams EE (1990) The role of alteration in membrane lipid composition in enabling physiological adaptation of organisms to their physical environment. Prog Lipid Res 29:167–227

Hoffmann H, Roggenkamp A (2003) Population genetics of the nomenspecies *Enterobacter cloacae*. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:5306–5318

Hoffmanna H, Stindlb S, Stumpf A, Mehlen A, Monget D, Heesemann J, Schleifer KH, Roggenkamp A (2005) Description of *Enterobacter ludwigii* sp. nov., a novel *Enterobacter* species of clinical relevance. Syst Appl Microbiol 28:206–212

Hommais F, Krin E, Laurent-Winter C, Soutourina O, Malpertuy A, Le Caer JP, Danchin A, Bertin P (2001) Large-scale monitoring of pleiotropic regulation of gene expression by the prokaryotic nucleoid-associated protein, H-NS. Mol Microbiol 40:20–36

Honma M, Shimomura T (1978) Metabolism of l-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid. Agric Biol Chem 42:825–1831

Hormaeche E, Edwards PR (1960) A proposed genus *Enterobacter*. Int Bull Bacteriol Nomencl Taxon 10:71–74

Inoue K, Sugiyama K, Kosako Y, Sakazaki R, Yamai S (2000) *Enterobacter cowanii* sp. nov., a new species of the family Enterobacteriaceae. Curr Microbiol 41:417–420

Inoune M, Ninomiya S, Tohoyama H, Joho M, Murayama T (1994) Different characteristics of roots in the cadmium tolerance and Cd binding complex formation between mono- and dicotyledenous plants. J Plant Res 107:201–207

Jackson MB (1997) Hormones from roots as signal for the shoots of stressed plants. Trends Plant Sci 2:22–28

James EK (2000) Nitrogen fixation in endophytic and associative symbiosis. Field Crop Res 65:197–209

James EK, Olivares FL, Baldani JI, Döbereiner J (1997) *Herbaspirillum,* an endophytic diazotroph colonizing vascular tissue in leaves of *Sorghum bicolor* L. Moench. J Exp Bot 48:785–797

Jha CK (2011) Isolation Characterization and development of consortia of PGPR for the growth of *Jatropha curcas*. Ph.D thesis, Gujarat University.

Jia YJ, Ito H, Matsui H, Honma M (2006) 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase induced by ACC synthesized and accumulated in *Penicillium citrinum* intracellular spaces. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 64:299–305

Kampfer P, Steiof M, Dott W (1991) Microbiological characterization of a fuel-oil contaminated site including numerical identification of heterotrophic water and soil bacteria. Microb Ecol 21:227–251

Kampfer P, Ruppelb S, Remus R (2005) *Enterobacter radicincitans* sp. nov., a plant growth promoting species of the family Enterobacteriaceae. Syst Appl Microbiol 28:213–221

Kavita B, Shukla S, Naresh Kumar G, Archana G (2008) Amelioration of phytotoxic effects of Cd on mung bean seedlings by gluconic acid secreting rhizobacterium *Enterobacter asburiae* PSI3 and implication of role of organic acid. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:2965–2972

Kuklinsky-Sobral J, Araujo WL, Mendes R, Geraldi IO, Pizzirani-Kleiner AA, Azevedo JL (2004) Isolation and characterization of soybean-associated bacteria and their potential for plant growth promotion. Environ Microbiol 6:1244–1251

Lankford CE (1973) Bacterial assimilation of iron. Crit Rev Microbiol 2:273–331

Lehner A, Riedel K, Eberl L, Breeuwer P, Diep B, Stephan R (2005) Biofilm formation, EPS production and cell-to-cell signalling in various *Enterobacter sakazakii* strains: aspects promoting environmental persistence. J Food Prot 68:2287–2294

Lehner A, Grimm M, Rattei T, Ruepp A, Frishman D, Manzardo GGG, Stephan R (2006) Cloning and characterization of *Enterobacter sakazakii* pigment genes and in situ spectroscopic analysis of the pigment. FEMS Microbiol Lett 265:244–248

Lelliott RA (1974) Genus XII. *Erwinia* Winslow, Broadhurst, Buchanan, Krumweide, Rogers and Smith 1920. In: Buchanan RE, Gibbons NE (eds) Bergey's manual of determinative bacteriology. Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, pp 332–339

Lelliott RA, Dickey RS (1984) Genus VII. *Erwinia* Winslow, Broadhurst, Buchanan, Krumwiede, Rogers and Smith 1920. In: Krieg NR, Holt JG (eds) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, vol 1. Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, pp 469–476

Lucchini S, Rowley G, Goldberg MD, Hurd D, Harrison M, Hinton JC (2006) H-NS mediates the silencing of laterally acquired genes in bacteria. PLoS Pathog 2:81

Malik KA, Bilal R, Mehnaz S, Rasul G, Mirza MS, Ali S (1997) Association of nitrogen-fixing, plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) with kallar grass and rice. Plant Soil 194:37–44

Martinez-Granero F, Rivilla R, Martin M (2006) Rhizosphere selection of highly motile phenotypic variants of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* with enhanced competitive colonization ability. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:3429–3434

Metwally A, Safronova V, Belimov AA, Dietz KJ (2005) Genotypic variation of the response to cadmium toxicity in *Pisum sativum* L. J Exp Bot 56:167–178

Navarre WW, Porwollik S, Wang Y, McClelland M, Rosen H, Libby SJ, Fang FC (2006) Selective silencing of foreign DNA with low GC content by the H-NS protein in *Salmonella*. Science 313:236–238

Nigam R, Srivastva S, Prakash S, Srivastava MM (2000) Effect of organic acids on availability of cadmium in wheat. Chem Spec Bioavailab 12:125–132

O'Hara CM, Steigerwalt AG, Hill BC, Farmer JJ 3rd, Fanning GR, Brenner DJ (1989) *Enterobacter hormaechei* a new species of the family Enterobacteriaceae formerly known as enteric group 75. J Clin Microbiol 27:2046–2049

Ohsumi Y, Katsuhiko K, Yasuhiro A (1988) Changes induced in the permeability barrier of the yeast plasma membrane by cupric ion. J Bacteriol 170:2676–2682

Ono S, Goldberg MD, Olsson T, Esposito D, Hinton JC, Ladbury JE (2005) H-NS is a part of a thermally controlled mechanism for bacterial gene regulation. Biochem J 391:203–213

Paradis S, Boissinot M, Paquette N, Bélanger SD, Martel EA, Boudreau DK, Picard FJ, Ouellette M, Roy PH, Bergeron MG (2005) Phylogeny of the *Enterobacteriaceae* based on genes encoding elongation factor Tu and F-ATPase β-subunit. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:2013–2025

Parker DR, Pedler JF (1998) Probing the malate hypothesis of differential aluminium tolerance in wheat by using other rhizotoxic ions as proxies for Al. Planta 205:389–396

Pavan ME, Franco RJ, Rodriguez JM, Gadaleta P, Abbott SL, Janda JM, Zorzópulos J (2005) Phylogenetic relationships of the genus *Kluyvera*: transfer of *Enterobacter intermedius* Izard *et al*. 1980 to the genus *Kluyvera* as *Kluyvera intermedia* comb. nov. and reclassification of *Kluyvera cochleae* as a later synonym of *K. intermedia*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:437–442

Persello-Cartieaux F (2003) Tales from the underground: molecular plant–rhizobia interactions. Plant Cell Environ 26:189–199

Pittard J, Camakaris H, Yang J (2005) The TyrR regulon. Mol Microbiol 55:16–26

Rahme LG, Stevens EJ, Wolfort SF, Shoa J, Thomkins RG, Ausubel FM (1995) Common virulence factors for bacterial pathogenicity in plants and animals. Science 268:1899–1902

Riedel K, Lehner A (2007) Identification of proteins involved in osmotic stress response in *Enterobacter sakazakii* by proteomics. Proteomics 7:1217–1231

Rodríguez-Díaz M, Belén RG, Clementina PC, Maria Victoria M, Jesús G (2008) A review on the taxonomy and possible screening traits of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria. In: Iqbal A, John P, Shamsul H (eds) Plant–bacteria interactions. strategies and techniques to promote plant growth. WILEY-VCH Verlag GmbH and Co. KGaA, Weinheim

Romero D, de Vicente A, Rakotoaly RH, Dufour SE, Veening JW, Arrebola E, Cazorla FM, Kuipers OP, Paquot M, Perez-García A (2007) The iturin and fengycin families of lipopeptides are key factors in antagonism of *Bacillus subtilis* toward *Podosphaera fusca*. Mol Plant Microb Interact 20:430–440

Ryan PR, Delhaize E, Jones DL (2001) Function and mechanism of organic anion exudation from plant roots. Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 52:527–556

Ryu RJ, Patten CL (2008) Aromatic amino acid-dependent expression of indole-3 pyruvate decarboxylase is regulated by TyrR in *Enterobacter cloacae* UW5. J Bacteriol 190:7200–7208

Ryu C-M, Farag MA, Hu C-H, Reddy MS, Wie H-X (2003) Bacterial volatiles promote growth of *Arabidopsis*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:4927–4932

Ryu CM, Farag MA, Hu CH, Reddy MS, Kloepper JW, Pare PW (2004) Bacterial volatiles induce systemic resistance in Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 134:1017–1026

Safronova VI, Stepanok VV, Engqvist GL, Alekseyev YV, Belimov AA (2006) Root-associated bacteria containing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase improve growth and nutrient uptake by pea genotypes cultivated in cadmium supplemented soil. Biol Fertil Soils 42:267–272

Saraf M, Jha CK, Patel D (2010) The role of ACC deaminase producing PGPR in sustainable agriculture. In: Maheshwari DK (ed) Plant growth and health promoting bacteria. Springer, Berlin, pp 365–385

Saravanakumar D, Samiyappan R (2007) ACC deaminase from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* mediated saline resistance in groundnut (*Arachis hypogea*) plants. J Appl Microbiol 102:1283–1292

Schmid M, Iversen C, Gontia I, Stephan R, Hofmann A, Hartmann A, Jha B, Eberl L, Riedel K, Lehner A (2009) Evidence for a plant-associated natural habitat for *Cronobacter* spp. Res Microbiol 160:608–614

Shah S, Li J, Moffatt BA, Glick BR (1998) Isolation and characterization of ACC deaminase genes from two different plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria. Can J Microbiol 44:833–843

Shoebitz M, Claudia MR, Martín AP, María LC, Luigi C, José AC (2009) Plant growth promoting properties of a strain of *Enterobacter ludwigii* isolated from Lolium perenne rhizosphere. Soil Biol Biochem 41:1768–1774

Siebert M, Sommer S, Li SM, Wang ZX, Severin K (1996) Genetic engineering of plant secondary metabolism. Accumulation of 4-hydroxybenzoate glucosides as a result of the expression of the bacterial ubiC gene in tobacco. Plant Physiol 112:811–819

Singh N, Pandey P, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK (2008) Biological control of root rot fungus *Macrophomina phaseolina* and growth enhancement of *Pinus roxburghii* by rhizosphere competent *Bacillus subtilis* BN1. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1669–1679

Singh N, Kumar S, Bajpai VK, Dubey RC, Maheshwari DK, Kang SC (2010) Biocontrol of *Macrophomina phaseolina* by chemotactic fluorescent *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* PN1 and its plant growth promontory activity in chir pine. Crop Prot 29:1142–1147

Sinha S, Mukherjee SK (2008) Cadmium-induced siderophore production by a high Cd-resistant bacterial strain relieved Cd toxicity in plants through root colonization. Curr Microbiol 56:55–60

Stella S, Falconi M, Lammi M, Gualerzi CO, Pon CL (2006) Environmental control of the in vivo oligomerization of nucleoid protein H-NS. J Mol Biol 355:169–174

Taghavi S, Lelie D, Hoffman A, Zhang YB, Walla MD, Vangronsveld J, Newman L, Monchy S (2010) Genome sequence of the plant growth promoting endophytic bacterium *Enterobacter* sp. 638. PLoS Genet 6:1–15

Triplett E (1996) Diazotrophic endophytes: progress and prospects for nitrogen fixation in monocots. Plant Soil 186:29–38

Turnbull GA, Morgan JA, Whipps JM, Saunders JR (2001) The role of bacterial motility in the survival and spread of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in soil and in the attachment and colonisation of wheat roots. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 36:21–31

UroSevie B (1966) Rakovina topolu piisobenFi-baktkrii *Erwinia cuncerogena* n. sp. Lesnicky Casopis 12:493–505

Vansuy G, Robin A, Briat JF, Curie C, Lemanceau P (2007) Iron acquisition from Fe-pyoverdine by *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Mol Plant Microb Interact 20:441–447

Voisard C, Keel C, Haas D, Défago G (1989) Cyanide production by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* helps suppress black root rot of tobacco under gnotobiotic conditions. EMBO J 8:351–358

Wang KL, Li H, Ecker JR (2002) Ethylene biosynthesis and signaling networks. Plant Cell 14:131–151

Weigel C, Schmidt A, Ruckert B, Lurz R, Messer W (1997) DnaA protein binding to individual DnaA boxes in the *Escherichia coli* replication origin, oriC. EMBO J 16:6574–6583

Windstam S, Nelson EB (2008) Differential interference with *Pythium ultimum* sporangial activation and germination by *Enterobacter cloacae* in the corn and cucumber spermospheres. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:4285–4291

Yang HL, Sun XL, Song W, Wang YS, Cai MY (1999) Screening, identification and distribution of endophytic associative diazotrophs isolated from rice plants. Acta Bot Sin 41:927–931

Zhang H, Xie X, Kim M-S, Kornyeyev DA, Holaday S, Paré PW (2008) Soil bacteria augment *Arabidopsis* photosynthesis by decreasing glucose sensing and abscisic acid levels *in planta*. Plant J 56:264–273

Zhender GW, Yao C, Murphy JF, Sikora ER, Kloepper JW, Schuster DJ, Polston JE (1999) Microbe induced resistance against pathogens and herbivores: evidence of effectiveness in agriculture. In: Agarwal AA, Tuzun S, Bent E (eds) Induced plant defenses against pathogens and herbivores: biochemistry, ecology and agriculture. APS, St. Paul, MN, p 33

Chapter 9
Nitrogen-Fixing Endophytic Bacteria for Improved Plant Growth

Sharon Lafferty Doty

9.1 Introduction

Nitrogen is an essential element for life as we know it. It is a primary component of all the proteins and nucleic acids in living cells. Plants without sufficient nitrogen are stunted, have yellow chlorotic leaves, and produce low yields. Although the atmosphere contains nearly 80% dinitrogen gas, this form of nitrogen is not biologically available to most life. To produce enough food for a growing human population, global agriculture production has become more dependent on the use of chemical fertilizers at the cost of the environment, climate, and possibly human health. The Haber–Bosch process for producing ammonia for plant growth spurred the Green Revolution, allowing significant increases in crop yield. The process requires large amounts of natural gas, high pressure, and high temperature (Vance 2001). Developed at a time of inexpensive and plentiful fossil fuels, the benefits of increased crop yield at low cost were reaped without apparent thought to the environmental costs. With the rising prices of energy, the cost of fertilizer has also dramatically increased. There is, therefore, a need both financially and environmentally to improve crop growth without reliance on chemical fertilizers.

The use of synthetic nitrogen fertilizers has a number of negative effects on the environment (Cocking 2005). Less than half of the applied fertilizer is actually taken up by the crops; the remainder is lost to leaching, run-off into streams, or metabolism by soil microbes (Bhattacharjee et al. 2008). Elevated nitrogen run-off into water systems causes a rapid growth of algae from the input of nutrients, depleting the water of oxygen and resulting in widespread dead zones. The ammonia in the soil is metabolized by some bacteria into reactive nitrogen forms. These include nitric oxide (NO) and nitrogen dioxide (NO_2), collectively termed NOx.

S.L. Doty
School of Forest Resources, College of the Environment, University of Washington, UW Box 352100, Seattle, WA 98195, USA
e-mail: sldoty@uw.edu

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_9,

These reactive forms become ozone that is damaging to plants and animals, and is a significant greenhouse gas. Another form of reactive nitrogen is nitrous oxide (N_2O) that is 300 times more potent than carbon dioxide as a greenhouse gas. As a result, farmlands have a strong impact on air pollution, contributing 8.9 million tons of nitrogen annually (Peplow 2005). In addition to these environmental impacts of the use of chemical fertilizers, there may also be more direct effects on human health. A review by the US National Institutes of Health suggested that increased nitrate concentrations in drinking water could contribute to cancer, and nitrogen-related air pollution could be elevating the incidence of cardiopulmonary ailments (Townsend and Howarth 2010).

Prior to the use of chemical fertilizers, farmers relied more on biological nitrogen fixation (BNF) well known to occur in the legume–rhizobium symbiosis. In this complex interaction, leguminous plants such as peas and beans recruit specific rhizobial bacterial species, form nodules on the roots, and permit the infection of the nodules with nitrogen-fixing bacteria. The plant provides sugars that it synthesizes through photosynthesis to its symbionts as long as they provide usable nitrogen to the plant. These specific bacteria are able to biologically convert atmospheric dinitrogen gas into ammonia using the enzyme nitrogenase and high levels of ATP, the energy currency of living cells. The interaction between the legume and the rhizobium is highly regulated, and a great deal of communication occurs between the two organisms as the symbiosis is being established. The relationship benefits not only the plants and microbes but also the farmer, since good crop yields are obtained without the addition of fertilizer. Often, non-leguminous crops are rotated with legumes because there is sufficient fixed nitrogen remaining in the soil for another crop.

For decades, researchers studied the legume–rhizobium relationship with the goal of initiating such symbiosis between rhizobium and non-leguminous crop plants. Although spontaneous nodules sometimes developed, and rare infections occurred, none of the forced interactions yielded significant transfers of fixed nitrogen to the crop. A breakthrough was made in the 1980s when research into the microbes living within sugarcane, a non-leguminous tropical crop species, indicated that a significant amount of biologically fixed nitrogen was transferred to the plant from these internal symbionts. Since then, researchers began to focus more on this hitherto unstudied ecosystem within plants.

The interior of plants provides habitat for a wide range of bacteria and fungi that benefit the plant host by increasing nutrient acquisition, stress tolerance, pathogen resistance, and aiding in phytoremediation of environmental pollutants (Reis et al. 2000; Hirsch 2004; Cook et al. 1995; Siciliano et al. 2001; Vance 2001; Bhattacharjee et al. 2008). The term “endophyte” was coined by Dobereiner to describe these internal microbes that spend a significant part of their life cycle within plants and do not cause disease (Dobereiner 1992). Although endophytes can increase plant growth through a variety of mechanisms, an especially intriguing method of growth promotion is through providing fixed nitrogen. Only a subset of these endophytic microorganisms “fixes” nitrogen into the usable forms of ammonia and nitrate. Such microbes are termed diazotrophs, and have been

found in major food crops including rice, maize, sugar cane, sweet potato, and coffee. In some cases, the nitrogen-fixing bacteria from these crop plants associated not only with the plant species from which they were isolated but also with unrelated plants. Applications of nitrogen-fixing bacteria on non-leguminous crops could potentially increase growth and yield while reducing the need for chemical fertilizers (Bhattacharjee et al. 2008).

Although the study of endophytes and their hosts is relatively young compared to the study of rhizobia and legumes, some similarities and differences are beginning to be elucidated (Fig. 9.1). In both cases, plant signal molecules (organic acids, carbohydrates, and amino acids) are released in the exudate coming from the roots, and these signals act as chemo-attractants to the microorganisms. The bacteria need to come into contact with the plant root. In the case of rhizobia and legumes, a complex interaction takes place with many variations in detail but generally leading to root hair curling, invasion via an infection thread, and ultimate colonization of the root nodule (Masson-Boivin et al. 2009). By contrast, endophytic associations including the details of how endophytes enter, pass the casparian strips in the plant root endoderm, and colonize the plant interior are not yet known. Since plant genotype is a key factor in determining how much nitrogen is obtained from endophytes (Reis et al. 2000) and because different plant species in the same environment can have different endophytic species compositions, it seems clear that there is specificity as in the legume–rhizobia symbiosis. In a microarray study of the plant genes induced by inoculation with endophytic bacteria, it was revealed that certain plant signaling genes (receptors and protein kinases) were expressed exclusively in the inoculated plants (Nogueira et al. 2001). More studies of this type

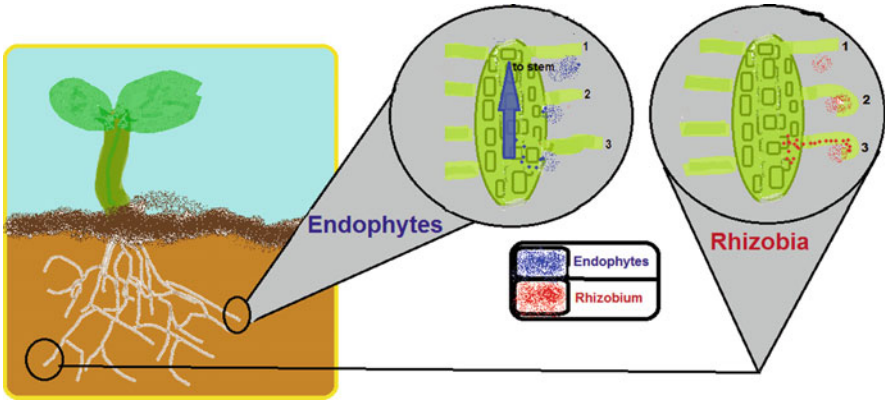


Fig. 9.1 Comparison of infection and colonization of rhizobia and endophytes. In step 1, both classes of bacteria move to the root area in response to plant signals. In step 2, the rhizobia initiate root hair curling, and then enter the plant in step 3 through an infection thread of plant origin. The rhizobia then colonize a specific region within the resulting root nodule. By contrast, endophytes generally enter at lateral root junctions (or at wound sites) in an opportunistic fashion in step 2. They colonize the plant interior and can move upward, in some cases spreading to the stems and leaves, in the vascular tissue and in intercellular spaces (Figure courtesy of Christina M. Doty)

must be conducted in order to determine which plant genes are involved generally in plant–endophyte interactions.

Unlike most rhizobial infections that enter in a plant-assisted direct manner, endophytes seem to enter more in an opportunistic way. Using fluorescently labeled bacteria, researchers have determined that the common entry points for endophytes are at lateral root junctions and at wound sites, similar to pathogen entry points. Low levels of cell wall degrading enzymes are probably released in order to enter without initiating the plant defense response. Upon successful entry, the endophytes appear to form microcolonies within the vascular tissue or in the spaces between plant cells. The initial colonization of the plant by an endophyte is largely driven by the chance opportunity that a competent endophyte that can persist within that plant (Hardoim et al. 2008) will happen to be near enough to perceive the plant signals, and be able to enter at either a wound, or at disturbed cells at lateral root junctions or root cap. Therefore, it is probably a strong advantage for plants growing in nutrient-poor environments to be able to propagate asexually through cuttings. In this way, the new plant already comes with a viable collection of appropriate endophytes (Stettler 2009).

Another difference between the rhizobium–legume and endophyte–plant partnership is in the protection of the nitrogenase enzyme from oxygen. In order for nitrogenase to reduce dinitrogen gas, the immediate environment of the enzyme must be anaerobic. Rhizobia within root nodules are in a low-oxygen environment, and leghemoglobin within the nodule scavenges any free oxygen. Although in most cases it is not known how diazotrophic endophytes protect nitrogenase from oxygen, many possibilities are available (Gallon 1992). In the case of the sugarcane endophyte, the ability of *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* to fix nitrogen in the aerobic environment of the stem is attributed to "respiratory protection" whereby the extremely rapid respiration from metabolism of high levels of sucrose within the sugarcane stem leads to a microaerobic environment needed for the oxygen-sensitive nitrogenase enzyme (Flores-Encarnacion et al. 1999). Other endophytes may use physical barriers including exopolysaccharides to exclude oxygen or interior vesicles to compartmentalize the nitrogenase, or biochemical methods to scavenge interior oxygen (Gallon 1992).

9.2 Methods of Analysis

Most studies of diazotrophic endophytes begin with the isolation of microbes from within the plant that are capable of growing on nitrogen-free medium (outlined in Fig. 9.2). First, the outer surface of the plant tissue is sterilized using a bleach solution, ethanol, or mercuric chloride in order to eliminate contaminating microorganisms on the outside of the plant that may or may not be involved in any symbiosis with the plant. Adequate surface sterilization can be assessed by either placing the uncut plant tissue on medium and monitoring for bacterial growth, plating the last of the rinse solutions, or by using microscopy

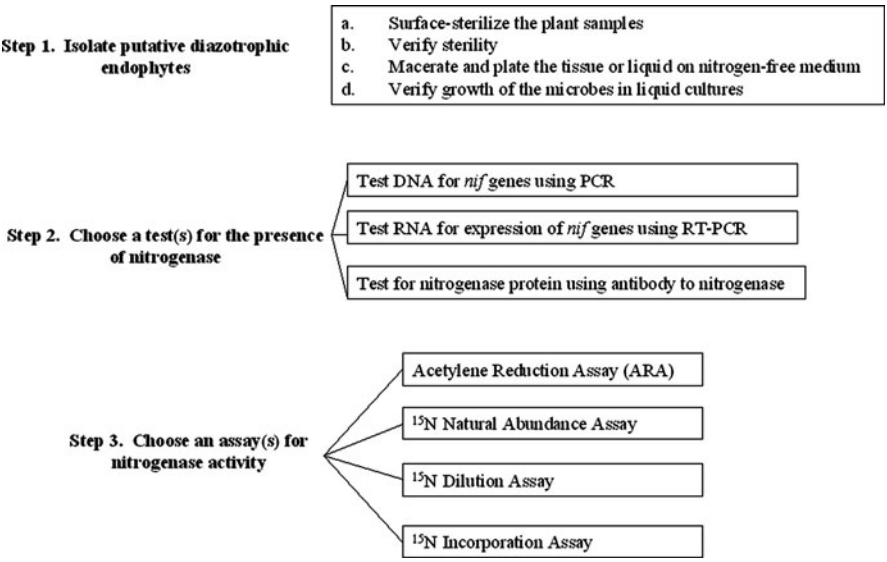


Fig. 9.2 Flowchart of the methods for analysis of diazotrophic (N-fixing) endophytes

(Dong et al. 2003). To isolate the bacteria within the plant, the tissue is macerated and then either directly placed on medium supporting the growth of most nitrogen-fixing bacteria or suspended in a solution that is then spread on the plates. Although this is the standard method for isolating endophytes, a recent paper demonstrated that hundreds of times more colonies could be counted when using the ELISA technique (Silva-Froufe et al. 2009). The standard technique assumes that the endophytes are not tightly adhering to the plant cells and that they do not aggregate, but neither assumption is probably correct. Using this fluorescent tagging method allows more accurate quantification of the number of endophytes within the plant. However, the ELISA technique requires nitrogenase antibody that can recognize a broad range of nitrogenases, so this method will need to be used mostly for quantifying specific endophyte species.

Development of appropriate methods for quantifying nitrogen fixation by microbes within plants has been challenging. Unlike the situation with rhizobia and legumes where all the nitrogen fixation is occurring in a concentrated area in root nodules, diazotrophic endophytes can fix nitrogen throughout the plant body. Furthermore, since the bacteria are within the plant, it is difficult to establish whether the fixed nitrogen is being transferred to the plant as in the rhizobium symbiosis or whether the plant is obtaining the nitrogen only after the microbial cells die and lyse open. Each of the methods described below has advantages and disadvantages, so the use of a combination of methods provides the most convincing evidence for nitrogen fixation by the endophytes.

The most common second stage of analysis following verification of growth in nitrogen-free medium is to determine if the bacterium contains the genes encoding

nitrogenase. This enzyme is required for the conversion of dinitrogen gas to ammonia, and is conserved in all nitrogen-fixing organisms including the Achaea, a separate Domain from the Bacteria. Genomic DNA is isolated from the endophyte and is subjected to PCR with primers that are general enough (degenerate) to amplify most nitrogenase sequences. Nested PCR using primers that bind within the area amplified by the first set of primers is performed to eliminate non-specific DNA bands. The resulting PCR product is then cloned and sequenced to verify that the amplified DNA does correspond to the nitrogenase gene. The nitrogenase enzyme is encoded by three genes, *nifH*, *nifD*, and *nifK*; however, most researchers test only for one of the genes, usually *nifH*. One problem with using the presence of the *nif* gene as evidence for nitrogen-fixing ability is that often the gene is not actually expressed while the endophyte is in the plant. A *nifH*-based microarray was developed to study the diazotrophs of Kallar grass (Zhang et al. 2007). The study revealed that, although there were many different species of diazotrophic endophytes present, only one species, *Azoarcus*, was the dominant species that was expressing the nitrogenase gene *in planta*. In addition to examining the endophytes for the nitrogenase genes (DNA) or expression (RNA) of those genes, is to directly assay for the presence of the nitrogenase enzyme. However, as mentioned for the ELISA study described above, antibodies against the nitrogenase enzyme are usually too specific and would work mostly for detecting the type of nitrogenase from which the antibody was raised.

A common method of testing if an endophyte has a functional nitrogenase enzyme is the acetylene reduction assay (ARA). This assay takes advantage of the fact that acetylene, like dinitrogen gas, has a triple bond that is reduced by nitrogenase. Reduction of acetylene results in the formation of ethylene gas which is easily quantified using gas chromatography. This assay is highly effective in rhizobium–legume studies since the bacteria fix nitrogen while concentrated in small root nodules. It is more difficult to do similar studies with endophytes that are unevenly distributed within the plant. Furthermore, wounded plant tissue releases ethylene, a plant stress hormone, thus interfering with the quantification of ethylene produced from acetylene reduction. To solve this dilemma, cultures of the bacteria are often tested independently of the plant.

The high percentage of endophytic strains that test negative for the ARA yet have the nitrogenase gene and are able to grow on nitrogen-free medium indicates that this assay may not be an accurate measure of diazotrophy for this class of organisms. It has been shown in studies of plant growth-promoting rhizospheric bacteria that there seems to be selection for microbes that can decrease the amount of ethylene produced by the host plant (Hardoim et al. 2008). Using the enzyme ACC deaminase, the bacteria break up the precursor for ethylene from the plant, causing the plant to not over-react to stress. But some plant-associated bacteria may also have a mechanism for degrading the ethylene directly. Work in the 1970s revealed that some soil bacteria can metabolize ethylene (de Bont and Albers 1976). Perhaps some of the putative diazotrophic endophytes that tested negative for ARA were degrading the ethylene they produced from acetylene.

The stable isotope of nitrogen, ^{15}N, is used in three different approaches for quantifying nitrogen fixation. The natural abundance assay relies on more of the lighter ^{14}N being in the atmosphere and more of the heavier ^{15}N being in soil, such that an organism that received most of its nitrogen via nitrogen fixation would have a ratio of more ^{14}N than ^{15}N. Another approach is to deliberately label the soil with ^{15}N using labeled ammonium sulfate, and then testing for a dilution of the isotopic signature with ^{14}N from the atmosphere. A possible problem with this assay is that it requires the addition of ammonium to the soil that may inhibit nitrogenase gene expression that is tightly regulated to the amount of available nitrogen. This method has the advantage of being easier to detect than natural abundance, and it is less expensive than the $^{15}N_2$ incorporation assay which is the most direct method for studying nitrogen fixation. In this assay, the plant is placed in a sealed chamber with some of the air spiked with the labeled nitrogen gas. If the plant is receiving any nitrogen through nitrogen fixation from its endophytes, the plant tissue will become labeled. Highly pure $^{15}N_2$ gas is available to avoid complication with contaminating ^{15}N-labeled ammonia gas. The best study would be to use *nifH* mutants to determine if the plant tissue was labeled only when inoculated with the wild-type strain and not with the mutant (Sevilla et al. 2001) and to verify that the label was incorporated into plant proteins (Iniguez et al. 2004).

9.3 Diazotrophic Endophytes

As described in introductory section, diazotrophic endophytes refer to nitrogen-fixing microorganisms within plants. Following is a review of the current research on these diazotrophs from different groups of crop plants.

9.3.1 Diazotrophic Endophytes from Monocot Crops: Sugarcane, Rice, and Maize

Although this chapter is focused on crop plants, the reader is strongly encouraged to read the reviews on diazotrophic endophytes of the forage grass, Kallar grass (*Leptochloa fusca*) that have been well studied (Reinhold-Hurek and Hurek 1998; Elmerich et al. 1997; Hurek et al. 2002), and other grasses (Reis et al. 2000; Dalton et al. 2004).

The best example of a monocot crop species with nitrogen-fixing endophytes is sugarcane (*Saccharum* spp.). This crop species was grown successfully for many decades without addition of fertilizer. ^{15}N experiments conducted in the early 1990s suggested that a few sugarcane varieties received large amounts of their nitrogen from BNF (Urquiga et al. 1992). Experiments by Boddey et al. demonstrated that 80% of the total nitrogen for three sugarcane varieties could be attributed to BNF

(Boddey 1995). The vegetative propagation of sugarcane by nodal sections and the traditional farming methods without fertilizer may have selected for superior diazotrophs.

The dominant diazotrophic endophyte of sugarcane is *G. diazotrophicus* (previously termed *Acetobacter diazotrophicus*). It grows best in very high levels of sucrose (100 g/L), is acid-tolerant, and exists in high numbers within plants, but it survives poorly in soil. This bacterium is capable of secreting nearly half of its fixed nitrogen in a form that the plant can utilize (Cohjo et al. 1993). A variety of different methods has been used to demonstrate that *G. diazotrophicus* fixes nitrogen and transfers that nitrogen to the host plant. Since inoculation of plants with endophytes could result in increased mass because of other factors besides fixed nitrogen, inoculation with a mutant strain that no longer fixes nitrogen makes an excellent experiment. Inoculation with *nif* mutants (non-nitrogen fixing) of this organism resulted in reduced sugarcane growth under nutrient-limited conditions compared with inoculation with the wild-type strain, suggesting that fixed nitrogen is transferred to the plant under normal symbiotic conditions (Sevilla et al. 2001). The plants inoculated with the wild-type (nitrogen-fixing) strain had more tillers, leaves, and height, and this improved growth was sustained during the 4-month field study. For example, there was an increase of 40% more fresh cane weight in the plants inoculated with the wild-type compared with the mutant. The colonization of the plants by the wild-type and mutant strains was verified and shown to be the same; therefore, the effect was specific to the ability to fix nitrogen. Immunogold labeling of nitrogenase demonstrated that the enzyme was expressed in the endophytic microbes. The ^{15}N incorporation test was also conducted. The shoots and roots of the plants inoculated with the wild-type strain were labeled with ^{15}N to a small extent, further demonstrating that nitrogen fixation was occurring within the plant. When nitrogen was not a limiting nutrient; however, the microbe still enhanced plant growth, suggesting that it helps the plant in multiple ways, probably from the production of plant hormones (IAA and gibberellins).

Although *G. diazotrophicus* was shown to fix nitrogen within the sugarcane, it seems that other endophytes must also contribute substantial nitrogen. A larger study that used the ^{15}N dilution method and seven different combinations of five endophyte species demonstrated that the best BNF growth effect occurred when all five strains were inoculated onto the plants (Oliveira et al. 2002). The endophytes were from the genera *Azospirillum*, *Burkholderia*, *Herbaspirillum*, and *Gluconacetobacter*. A doubling of the BNF contribution was seen between inoculation with the whole consortia of five strains compared to inoculation with only one strain. The dry weights were increased substantially after 400 days between the uninoculated controls and the multi-species inoculated plants. The improvements were substantial despite the fact that the sterility of the uninoculated controls was not maintained, and these control plants did get colonized during the experiment. The growth effects seen in this study demonstrate that inoculating micropropagated plants with a consortia of nitrogen-fixing endophytes has long-term yield enhancements even under normal conditions of competition with other microbes.

Burkholderia and *Herbaspirillum* species are important contributors to the growth enhancements of sugarcane. *B. vietnamiensis* colonizes sugarcane in large numbers (115,000 colony-forming units per gram of plant tissue), it reduces acetylene, the indirect assay for nitrogen fixation, and it contains the nitrogenase genes (Govindarajan et al. 2006). Growth experiments in the field demonstrated that inoculation with the strain MG43 resulted in a 20% increase in growth. In a study comparing *B. tropici* and *Herbaspirillum* using fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH), it was demonstrated that both microbes colonized the sugarcane within 12 h after inoculation but in different sites (Oliveira et al. 2009).

As rice is the staple food in the diet for over 40% of the world's population, it is critical to develop sustainable methods to increase yields. Using traditional agriculture, 4 tons of rice per hectare can be grown with 50 kg of nitrogen per hectare coming from BNF (Stoltzfus et al. 1997). Using modern agriculture, a yield of 5–8 tons per hectare can be achieved but at the cost of 60–100 kg of nitrogen added through chemical fertilizer per hectare. In order to increase yields without chemical fertilizers, research into diazotrophic endophytes of rice began. By screening 133 rice endophytes, 13 isolates of diverse genera were identified that were positive for both the *nifD* gene and the ARA (Stoltzfus et al. 1997). In a more recent study of rice plants in Vietnam, 13 diazotrophic endophytes were identified using the same criteria but all of these were *Burkholderia* species (Govindarajan et al. 2008). The most active in the ARA was named *B. vietnamiensis* strain MGK3. By marking the strain with *gusA*, it was determined that the strain entered at lateral root junctions and the root tip, and colonized intercellular spaces of the root cortex after 15 days. Inoculation of seedlings with this strain resulted in increases of rice yield of 5–12%. When mixed with other diazotrophic endophyte species including *G. diazotrophicus*, *Azospirillum lipoferum*, and *H. seropedicae*, the combination resulted in a yield increase of 9–23%. ^{15}N dilution assays both in pots and in the field demonstrated nitrogen fixation, with up to 42% of the N derived from nitrogen fixation. Inoculation of rice with diazotrophic endophytes increased yield, root biomass, and tiller number.

As maize is also a staple crop and, like sugarcane, is now being used for biofuels, it is another crop for which sustainable agricultural practices need to be developed that also meet the growing demand. Studies in Mexico revealed that *B. unamae* was a prevalent endophyte in maize that colonized roots and stems, reduced acetylene, and had the *nif* gene cluster (Caballero-Mellado et al. 2004). In another study, *B. tropici* was identified from both maize and its ancestor, teosinte, and grew on nitrogen-free medium and was ARA-positive (Reis et al. 2004). In a more recent study, 178 endophytes were isolated from maize in Uruguay that could grow on nitrogen-free medium (Montanez et al. 2009). Only 11 of these were found to be ARA(+), and these included species from the familiar genera *Pantoea*, *Pseudomonas*, *Rhanella*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Azospirillum*, and *Rhizobium*. The maize cultivars used in this study were tested by the ^{15}N dilution assay and shown to be using BNF.

The diazotrophic maize endophyte, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, was able to fix nitrogen not only in its original host but also in the major food crop, wheat (*Triticum aestivum*). In an excellent model paper, it was proven that fixed nitrogen

was transferred from the endophyte to the wheat cultivar, Trenton (Iniguez et al. 2004). Addition of the wild-type endophyte relieved nitrogen-deficiency symptoms and increased total nitrogen of the plant, whereas inoculation with a nitrogenase mutant or a killed control did not yield this effect. After 6 weeks without fertilizer, the control plants were stunted and chlorotic while the plants inoculated with the wild-type strain had more chlorophyll, 50% more dry weight, 285% more total N in shoots, and 654% more N in roots. ^{15}N dilution experiments verified that not only was nitrogen fixation occurring within the plant, the fixed nitrogen was utilized by the plant since the chlorophyll also had the isotopic signature. Unfortunately, these positive results were limited to one cultivar of wheat; there was no effect for two other wheat cultivars, a rice line, two barley lines, and several lines of maize.

9.3.2 *Diazotrophic Endophytes from Dicot Crops: Sweet Potato and Coffee*

Compared to the amount of research on diazotrophic endophytes of monocots, there is much less known about them in dicot crops. The nitrogen-fixing microbes, *Azospirillum* (Hill et al. 1983) and *Gluconacetobacter* (Paula et al. 1991), were isolated from sweet potato plants (*Ipomoea batatas*), the fifth most important food crop in developing countries. Nitrogen fixation was observed in sweet potato using the ^{15}N natural abundance assay (Yoneyama et al. 1998). A survey of *nif*H-containing microbes as conducted using sweet potato from farms in Uganda and Kenya that did not use chemical fertilizers (Reiter et al. 2003). This culture-independent assay revealed that there were 17 different microbial groups, as separated by RFLP analysis. About 50% of the species were *Rhizobium* sp. Sweet potato plants in Japan were also analyzed (Terakado-Tonooka et al. 2008). Using the ^{15}N natural abundance assay, it was determined that 40% of the N was from BNF, an amount of 103–135 kg N per hectare. Rather than looking for the presence of *nifH* as in the African study, they used RT-PCR to look for active expression of the nitrogenase gene in endophytes of the stems and storage roots. As with the African study, most of the sequences were of *Rhizobium* species, but there were also *H. seropedicae*, *B. vietnamiensis*, *B. unamae*, *Pelomonas saccharophila*, *Cyanobacteria*, and *Azohydromonas australica* sequences. Since there were no *nifH* sequences in the sprouts prior to transplanting, all of these microbes colonized the plants from the soil environment. By studying active *nif*H expression, the authors were able to see a seasonal effect. The highest *nifH* expression was in summer and not in autumn, correlating with the highest photosynthetic rate of the plant.

In a small study of American sweet potato endophytes, it was found that 4 out of 11 isolates produced the plant hormone, auxin, and 1 isolate was a putative nitrogen-fixing endophyte (Khan and Doty 2009). This isolate (SP-A) grew in nitrogen-free medium and had the nitrogenase gene. Although the *nifH* fragment

was 99% identical to that of *Azotobacter vinelandii*, the 16S rDNA sequence was 100% identical to *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. It is interesting to note that most studies do not report the sequence of both the 16S rDNA and the *nif* gene, so it is unknown how common it might be that endophytes harbor nitrogenase sequences from unrelated soil bacteria. Recent studies involving endophyte-assisted phytoremediation of pollutants have demonstrated that bacteria can conjugate *in planta*, transferring plasmids from poor colonizers to effective endophytes of the roots, and upward to endophytes of the stem (Taghavi et al. 2005; Weyens et al. 2009). It may be that plasmids containing nitrogenase genes or other symbiosis-related genes are also transferred among endophytes.

In coffee plants of Mexico, there are some diazotrophic plant-associated bacteria, namely *Gluconacetobacter* species. *G. diazotrophicus*, *G. johannae*, and *G. azotocaptans* were identified from the coffee tissues (Jimenez-Salgado et al. 1997) and in the rhizosphere (Fuentes-Ramirez et al. 2001). More studies have yet to be carried out to determine if the coffee plants are directly benefitting from these microbes, however.

More evidence of beneficial impact on a dicot species from diazotrophs has been documented for alfalfa (*Medicago* sp.). The *K. pneumoniae* strain Kp342 isolated from maize was inoculated onto the dicots, alfalfa and *Arabidopsis*, and the monocots, wheat and rice (Dong et al. 2003). This strain was a highly effective colonizer of monocots, requiring an inoculum amount of only one colony-forming unit to yield a high colonization. By contrast, the type strain for this species, a clinical isolate, required a 1,000-fold higher inoculum concentration and still colonized to a 100-fold lower level. Because of this strain difference, it is clear that the endophyte is an active participant in the colonization process. There were also differences in the colonization of monocots and dicots. The monocots were colonized to a level 100× higher than the dicots; however, the dicot species in the study were not the natural hosts for this maize endophyte.

9.3.3 Diazotrophic Endophytes from Bioenergy Crops: Poplar and Willow

In most of the previous examples of diazotrophic endophytes isolated from plants, the crop species were tropical. Only recently research has begun on diazotrophic endophytic microbes of the temperate climate, high biomass plants, poplar (*Populus* sp.) and willow (*Salix* sp.). Endophytic *Rhizobium tropici* was isolated from hybrid cottonwood (Doty et al. 2005). Although this species is known for its ability to nodulate an unusually wide diversity of legumes, its endophytic nature in non-legumes had not been previously reported.

In their native habitat, poplar and willow grow vigorously alongside rivers in rocky substrates with no organic matter (Fig. 9.3). Analysis of the stem tissues of poplar and willow in such an environment revealed large numbers of putative

Fig. 9.3 Poplar (*Populus trichocarpa*) and willow (*Salix sitchensis*) grow in nutrient-limited, rocky substrates in their native habitat in Western Washington state, USA. A variety of putative N-fixing endophytes were isolated from the stems (Doty et al. 2009)

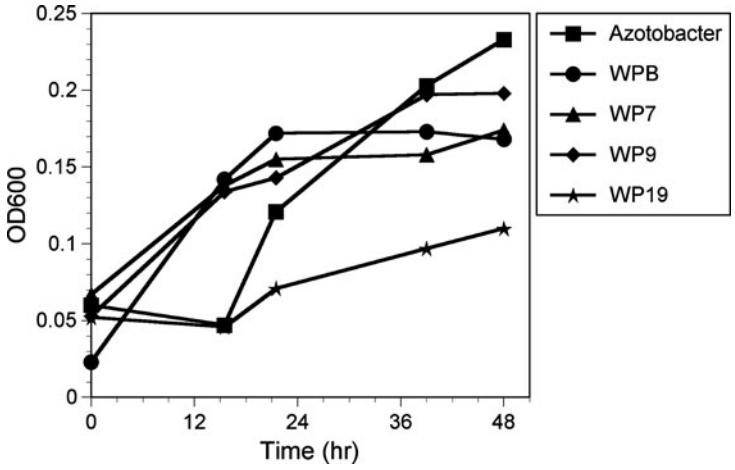


Fig. 9.4 Growth of wild poplar (WP) endophytes in nitrogen-free medium. *Azotobacter vinelandii* was included as a positive control. Although several of the endophytes had similar growth, only strain WPB was positive in the acetylene reduction assay (Doty et al. 2009)

diazotrophic endophytic bacteria (Doty et al. 2009). The bacterial strains belonged to the genera *Burkholderia*, *Rahnella*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Enterobacter*, *Acinetobacter*, *Sphingomonas*, and *Pseudomonas*. The strains grew well in nitrogen-free medium, and some examples are shown in Fig. 9.4. Of 14 isolates that grew on nitrogen-free medium that were analyzed further, only 5 were positive in the ARA, and of these, only 1 had strong activity. This isolate, *B. vietnamiensis*

strain WPB, was chosen for further study (Xin et al. 2009). The *nif*HDK cluster was cloned and sequenced, and showed a high identity with other *B. vietnamiensis* strains. The ^{15}N incorporation assay as well as the ARA demonstrated that strain WPB was fixing nitrogen aerobically. In addition, WPB produced high levels of the phytohormone, indole-3-acetic acid. When Kentucky bluegrass (Xin et al. 2009), corn, and rice (Redman and Doty, unpublished) were inoculated with WPB, the growth of the plants was increased. Inoculated bluegrass had 42% higher overall biomass, and 37% higher nitrogen content. The effectiveness of WPB for growth enhancement of poplar is currently being studied at the levels of greenhouse growth and in the field at sites with different levels of nitrogen using both wild-type and *nif* H mutant strains.

Given the natural habitat of poplar and willow alongside rivers that flood regularly, an advantage of diazotrophic endophytes over diazotrophs requiring root nodulation seems clear (Doty et al. 2009). While any investment into the development of root nodules would be lost after each flooding event that brings in additional silt and rocks, investments into symbioses with endophytes within the stems would be unaffected. In the areas from which the poplar and willow endophytes were isolated, alder trees with their root nodules of nitrogen-fixing *Frankia* were also present, but much further from the banks of the river, outside the flood zone. It remains to be seen if other colonizing plant species subjected to regular flooding are more likely to have symbioses with diazotrophic endophytes rather than with nitrogen-fixing bacteria requiring root nodules.

9.4 Conclusions

The use of nitrogen-fixing endophytes to enhance the growth of agricultural crops and bioenergy crops could become an effective strategy for more environmentally sustainable production. With the growing need for increased food and bioenergy biomass but with a greater understanding of the implications of conventional-intensive agriculture, the time is right for a greater emphasis on biological mechanisms for improved plant growth. Adding beneficial microbes to only the rhizosphere of agricultural crops has not been very successful (Sturz and Nowak 2000). Endophytes may have an advantage over this approach since there would be less competition as there is when adding soil bacteria to the established rhizosphere communities. In some of the cases described in this review, it is clear that diazotrophic endophytes can provide a substantial amount of fixed nitrogen to the plants. The strain and cultivar specificities seen in some of the examples point to the necessity of further research to understand the plant–microbe communications necessary for effective nitrogen fixation in non-legumes.

Some caution must be exercised before widespread application of this technology. In many of the studies, *Burkholderia* isolates were found to perform best in the nitrogen fixation assays and strongly increased plant growth. However, some isolates of *Burkholderia* species are associated with human lung diseases

(Parke 2005). Species in the Burkholderia cepacia complex (Bcc) have enormous potential as biocontrol agents, as degraders of harmful environmental pollutants, and as plant growth promoters. They are naturally abundant in soil, water, and plants. Some isolates are registered for use as microbial pesticides. But on the other side, some Bcc strains are opportunistic human pathogens, and some can cause fatal lung infection in the patients with cystic fibrosis (CF). Persons with this genetic disorder have an abnormally thick mucus in the lungs that can be colonized by some bacteria. At this time, it is not clear what marks certain strains as being pathogenic. In a study of several isolates of *B. cenocepacia* from clinical and environmental settings, it was determined that the environmental samples were not invasive according to an in vitro assay (Pirone et al. 2008). However, all the isolates were able to persist in lungs of infected mice, and all had the virulence-associated genes (*opc*I, *cci*L, and *ami*L). *B. vietnamiensis* was one of the species with strong plant growth-promoting activity. This species is present in 5.9% of the patients with CF, but there are no reports of it being associated with Cepacia syndrome, decreased survival, or transmissibility (Chiarini et al. 2006). In 2003, the US Environmental Protection Agency ruled that Bcc strains can be used only for bioremediation (Chiarini et al. 2006). However, since Bcc strains have high identity in the 16S rDNA genes, but only 30–60% DNA hybridization, it seems that an all-encompassing ban on Bcc strains is not appropriate given the wide diversity in this genus. It has been suggested that a revised ruling be made such that non-pathogenic Bcc strains can be used in agriculture (Chiarini et al. 2006).

Considering the enormous potential impact of the use of nitrogen-fixing endophytes on global crop production, funding for research in this area is limited. Many of the papers described in this review cited only partial support, institutional support, or individual fellowships as the funding sources for the research. There needs to be a greater public awareness of this environmentally-friendly, biologically based method for increasing plant growth. The study of diazotrophic endophytes impacts both basic and applied science. The discovery of diazotrophic endophytes in poplar and willow helps explain the biology of these and maybe other colonizing tree species. It may be that many non-leguminous plants in nutrient-poor environments have symbiotic relationships with nitrogen-fixing endophytes. It is essential that sustainable agricultural practices are developed that use resources more efficiently, maintain environmental health, and yet increase the food supply. With more study of the impacts of diazotrophic endophytes on plants, we can better understand the role of endophytes in natural systems as well as utilize that information for a new revolution in agriculture that is better for the environment.

References

Bhattacharjee RB, Singh A, Mukhopadhyay SN (2008) Use of nitrogen-fixing bacteria as biofertiliser for non-legumes: prospects and challenges. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 80:199–209

Boddey RM (1995) Biological nitrogen fixation in sugarcane: a key to energetically viable biofuel production. CRC Crit Rev Plant Sci 14:263–279

Caballero-Mellado J, Martinez-Aguilar L, Paredes-Valdez G, Estrada-de Los Santos P (2004) *Burkholderia unamae* sp. nov., an N_2-fixing rhizospheric and endophytic species. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54:1165–1172

Chiarini L, Bevivino A, Dalmastri C, Tabacchioni S, Visca P (2006) *Burkholderia cepacia* complex species: health hazards and biotechnological potential. Trends Microbiol 14:277–286

Cocking EC (2005) Intracellular colonization of cereals and other crop plants by nitrogen-fixing bacteria for reduced inputs of synthetic nitrogen fertilizers. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Plant 41:369–373

Cohjo EH, Reis VM, Schenberg AC, Dobereiner J (1993) Interactions of *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* with an amylolytic yeast in nitrogen-free batch culture. FEMS Microbiol Lett 106:23–31

Cook RJ, Thomashow LS, Weller DM, Fujimoto D, Mazzola M, Bangera G, Kim DS (1995) Molecular mechanisms of defense by rhizobacteria against root disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92:4197–4201

Dalton DA, Kramer S, Azios N, Fusaro S, Cahill E, Kennedy C (2004) Endophytic nitrogen fixation in dune grasses (*Ammophila arenaria* and *Elymus mollis*) from Oregon. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 49:469–479

de Bont JAM, Albers RAJM (1976) Microbial metabolism of ethylene. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 42:73–80

Dobereiner J (1992) History and new perspectives of diazotrophs in association with non-leguminous plants. Symbiosis 13:1–13

Dong YM, Iniguez AL, Triplet EW (2003) Quantitative assessments of the host range and strain specificity of endophytic colonization by *Klebsiella pneumoniae* 342. Plant Soil 257:49–59

Doty SL, Dosher MR, Singleton GL, Moore AL, van Aken B, Stettler RF, Strand SE, Gordon MP (2005) Identification of an endophytic *Rhizobium* in stems of *Populus*. Symbiosis 39:27–36

Doty SL, Oakely B, Xin G, Kang JW, Singleton G, Khan Z, Vajzovic A, Staley JT (2009) Diazotrophic endophytes of native black cottonwood and willow. Symbiosis 47:23–33

Elmerich C, Zamaroczy M, Arsene F, Pereg L, Paquelin A, Kaminski A (1997) Regulation of nif gene expression and nitrogen metabolism in *Azospirillum*. Soil Biol Biochem 29:847–852

Flores-Encarnacion M, Contreras-Zentella M, Soto-Urzua L, Aguilar GR, Baca BE, Escamilla JE (1999) The respiratory system and diazotropic activity of *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* PAL5. J Bacteriol 181:6987–6995

Fuentes-Ramirez LE, Bustillos-Cristales R, Tapia-Hernandez A, Jimenez-Salgado T, Wang ET, Martinez-Romero E, Caballero-Mellado J (2001) Novel nitrogen-fixing acetic acid bacteria, *Gluconacetobacter johannae* sp. nov. and *Gluconacetobacter azotocaptans* sp. nov., associated with coffee plants. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 51:1305–1314

Gallon JR (1992) Reconciling the incompatible: N_2 fixation and O_2. New Phytol 122:571–609

Govindarajan M, Balandreau J, Muthukumarasamy R, Revathi G, Lakshminarasimhan C (2006) Improved yield of micropropagated sugarcane following inoculation by endophytic *Burkholderia vietnamiensis*. Plant Soil 280:239–252

Govindarajan M, Balandreau J, Kwon SW, Weon HY, Lakshminarasimhan C (2008) Effects of the inoculation of *Burkholderia vietnamensis* and related endophytic diazotrophic bacteria on grain yield of rice. Microb Ecol 55:21–37

Hardoim PR, van Overbeek LS, Elsas JD (2008) Properties of bacterial endophytes and their proposed role in plant growth. Trends Microbiol 16:463–471

Hill WA, Bacon-Hill P, Crossman SM, Stevens C (1983) Characterization of N_2-fixing bacteria associated with sweet potato roots. Can J Microbiol 29:860–862

Hirsch AM (2004) Plant–microbe symbioses: a continuum from commensalism to parasitism. Symbiosis 37:345–363

Hurek T, Handley LL, Reinhold-Hurek B, Piche Y (2002) *Azoarcus* grass endophytes contribute fixed nitrogen to the plant in an unculturable state. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:233–242

Iniguez AL, Dong Y, Triplett EW (2004) Nitrogen fixation in wheat provided by *Klebsiella pneumoniae* 342. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:1078–1085

Jimenez-Salgado T, Fuentes-Ramirez LE, Tapia-Hernandez A, Mascarua-Esparza MA, Martinez-Romero E, Caballero-Mellado J (1997) *Coffea arabica* L., a new host plant for *Acetobacter diazotrophicus*, and isolation of other nitrogen-fixing acetobacteria. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:3676–3683

Khan Z, Doty SL (2009) Characterization of bacterial endophytes of sweet potato plants. Plant Soil 322:197–207

Masson-Boivin C, Giraud E, Perret X, Batut J (2009) Establishing nitrogen-fixing symbiosis with legumes: how many rhizobium recipes? Trends Microbiol 17:458–466

Montanez A, Abreu C, Gill PR, Hardarson G, Sicardi M (2009) Biological nitrogen fixation in maize (*Zea mays* L.) by ^{15}N isotope-dilution and identification of associated culturable diazotrophs. Biol Fertil Soils 45:253–263

Nogueira EM, Vinagre F, Masuda HP, Vargas C, de Padua VLM, da Silva FR, dos Santos RV, Baldani JI, Ferreira PCG, Hemerly AS (2001) Expression of sugarcane genes induced by inoculation with *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* and *Herbaspirillum rubrisubalbicans*. Genet Mol Biol 24:199–206

Oliveira ALM, Urquiga S, Dobereiner J, Baldani JI (2002) The effect of inoculating endophytic N_2-fixing bacteria on micropropagated sugarcane plants. Plant Soil 242:205–215

Oliveira ALM, Stoffels M, Schmid M, Reis VM, Baldani JI, Hartmann A (2009) Colonization of sugarcane plantlets by mixed inoculations with diazotrophic bacteria. Eur J Soil Biol 45:106–113

Parke JL (2005) *Burkholderia cepacia*: friend or foe? Plant Health Instructor doi:10.1094/PHII-2000-0926-01

Paula MA, Reis VM, Dobereiner J (1991) Interactions of *Golum clarum* with *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* in infection of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*), sugarcane (*Saccharum* spp.), and sweet sorghum (*Sorghum vulgare*). Biol Fertil Soils 11:111–115

Peplow M (2005) Farms spew out nitrogen oxides. news@nature.com 050718

Pirone L, Bragonzi A, Farcomeni A, Paroni M, Auriche C, Conese M, Chiarini L, Dalmastri C, Bevivino A, Ascenzioni F (2008) *Burkholderia cenocepacia* strains isolated from cystic fibrosis patients are apparently more invasive and more virulent than rhizosphere strains. Environ Microbiol 10:2773–2784

Reinhold-Hurek B, Hurek T (1998) Life in grasses: diazotrophic endophytes. Trends Microbiol 6:139–144

Reis VM, Baldani JI, Baldani VLD, Dobereiner J (2000) Biological dinitrogen fixation in gramineae and palm trees. Crit Rev Plant Sci 10:227–247

Reis VM, Estrada-de Los SP, Tenorio-Salgado S, Vogel J, Stoffels M, Guyon S, Mavingui P, Baldani VL, Schmid M, Baldani JI, Balandreau J, Hartmann A, Caballero-Mellado J (2004) *Burkholderia tropica* sp. nov., a novel nitrogen-fixing, plant-associated bacterium. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54:2155–2162

Reiter B, Burgmann H, Burg K, Sessitsch A (2003) Endophytic *nif*H gene diversity in African sweet potato. Can J Microbiol 49:549–555

Sevilla M, Burris RH, Gunapala N, Kennedy C (2001) Comparison of benefit to sugarcane plant growth and $^{15}N_2$ incorporation following inoculation of sterile plants with *Acetobacter diazotrophicus* wild-type and *Nif*-mutant strains. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 14:358–366

Siciliano SD, Fortin N, Mihoc A, Wisse G, Labelle S, Beaumier D, Ouellette D, Roy R, Whyte LG, Banks MK, Schwab P, Lee K, Greer CW (2001) Selection of specific endophytic bacterial genotypes by plants in response to soil contamination. Appl Environ Microbiol 6:2469–2475

Silva-Froufe LGD, Boddey RM, Reis VM (2009) Quantification of natural populations of *Gluconacetobacter diazotrophicus* and *Herbaspirillum* spp. in sugar cane (*Saccharum* spp.) using different polyclonal antibodies. Braz J Microbiol 40:866–878

Stettler RF (2009) Cottonwood and the river of time. University of Washington Press, Seattle, WA

Stoltzfus JR, So R, Malarvithi PP, Ladha JK, de Bruijn FJ (1997) Isolation of endophytic bacteria from rice and assessment of their potential for supplying rice with biologically fixed nitrogen. Plant Soil 194:25–36

Sturz AV, Nowak J (2000) Endophytic communities of rhizobacteria and the strategies required to create yield enhancing associations with crops. Appl Soil Ecol 15:183–190

Taghavi S, Barac T, Greenberg B, Borremans B, Vangronsveld J, van der Lelie D (2005) Horizontal gene transfer to endogenous endophytic bacteria from poplar improves phytoremediation of toluene. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:8500–8505

Terakado-Tonooka J, Ohwaki Y, Yamakawa H, Tanaka F, Yoneyama T, Fujihara S (2008) Expressed *nifH* genes of endophytic bacteria detected in field-grown sweet potatoes (*Ipomoea batatas* L.). Microbes Environ 23:89–93

Townsend AR, Howarth RW (2010) Fixing the global nitrogen problem. Sci Am 302(2):64–71

Urquiga S, Cruz KHS, Boddey RM (1992) Contribution of nitrogen fixation to sugar cane: ^{15}N and nitrogen balance estimates. Soil Sci Soc Am J 56:105–114

Vance CP (2001) Symbiotic nitrogen fixation and phosphorous acquisition. Plant nutrition in a world of declining renewable resources. Plant Physiol 127:390–397

Weyens N, van der Lelie D, Artois T, Smeets K, Taghavi S, Newman L, Carleer R, Vangronsveld J (2009) Bioaugmentation with engineered endophytic bacteria improves contaminant fate in phytoremediation. Environ Sci Technol 43:9413–9418

Xin G, Zhang G, Kang JW, Staley JT, Doty SL (2009) A diazotrophic, indole-3-acetic acid-producing endophyte from wild cottonwood. Biol Fertil Soils 45:669–674

Yoneyama T, Terakado J, Masuda T (1998) Natural abundance of ^{15}N in sweetpotato, pumpkin, sorghum and castor bean: possible input of N_2-derived nitrogen in sweetpotato. Biol Fertil Soils 26:152–154

Zhang L, Hurek T, Reinhold-Hurek B (2007) A *nifH*-based oligonucleotide microarray for functional diagnostics of nitrogen-fixing microorganisms. Microb Ecol 53:456–470

Chapter 10
Endophytic Actinomycetes: Biocontrol Agents and Growth Promoters

Masafumi Shimizu

10.1 Introduction

There has been a large body of literature describing potential uses of plant-associated bacteria (including actinomycetes) as agents to stimulate plant growth and/or management of soil and plant health, as reviewed by various workers (Hallmann et al. 1997; Winding et al. 2004; Compant et al. 2005; El-Tarabily and Sivasithamparam 2006). Most of these bacteria and actinomycetes (sometimes described as actinobacteria) were isolated from soil, the rhizosphere, and the phyllosphere. Their antipathogen potentials have been demonstrated in the laboratory but their direct association with plants has not definitively been demonstrated. It was Smith (1957) who successfully isolated *Micromonospora* sp. from tissue sections of an apparently healthy tomato and found that this actinomycete showed a strong inhibitory effect to *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*. He reisolated the same strain from 4 of 20 tomato plants previously inoculated with this strain, suggesting its endophytic residence in tomato. Endophytic microbes colonizing inside plant tissues usually get nutrition and protection from the host plant. In return, they confer profoundly enhanced fitness to the host plants by producing certain functional metabolites (Tan and Zou 2001). These metabolites may promote growth of the host plants and give adverse effects to other pathogenic microbes growing within the same plants. Endophytic actinomycetes probably produce antimicrobial metabolites within their host plants, because actinomycetes, for example *Streptomyces* species, are well known for their ability to produce biologically active secondary metabolites, particularly antibiotics (Loria et al. 1997). In parallel with pharmaceutical interest of endophytic actinomycetes as a source of novel antibiotics (Strobel 2003), few microbiologists have considered the use of

M. Shimizu
Laboratory of Plant Pathology, Faculty of Applied Biological Sciences, Gifu University, 1-1 Yanagido, Gifu City 501-1193, Japan
e-mail: shimizma@gifu-u.ac.jp

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_10,

endophytic actinomycete biocontrol agents over the last 2 decades. Kunoh and colleagues (Kunoh 2002; Shimizu et al. 2001a) assumed that if useful endophytic actinomycetes isolated from field-grown plants can successfully colonize tissue-cultured seedlings, the seedlings could become resistant to various plant pathogens. Because tissue-culture flasks are usually axenic, such a novel technique should allow this actinomycete to colonize its host plant without competition and/or antagonism by any other microbes in soil (Kunoh 2002). Most of endophytic actinomycetes latently reside in the internal tissues of nonsymptomatic plants without causing any adverse effects to the host (Hasegawa et al. 2006). Endophytic actinomycetes have been demonstrated to improve and promote growth of host plants, as well as to reduce disease symptoms and/or various environmental stresses. Management of beneficial potentials of endophytic actinomycetes to favor plant growth could be realized by a better understanding of the physiological and molecular interactions between these microbes and plants.

This chapter examines the current states and approaches to help realize the potential of endophytic actinomycetes in plant-disease control and plant growth promotion.

10.2 Isolation of Endophytic Actinomycetes

This section reviews brief information on isolation of endophytic actinomycetes with respect to various sources and procedures involved.

10.2.1 Isolation Sources

In the nineteenth century some actinomycetes were proved to be closely associated with living plants, giving beneficial and/or adverse effects to their host. As reviewed by Okazaki (2003), Brunckhorst isolated the genus *Frankia* from nonlegume root nodules in 1886, suggesting its role of nitrogen fixation in roots, similar to *Rhizobium* in legume plants. Later, Thaxter first reported pathogenic actinomycetes, *Streptomyces scabies*, a causal pathogen of potato scab in 1890. The scab organism sometimes occurs in soils where potatoes have never been cultivated, indicating that this species is both soil-inhabiting and endophytic (Loria et al. 1997). Hasegawa et al. (1978) isolated a new genus of actinomycetes, *Actinosynnema*, from a grass blade, the first actinomycete of plant origin in Japan. Matsukuma et al. (1994), Okazaki et al. (1995) and Matsumoto et al. (1998) reported that a variety of actinomycetes inhabit a wide range of plants as symbionts, parasites or saprophytes, and most of them belonging to the genera, *Streptomyces* and *Microbispora*. They isolated these species because of their interest in sources of novel antibiotics for medicinal purposes. As evident from these earlier papers,

a variety of endophytic actinomycetes inhabit various organs and tissues of many terrestrial and aquatic vascular plants. Commonly, multiple strains of endophytic actinomycetes have been isolated from a single plant (Table 10.1).

Table 10.1 Endophytic actinomycete genera within past 10 years

Plant species	Actinomycete taxa[a]	References
Crop plants		
Triticum aestivum	*Streptomyces*, *Microbispora*, *Micromonospora*, *Nocardioides*	Coombs and Franco (2003a)
Cucumis sativus	*Streptomyces*	Shimizu et al. (2009)
Lupinus termis	*Actinoplanes*	El-Tarabily (2003)
Zea mays	*Microbispora*, *Streptomyces*, *Streptosporangium*	de Araújo et al. (2000)
Lycopersicon esculentum	*Streptomyces*, *Streptoverticillium*, *Nocardia*	Cao et al. (2004b)
Oryza sativa	*Streptomyces*, *Nocardioides*	Tian et al. (2007)
Brassica campestris	*Microbispora*, *Streptomyces*, *Micromonospora*	Lee et al. (2008)
Musa acuminata	*Streptomyces*, *Actinomadura*, *Streptovarticillium*, *Streptosporangium*, *Nocardia*	Cao et al. (2004a)
Woody plants		
Taxus spp.	*Streptomyces*, *Micromonospora*, *Nocardioforme*, *Actinoplanes*, *Actinomadura*, *Kitasatospora*	Caruso et al. (2000)
Acacia auriculiformis	*Actinoallomurus*	Thamchaipenet et al. (2010)
Rhododendron sp.	*Streptomyces*	Shimizu et al. (2000)
Kalmia latifolia	*Streptomyces*	Nishimura et al. (2002)
Aquilaria crassna	*Streptomyces*, *Nonomuraea*, *Actinomadura*, *Pseudonocardia*, *Nocardia*	Nimnoi et al. (2010)
Medicinal plants		
Sambucus adnata	*Glycomyces*	Gu et al. (2007)
Alpinia galanga	*Streptomyces*, *Nocardia*, *Microbispora*, *Micromonospora*	Taechowisan et al. (2008)
Kennedia nigricans	*Streptomyces*	Castillo et al. (2002)
Maytenus austroyunnanensis	*Saccharopolyspora*, *Actinomadura*	Qin et al. (2008, 2009)
Thottea grandiflora	*Streptomyces*	Ghadin et al. (2008)
Azadirachta indica	*Streptomyces*, *Streptosporangium*, *Microbispora*, *Streptoverticillium*, *Saccharomonospora*, *Nocardia*	Verma et al. (2009)
Others		
Monstera sp.	*Streptomyces*	Ezra et al. (2004)
Paphiopedilum appletonianum	*Streptomyces*	Tsavkelova et al. (2007)

[a]Genera are listed in order of reported abundance

10.2.2 Isolation Procedures

Colonization of actinomycetes in plant tissues is largely influenced by the environmental circumstances surrounding the host plants such as the type and pH of soil, the content of inorganics and organics in soil, rainfall, sunshine, air and soil temperatures. In addition, endophytic actinomycetes may occur in low numbers and sometimes in localized positions within plants, so that it is almost impossible to find their specific affiliation to their host plant.

For isolation of endophytes, attention needs to be paid to avoid contamination with undesirable epiphytic microbes. It is recommended to first sterilize the entire surface of the samples, followed by cutting their organs and tissues into pieces with a sterilized knife, if necessary. Sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl) is the most commonly used disinfectant. Plant samples usually are sterilized by sequential immersion in 70–99% ethanol for 1–5 min, and 1–5% NaOCl for 3–20 min, followed by repeated rinsing in sterile water to remove residual NaOCl. Hydrogen peroxide and mercuric chloride are also effective disinfectants (Bandara et al. 2006; Ghodhbane-Gtari et al. 2010; Gurney and Mantle 1993; Merzaeva and Shirokikh 2010). Sardi et al. (1992) used vapor of propylene oxide instead of the liquid disinfectants. The surface treatment with ethanol alone is not sufficiently effective to epiphytic bacteria (Zin et al. 2010). Double or triple surface-sterilization with a combination of ethanol and other disinfectants is also recommended to eliminate epiphytic microbes. The efficacy of surface sterilization can be enhanced by common use of a disinfectant with surfactants such as Tween 20 and Tween 80 which increase affinity of the disinfectant to hydrophobic waxy plant surfaces.

Segments of the sterilized plant are placed onto an appropriate agar medium, followed by incubation at an appropriate temperature (normally 25–30°C). Another troublesome matter is often caused by other unwanted endophytic fungi and/or bacteria harboring within the plant segments. To suppress growth of such undesirable endophytes, several selective media were devised: media of humic acid-vitamin agar (Hayakawa and Nonomura 1987), starch casein agar (Küster and Williams 1964), water yeast-extract (Crawford et al. 1993), and S medium (Baker 1990). Supplementation with antimicrobial compounds such as nalidixic acid and trimethoprim (Hayakawa et al. 1996), nystatin (Williams and Davies 1965), or cycloheximide (Caruso et al. 2000) improves selectivity of actinomycetes. Because actinomycetes grow slowly relative to other bacteria and fungi, a few weeks to several months are generally required before visualization of their colonies on the surface of specimens. Rapidly growing microbes that appear within the first 2 weeks are bacterial and/or fungal contaminants.

Individual mycelial colonies are picked-up with a sterilized toothpick and streaked to newly prepared agar plates. Repeating this step results in the recovery of single isolates. The dilution plating method is also sometimes employed. Aliquots of the mycelial suspensions serially diluted with sterile water or buffer solution are spread onto newly prepared agar medium plates. Following incubation, single colonies are individually transferred onto another set of newly prepared agar

media. Mycelia and spores are taken from the medium surface and stored in 20% glycerol solution or 10% glycerol solution supplemented with 10% dimethyl-sulfoxide solution at −80°C.

The final culture is often contaminated with nonactinomycetous microbes, mostly bacteria. The microfilter technique developed by Hirsch and Christensen (1983) is effective to eliminate such contaminants. A trituration technique is another method used to isolate endophytic actinomycetes (El-Tarabily 2003), although complete surface sterilization is required for this technique and validation of sterility should hold another key for success of isolation (Hallmann et al. 1997). Coombs and Franco (2003a) imprinted the surface-sterilized samples onto agar medium and confirmed no growth of any epiphytic contaminants after several days of incubation. El-Tarabily (2003) focused attention to the final buffer solution that was used for rinsing the disinfectant-sterilized specimens. He incubated the agar plates on which the solution had been spread, and then confirmed no growth of any organisms on the plates. His careful protocol assured that the isolated actinomycete was endophytic. Furthermore, Cao et al. (2004b) submerged the *Streptomyces* isolate in the disinfectant solutions that had been originally used for surface sterilization of plant segments to confirm no growth of this isolate after incubation on medium plates. This result assured that the target isolate was not epiphytic but endophytic. They considered that the obtained isolate was protected from the surface-sterilizer by plant tissues and thus was not killed during the surface sterilization with the disinfectant. This simple validation test was accepted and used by other researchers (Qin et al. 2009; Tan et al. 2006; Tian et al. 2004; Verma et al. 2009).

10.3 Diversity and Organ-Specificity of Endophytic Actinomycetes

Information on diversity of endophytic actinomycetes and their organ-specificity is significant not only to help in the screening of beneficial strains but also to understand their ecological roles. As described above, to date a number of endophytic actinomycetes were found by various culture-dependent methods. *Streptomyces* is the largest and most dominant genus, comprising nearly 50% of the total population of soil-inhabiting actinomycetes, which are probably saprophytes (Thakur et al. 2007). *Streptomyces* species are most frequently isolated from plant tissues as well as *Microbispora* species (Okazaki 2003; Rosenblueth and Martinez-Romero 2006; Takahashi and Omura 2003). Inderiati and Muliani (2008) reported that the majority of endophytic actinomycetes recovered from tobacco plants were classified as species of *Streptomyces*. Likewise, Sardi et al. (1992) reported that 482 of 499 isolates from a variety of plants were *Streptomyces* spp. Moreover, Verma et al. (2009) showed that *Streptomyces* spp. occupied about 50% of 55 separate strains obtained from Indian lilac. Interestingly, the majority of endophytic *Streptomyces* species frequently isolated from various countries are

limited to species that include *S. aureus*, *S. galilaeus*, *S. caviscabies*, *S. setonii*, *S. cyaneus* and *S. thermocarboxydus* (Castillo et al. 2007; Coombs and Franco 2003a; Inderiati and Franco 2008; Tan et al. 2006; Tian et al. 2007, Verma et al. 2009), suggesting that these species could have a higher compatibility to a wide range of plants than other species. The genus *Microbispora* appears to be predominantly comprised of endophytes. Among a total of 53 actinomycete isolates that de Araújo et al. (2000) obtained from maize, 33 were *Microbispora* spp. and only 6 were *Streptomyces* spp. According to Lee et al. (2008), *Microbispora* spp. (67%) were the most common isolates of Chinese cabbage, followed by *Streptomyces* spp. (12%) and *Micromonospora* spp. (11%). Takahashi and Omura (2003) isolated 33 strains of *Microbispora*, 32 *Streptomyces*, and 10 other rare actinomycetes from fallen leaves of nine genera of higher plants. Thus, the genera *Streptomyces* and *Microbispora* seem to be both soil-inhabiting and endophytic, although only a limited number of species may have this two-way habitation. Kizuka et al. (1998) noted that *Microbispora* spp. were isolated more frequently from plant leaves than soil, suggesting that they could have mutualistic associations with plants.

The majority of endophytic actinomycetes have been isolated from roots rather than other organs (Verma et al. 2009; Zin et al. 2010). El-Tarabily and colleagues (2003, 2009) estimated the culturable population of endophytic actinomycetes in cucumber and lupin roots as approximately 10^5 cfu/g fresh root weight. Diversity of actinomycetes is also relatively broader in roots. Tian et al. (2007) analyzed the 16S rRNA genes of 45 and 33 clones of endophytic actinomycete isolates obtained from roots and stems, respectively, and found that the clones of root origin were affiliated with nine genera of known actinobacteria and other uncultured (unidentified) actinobacteria, whereas those of stem origin comprised only four genera of the former and other uncultured actinobacteria. This result suggests that a variety of known and unidentified actinobacteria reside inside roots than stem region.

The relatively larger population and broader diversity of endophytic actinomycetes in roots indicate that soil-inhabitant actinomycetes like endophytic bacteria can readily move to soil-contacting roots (Zinniel et al. 2002). In fact, Conn and Franco (2004) demonstrated that the density of endophytic actinobacteria in wheat roots detected by terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism (T-RFLP) was closely related to that of soil microflora: a larger diversity was detected in roots of wheat grown in soil having a large population of actinobacteria. Several other factors such as edaphic factors, cultivars, and physiological status of plants may also influence the population and diversity of endophytic actinomycetes. According to Tian et al. (2004), rice plants grown in alkaline soil harbor diverse endophytic *Streptomyces* spp. Cao et al. (2004a) reported that more diverse species of *Streptomyces* were isolated from leaves of banana trees wilted due to infection of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *cubensis* than those of uninfected trees. However, the same species of the genus were isolated from roots of both infected and uninfected trees. They considered that in healthy leaves the defense response might be sufficient to block endophytic habitation of *Streptomyces* spp., while in leaves of infected trees the suppressed defense response was insufficient to interfere with entry of opportunistic actinomycetes on phylloplane, resulting in their successful endophytic colonization.

10.4 Mode of Penetration and in Planta Localization of Endophytic Actinomycetes

How do endophytic actinomycetes enter into host plants? And how do they colonize inside plant organs and/or tissues? These are very attractive and important research themes for plant–microbe interactions. Although Rosenblueth and Martinez-Romero (2006) emphasized the importance of in planta evidence of colonization for true endophytes, detailed reports on localization of endophytic actinomycetes are still limited (Hasegawa et al. 2006). In general, individual bacterial cells are unable to penetrate intact epidermal cells because they do not possess penetration structures such as penetration pegs of fungi (Huang 1986). Bacteria commonly enter plant tissues via stomata, wounds, lenticels, projecting areas of lateral roots, and broken trichomes by forming clump of their cells. Most of actinomycetes, however, form branching hyphae that grow on plant surfaces and enter their host plants through natural openings and mechanical and insect wounds. The infection mode of phytopathogenic *Streptomyces* spp. has been well-studied at the ultrastructural level (Loria et al. 1997). *Streptomyces scabies* produces extensive hyphal networks on the surface of potato tubers. The substrate hyphae penetrate the tuber through immature lenticels and mechanical wounds which often occur when tubers are rapidly enlarging. Following penetration, the pathogen grows in the intercellular spaces between or through a few layers of cells which then die, and the pathogen feeds on these cells as a saprophyte (Loria et al. 1997). Hyphae of *S. ipomoeae*, a causal pathogen of soil rot of sweet potato, grow on the root surface and then enter the root through tissues at cell–cell conjunction sites (Clark and Matthews 1987). Both pathogenic *Streptomyces* species often form short branches that emerge from the main hyphae and directly penetrate host cell walls. Yoshida and Yamaguchi (2004) also observed root tumors of melon by scanning electron microscope (SEM) and found that hyphae of a pathogenic *Streptomyces* sp. assembled on the surfaces of the epidermis and the endodermal layers exposed when branch roots were erupted through the root cortex. Proliferation of this pathogen was observed only in the intercellular spaces of the first and second outer layers of tumor tissue. However, details of their entry into the host plant remains unclear.

Sardi et al. (1992) showed hyphae of *Streptomyces* sp. in cortical tissues of tomato by SEM but were unable to resolve the detail of the interaction with the host cells. Taechowisan and Lumyong (2003) showed SEM images of aerial hyphae of unidentified actinomycetes which had grown through the root epidermis of *Zingiber officinale*. Similarly, Okazaki (2003) showed the presence of hyphae and sporophores of *Microbispora* sp. on the surface and inside epidermal cells of a host plant. El-Tarabily et al. (2009) also showed distribution of sporangia of *Actinoplanes campanulatus* within cells of the cucumber root cortex, but again, they did not provide any information on the mode of its entry into the host plant. Earlier, Coombs and Franco (2003b) traced infection process of endophytic *Streptomyces* sp. strain EN27 by tagging it with green fluorescent protein (GFP). They coated germinating seeds of wheat with GFP-tagged *Streptomyces* sp. EN27

and harvested at every 24 h for detection of its localization in the seed tissues using a laser scanning confocal microscope. They detected the strain only in the embryo and around the break in the seed husk where the embryo emerged from the seed during the 24 h incubation. After 3 days, GFP-expressing microcolonies of the strain were seen more frequently in the embryo tissue of the seed, the emerging radicle of the embryo, and in the endosperm than at 24 h, indicating continuation of its active growth in the seed. Although they failed to demonstrate the initial penetration stage of the strain, they speculated that initially the strain may enter the embryo through the breaks of the seed husk and then expand to the endosperm as the seed hydrates from the embryo end. Their observations showed that the endophytic actinomycetes were able to associate with its host at a very early stage in the development of the plant. Subsequently, Franco et al. (2007) provided further information of long-term microscopic observation of wheat seedlings inoculated with GFP-tagged EN27 for up to 4 weeks. They observed that the strain colonized the seminal roots, especially at the root junctions, and the cracks surrounding lateral roots, and sporulated inside the epidermal cells during 3–4 weeks postinoculation. This observation indicates that the strain invaded plant roots through the crevices at lateral root emergence and then multiplied within the cells. Shimizu et al. (2009) inoculated *Streptomyces* sp. MBCu-56 to cucumber leaves and monitored the behavior of its mycelia. The inoculum developed mycelia actively on the leaf surfaces and formed dense mycelial masses especially at the epidermal cell junctions. Some substrate mycelia penetrated the cuticle layer and expanded into the underlying epidermal cells (Fig. 10.1). However, their observation was not enough to resolve inter- and intracellular growth in the epidermis. In more detail, Minamiyama et al. (2003) demonstrated by SEM that when the endophytic *Streptomyces galbus* R-5 (renamed as MBR-5) was spread on the surface of the tissue-culture medium in which rhododendron seedlings were growing, its hyphae extended on leaf surfaces and entered leaf tissues via stomata, and the internal hyphae grew out of stomata and multiplied in substomatal cavities. Interestingly, such hyphae formed short, perpendicular branches similar to those observed in *S. ipomoeae* (Clark and Matthews 1987) and *S. scabies* (Loria et al. 2003). Suzuki et al (2005) examined by transmission electron microscope (TEM) the infection mode of *S. galbus* MBR-5 in leaves of tissue-cultured rhododendron seedlings and confirmed that hyphae entered the leaves through stomatal openings but not through intact cuticle layers (Fig. 10.2). Hyphae were observed individually or in colonies in intercellular spaces between epidermal and mesophyll cells but not inside both cells (Fig. 10.2). Such an infection mode is similar to that of a number of bacterial pathogens (Huang 1986). More interestingly, hyphae colonizing leaf surfaces, penetrating through stomatal openings, and colonizing within intercellular spaces were embedded in an electron-dense, amorphous, mucilage-like material (Fig. 10.2). These observations were consistent with the SEM observation by other workers (Loria et al. 2003; Minamiyama et al. 2003; Sardi et al. 1992; Shimizu et al. 2009). Minamiyama et al. (2003) hypothesized that such materials were probably required for massive colonization of hyphal cells in the stomatal

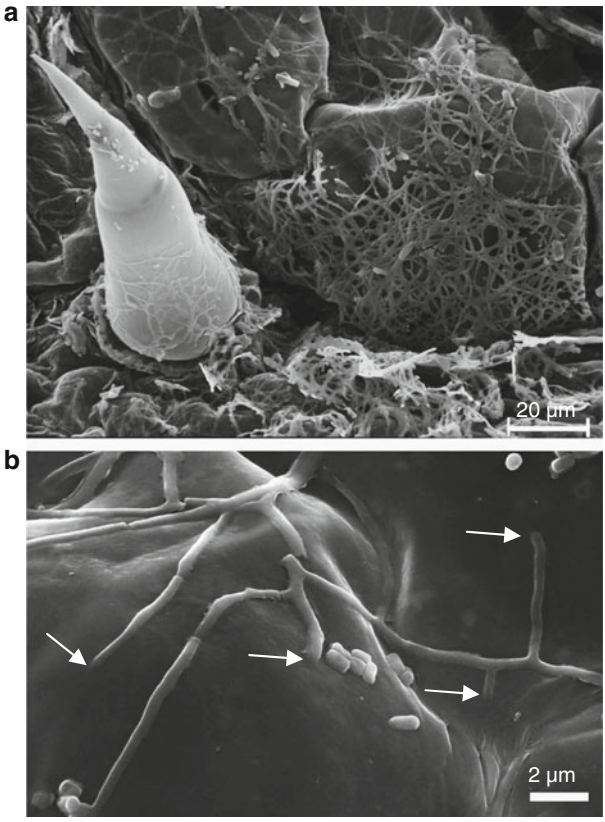


Fig. 10.1 Scanning electron micrographs of the surface of cucumber leaves 8 days after inoculation with *Streptomyces* sp. strain MBCu-56. (**a**) Hyphal networks on the leaf surface. (**b**) Substrate mycelia growing on and beneath the surface of the cuticle layer. *Arrows* indicate the sites of direct penetration of cuticle layer by the hyphae. From Shimizu et al. (2009). Reproduced by permission from Journal of General Plant Pathology vol. 75, © 2009 Springer Japan

openings and adherence of hyphal cells to the surface of the host cells. Likewise, Loria et al. (2003) speculated that a matrix deposited at the interface between pathogenic *Streptomyces* and host plant cells probably contains hydrophobin-like proteins similar to fungal hydrophobins that function in morphogenetic development and in the attachment of hyphae with hydrophobic surfaces (Tucker and Talbot 2001). In fact, production of hydrophobin-like proteins by several *Streptomyces* species was reported by Claessen et al. (2002). Minamiyama et al. (2003) and Suzuki et al. (2005) demonstrated that on the leaf surface of rhododendron, the wax that covered the undulating cuticle layer was degraded beneath the growing hyphae of *S. galbus* MBR-5. This observation was supported by the presence of indigo blue crystals that formed as hydrolytic products of hyphal nonspecific esterase along hyphae on fresh leaves (Suzuki et al. 2005). In addition, MBR-5 was proved to

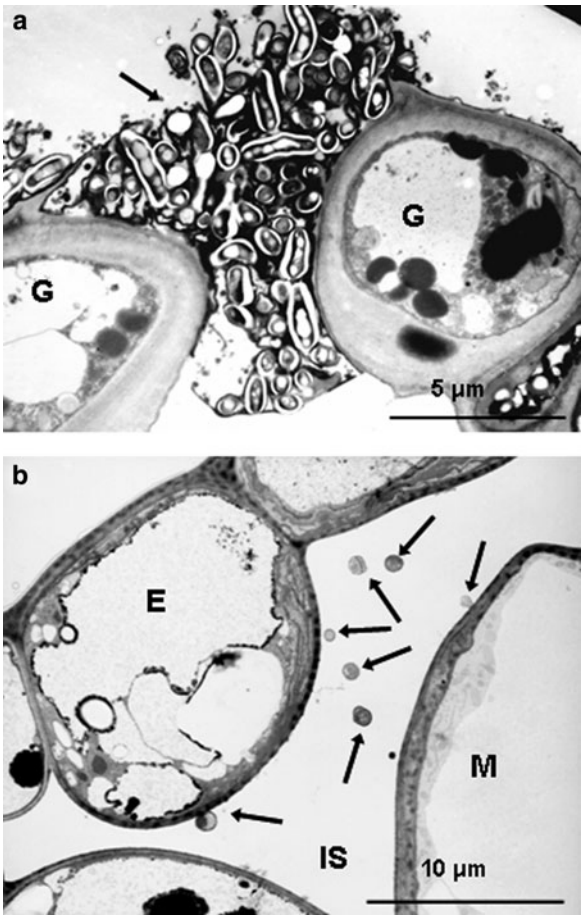


Fig. 10.2 Stomatal penetration and intercellular colonization by *Streptomyces galbus* strain MBR-5. TEM images of rhododendron leaves 60 days after inoculation with MBR-5. (**a**) Mycelia penetrating stomata. A mycelial colony is embedded in an electron-dense material (*G*, guard cell). (**b**) Hyphal cells (*arrows*) in an intercellular space beneath the epidermis (*E*, epidermal cell; *IS*, intercellular space; *M*, mesophyll cell). From Suzuki et al. (2005). Reproduced by permission from Actinomycetologica vol. 19, © 2005 The Society for Actinomycetes Japan

produce other hydrolytic enzymes such as cellulase, xylanase, and pectinase. This strain was able to grow on cellulose, xylan, and pectin as single carbon sources (Minamiyama et al. 2003). Hydrolytic enzymes in the extracellular matrix from fungal spores or hyphae are considered to contribute to adhesion and preparation of the infection court (Mendgen et al. 1996). Considering these reports, it is plausible that endophytic actinomycetes adhere firmly to the host plant surfaces and acquire the nutrition from host surfaces by using extracellular polymers containing adhesive compounds and hydrolytic enzymes, similar to that of fungi.

10.5 Endophytic Actinomycetes as Biological Control Agents

Biological control has gained momentum to mitigate the effects of chemicals widely used for over a century. Actinomycetes group have strong potential for use as biological control agent.

10.5.1 Biocontrol of Soil-Borne Diseases

Soil-borne diseases are very problematic in crop management strategies. The frequent use of highly toxic chemicals for eradication of the soil pathogens often causes environmental hazards. It has been generally considered that biocontrol of such diseases is more desirable than chemical control unless the agent exerts too much pressure on the native microflora. To date, a number of bacteria and fungi with biocontrol activity against soil-borne pathogens have been isolated from soil and the rhizosphere (Chet et al. 1990; Handelsman and Stabb 1996). For example, Thomashow and Weller (1988) showed that *Pseudomonas fluorescens* 2-79 is suppressive to take-all, a major root disease of wheat caused by *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*. Elad et al. (1980) reported a biocontrol isolate of *Trichoderma harzianum* that significantly reduced diseases caused by *Sclerotium rolfsii* and *Rhizoctonia solani* in field experiments with beans, cotton, and tomatoes. Many soil actinomycetes have also been reported as candidates of biocontrol agents for soil-borne pathogens (El-Tarabily et al. 1997; Rothrock and Gottlieb 1984; Tahtamouni et al. 2006).

Endophytic strains of *Microbispora rosea* subsp. *rosea* and *Streptomyces olivochromogenes* were found to be effective in suppressing clubroot of Chinese cabbage caused by *Plasmodiophora brassicae* (Lee et al. 2008). These strains were originally isolated from surface-sterilized roots of Chinese cabbage collected from various regions in Korea. Pretreatment of germinated seeds of cabbage with each of the strains reduced the severity of clubroot by 33–58%. However, the mechanism of their control effects remains unsolved.

Meguro et al. (2004) and Shimizu (2007) conducted noteworthy experiments employing endophytic streptomycete strains (MBR-5 and AOK-30 from rhododendron and mountain laurel, respectively) to tissue-cultured seedlings of rhododendron and mountain laurel in flasks. They found that the seedlings preinoculated with these strains in flasks became resistant to damping-off caused by *Phytophthora cinnamomi* and *Rhizoctonia* sp. after transplanted to plug-tray soil. They isolated the same strains from the inoculated seedlings to assure that the resistance was associated with endophytic colonization of the inoculated strains. This technique has been applied in commercial seedling production in Japan (Hasegawa et al. 2006).

El-Tarabily (2003) reported that an endophytic strain of *Actinoplanes missouriensis* isolated from lupin roots was effective in suppressing root rot of lupin caused by *Plectosporium tabacinum*. In the laboratory he observed degradation of the pathogen hyphae by chitinase, a product of this isolate, and in further glasshouse

experiments he confirmed colonization of the isolate inside lupin roots 8 weeks after inoculation, resulting in significant reduction of the severity of root rot of the host plant. His subsequent experiments aroused our interest in the control mechanism of this isolate. Their results indicated that another endophytic isolate, *A. italicus*, and a separate mutant strain of *A. missouriensis*, both having no potential to produce chitinase, did not lyse the pathogen hyphae and did not affect the severity of root rot in glasshouse tests. Nevertheless, both isolates colonized the lupin roots as similarly as the original isolate of *A. missouriensis*. They suggested that the protective mechanism of the *A. missouriensis* isolate might be attributable to its production of chitinase enzymes and lysis of *P. tabacinum* hyphae with these enzymes. In a separate paper (El-Tarabily et al. 2009), the potential use of endophytic actinomycetes for controlling *Pythium aphanidermatum* in cucumber was described. They evaluated the biocontrol potential of three antagonistic isolates of *Actinoplanes campanulatus*, *Micromonospora chalcea* and *Streptomyces spiralis*, all of which produced high levels of cell-wall degrading enzymes (β-1,3, β-1,4 and β-1,6-glucanases). Irrespective of their individual and combinatorial application to cucumber roots, they significantly reduced the incidence of damping-off and crown- and root-rot with the latter mode of application being more effective than the former. Besides the cell-wall degrading enzymes, *A. campanulatus* and *S. spiralis* produced antifungal volatiles and *M. chalcea* showed a hyperparasitic activity. Hence, the authors assumed that biocontrol effects enhanced by the combinatorial application of three isolates could be attributed to synergistic effects of multiple mechanisms.

Coombs et al. (2004) examined biocontrol efficacy of endophytic actinomycetes against *G. graminis* var. *tritici* of wheat. The six strains which showed significant biocontrol effects in naturally infested soil tests had varied degrees of antifungal activities, from undetectable to strong, in laboratory tests. No consistent correlation between in vitro antibiosis and in planta control activity was observed suggesting that antibiosis might be only one of the contributory factors for biocontrol ability but not enough to account for the control effect in field soil. Similar results on the interaction of endophytic actinomycetes with tomato were obtained by Inderiati and Franco (2008). They noted that 13 of 15 strains having varying levels of antagonistic activity showed the suppressive effects on damping-off caused by *R. solani* significantly. By contrast, one isolate was inactive in vitro but had relatively high disease suppression in vivo, while another isolate of *Streptomyces thermocarboxydus* showed strong in vitro antagonism but resulted in the lowest disease suppression in vivo. They considered that although antibiosis might be the most important mechanism, involvement of other mechanisms cannot be denied because of inconsistent correlation between in vitro antagonism and in vivo biocontrol activity in several strains.

Cao et al. (2004b) reported biocontrol activity of an endophytic *Streptomyces* sp. against damping-off disease of tomato seedlings caused by *R. solani*. A typical antagonist among isolated strains was evaluated for its suppressive effect on damping-off disease of cucumber and tomato seedlings. Unexpectedly, this strain promoted growth of the host plants as well as exhibited disease-suppressive effects on only tomato seedlings, suggesting that this strain could have host specificity to tomato but not to cucumber.

The strain S96 of *Streptomyces* sp. isolated from surface-sterilized banana roots by Cao et al. (2005) concerns the possible association of siderophore production with biocontrol activity. The treatment of roots with this strain was effective to protect the banana plantlet from infection of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense* (Foc), the causal pathogen of Panama disease. The antagonism of this strain against Foc detected on banana tissue extract medium became undetectable if the medium was supplemented with an excess of $FeCl_3$. They assumed that siderophore production by the strain could hold a key for its biocontrol potential. However, further work is desired to give more evidences by experiments using mutant strains lacking siderophore activity.

10.5.2 Biocontrol of Foliar Diseases

A search of the available literature indicated that an effective biocontrol strain of endophytic actinomycete for control of foliar disease was first reported by Shimizu et al. (2001a). Ten actinomycete strains were isolated from field-grown rhododendron plants. Among them, the strain MBR-5 identified as *Streptomyces galbus* showed significant antagonistic activity against major rhododendron pathogens, *Phytophthora cinnamomi* and *Pestalotiopsis sydowiana*. Advanced inoculation of tissue-cultured seedlings of rhododendron with MBR-5 protected them from challenge-inoculation of leaves with *P. sydowiana*. Later, Meguro et al. (2004) demonstrated the biocontrol effect of *S. padanus* strain AOK-30 against *P. sydowiana* in tissue-cultured seedlings of mountain laurel. In fact, MBR-5 was found to produce two antibiotics, actinomycin X_2 and fungichromin, in liquid medium (Shimizu et al. 2004). Although actinomycin(s) was detected in tissue-cultured rhododendron seedlings previously treated with MBR-5, the external supply of analogues of actinomycin X_2 and fungichromin to the seedlings did not enhance their disease resistance (Shimizu et al. 2001b). These results led us further to establish whether the two nonantagonistic *Streptomyces* strains could induce disease resistance in rhododendron seedlings (Shimizu et al. 2006). Interestingly, colonization of both strains induced disease resistance in the seedlings similar to that of MBR-5, suggesting that induction of disease resistance could be attributable to colonization of an endophytic streptomycete in the seedlings rather than in planta antibiosis. This hypothesis was verified by another molecular study using an *Arabidopsis*–MBR-5 system: MBR-5 inoculation enhanced disease resistance of *Arabidopsis thaliana* toward *Colletotrichum higginsianum*, which was characterized by an accumulation of phytoalexin and increased *PDF1.2* gene expression in this host plant (Shimizu et al. 2005) as also evidenced by the molecular study by Conn et al. (2008), who investigated expression variation of the key genes in systemic acquired resistance (SAR) or jasmonate/ethylene (JA/ET) pathways in *A. thaliana* inoculated with endophytic actinomycetes (*Streptomyces* sp. strains EN27 and EN28, *Micromonospora* sp. strain EN43, and *Nocardioides albus* EN46). All these endophytes "primed" both SAR and JA/ET pathways that linked with systemic

resistance via up-regulation of pathogenesis-related proteins and other antimicrobial proteins which were effective against several pathogens.

Streptomyces sp. strain MBCu-56 showed a similar biocontrol effect on cucumber anthracnose disease caused by *Colletotrichum orbiculare* (Shimizu et al. 2009). Only 6 of 178 strains of endophytic actinomycetes isolated from healthy cucumber and pumpkin plants had in vitro antagonistic activity against *C. orbiculare*. Spraying of MBcu-56 strain at $10^{7–9}$ cfu/ml onto the cucumber leaves suppressed the incidence of the disease by 72–93%. Light microscopy revealed that hyphae of MBCu-56 massively colonized around germinating and appressorium-forming conidia of *C. orbiculare* on leaf surfaces. No intercellular hyphae of *C. orbiculare* were seen in epidermal cells of these leaves, suggesting that superficial colonization of MBCu-56 could block wall penetration from *C. orbiculare* appressoria (unpublished data). Although this interaction between both organisms is interesting, the suppressive mechanism resulting in reduced pathogen growth remains elusive.

The earlier reports regardless of soil- and air-borne diseases revealed the noteworthy findings that the biological effect obtained in the laboratory cannot always explain results and their causes in field experiments. El-Tarabily and Sivasithamparam (2006) studied the mechanism of action of actinomycetes that have focused mainly on in vitro screens, especially in relation to antibiosis. Within plant tissues, various factors such as pH, nutritional balance and native endophytes may affect the production of antimicrobial substances by the introduced endophytic actinomycetes, or their antibiotics and enzymes may be inactivated by host metabolism. In some cases, systemic resistance in host plants could be involved in a biocontrol mechanism so that the in vitro antagonism might not be directly linked to the biocontrol effects. Indeed, more detailed studies are needed to understand the significant roles of endophytic actinomycetes and host plant responses in biocontrol effects.

10.6 Endophytic Actinomycetes as Plant Growth Promoters

As well as soil actinomycetes (El-Tarabily and Sivasithamparam 2006), plant-associated bacteria and fungi have been known to show the activity of plant growth promotion and disease control (Compant et al. 2005; Hallmann et al. 1997; Joseph et al. 2007). Although plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) is one of the well-studied plant-promoting microbes, more and more genera are yet to be researched for their successful application in field comprising biotic and abiotic stress conditions. Cattelan et al. (1999) noted the possible mechanism for this phenomenon: (a) the ability to produce or change the concentration of the plant hormones indoleacetic acid (IAA), gibberellic acid, cytokinins, and ethylene; (b) asymbiotic N_2 fixation; (c) antagonism against phytopathogenic microorganisms by production of siderophore, β-1,3 glucanase, chitinase, antibiotics, and cyanide; and (d) solubilization of mineral phosphates and other nutrients.

Few reports are available on the association of "endophytic actinomycetes" with plant growth promotion. Several recent studies demonstrated that endophytic

actinomycetes produced plant growth-promoting compounds such as IAA and siderophores in vitro (de Oliveira et al. 2010; Ghodhbane-Gtari et al. 2010; Nimnoi et al. 2010). For example, Nimnoi et al. (2010) examined the productivity of IAA and siderophores by endophytic actinomycetes isolated from eaglewood. All of the ten isolates produced IAA and eight of them produced siderophores in culture broth. Earlier, Igarashi et al. (2002) purified pteridic acids A and B from the culture broth of an endophytic *Streptomyces hygroscopicus*. These metabolites accelerated formation of adventitious roots in hypocotyls of kidney beans at 1 nM as effectively as IAA. El-Tarabily et al. (2009) reported that some strains of endophytic actinomycetes produced IAA and IPYA (indole-3-pyruvic acid) that enhanced growth of cucumber plants significantly. Prior to this, Meguro et al. (2006) reported an endophytic strain of *Streptomyces* sp. MBR-52 that accelerated emergence and elongation of plant adventitious roots.

10.7 Conclusion

A number of endophytic actinomycetes inhabit tissues of a wide variety of native and cultured crop plants. Because in planta microfloras are so diverse and complicated associations of endophytic actinomycetes with host plants and/or other endophytes still remain poorly understood. Nevertheless, some of them are undoubtedly beneficial to the host plant life: the endophytic presence of some actinomycetes may play important role in plant development and health because of their role in nutrient assimilation and in secondary metabolite production.

In natural environments plants encounter various environmental stresses such as fluctuation of climate, chemical and physical conditions of soil, rhizosphere microflora, and pest attacks. The defense and tolerance potentials of plants to endure such stresses are significant and essential for maintenance of plant life. Interestingly, Hasegawa et al. (2004, 2005) discovered that tissue-cultured seedlings of mountain laurel harboring endophytic *Streptomyces padanus* became highly tolerant to drought. In those tolerant seedlings callose deposition and lignification of cell walls as well as osmotic pressure of cells were accelerated, suggesting that all these events could be closely associated with enhanced drought-tolerance. Their reports showed another unexpected beneficial use of endophytic actinomycetes in crop management, although further research is required to apply them in horticultural and cropping systems.

As Coombs et al. (2004) noted, when applied in field situations, antagonistic endophytic actinomycetes do not always show biocontrol effects as expected due to their ability to colonize the internal tissues of the target host plant. A variety of techniques have been used for the application of endophytic microbes at the experimental level, ranging from several variations of seed treatments, soil drenches, stem injections, and foliar sprays of microbial suspensions (Hallmann et al. 1997). Apparently, more research on the bioformulation and delivery of the endophytic actinomycetes is needed for employing them in practical agronomical production.

Research on endophytic actinomycetes will contribute to the development of novel technologies and methodologies in the agricultural, medical, and pharmaceutical fields in future days to come.

Acknowledgements I am indebted to Professor Dallice Mills (Department of Genetics and Plant Pathology, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR, USA) and Emeritus Professor Hitoshi Kunoh (Mie University, Tsu, Japan) for assistance with English and their valuable suggestions. The work was partially supported by a Grant-in-Aid for Young Scientists (B) (17780034 and 20780033) from the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology of Japan to MS.

References

Baker D (1990) Methods for the isolation, culture and characterization of the Frankiaceae: soil actinomycetes and symbionts of actinorhizal plants. In: Labeda DP (ed) Isolation of biotechnological organisms from nature. McGraw-Hill Publishing Company, New York, pp 213–236

Bandara WMMS, Seneviratne G, Kulasooriya SA (2006) Interaction among endophytic bacteria and fungi: effects and potential. J Biosci 31:645–650

Cao L, Qui Z, Dai X, Tan H, Lin Y, Zhou S (2004a) Isolation of endophytic actinomycetes from roots and leaves of banana (*Musa acuminata*) plants and their activities against *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 20:501–504

Cao L, Qiu Z, You J, Tan H, Zhou S (2004b) Isolation and characterization of endophytic *Streptomyces* strains from surface-sterilized tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum*) roots. Lett Appl Microbiol 39:425–430

Cao L, Qiu Z, You J, Tan H, Zhou S (2005) Isolation and characterization of endophytic streptomycetes antagonists of fusarium wilt pathogen from surface-sterilized banana roots. FEMS Microbiol Lett 247:147–152

Caruso M, Colombo AL, Fedeli L, Pavesi A, Quaroni S, Saracchi M, Ventrella G (2000) Isolation of endophytic fungi and actinomycetes taxane producers. Ann Microbiol 50:3–13

Castillo UF, Strobel GA, Ford EJ, Hess WM, Porter H, Jensen JB, Albert H, Robison R, Condron MAM, Teplow DB, Stevens D, Yaver D (2002) Munumbicins, wide-spectrum antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces* NRRL 30562, endophytic on *Kennedia nigriscans*. Microbiology 148:2675–2685

Castillo UF, Browne L, Strobel G, Hess WM, Ezra S, Pacheco G, Ezra D (2007) Biologically active endophytic *Streptomyces* from *Nothofagus* spp. and other plants in Patagonia. Microb Ecol 53:12–19

Cattelan AJ, Hartel PG, Fuhrmann JJ (1999) Screening for plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria to promote early soybean growth. Soil Sci Soc Am J 63:1670–1680

Chet I, Ordentlich A, Shapira R, Oppenhime A (1990) Mechanisms of biocontrol of soil-borne plant pathogens by Rhizobacteria. Plant Soil 129:85–92

Claessen D, Wösten HA, van Keulen G, Faber OG, Alves AM, Meijer WG, Dijkhuizen L (2002) Two novel homologous proteins of *Streptomyces coelicolor* and *Streptomyces lividans* are involved in the formation of the rodlet layer and mediate attachment to a hydrophobic surface. Mol Microbiol 44:1483–1492

Clark CA, Matthews SW (1987) Histopathology of sweet potato root infection by *Streptomyces ipomoea*. Phytopathology 77:1418–1423

Compant S, Duffy B, Nowak J, Clément C, Barka EA (2005) Use of plant growth-promoting bacteria for biocontrol of plant diseases: principles, mechanisms of action, and future prospects. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4951–4959

Conn VM, Franco CMM (2004) Analysis of the endophytic actinobacterial population in the roots of wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) by terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism and sequencing of 16S rRNA clones. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:1787–1794

Conn VM, Walker AR, Franco CMM (2008) Endophytic actinobacteria induce defense pathways in *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:208–218

Coombs JT, Franco CMM (2003a) Isolation and identification of actinobacteria from surface-sterilized wheat roots. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:5603–5608

Coombs JT, Franco CMM (2003b) Visualization of an endophytic *Streptomyces* species in wheat seed. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:4260–4262

Coombs JT, Michelsen PP, Franco CMM (2004) Evaluation of endophytic actinobacteria as antagonists of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici* in wheat. Biol Control 29:359–366

Crawford DL, Lynch JM, Whipps JM, Ousley MA (1993) Isolation and characterization of actinomycetes antagonists of a fungal root pathogen. Appl Environ Microbiol 59:3899–3905

de Araújo JM, da Silva AC, Azevedo JL (2000) Isolation of endophytic actinomycetes from roots and leaves of maize (*Zea mays* L.). Braz Arch Biol Technol 43:447–451

de Oliveira MF, da Silva MG, Van Der Sand ST (2010) Anti-phytopathogen potential of endophytic actinobacteria isolated from tomato plants (*Lycopersicon esculentum*) in southern Brazil, and characterization of *Streptomyces* sp. R18(6), a potential biocontrol agent. Res Microbiol 161:565–572

Elad Y, Chet I, Katan J (1980) *Trichoderma harzianum*: a biocontrol agent effective against *Sclerotium rolfsii* and *Rhizoctonia solani*. Phytopathology 70:119–121

El-Tarabily KA (2003) An endophytic chitinase-producing isolate of *Actinoplanes missouriensis*, with potential for biological control of root rot of lupin caused by *Plectosporium tabacinum*. Aust J Bot 51:257–266

El-Tarabily KA, Sivasithamparam K (2006) Non-streptomycete actinomycetes as biocontrol agents of soil-borne fungal plant pathogens and as plant growth promoters. Soil Biol Biochem 38:1505–1520

El-Tarabily KA, Hardy GESJ, Sivasithamparam K, Hussein AM, Kurtböke DI (1997) The potential for the biological control of cavity-spot disease of carrots, caused by *Pythium coloratum*, by streptomycete and non-streptomycete actinomycetes. New Phytol 137:495–507

El-Tarabily KA, Nassar AH, Hardy GEStJ, Sivasithamparam K (2009) Plant growth promotion and biological control of *Pythium aphanidermatum* a pathogen of cucumber, by endophytic actinomycetes. J Appl Microbiol 106:13–26

Ezra D, Castillo UF, Strobel GA, Hess WM, Porter H, Jensen JB, Condron MAM, Teplow DB, Sears J, Maranta M, Hunter M, Weber B, Yaver D (2004) Coronamycins, peptide antibiotics produced by a verticillate *Streptomyces* sp. (MSU-2110) endophytic on *Monstera* sp. Microbiology 150:785–793

Franco C, Michelsen P, Percy N, Conn V, Listiana E, Moll S, Loria R, Coombs J (2007) Actinobacterial endophytes for improved crop performance. Australas Plant Pathol 36:524–531

Ghadin N, Zin NM, Sabaratnam V, Badya N, Basri DF, Lian HH, Sidik NM (2008) Isolation and characterization of a novel endophytic *Streptomyces* SUK 06 with antimicrobial activity from Malaysian plant. Asian J Plant Sci 7:189–194

Ghodhbane-Gtari F, Essoussi I, Chattaoui M, Chouaia B, Jaouani A, Daffonchio D, Boudabous A, Gtari M (2010) Isolation and characterization of non-*Frankia* actinobacteria from root nodules of *Alnus glutinosa*, *Casuarina glauca* and *Elaeagnus angustifolia*. Symbiosis 50:51–57

Gu Q, Zhen W, Huang Y (2007) *Glycomyces sambucus* sp. nov., and endophytic actinomycetes isolated from the stem of *Sambucus adnata* wall. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:1995–1998

Gurney KA, Mantle G (1993) Biosysthesis of 1-*N*-methylalbonoursin by an endophytic *Streptomyces* sp. isolated from perennial ryegrass. J Nat Prod 56:1194–1198

Hallmann J, Quadt-Hallmann A, Mahaffee WF, Kloepper JW (1997) Bacterial endophytes in agricultural crops. Can J Microbiol 43:895–914

Handelsman J, Stabb EV (1996) Biocontrol of soilborne plant pathogens. Plant Cell 8:1855–1869

Hasegawa T, Lechevalier MP, Lechevalier HA (1978) A new genus of the *Actinomycetales*, *Actinosynnema* gen. nov. Int J Syst Bacteriol 28:304–310

Hasegawa S, Meguro A, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2004) Drought tolerance of tissue-cultured seedlings of mountain laurel (*Kalmia latifolia* L.) induced by an endophytic actinomycete. I. Enhancement of osmotic pressure in leaf cells. Actinomycetologica 18:43–47

Hasegawa S, Meguro A, Toyoda K, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2005) Drought tolerance of tissue-cultured seedlings of mountain laurel (*Kalmia latifolia* L.) induced by an endophytic actinomycete. II. Acceleration of callose accumulation and lignification. Actinomycetologica 19:13–17

Hasegawa S, Meguro A, Shimizu M, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2006) Endophytic actinomycetes and their interactions with host plants. Actinomycetologica 20:72–81

Hayakawa M, Nonomura H (1987) Humic acid-vitamin agar, a new medium for selective isolation of soil actinomycetes. J Ferment Technol 65:501–509

Hayakawa M, Takeuchi T, Yamazaki T (1996) Combined use of trimethoprim with nalidixic acid for the selective isolation and enumeration of actinomycetes from soil. Actinomycetologica 10:80–90

Hirsch CF, Christensen DL (1983) Novel method for selective isolation of actinomycetes. Appl Environ Microbiol 46:925–929

Huang J-S (1986) Ultrastructure of bacterial penetration in plants. Annu Rev Phytopathol 24:141–157

Igarashi Y, Iida T, Yoshida R, Furumai T (2002) Pteridic acids A and B, novel plant growth promoters with auxin-like activity from *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* TP-A0451. J Antibiot 55:764–767

Inderiati S, Franco CMM (2008) Isolation and identification of endophytic actinomycetes and their antifungal activity. J Biotechnol Res Trop Reg 1:1–6

Inderiati S, Muliani S (2008) Isolation and characterization of endophytic actinomycetes of tobacco plants. J. Agrisistem 4:82–100

Joseph B, Patra RR, Lawrence R (2007) Characterization of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria associated with chickpea (*Cicer arietinum* L.). Int J Plant Prod 2:141–152

Kizuka M, Enokita R, Takanashi K, Okamoto Y, Otsuka T, Shigematsu Y, Inoue Y, Okazaki T (1998) Studies on actinomycetes isolated from plant leaves. Actinomycetologica 12:89–91

Kunoh H (2002) Endophytic actinomycetes: attractive biocontrol agents. J Gen Plant Pathol 68:249–252

Küster E, Williams ST (1964) Selection of media for isolation of streptomycetes. Nature 202:928–929

Lee SO, Choi GJ, Choi YH, Jang KS, Park D-J, Kim C-J, Kim J-C (2008) Isolation and characterization of endophytic actinomycetes from Chinese cabbage roots as antagonists to *Plasmodiophora brassicae*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:1741–1746

Loria R, Bukhalid RA, Fry BA, King RR (1997) Plant pathogenecity in the genus *Streptomyces*. Plant Dis 81:836–846

Loria R, Coombs J, Yoshida M, Kers J, Bukhalid R (2003) A paucity of bacterial root diseases: *Streptomyces* succeeds where other fail. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 62:65–72

Matsukuma S, Okuda T, Watanabe J (1994) Isolation of actinomycetes from pine litter layers. Actinomycetologica 8:57–65

Matsumoto A, Takahashi Y, Mochizuki M, Seno A, Iwai Y, Omura S (1998) Characterization of actinomycetes from fallen leaves. Actinomycetologica 12:46–48

Meguro A, Hasegawa S, Shimizu M, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2004) Induction of disease resistance in tissue-cultured seedlings of mountain laurel after treatment with *Streptomyces padanus* AOK-30. Actinomycetologica 18:48–53

Meguro A, Ohmura Y, Hasegawa S, Shimizu M, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2006) An endophytic actinomycete, *Streptomyces* sp. MBR-52, that accelerates emergence and elongation of plant adventitious roots. Actinomycetologica 20:1–9

Mendgen K, Hahn M, Deising H (1996) Morphogenesis and mechanisms of penetration by plant pathogenic fungi. Annu Rev Phytopathol 34:367–386

Merzaeva OV, Shirokikh IG (2010) The production of auxins by the endophytic bacteria of winter rye. Appl Biochem Microbiol 46:44–50

Minamiyama H, Shimizu M, Kunoh H, Furumai T, Igarashi Y, Onaka H, Yoshida R (2003) Multiplication of isolate R-5 of *Streptomyces galbus* on rhododendron leaves and its production of cell wall-degrading enzymes. J Gen Plant Pathol 69:65–70

Nimnoi P, Pongsilp N, Lumyong S (2010) Endophytic actinomycetes isolated from *Aquilaria crassna* Pierre ex Lec and screening of plant growth promoters production. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 26:193–203

Nishimura T, Meguro A, Hasegawa S, Nakagawa Y, Shimizu M, Kunoh H (2002) An endophytic actinomycete, *Streptomyces* sp. AOK-30, isolated from mountain laurel and its antifungal activity. J Gen Plant Pathol 68:390–397

Okazaki T (2003) Studies on actinomycetes isolated from plant leaves. In: Kurtböke I (ed) Selective isolation of rare actinomycetes. National Library of Australia, Canberra, pp 102–122

Okazaki T, Takahashi K, Kizuka M, Enokita R (1995) Studies on actinomycetes isolated from plant leaves. Annu Rep Sankyo Res Lab 47:97–106

Qin S, Li J, Zhao G-Z, Chen H-H, Xu L-H, Li W-J (2008) *Saccharopolyspora endophytica* sp. nov., an endophytic actinomycetes isolated from the root of *Maytenus austroyunnanensis*. Syst Appl Microbiol 31:352–357

Qin S, Zhao G-Z, Li J, Zhu W-Y, Xu L-H, Li W-J (2009) *Actinomadura flavalba* sp. nov., an endophytic actinomycetes isolated from leaves of *Maytenus austroyunnanensis*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:2453–2457

Rosenblueth ME, Martinez-Romero E (2006) Bacterial endophytes and their interactions with hosts. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:827–837

Rothrock CS, Gottlieb D (1984) Role of antibiosis in antagonism of *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* var. *geldanus* to *Rhizoctonia solani* in soil. Can J Microbiol 30:1440–1447

Sardi P, Saracchi M, Quaroni S, Petrolini B, Borgonovi GE, Merli S (1992) Isolation of endophytic *Streptomyces* strains from surface-sterilized roots. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:2691–2693

Shimizu M (2007) New frontiers in the application of endophytic actinomycetes (in Japanese with English abstract). In: Proceedings of the PSJ biocontrol workshop X, Utsunomiya, Japan, March 2007, pp 82–91

Shimizu M, Nakagawa Y, Sato Y, Furumai T, Igarashi Y, Onaka H, Yoshida R, Kunoh H (2000) Studies on endophytic actinomycetes (I). *Streptomyces* sp. isolated from rhododendron and its antifungal activity. J Gen Plant Pathol 66:360–366

Shimizu M, Fujita N, Nakagawa Y, Nishimura T, Furumai T, Igarashi Y, Onaka H, Yoshida R, Kunoh H (2001a) Disease resistance of tissue-cultured seedlings of rhododendron after treatment with *Streptomyces* sp. R-5. J Gen Plant Pathol 67:325–332

Shimizu M, Furumai T, Igarashi Y, Onaka H, Nishimura T, Yoshida R, Kunoh H (2001b) Association of induced disease resistance of rhododendron seedlings with inoculation of *Streptomyces* sp. R-5 and treatment with actinomycin D and amphotericin B to the tissue-culture medium. J Antibiot 54:501–505

Shimizu M, Igarashi Y, Furumai T, Onaka H, Kunoh H (2004) Identification of endophytic *Streptomyces* sp. R-5 and analysis of its antimicrobial metabolites. J Gen Plant Pathol 70:66–68

Shimizu M, Suzuki T, Mogami O, Kunoh H (2005) Disease resistance of plants induced by endophytic actinomycetes. In: Tsuyumu S, Leach JE, Shiraishi T, Wolpert T (eds) Genomic and genetic analysis of plant parasitism and defense. APS, St. Paul, pp 292–293

Shimizu M, Meguro A, Hasegawa S, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2006) Disease resistance induced by nonantagonistic endophytic *Streptomyces* spp. on tissue-cultured seedlings of rhododendron. J Gen Plant Pathol 72:351–354

Shimizu M, Yazawa S, Ushijima Y (2009) A promising strain of endophytic *Streptomyces* sp. for biological control of cucumber anthracnose. J Gen Plant Pathol 75:27–36

Smith GE (1957) Inhibition of *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* by a species of *Micromonospora* isolated from tomato. Phytopathology 47:429–432

Strobel GA (2003) Endophytes as sources of bioactive products. Microbes Infect 5:535–544

Suzuki T, Shimizu M, Meguro A, Hasegawa S, Nishimura T, Kunoh H (2005) Visualization of infection of an endophytic actinomycete *Streptomyces galbus* in leaves of tissue-cultured rhododendron. Actinomycetologica 19:7–12

Taechowisan T, Lumyong S (2003) Activity of endophytic actinomycetes from roots of *Zingiber officinale* and *Alpinia galanga* against phytopathogenic fungi. Ann Microbiol 53:291–298

Taechowisan T, Chuaychot N, Chanaphat S, Wanbanjob A, Shen Y (2008) Biological activity of chemical constituents isolated from *Streptomyces* sp. Tc052, and endophyte in *Alpinia galanga*. Int J Pharmacol 4:95–101

Tahtamouni MEW, Hameed KM, Saadoun IM (2006) Biological control of *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* using indigenous chitinolytic actinomycetes in Jordan. Plant Pathol J 22:107–114

Takahashi Y, Omura S (2003) Isolation of new actinomycete strains for the screening of new bioactive compounds. J Gen Appl Microbiol 49:141–154

Tan RX, Zou WX (2001) Endophytes: a rich source of functional metabolites. Nat Prod Rep 18:448–459

Tan HM, Cao LX, He ZF, Su GJ, Lin B, Zhou SN (2006) Isolation of endophytic actinomycetes from different cultivars of tomato and their activities against *Ralstonia solanacearum* in vitro. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 22:1275–1280

Thakur D, Yadav A, Gogoi BK, Bora TC (2007) Isolation and screening of *Streptomyces* in soil of protected forest areas from the state of Assam and Tripura, India, for antimicrobial metabolites. J Mycol Med 17:242–249

Thamchaipenet A, Indananda C, Bunyoo C, Duangmai K, Matsumoto A, Takahashi Y (2010) *Actinoallomurus acaciae* sp. nov., an endophytic actinomycetes isolated from *Acacia auriculiformis* A. Cunn. Ex Benth. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 60:554–559

Thomashow LS, Weller DM (1988) Role of a phenazine antibiotic from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in biocontrol of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. *tritici*. J Bacteriol 170:3499–3500

Tian XL, Cao LX, Tan HM, Zeng QG, Jia YY, Han WQ, Zhou SN (2004) Study on the communities of endophytic fungi and endophytic actinomycetes from rice and their antipathogenic activities *in vitro*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 20:303–309

Tian XL, Cao LX, Tan HM, Han WQ, Chen M, Liu YH, Zhou S (2007) Diversity of cultivated and uncultivated actinobacterial endophytes in the stems and roots of rice. Microb Ecol 53:700–707

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Botina SG, Netrusov AI (2007) Bacteria associated with orchid roots and microbial production of auxin. Microbiol Res 162:69–76

Tucker SL, Talbot NJ (2001) Surface attachment and pre-penetration stage development by plant pathogenic fungi. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:385–417

Verma VC, Gond SK, Kumar A, Mishra A, Kharwar RN, Gange AC (2009) Endophytic actinomycetes from *Azadirachta indica* A. Juss.: isolation, diversity, and anti-microbial activity. Microb Ecol 57:749–756

Williams ST, Davies FL (1965) Use of antibiotics for selective isolation and enumeration of actinomycetes in soil. J Gen Microbiol 38:251–261

Winding A, Binnerup SJ, Pritchard H (2004) Non-target effects of bacterial biological control agents suppressing root pathogenic fungi. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 47:129–141

Yoshida M, Yamaguchi T (2004) Histological observation and presence of pathogens in diseased roots of melon with root tumor caused by *Streptomyces* sp. Jpn J Phytopathol 70:176–183 (in Japanese with English abstract)

Zin NM, Loi CS, Sarmin NM, Rosli AN (2010) Cultivation-dependent characterization of endophytic actinomycetes. Res J Microbiol 5:717–724

Zinniel DK, Lambrecht P, Harris NB, Feng Z, Kuczmarski D, Higley P, Ishimaru CA, Arunakumari A, Barletta RG, Vidaver AK (2002) Isolation and characterization of endophytic colonizing bacteria from agronomic crops and prairie plants. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:2198–2208

Chapter 11
Bacteria Associated with Orchid Roots

Elena Tsavkelova

11.1 Introduction

Orchids are monocotyledonous plants and form the largest family of angiosperms, Orchidaceae Juss., with over than 24,000 described species, and the list is constantly growing by the number of newly discovered plants and selected horticultural hybrids (Dressler 1993; Fay and Chase 2009). Orchids, particularly the tropical species, are considered as the most desirable ornamentals; they have the highest value in commercial horticultural production. However, the survival of these plants is nowadays severely threatened due to habitat loss, deforestation, diseases and pests, weed encroachment, anthropogenic impacts on tropical rainforests, illegal poaching, and commercial overexploitation and cultivation (Franco et al. 2007; Roberts and Dixon 2008; Swarts and Dixon 2009). Many orchids that have been classified as extinct or threatened species in the wild are currently maintained in the natural reserves and greenhouses. However, the extreme specializations of orchids including pollination strategy, epyphytism, and symbiotic seed germination present additional obstacles in orchid propagation both in natural and artificial environment. The interactions between orchids and mycorrhizal fungi have been studied for a long time, although little is known about orchid "satellite" bacteria and their role in plant growth and development. This chapter discusses current knowledge of diversity, specificity, and functional activity of microbial communities associated with the roots of greenhouse and wild grown orchids

E. Tsavkelova
Microbiology Department 1/12, Moscow State University, Moscow 119991, Russia
e-mail: tsavkelova@mail.ru

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_11,

11.2 Orchids

Orchids are ubiquitous; they adapted themselves to different climate conditions from equatorial rainforests and temperate zones to the boreal territories, although the maximum diversity occurs in the humid tropical and subtropical regions. In general, they are composed of adventitious roots, rhizome, stem, leaves, floral ramets, and flowers (Kramer 1975; Moreira and Isaias 2008; Vakhrameeva et al. 2008). Broadly distributed orchid ecotypes are terrestrial that grow in the ground and epiphytic plants, which live in tree canopies or on the rocks (lithophytes); two-thirds of orchid species are epiphytes (Atwood 1986; Gravendeel et al. 2004; Roberts and Dixon 2008). The growth of orchids is either sympodial (from a rhizome emitting shoots in several directions) or monopodial (from one shoot), however the environmental variety of the orchids contributes to morphological, anatomical, and physiological alterations in their vegetative organization (Pabst and Dungs 1975; Dressler 1993). The majority of the world's orchids are photosynthetic. There is also a small specific group of myco-heterotrophic orchids with low (mixotrophy) or even lost capacity of photosynthesis; the mycorrhizal fungus represents an energy source that may supplement or totally replace plant's photosynthetic activity (Rasmussen and Whigham 2002; Dearnaley 2007).

Among structural variations, the formation of a highly absorbent multilayered velamen covering the roots is one of the distinguishing features of epiphytic orchids. The velamen is filled with air and formed by dead mature air-filled cells with adjacent perforations and wall thickening strands (Noel 1974); the number of cell layers does not change under modified environmental conditions, although the rate of maturation, size of cells, and thickness of the velamen can be markedly altered (Pridgeon 1987; Dressler 1993; Dycus and Knudson 1957; Moreira and Isaias 2008). When the root is wet, the velamen is saturated passively with water, aided by perforations that are elliptical slits or holes between secondary bulges of the plant cell walls (Noel 1974; Pridgeon 1986a). The principle role of the velamen is mechanical protection, retaining of mineral salt solutions, water conservation, and the prevention of excess loss of water from the cortex (Dycus and Knudson 1957; Sanford and Adanlawo 1973; Noel 1974). Besides, the velamen contributes to reducing transpiration, reflecting solar radiation, and exchanging oxygen and carbon dioxide between the root and atmosphere (Dycus and Knudson 1957; Cockburn et al. 1985). The cortical cells of the aerial roots possess chloroplasts, thus being capable of photosynthesis, although its contribution is insignificant for the green mature plant (Dycus and Knudson 1957; Erickson 1957; Arditti 1962; Katiyar et al. 1986; Gehrig et al. 1998). If aerial roots penetrate a substratum or attach themselves to a solid object, they serve as climbing or adhesive roots; they may then function like terrestrial roots, acting as organs of absorption (Dycus and Knudson 1957).

Among other intriguing adaptive strategies of the orchids are high levels of pollinator specialization, minuscule seeds, and germination depending on the symbiotic relations with the mycorrhizal fungus (Arditti and Ghani 2000; Roberts

and Dixon 2008; Dearnaley 2007; Fay and Chase 2009). A great diversity of orchid pollination systems for sexual reproduction includes a variety of deception strategies, where the pollinator receives no reward; approximately one-third of orchid species have evolved mechanisms of food deception, food-deceptive floral mimicry, brood-site imitation, shelter imitation, pseudoantagonism, rendezvous attraction, and sexual deception (Jersáková et al. 2006; Roberts and Dixon 2008; Waterman and Bidartondo 2008). Besides, pollinator imitation (most often an insect, but in rare instances a bird) among orchids appears to be extremely common as well (Ackerman 1989; Tremblay et al. 2005).

Orchids produce the smallest seeds by size (0.05–6 mm) or weight (0.31–24 μg) of any seed-bearing plants (Arditti and Ghani 2000; Roberts and Dixon 2008); to compensate for this, the seeds are found in thousands and millions per one seed capsule. However, the number of germinated seeds under natural conditions is negligible and barely exceeding 5% (Cherevchenko and Kushnir 1986). Orchids are entirely dependent on mycorrhiza for successful germination and seedling establishment; tiny orchid seeds have no endosperm and get their energetic and nutritional supply from symbiotic fungus (Burgeff 1959; Benzing and Friedman 1981; Clements 1988; Smresiu and Currah 1989; Smith and Read 1997; Waterman and Bidartondo 2008). The dependence on the fungal partner changes during the orchid ontogenesis (Vakhrameeva et al. 2008; Roberts and Dixon 2008). Adult photosynthesizing plants may dispense with the fungus, whereas the orchids lacking chlorophyll need these symbiotic relations throughout their lives. However, mycotrophy has been shown to be not directly dependent on the prevalence of phototrophic activity (Rasmussen and Whigham 2002). Existance of specificity between orchids and fungi still remains a controversial issue (Hadley 1970; Clements 1988; Brundrett 2004; Bonnardeaux et al. 2007). Although there are fungi that can infect different species of some orchid genera (Hadley 1970; Warcup 1971; Katiyar et al. 1986; Dearnaley 2007), many orchids have been found to have highly specific mycorrhizal association (Burgeff 1959; Clements 1988; Shefferson et al. 2005; Bonnardeaux et al. 2007). Molecular identification of orchid mycorrhizal fungi has revealed high fungal specificity in orchids that get organic nutrients from fungi as adults (Waterman and Bidartondo 2008). In any case, interactions between the partners depend very much on the external conditions and nutrient access, and that is why the subtle balance in the orchid–fungus symbiosis can be easily broken and shifted to parasitism and killing of the orchid seedling by the fungus (Clements 1988; Beyrle et al. 1995; Roberts and Dixon 2008).

Like no other plants, orchids associate with a wide range of endophytic fungi from morels (Ascomycetes) to mushrooms (Basidiomycetes) and even species of truffles (Roberts and Dixon 2008). Most orchid mycorrhizal fungi belong to the genus of rhizoctonia-forming fungi, a diverse group of pathogens, endophytes, saprophytes, and symbiotic fungi from three basidiomycete families (Sebacinaceae, Ceratobasidaceae, and Tulasnellaceae) (Burgeff 1959; Warcup 1981; Currah et al. 1987; Roberts 1999; Rasmussen and Whigham 2002; Bonnardeaux et al. 2007). Upon infection of the orchid seedling, fungal hyphae penetrate the cell walls and form characteristic coil-like pelotons within the cortical cells (Clements 1988).

Growth of the fungus is restricted to cortex due to production of phenolic and antifungal compounds (Beyrle et al. 1995; Shimura et al. 2007; Waterman and Bidartondo 2008). Pelotons are digested and through this process, the orchid obtains the essential nutrients and carbon that it needs to grow (Burgeff 1959; Clements 1988; Beyrle et al. 1995; Waterman and Bidartondo 2008). Besides, orchid-associated fungi are known to produce plant growth regulators, such as auxin and gibberellic acids (Hayes 1969; Barroso et al. 1986; Wu et al. 2002; Tsavkelova et al. 2003b, 2008) that may stimulate plant growth and development. The ability of orchids to go into intimate relations with their fungal symbionts facilitates and enlarges the adaptive capacities of each partner to different environmental conditions (Rasmussen et al. 1991; McCormick et al. 2006).

After elucidating the role of mycorrhiza in orchid seed germination by Noël Bernard (1874–1911), the next greatest advantage was the discovery of asymbiotic seed germination, axenic propagation on a defined medium in vitro that was developed by Lewis Knudson (1884–1958), followed by a modern mass rapid clonal propagation (Arditti 1984). Nevertheless, there is no such method of artificial orchid propagation which would be universal and applicable for all known species of the vast Orchidaceae family. Among the obstacles the botanical gardens are facing with, there are complexities of orchid pollination process, fruit set and germinating seed production, and selection of the specific mycorrhizal fungus for symbiotic and appropriate media for asymbiotic germination (Yamazaki and Miyoshi 2006). In the artificial conditions, the interactions between the host plant and its mycobiont are often unpredictable, and it is hard to control the establishment of the subtle and beneficial balance between the partners (Clements 1988; Peterson and Currah 1990; Beyrle et al. 1995; Dijk and Eck 1995). Asymbiotic germination despite its great impact on the orchid industry by making possible a large scale of hybridization (Arditti 1992), requires a usage of complex agar media supplemented with various nutrient substances, vitamins, hormones and uncertain compounds, such as potato extract, beech sap, fish semen, banana pulp, coconut water, tomato, pineapple, or orange juice (Hadley and Harvais 1968; Fonnesbech 1972; Cherevchenko and Kushnir 1986; Arditti 1992). The same ingredients are added to the media for orchid tissue culture (Kusumoto 1980) which is widely used for mass micropropagation of *Phalaenopsis* and other commercial orchids (Gu et al. 1987a, b; Chen et al. 2005). Nevertheless, it is known that many orchids are scarcely ever germinating in the aseptic conditions, and the widespread application of tissue culture is limited by cost of production and restricted number of orchid species with acceptable micropropagation protocols (Govil and Gupta 1997).

Orchid conservation and artificial seed germination presents severe difficulties, but the sustainable cultivation of the adult plants under greenhouse conditions is also an uneasy and labor-intensive process. When cultivated ex situ, the orchids undergo different biotic and abiotic stresses that are aggravated by lack of natural consortive relations with associative microorganisms (Kolomeitseva et al. 2002). Thus, management and development of effective conservation strategies for orchid propagation require a wide range of integrated scientific approaches

(Roberts and Dixon 2008) to overcome the continuous anthropogenic pressing on existence and survival of these vulnerable plants.

11.2.1 Orchid-Associated Bacteria

One of the possible beneficial methods for conservation and better adaptation of rare orchids in the artificial conditions could become in vitro bacterization, seed inoculation with the resident PGPR (plant growth promoting rhizobacteria) cultures. Associative rhizobacteria are recognized to have a great and often favorable impact on plant growth and development due to nitrogen fixation, production of plant growth regulators, improvement of water uptake and mineral nutrition, and biosynthesis of fungicidal and/or bactericidal substance reducing the number of phytopathogens (Tien et al. 1979; Cacciari et al. 1989; Hill et al. 1994; Noel et al. 1996; Dileep et al. 1998; Patten and Glick 2002; Yasmin et al. 2004; Ayyadurai et al. 2006; Mehnaz and Lazarovits 2006; Spaepen et al. 2007; Ahmad et al. 2008; Gulati et al. 2009; Deepa et al. 2010). However, there is a lack of information about composition and functional activity of the orchid PGPR; only few research groups are known for their studies on this subject (Wilkinson et al. 1989, 1994a, b; Tsavkelova et al. 2003c, 2005, 2007a, b), whereas the knowledge on interactions between the orchid and its "satellite" bacteria might add to understanding of orchid biology and result in more effective cultivation, propagation, and conservation of these plants, particularly under artificial greenhouse conditions.

11.2.2 Cyanobacteria

Cyanobacteria are an ancient group of prokaryotic microorganisms, varying in their morphology from unicellular to differentiated filamentous and branched types, and capable of oxygenic photosynthesis and nitrogen fixation (Fay 1992; Adams 2000; Sergeeva et al. 2002). Cyanobacteria possess several cell types and carry out different physiological and biochemical reactions, shifting from ordinary photolithoautotroph metabolism to facultative light-dependent growth on a carbon source other than CO_2, such as sugars; quite a few of them are capable of heterotrophic mode of C nutrition (Rippka et al. 1979; Lambert and Stevens 1986; Rai et al. 2000). Complex life cycle and both structural and functional plasticity of cyanobacteria contribute to a great stability of their microbial communities and allow them to colonize different habitats as well as adapt to strong variation of the environmental conditions (Pankratova 2000; Badger et al. 2006). They are found in cold and hot, alkaline and acidic, marine and freshwater, saline and terrestrial environments (Badger et al. 2006). Cyanobacteria form dense microscale communities of so-called microbial mats in which a wide range of diverse microbes and their metabolism may be present (Stal 2000; Badger et al. 2006).

Slimy cyanobacterial coatings protect their cells against drying out, mechanical damage, and diverse abiotic factors (Pankratova 2000).

In nature, cyanobacteria exist not only as free-living but also as symbiotic organisms (Adams 2000). They have strong associations with sponges and protists, algae and fungi (to form lichens); hosts are also found within bryophytes, a water-fern *Azolla*, cycads, and *Gunnera* (angiosperm) (Grobbellaar et al. 1987; Bergman et al. 1993; Korzhenevskaya et al. 1999; Rai et al. 2000; Costa et al. 2001; Sergeeva et al. 2002; Adams and Duggan 2008; Lindblad 2009). The most prominent role of cyanobacteria to the plants is nitrogen fixation, although in lichens and, in the case of non-photosynthetic hosts, cyanobionts act both as diazotrophic and autotrophic component. Despite that, in most cases the host benefits from the provision of metabolites that contain both nitrogen and carbon (Rai et al. 2000; Badger et al. 2006; Adams and Duggan 2008; Lindblad 2009), the involvement of other substances in cyanobacterial–plant interactions, such as plant growth stimulators, has also been reported (Sergeeva et al. 2002). In one's turn, host plants provide cyanobacteria with a stable environment and enriched pool of nutrients under microaerobic conditions (Bergman et al. 1993; Rai et al. 2000).

Despite some cyanolichens, freshwater and seawater algae, unicellular cyanobacteria such as *Gloeothece*, *Gleocapsa*, and *Synechocystis* are rarely found in host plants; filamentous and heterocyst-forming species of *Nostoc*, *Anabaena*, *Scytonema*, *Calothrix*, *Fischerella* are more frequent symbiotic partners (Bergman et al. 1997; Rai et al. 2000; Rasmussen and Nilsson 2002; Adams and Duggan 2008). The most common cyanobacteria with a range of taxonomically different hosts from algae and fungi, liver- and hornworts, ferns and cycades to some angiosperms belong to the genus *Nostoc* (Vagnoli et al. 1992; Korzhenevskaya et al. 1999; Rai et al. 2000; Rasmussen and Nilsson 2002; Lindblad 2009). The cyanobionts are located in a variety of host organs and tissues (bladder, thalli and cephalodia in fungi; cavities in gametophytes of hornworts and liverworts or fronds of the *Azolla*; coralloid roots in cycads; stem glands in *Gunnera* (Adams 2000; Rai et al. 2000; Rasmussen and Nilsson 2002; Adams and Duggan 2008). *Nostoc* strains infect and colonize different tissues and organs of hosts, and are usually inter- or intracellularly located in the host cells (Rasmussen and Nilsson 2002). Combination of CO_2 assimilation and N_2 fixation allows the partners of cyanobacterial symbioses to flourish in a nutrient-poor environment. Cyanobacterial–plant symbioses occur throughout the world and might be the dominant vegetation in some regions; lichens and bryophytes are rarely found inhabiting rich substrates, where the competitive relations are strong and disadvantageous (Rai et al. 2000; Costa et al. 2001). Moreover, it is believed that only nutrient-poor habitats contribute to the development and functional stability of cyanobacterial associations with the plants (Rai et al. 2000).

The intimate relations of cyanobacteria with their hosts creates a unique symbiotic consortium, which guarantee an ecological stability and nutrient supply that enable both partners to enlarge the adaptive amplitude of the system (Rai et al. 2000; Pankratova 2000; Badger et al. 2006). Nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria are known to occur epiphytically in phyllosphere and/or rhizosphere of plants growing

in aquatic and high humidity environments (Freiberg 1999; Rai and Bergman 2002). Besides the hosts, such as a water-fern *Azolla*, cycads, and *Gunerra* that are residents of the origins of warm moist habitats, *Nostoc* and *Anabaena* strains has been reported to successfully colonize and in certain cases penetrate the roots of rice, corn, sugar beet, marine mangroves, and wheat seedlings (Gantar et al. 1991; Spiller et al. 1993; Svircev et al. 1997; Rai et al. 2000; Rai and Bergman 2002). Nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria cocultivatated with wheat and rice seedlings in liquid hydroponic and sand cultures are known to form associations and promote plant growth and yield in nitrogen-free media (Spiller et al. 1993; Toledo et al. 1995; Svircev et al. 1997; Rai and Bergman 2002). Another artificial microbial consortium consisted of different species of *Rhizobium* spp. introduced into the extracellular slime of *Nostoc paludosum* that has been shown to penetrate into the nodules, resulted in an increase of the nitrogen-fixing ability and productivity of legumes (Pankratova et al. 2008).

The presence of cyanobacteria in the orchid's velamen has been previously noted (Gladkova 1982), although no information on taxonomy, localization, and possible role of orchid-associated cyanobacteria has been provided. Nevertheless, epiphytic orchids, producing numerous air roots covered with the spongy velamen represent a perfect econiche for associative cyanobacteria. We have studied various tropical orchids cultivated under greenhouse conditions (Tsavkelova et al. 2001; 2003c, d). Among the examined specious, there were epiphytic *Acampe papillosa* (Lindl.) Lindl., *Dendrobium moschatum* (Buch. – Ham.) Swartz., *D. phalaenopsis* Pfitz., *Phalaenopsis amabilis* (Lindl.) Blume., and one terrestrial species of *Calnthe vestita* Lindl. var. *rubro-oculata*. Natural habitat of *A. papillosa* covers the territories of Bhutan, Burma, India, Laos, Nepal, Thailand, and Vietnam; in addition to the earlier mentioned countries, *D. moschatum* also occurs in South China. Under conditions of selected greenhouse, these epiphytes are cultivated as pot plants, so they are able to form both aerial and substrate roots. *P. amabilis* and *D. phalaenopsis* occur in Indonesia, New Guinea, Philippines, and Queensland, Australia. In the greenhouse, these two orchids are cultivated on the bars of bark or inert (plastic) materials, which are used to support a plant. Under constant warm and moist conditions, with relative humidity of about 90%, these orchids form numerous long and interlaced aerial roots, whose surface is fully covered by 1–3 mm thick sheath-like folds of dark green biomass of phototrophs. *A. papillosa* and *D. moschatum* also produce aerial roots with a silvery-gray velamen, but cultivated under less humid conditions (about 80%), they lack a folder of associative photosynthetic microorganisms. The phototrophic microorganisms are disseminated along the roots of *D. moschatum* in a threads-looking shape, and the larger roots of *A. papillosa* contain fibrous greenish films of phototrophs on their surface.

Diverse cyanobacteria have been revealed in the sheaths of aerial roots of *P. amabilis* and *D. phalaenopsis* (Tsavkelova et al. 2003d). This phototrophic covering consists of various morphotypes of cyanobacteria (Figs. 11.1–11.3). Figures 11.1 and 11.2 show *P. amabilis* root fragments with filamentous cyanobacteria represented by chains of ellipsoid and diskshaped flattened cells.

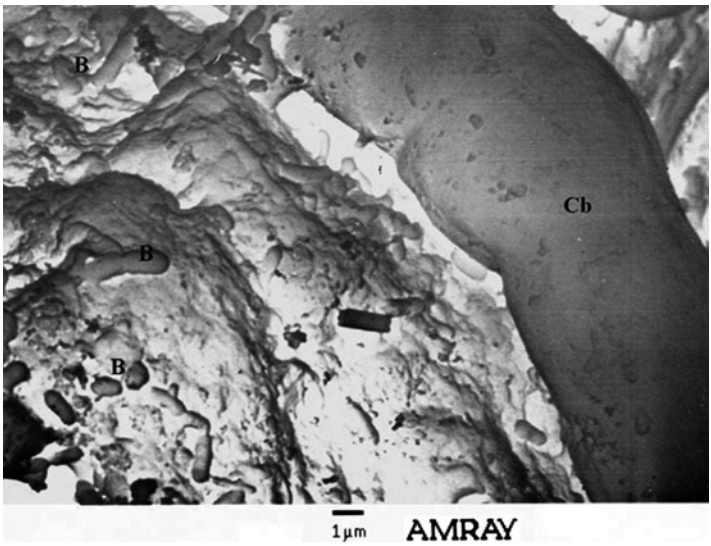


Fig. 11.1 Fragment of the *Phalaenopsis amabilis* aerial root surface. Scanning electron microscopy (SEM). *B* bacteria, *Cb* cyanobacteria (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003c)

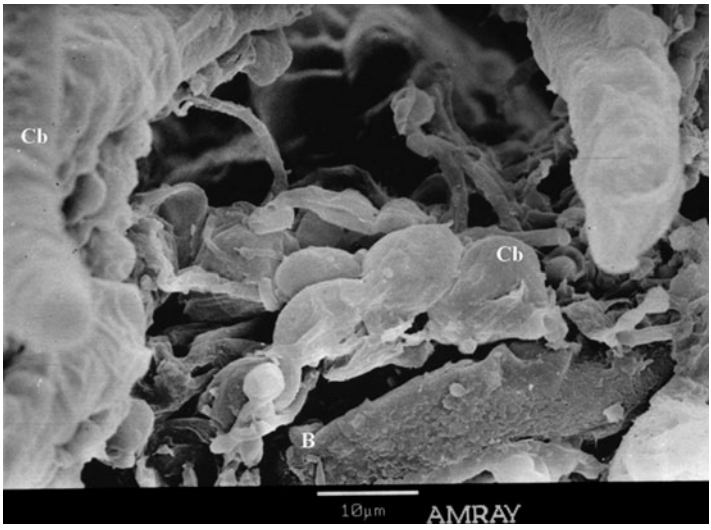


Fig. 11.2 Fragment of the *Phalaenopsis amabilis* aerial root surface. SEM. *B* bacteria, *Cb* ellipsoid and diskshaped filamentous cyanobacteria (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003c)

The surface of aerial roots of *D. phalaenopsis* exhibited similar morphological organization of the associative phototrophic community (Fig. 11.3). In addition to filamentous cyanobacteria, short chains, individual microbes and agglomerated

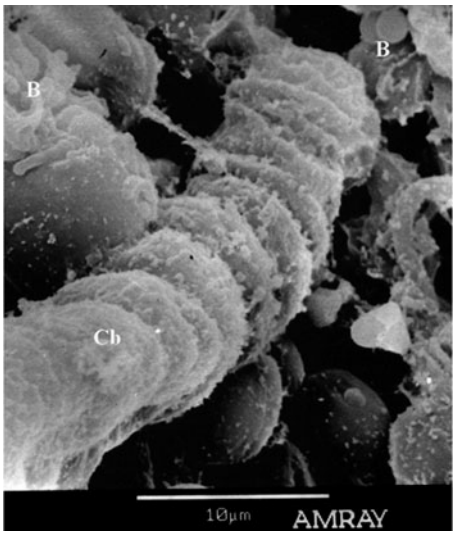


Fig. 11.3 Fragment of the *Dendrobium phalaenopsis* aerial root surface. SEM. *B* bacteria, *Cb* cyanobacteria (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003c)

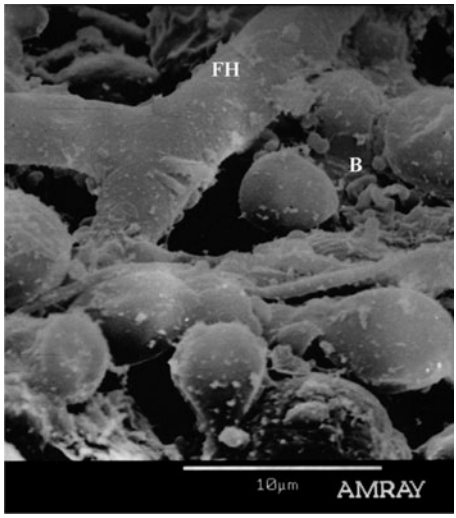


Fig. 11.4 Fragment of the *Dendrobium phalaenopsis* aerial root surface. SEM. *B* bacteria, *FH* fungal hyphae (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003c)

bacterial cells, as well as fungal hyphae are abundant on the surface of aerial roots of all investigated orchids (Figs. 11.1–11.7).

The velamen represents a suitable econiche for colonization by autotrophic and diazotrophic microorganisms. Along with phototrophic cyanobacteria, other microbial cells penetrate the internal layers of the velamen. By the example of *D. phalaenopsis* and *A. papillosa*, it has been shown to lack filamentous-looking cyanobacteria, while numerous phototrophic cells grouped in spherical clusters were found inside the velamen (Fig. 11.8). Morphophysiological changes usually occur when cyanobacterias are involved in symbiotic relationships with fungi

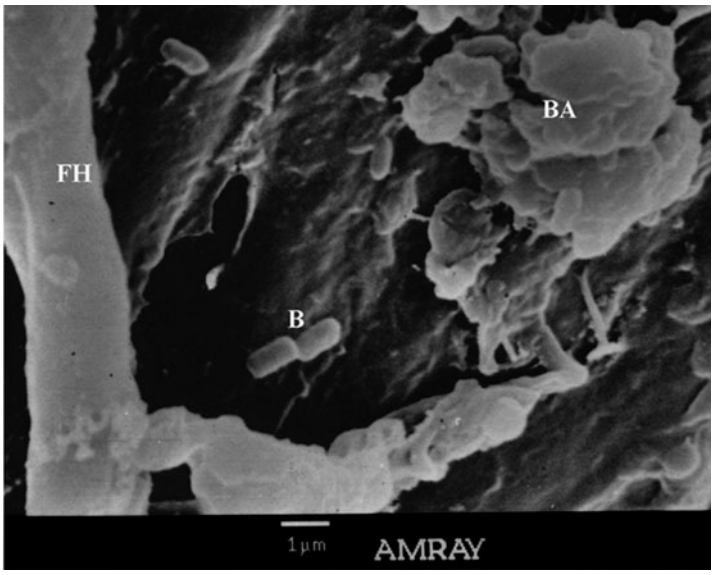


Fig. 11.5 Fragment of the *Acampe papillosa* aerial root surface. SEM. *B* bacteria, *BA* bacterial agglomerates embedded in extracellular matrix, *FH* fungal hyphae

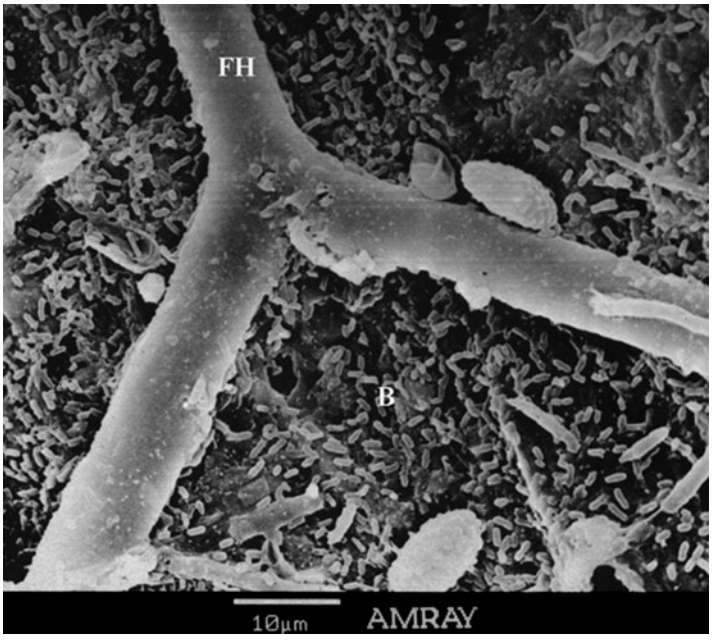


Fig. 11.6 Fragment of the *Acampe papillosa* aerial root surface. SEM. *B* bacteria, *FH* fungal hyphae (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003c)

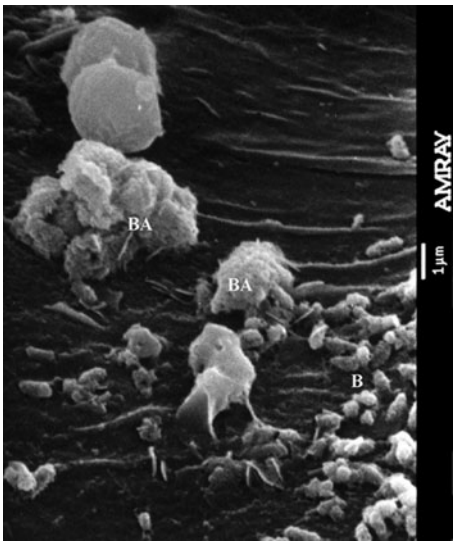


Fig. 11.7 Fragment of the *D. moschatum* aerial root surface. SEM. *B* bacteria, *BA* bacterial agglomerates (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2001)

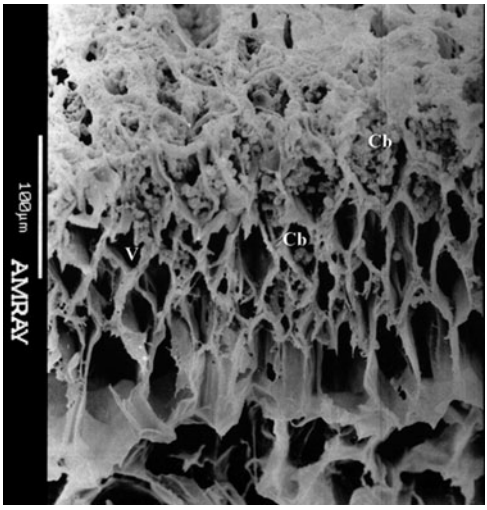


Fig. 11.8 Fragment of a cross section of *Acampe papillosa* aerial root. SEM. *V* the velamen, *Cb* cyanobacteria (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003c)

(in lichens) or plants during their compartmentalization within the host tissues (Korzhenevskaya et al. 1999; Rai et al. 2000; Gorelova and Korzhenevskaia 2002; Meeks and Elhai 2002; Adams and Duggan 2008; Lindblad 2009). Within the symbiotic colony, the vegetative cells show altered morphology, being enlarged and irregular in shape, and even heterocysts become difficult to recognize due to loss of some of their morphological characteristics that distinguish them from vegetative cells (Meeks and Elhai 2002; Adams and Duggan 2008). Slimy mucous covering formed by cyanobacteria is also favorable for inhabitation by other microbes. Polysaccharides are common constituents of cyanobacterial cell

envelopes (Drews and Weckesser 1982; Stewart et al. 1983; Plude et al. 1991), and cyanobacterial slime containing carbohydrates and various organic compounds serves as a nutrient and energy source to heterotrophic microorganisms. In turn, "satellite" bacteria are able to remove toxins produced by cyanobacteria and utilize oxygen, which inhibits nitrogen fixation.

In subtropical and tropical forests, nutrients are constantly cycling through the ecosystem, and most of the available nutrients (over 75%) are not in the soil but in the organic matter, and use of nitrogen-fixing species for hedgerows and mulching is a common technique for soil improvement (Elevitch et al. 1998). Since insufficient amount of minerals is common in the tropics, nitrogen may be the limiting factor for growth and development of epyphitic orchids. Involvement of various cyanobacteria in formation of the sheath-shaped covering suggests that nitrogen fixation is the primary function of orchid-associated cyanobacteria. All filamentous cyanobacteria of the genera *Anabaena*, *Nostoc*, *Scytonema*, and *Calothrix*, isolated from the investigated plants under nitrogen-limiting conditions formed specialized nitrogen-fixing cells, heterocysts (Figs. 11.9–11.11). Potential nitrogen-fixing activity of the

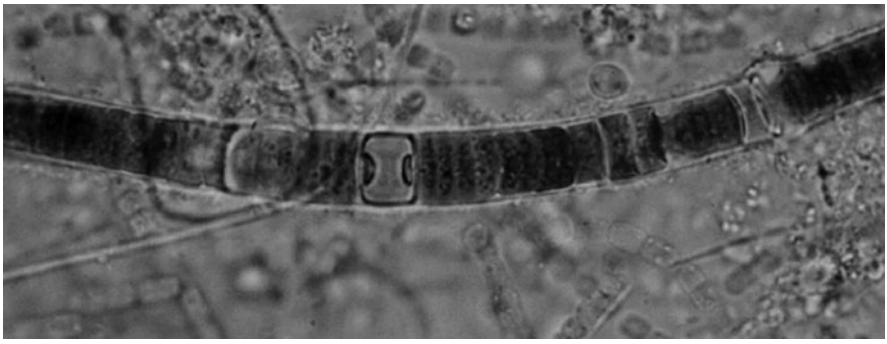


Fig. 11.9 *Scytonema* sp. (enrichment culture in nitrogen-free medium; isolated from aerial roots of *P. amabilis*). Light microscopy ×3,200 (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003d)

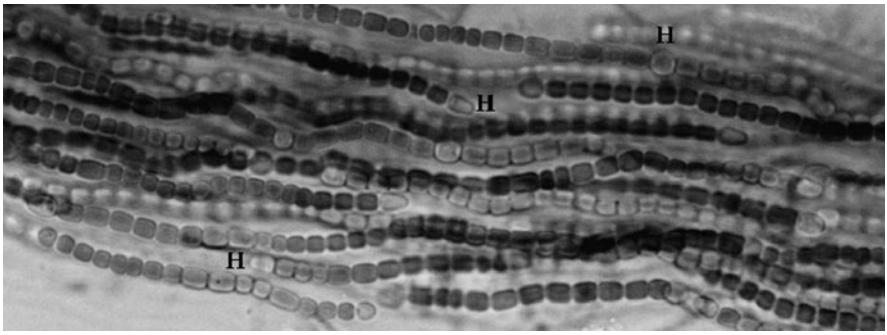


Fig. 11.10 *Nostoc* sp. (enrichment culture in nitrogen-free medium; isolated from aerial roots of *P. amabilis*). *H* heterocyst. Light microscopy ×3,550 (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003d)

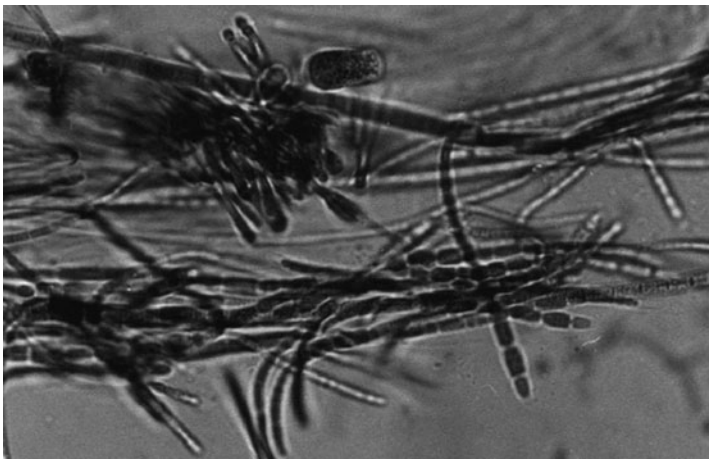


Fig. 11.11 *Calothrix* sp. (enrichment culture in nitrogen -free medium; isolated from aerial roots of *P. amabilis*). Light microscopy ×1,400 (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003d)

Table 11.1 Associative filamentous cyanobacteria of greenhouse orchids (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2003d)

Orchid	Cultivation medium	
	Nitrogen-free BG_0-11	Complete BG-11
Substrate roots		
D. moschatum	*Nostoc*	*Nostoc*, LPP, *Fischerella*
A. papillosa	*Nostoc*	*Nostoc*, *Oscillatoria*, LPP
C. vestita	*Nostoc*	*Nostoc*, *Oscillatoria*
Aerial roots		
D. moschatum	*Nostoc*	*Nostoc*
A. papillosa	*Nostoc*, *Anabaena*	*Nostoc*, *Anabaena*, *Calothrix*
D. phalaenopsis	*Nostoc*, LPP, *Scytonema*	*Nostoc*, LPP, *Scytonema*
P. amabilis	*Nostoc*, *Scytonema*, *Calothrix*, LPP	*Nostoc*, *Scytonema*, *Calothrix*, LPP, *Spirulina*, *Oscillatoria*

microorganisms, forming the most developed sheaths on the *P. amabilis* aerial roots has been shown to comprise about 800 nmol C_2H_4/h per gram biomass (as measured by acetylene reduction) (Tsavkelova et al. 2003c). High activity of microbial nitrogen fixation confirms the great importance of cyanobacteria to the orchid, since a great part of the fixed nitrogen is usually provided to the host (Fay 1992; Rai et al. 2000; Adams and Duggan 2008; Lindblad 2009).

Experiments on isolation and cultivation of associative cyanobacteria revealed that abundance of phototrophs and composition of cyanobacterial community depend on climate and ecological conditions (aerial or substrate roots) (Tsavkelova et al. 2003d), although the strains of the genus *Nostoc* were invariably isolated from the roots of all investigated plants (*C. vestita*, *A. papillosa*, *D. moschatum*, *D. phalaenopsis*, and *P. amabilis*) (Table 11.1). *Nostoc* spp. isolated from

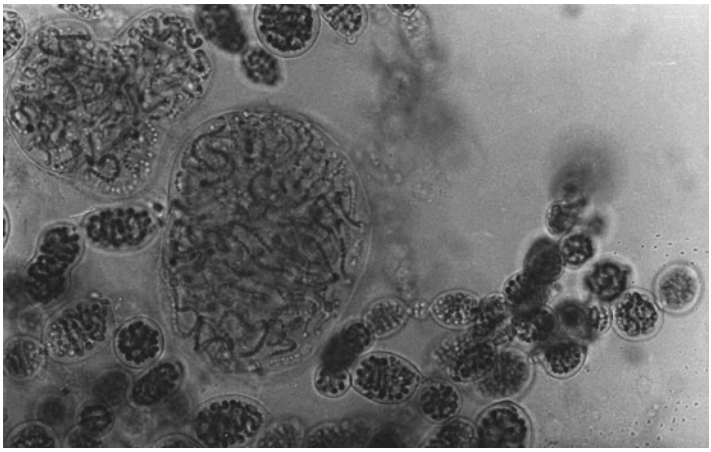


Fig. 11.12 Clusters of *Nostoc* sp. isolated from aerial roots of *A. papillosa* in nitrogen-free medium. Light microscopy ×1,750 (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003d)

A. papillosa and *P. amabilis* formed globe-shaped colonies of various sizes at initial stages of growth both in BG_o-11 and BG_N-11 media (Fig. 11.12). The spherical clusters of trichomes are usually fixed due to a jellylike mucous coat produced by cyanobacteria. *Nostoc* and *Anabaena* cyanobionts are known to lack a visible peptidoglycan layer and occasionally an outer membrane when they enter in artificial associations with higher plants (Gorelova and Korzhenevskaia 2002). The morphology of such symbiotic cyanobacteria changes markedly; the filamentous forms appears unicellular because of increased cell size, thinner cell walls, and altered cell shape that enable the cyanobiont to arrange in more rounded shape (Galun and Bubrick 1984; Korzhenevskaya et al. 1999; Rai and Bergman 2002; Adams and Duggan 2008).

In the nitrogen-free BG_o-11 medium, *Anabaena* spp. was also detected on the aerial roots of epiphytic *Acampe papillosa*. In the complete BG-11 medium, cyanobacteria of the genera *Nostoc*, *Oscillatoria* and of the LPP group (*Lyngbia*, *Phormidium*, and *Plectonema*), and cyanobacteria of the genera *Nostoc*, *Anabaena,* and *Calothrix* were isolated from the substrate and aerial roots of this plant, respectively (Table 11.1). Less favorable conditions for cyanobacterial growth presents the submerged roots of terrestrial *Calanthe vestita*. Nevertheless, the strains of *Oscillatoria* and *Nostoc* were also detected, with *Oscillatoria* as the dominant cyanobacterial culture (Tsavkelova et al. 2001). *Nostoc*. spp. was the only diazotrophic specious, found in BG_o-11 medium on the substrate roots of another epiphytic orchid, *D. moschatum*, whereas the usage of complete BG_N-11 medium revealed a broader spectrum of associative cyanobacteria (Table 11.1); they were *Nostoc* spp., *Fischerella* spp., and LPP strains (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2003d). Cyanobacteria of *D. moschatum*'s aerial roots were represented mainly by *Nostoc* strains. The specificity of the substratum (pine bark) used for cultivation of these epiphytic orchid provides enough moisture and an access of air and light both to the

substrate roots and its associative cyanobacteria that explains the presence and diversity of phototrophic microorganisms. The composition of the cyanobacterial community differs between the plants even if they are cultivated in the same greenhouse; as shown by the examples of *D. moschatum*/*A. papillosa* and *P. amabilis*/*D. phalaenopsis* (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2003d). *Nostoc*, *Scytonema*, and LPP group have been isolated from the roots of *D. phalaenopsis* (Table 11.1). These cyanobacteria were revealed on *P. amabilis* aerial roots as well. However, besides the earlier mentioned microorganisms, *Calothrix*, *Spirulina,* and *Oscillatoria* cultures were also detected. Thus, the aerial roots of orchids cultivated under the conditions of constant high humidity and temperatures perform the most favorable econiche for cyanobacteria; the spectrum of photosynthetic microbial community of *Phalaenopsis amabilis* and *Dendrobium phalaenopsis* is much broader than that of orchids grown in a drier greenhouse environment (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2003d).

Other beneficial effect of the cyanobacterial community is that it provides nutrients for associative microorganisms of rhizoplane, such as bacteria and fungi. In case, when the epiphytes are cultivated without substratum, being attached to the bars of bark or any inert material, the cyanobacterial sheath may play an important role in providing nutrients to orchid mycorrhiza. Although the dependence of adult orchids on their symbiotic fungi reduces, many mature terrestrial and epiphytic plants retain their symbionts and remain mycotrophic (Rasmussen and Whigham 2002; Vakhrameeva et al. 2008; Roberts and Dixon 2008). The substrate roots of greenhouse orchids *Calnthe vestita*, *Acampe papillosa*, and *Dendrobium phalaenopsis* have been shown to contain mycorrhizal hyphae and their coiled aggregates (pelotones) in cortical cells (Figs. 11.13–11.15). Pelotones of mycorrhizal fungi

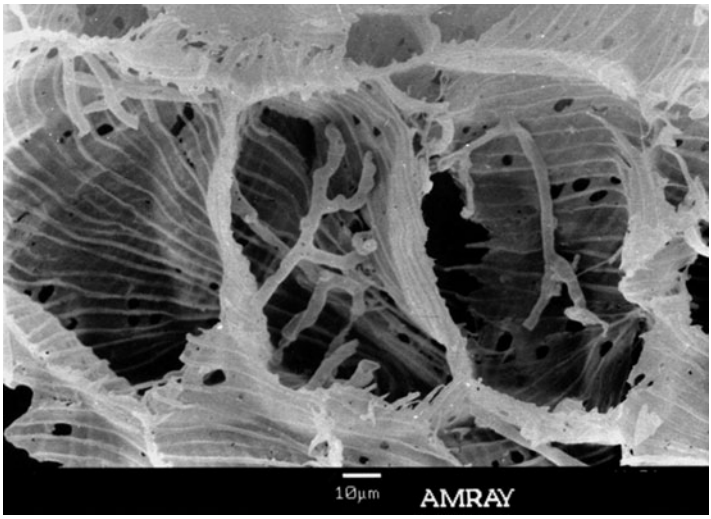


Fig. 11.13 Mycorrhizal fungus hyphae penetrating the substrate roots of *D. moschatum*. SEM (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003a)

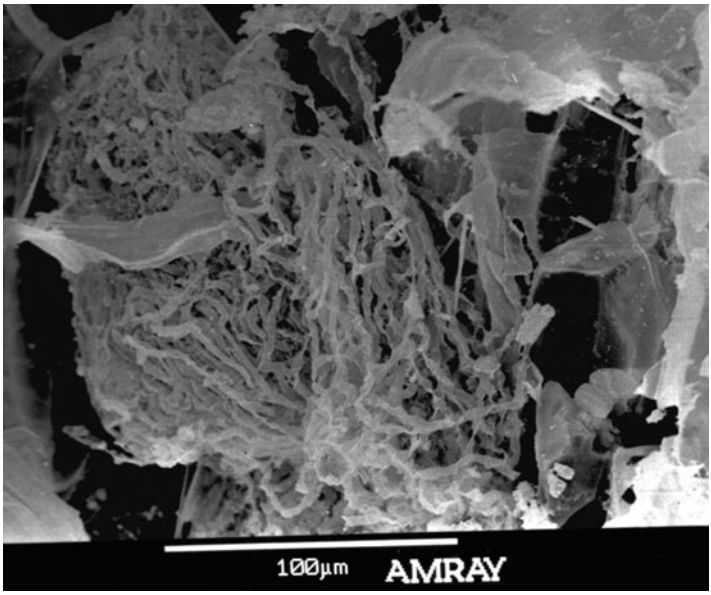


Fig. 11.14 Fungal hyphae in parenchyma cells of substrate roots of terrestrial *Calanthe vestita* var. *rubro-oculata*. SEM

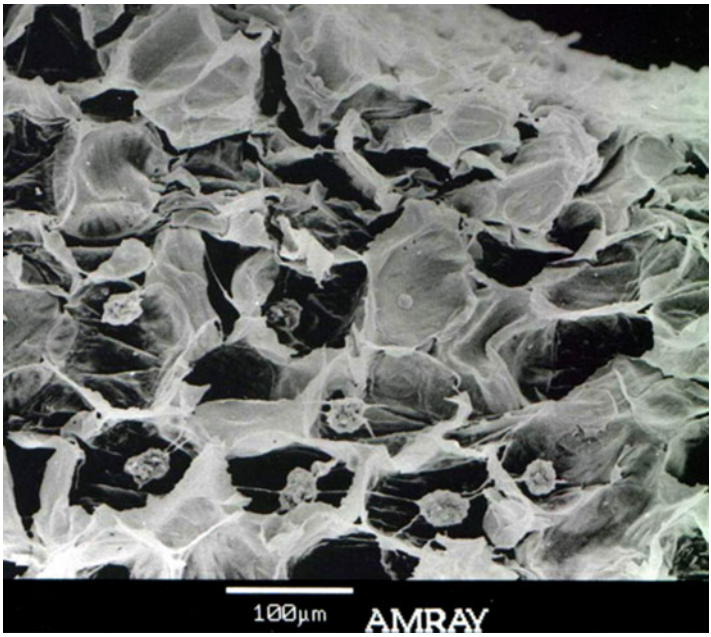


Fig. 11.15 Pelotones of mycorrhizal fungus in parenchyma cells of substrate roots of *Acampe papillosa*. SEM (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003a)

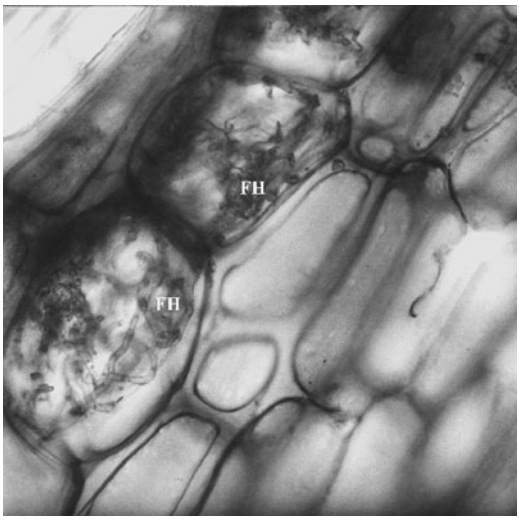


Fig. 11.16 Fungal hyphae (FH) within aerial root of epiphytic *Phalaenopsis amabilis*. Light microscopy ×3,150 (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2003d)

are usually digested by the host cells shortly after their formation (Peterson and Farquhar 1994). The aerial roots which are not in touch of bark or other substratum are believed not to have any mycorrhizal associations (Katiyar et al. 1986; Zalukaeva 1990). However, we revealed that the cyanobacterial coating of aerial roots contributes to fungal growth and development that enable the fungus to penetrate the root and to form symbiotic associations with the host plant (Tsavkelova et al. 2003d). Fungal hyphae and half-digested pelotones have been detected within the aerial roots of *Phalaenopsis amabilis* (Fig. 11.16). The aerial roots covered with a dense cyanobacterial sheath become incapable of photosynthesis, while the sheath itself may serve as a particular econiche, colonized by mycorrhizae-forming fungi.

Isolated strains of associative cyanobacteria were tested for their ability to produce a principle plant growth stimulator, indole-3-acetic acid (IAA, auxin) (Tsavkelova and Cherdyntseva 2005). Investigated cyanobacteria (several strains of *Nostoc* sp., *Anabaena* sp., and *Calothrix* sp.) did not produce high amounts of IAA, according to the method of colorimetric Salkowski assay. Without supplementation of IAA precursor, tryptophan, the level of produced auxin scarcely exceeded 1.5 μg/ml. Addition of tryptophan to the cultivation media enhanced auxin production; the IAA amounts ranged between 2.6 and 12.8 μg/ml in the complete BG-11 medium. In BG_o-11 nitrogen-limited medium, the strains of *Anabaena* sp. and *Calothrix* sp. were more active and produced about 20.0 μg IAA/ml; whereas the strains of *Nostoc* sp. did not show any significant difference in auxin production. Tryptophan-dependent biosynthesis of IAA has been previously reported in cyanobacteria both free-living and symbiotic (Sergeeva et al. 2002). Associative cyanobacteria may use the ability of producing auxins in their strategy to interact with the host plant, particularly when the cyanobacterial partners are localized within the plant tissues (Sergeeva et al. 2002). Nevertheless, the most

evident functional characteristic and primary role of the orchid cyanobacterial community is rather nitrogen fixation and nutrient supply to both the host plant and the "satellite" microorganisms, including mycorrhizae-forming fungi. Thus, a well-structured cyanobacterial community may contribute to formation and stable functioning of the microbial consortium of orchid rhizoplane that in one's turn is an important constituent of complex orchid–microbial interactions.

11.2.3 Rhizobacteria

The plant–microbial interactions have been studied for a long time, however little is known about diversity and functional activity of orchid-associated bacteria. Beneficial influence of rhizobacteria on growth and development of orchids still remains unexplored, although this information could provide a better insight into relations between the host plant and its associative microorganisms and thus, help in orchid cultivation and conservation. About 30 years ago, an Australian group of researches reported on isolation of endophytic bacteria from the substrate roots of wild grown terrestrial *Pterostylis vittata* orchid (Wilkinson et al. 1989, 1994a, b). Associative bacteria were classified as belonging to the genera of *Kurthia*, *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Xanthomonas*, and *Arthrobacter*.

In order to study microbial diversity, localization and functional activity of orchid-associated bacteria, several greenhouse and wild grown terrestrial and epiphytic orchids have been investigated (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2004, 2007a). The scanning electron microscopy analysis of orchid roots showed that the surface and inner root tissues, particularly the velamen, were abundantly occupied by various bacteria (Figs. 11.1–11.8). Together with individual bacterial cells of different morphology, microbial clusters submerged within intercellular matrix were revealed on the aerial roots of epiphytic *D. moschatum* and *A. papillosa* (Figs. 11.5–11.7). Interestingly, the aerial roots of epiphytic orchids were more densely occupied by bacteria than the substrate roots. Quantitative assessment of the *A. papillosa* bacterial complex showed that the amount of bacteria isolated from the aerial roots was about 30 times higher than that of the substrate roots of the same plant (Tsavkelova et al. 2004). Evidently, the rhizoplane of epiphytic orchids become a zone of maximal microbial activity. Multilayered structure of the velamen may protect the associative bacteria of various biotic and abiotic factors, and the root exudates provide a better nutrient support for microbial community. Beneficial interactions between a host orchid and rhizobacteria are of special importance, particularly when epiphytes are cultivated without any substratum, attached to a piece of bark or on the blocks. Further investigation of this phenomenon revealed that microbial abundance in orchid rhizoplane differs significantly between the epiphytic and terrestrial plants of the same location. Associative bacteria of wild grown Vietnamese orchids populated the roots of epyphitic *Pholidota articulata* 55 times more densely than the substrate roots of terrestrial *Paphiopedilum appletonianum* (Tsavkelova et al. 2007a).

Besides, the diversity of rhizobacteria also differs between epiphytic and terrestrial orchids (Table 11.2). Regardless the conditions of plant growing, the variety of associative microorganisms of epiphytes is much wider than that of terrestrial plants (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2004, 2007a). Bacteria detected on the roots of terrestrial *Calanthe vestita* were *Arthrobacter*, *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Mycobacterium* (Table 11.3). At the same time, the strains of *Rhodococcus*,

Table 11.2 Associative bacteria of selected wild grown orchids (Tsavkelova et al. 2007a)

Plant	Bacteria of rhizoplane	Endophytic bacteria
Terrestrial orchid		
Paphiopedilum appletonianum	*Bacillus* *Burkholderia* *Erwinia* *Nocardia* *Pseudomonas* *Streptomyces*	*Bacillus* *Erwinia* *Pseudomonas* *Streptomyces*
Epyphitic orchid		
Pholidota articulata	*Agrobacterium* *Bacillus* *Burkholderia* *Chryseobacterium* *Erwinia* *Flavobacterium* *Pantoea* *Paracoccus* *Stenotrophomonas* *Pseudomonas*	*Bacillus* *Flavobacterium* *Pseudomonas*

Table 11.3 Associative bacteria of selected epiphytic greenhouse orchids (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2004, 2007b)

Plant/root type	Bacteria of rhizoplane	Plant/root type	Bacteria of rhizoplane	Endophytic bacteria
Dendrobium moschatum		*Acampe papillosa*		
Aerial roots	*Bacillus* *Flavobacterium* *Microbacterium* *Nocardia* *Pseudomonas* *Rhodococcus* *Sphingomonas* *Xanthomonas*	Aerial roots	*Bacillus* *Flavobacterium* *Micrococcus* *Pseudomonas* *Rhodococcus* *Streptomyces* *Xanthomonas*	*Bacillus* *Flavobacterium* *Pseudomonas* *Rhodococcus* *Xanthomonas*
Substrate roots	*Acinetobacter* *Bacillus* *Mycobacterium* *Pseudomonas* *Rhizobium* *Rhodococcus*	Substrate roots	*Acinetobacter* *Bacillus* *Cellulomonas* *Gluconobacter* *Mycobacterium* *Pseudomonas* *Rhodococcus* *Streptomyces*	*Alcaligenes* *Bacillus* *Gluconobacter* *Pseudomonas*

Micrococcus, *Flavobacterium,* and *Xanthomonas*, which inhabit the roots of epiphytic *Acampe papillosa* and *D. moschatum* were not found on the roots of *C. vestita* cultivated in the same greenhouse as previously mentioned plants. As for the wild grown orchids, the most commonly isolated bacteria of the terrestrial *Paphiopedilum appletonianum* were Gram-positive strains of *Streptomyces* and *Bacillus*, while the dominants of epiphytic *Pholidota articulata* roots were Gram-negative *Pseudomonas* and *Flavobacterium* (Table 11.2, Tsavkelova et al. 2007a). The microbial community is not identical within one plant. *Acinetobacter*, *Rhizobium*, *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Mycobacterium*, and *Rhodococcus* were isolated from the substrate roots of epiphytic *D. moschatum*, whereas the aerial roots of this plant were populated by *Bacillus*, *Microbacterium*, *Sphingomonas Flavobacterium*, *Nocardia*, *Pseudomonas*, *Rhodococcus*, and *Xanthomonas* (Table 11.3). Bacteria classified into genera of *Acinetobacter*, *Bacillus*, *Cellulomonas*, *Gluconobacter*, *Mycobacterium*, *Rhodococcus*, *Pseudomonas,* and *Streptomyces* were isolated from the substrate roots of another epiphyte, *A. papillosa*, and bacteria of the genera *Bacillus*, *Flavobacterium*, *Micrococcus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Rhodococcus*, *Streptomyces,* and *Xanthomonas* were isolated from its aerial roots (Table 11.3, Tsavkelova et al. 2004).

Surface sterilized roots of the greenhouse *A. papillosa* also revealed the presence of a wide range of endophytic bacteria. The inner layers of *Acampe* aerial roots were colonized by *Bacillus*, *Flavobacterium*, *Pseudomonas*, *Rhodococcus,* and *Xanthomonas* strains, while *Alcaligene*, *Gluconobacter*, *Bacillus,* and *Pseudomonas* were detected within its substrate roots. Among endophytic bacteria of *Paphiopedilum*, the majority belonged to bacilli, while the strains of *Pseudomonas* comprised the primary microbial population of the *Ph. articulate* (Table 11.2). Species of bacilli, *Burkholderia*, enterobacteria, *Flavobacterium*, *Pantoea*, *Pseudomonas*, *Stenotrophomonas*, and *Xanthomonas* are well known plant-associated bacteria and frequent inhabitants of rhizosphere and rhizoplane of numerous plants (Garbeva et al. 2001; Halda-Alija 2003; Loiret et al. 2004; Park et al. 2005; Unno et al. 2005; Young et al. 2005; Gnanamanickam 2007; Ferreira et al. 2008; Deepa et al. 2010). Wilkinson et al. (1989, 1994a) had previously reported the prevalence of endophytic *Pseudomonas* and *Bacillus* strains, and frequent occurrence of *Arthrobacter*, *Xanthomonas*, and *Kurthia* spp. strains as associative bacteria of several wild grown Australian terrestrial orchids. The authors suggest that the orchids are characterized by limited specificity in choosing their bacterial partners. However, despite that the common species of *Pseudomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Xanthomonas,* and *Burkholderia* are typical for the orchids of the same origin, the plants host diverse microbial populations (Tables 11.2 and 11.3). The composition of bacterial community differs even within one particular plant depending on the root type; it may result from the different morphology and physiological characteristics of orchid roots as well as various environmental conditions in which the aerial and substrate roots function.

Associative microorganisms attach to the root surface without formation of specialized visible structures such as nodules, as it is in plant–*Rhizobium* symbiosis (Döbereiner and Day 1974; Kameneva and Muronets 1999). Bacterial cells embedded

in the adhesive films of extracellular exopolysaccharide matrix have been found on the root surface of greenhouse orchids (Figs. 11.5 and 11.7), and were more noticeable on the aerial roots of epiphytes (Tsavkelova et al. 2001, 2003c). Except for the strains of *Nocardia* and *Streptomyces*, all isolated orchid-associated bacteria produced colonies with a developed matrix. Microbial matrix is essential for providing a beneficial environment for agglomerated bacteria; it accumulates nutrients and ions; in addition to a structure-forming and anchoring function, it protects bacterial cells from dehydration, radiation, and other negative abiotic factors (Pavlova et al. 1990; Safronova and Botvinko 1998; Skorupska et al. 2006; Khan et al. 2009). Production of a variety of active polysaccharides is considered to allow rhizobial strains to adapt to changing environmental conditions and interact efficiently with legumes (Skorupska et al. 2006). Microbial glycocalyx is a highly hydrated polyanionic matrix (>90% water) surrounding the bacterial cells and can be composed of hundreds to thousands of monomeric units (Sutherland 2001; Erlandsen et al. 2004). Typically, bacterial matrix consists of polysaccharides and glycosyl phosphate-units or, less frequently, glycoproteins and peptides (Safronova and Botvinko 1998; Sutherland 2001; Skorupska et al. 2006). The majority of studied orchid-associate bacteria produced the polysaccharide matrix of polyanionic nature (Tsavkelova et al. 2004); carbohydrate-rich matrix was shown for the strains of the genera *Pseudomonas*, *Rhizobium*, *Mycobacterium*, and *Rhodococcus*, although some *Pseudomonas* strains possess equal proportions of carbohydrate/protein complex.

Other characteristic of associated bacteria colonizing the aerial roots of epiphytic orchids is that they form brightly colored, pigmented colonies. The pigments usually offer UV radiation (UVR) protection, and such UVR tolerance is known to be a common phenotype among phyllosphere bacteria (Sundin and Jacobs 1999). Since the aerial roots of epiphytic orchids are exposed to sunlight, only selected bacteria with sufficient UVR protection can survive in this environment. The solar radiation has a great impact on microbial ecology and formation of the whole consortium of orchid-associated microorganisms. Thus, orchid-associated bacteria actively colonize host plant's roots and form microbial communities; they attach to the root surface by means of extracellular matrix and they penetrate inside the root. The composition, abundance, and diversity of microbial associations depend on orchid species (terrestrial versus epiphytic) as well as on the root type (aerial roots versus the substrate ones).

11.2.3.1 Auxin Production by Orchid-Associated Rhizobacteria

Plant hormones, such as auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, abscisic acid, and ethylene are essential in coordination of different aspects of plant physiology. Auxins are considered to be the most active plant growth stimulators; cell division, elongation and enlargement, tissue differentiation, root initiation and growth, branching, tropistic responses to light and gravity, blossom, and fruit set formation are just some of the effects of IAA, a naturally occurring auxin (Davies 1995; Woodward

and Bartel 2005). Although IAA producers have been found among free-living microorganisms, IAA biosynthesis is mostly widespread among soil and plant-associated bacteria (White 1987; Patten and Glick 1996, 2002; Kameneva and Muronets 1999; Spaepen et al. 2007; Ahmad et al. 2008). Auxin production has been reported for the strains of the genera *Acetobacter*, *Acinetobacter*, *Agrobacterium*, *Alcaligenes*, *Aminobacter*, *Arthrobacter*, *Azospirillum*, *Azotobacter*, *Bacillus*, *Bradyrhizobium*, *Enterobacter*, *Herbaspirillum*, *Klebsiella*, *Methylobacterium*, *Methylovorus*, *Paracoccus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Rhizobium*, *Rhodococcus*, *Xanthomonas*, and many others (Tien et al. 1979; Cacciari et al. 1989; Costacurta and Vanderleyden 1995; Ivanova et al. 2001; Halda-Alija 2003; Khalid et al. 2004; Unno et al. 2005; Mehnaz and Lazarovits 2006; Spaepen et al. 2007; Ali et al. 2009; Gulati et al. 2009; Deepa et al. 2010). The ability of auxin production is determinant for both plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) and plant pathogens (Patten and Glick 1996; Patten and Glick 2002; Spaepen et al. 2007). Stimulation of root growth is one of the major characteristics by which the positive effects of PGPR are measured (Patten and Glick 2002; Spaepen et al. 2007). However, IAA overproduction by pathogenic strains of *Agrobacterium*, *Pseudomonas*, *Erwinia,* and *Stenotrophomonas* causes imbalance in plant endogenous auxin pool that can lead to abnormal tissue proliferation (Patten and Glick 1996; Glickmann et al. 1998; Liu and Nester 2006; Spaepen et al. 2007).

Till now, only insufficient and fragmentary data have been reported on the ability of orchid-associated bacteria to produce auxin (Wilkinson et al. 1989, 1994a). The influence of rhizobacteria on orchid growth and development under natural and artificial conditions of cultivation remains unclear. Wilkinson and coworkers (1989, 1994a) reported on the orchid endophytic strains of *Pseudomonas* spp., *Bacillus* spp., and *Xanthomonas* spp., which were capable of IAA production. In our studies, we have also shown that associative bacteria of greenhouse orchids were active in producing IAA (Tsavkelova et al. 2005). Without supplementation of tryptophan which is believed to be the main precursor of IAA, some bacterial strains produced up to 10–30 μg/ml when they were cultivated in nutrient broth medium. The amounts of produced IAA were much lower in mineral Czapek medium (about 0.3–6.6 μg IAA/ml), indicating that there is a lack of substances needed for auxin biosynthesis. Strains belonging to one particular genus differed significantly (3–58 μg/ml) in amounts of produced auxin (data for selected strains are performed in Table 11.4); this corresponds to the previously published data on variations in IAA production within the strains of the genus *Pseudomonas* (Mordukhova et al. 1991; Olyunina and Shabaev 1996). The most active orchid-associated IAA producers were also found among *Pseudomonas* strains, although *Rhodococcus*, *Rhizobium*, *Microbacterium*, *Sphingomonas*, *Bacillus*, *Mycobacterium*, and *Xanthomonas* produced high amounts of auxin as well (Table 11.4).

The amino acid tryptophan (Trp) is known to enhance considerably microbial IAA yield in vitro (Ivanova et al. 2001; Halda-Alija 2003; Khalid et al. 2004; Spaepen et al. 2007). It is also believed that root exudates of higher plants supply the rhizosphere with Trp, which may undergo further conversion into IAA by plant-associated bacteria (Jaeger et al. 1999; Asghar et al. 2002; Kravchenko et al. 2004;

Table 11.4 Microbial auxin production by selected orchid-associated bacteria as dependent on tryptophan concentration in Czapek medium (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2005)

Orchid	Bacterial culture	Tryptophan (μg/ml)	IAA (μg/ml)	Maximal increase of IAA biosynthesis, times
D. moschatum	*Sphingomonas* sp. 18	0	1.8[a]	28
		50	17.4	
		100	38.4	
		200	50.2	
	Microbacterium sp. 23	0	2.5	21
		50	3.1	
		100	14.6	
		200	53.1	
	Mycobacterium sp. 1	0	3.1	30
		50	34.0	
		100	86.1	
		200	92.9	
	Bacillus sp. 3	0	6.6	6
		50	13.2	
		100	28.4	
		200	37.6	
	Rhizobium sp. 5	0	1.5	34
		50	2.8	
		100	16.3	
		200	60.4	
A. papillosa	*Sphingomonas* sp. 42	0	1.1	63
		50	17.5	
		100	43.4	
		200	69.4	
	Rhodococcus sp. 37	0	0.4	124
		50	6.2	
		100	22.7	
		200	49.6	
	Cellulomonas sp. 23	0	1.0	54
		50	19.9	
		100	35.6	
		200	53.9	
	Pseudomonas sp. 24	0	0.3	103
		50	14.2	
		100	21.2	
		200	31.0	
	Bacillus sp. 12	0	1.9	4
		50	1.9	
		100	3.7	
		200	8.4	
	Micrococcus sp.	0	1.0	39
		50	13.4	
		100	25.3	
		200	39.2	

[a]Standard deviation values are ±(0.07–0.15)

Kamilova et al. 2006). Orchid rhizobacteria were also shown to converse Trp effectively into auxin (Table 11.4). Usually, IAA production by PGPR strains ranges in response to tryptophan addition from 5–10 to 100–200 μg IAA/mL and higher, depending on exogenous tryptophan concentration (Tien et al. 1979; Halda-Alija 2003; Khalid et al. 2004; Park et al. 2005; Ahmad et al. 2008). Trp significantly enhanced IAA amounts produced by orchid-associated microbial strains both in mineral and complex media. Auxin accumulation in the culture medium reached its maximum during the stationary phase of bacterial growth (Tsavkelova et al. 2005, 2007a) that has also been shown for diverse plant-associated *Pseudomonas*, *Azospirillum*, *Arthrobacter* and *Agrobacterium* strains (Tien et al. 1979; Cacciari et al. 1989; Olyunina and Shabaev 1996; Ivanova et al. 2001; Leveau and Lindow 2005). At 200 μg/ml concentration, Trp showed the most effective response; the strains isolated from roots of *D. moschatum* (*Sphingomonas* sp., *Microbacterium* sp., *Mycobacterium* sp., *Bacillus* sp., and *Rhizobium* sp.) produced 50.2, 53.1, 92.9, 37.6, and 60.4 μg IAA/ml, respectively, and bacteria isolated from *Acampe papillosa* (*Sphingomonas* sp., *Rhodococcus* sp., *Cellulomonas* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp., and *Micrococcus* sp.) produced 69.4, 49.6, 53.9, 31.0, and 39.2 μg IAA/ml, respectively. Thus, the supplementation of growth media with 200 μg/ml of exogenous Trp increased the level of produced IAA by 30–170-fold in comparison to "no Trp" cultivation media, confirming that Trp is efficiently consumed by investigated strains as an IAA precursor.

Thin layer chromatography showed the identity of microbial auxin to the authentic IAA (Tsavkelova et al. 2005). Other indole compounds related to diverse intermediates of IAA biosynthetic pathways have been also detected. Microbial production of IAA is realized via several routes (Costacurta and Vanderleyden 1995; Patten and Glick 1996; Spaepen et al. 2007), although auxin formation through indole-3-pyruvic acid (IPA), which is then converted into indole-3-acetaldehyde (IAAld) and IAA, is the primary route of auxin biosynthesis among PGPR (Koga et al. 1994; Costacurta and Vanderleyden 1995; Brandl and Lindow 1996; Ona et al. 2005; Spaepen et al. 2007). For the most active IAA-producing bacteria associated with greenhouse orchids (*Sphingomonas* sp., *Mycobacterium* sp., *Rhizobium* sp., and *Microbacterium* sp.), the auxin biosynthetic routes have been studied by using HPLC analysis (Tsavkelova et al. 2007b). IAAld, the direct precursor of IAA, has been identified in all investigated strains, whereas IPA and/or indole-lactic acid (ILA) have been detected only in *Sphingomonas* sp., *Rhizobium* sp., and *Microbacterium* sp. strains, thus indicating the activity of IPA pathway. Another intermediate, indole-3-acetamide (IAM), has been found in *Mycobacterium* sp., confirming the presence of the IAM biosynthetic pathway (Fig. 11.17). This pathway is believed to be the major IAA-forming route in phytopathogenic bacteria of *Agrobacterium*, *Pseudomonas,* and *Erwinia* genera (Weiler and Schröder 1987; Costacurta and Vanderleyden 1995; Glickmann et al. 1998; Manulis et al. 1998; Patten and Glick 1996, 2002; Spaepen et al. 2007). At the same time, this substance has also been reported in *Azospirillum brasilense* and certain strains of streptomycetes and methylobacteria (Magie et al. 1963; Manulis et al. 1994, 1998; Bar and Okon 1993; Ivanova et al. 2001). The genes controlling

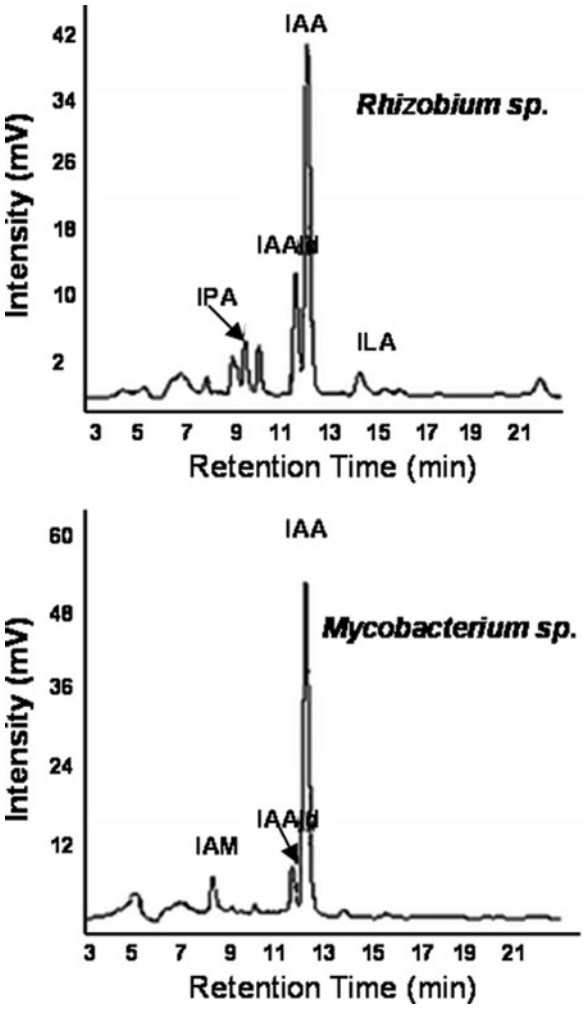


Fig. 11.17 HPLC analysis of indolic compounds in the supernatants of orchid-associated *Rhizobium* sp. and *Mycobacterium* sp. growing in mineral Czapek medium. *IAA* indole-3-acetic acid, *IAAld* indole-3-acetaldehyde, *IPA* indole-3-pyruvic acid, *ILA* indole-3-lactic acid (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2007b)

IAA synthesis through IAM were also detected in symbiotic *Rhizobium* sp. and *Bradyrhizobium* sp., although the activity of the corresponding enzymes was negligible (Sekine et al. 1989; Costacurta and Vanderleyden 1995). The absence of indole-3-acetonitrile (IAN) suggests that the IAN pathway is not operative in the studied orchid-associated bacteria (Tsavkelova et al. 2007b).

The strains of *Bradyrhizobium*, *Pseudomonas*, *Alcaligenes,* and *Agrobacterium* genera are also recognized as effective IAA degraders (Libbert and Risch 1969; Egebo et al. 1991; Jensen et al. 1995; Leveau and Lindow 2005). It is believed that the IAA degraders are abolishing the harmful auxin effects on plants, when IAA is overproduced by plant pathogens (Jensen et al. 1995; Leveau and Lindow 2005). Rhizobacteria can combine IAA production and its degradation, although IAA consumption depends on the medium composition and growth stage of microbial

culture (Libbert and Risch 1969; Leveau and Lindow 2005). In order to verify whether the selected strains of *Sphingomonas* sp., *Mycobacterium* sp., *Rhizobium* sp., and *Microbacterium* sp. were able to degrade exogenous IAA, they were cultivated in both complete nutrient and minimal media with glucose supplementation decreased to (1) 10 μg/ml, (2) 1.5 μg/ml, and (3) 0 μg/ml (Tsavkelova et al. 2007b). However, not a single strain showed any significant reduction in IAA content; bacterial growth was not supported by exogenous IAA as the only source of carbon and energy. The investigated strains did not utilize IAA as a nutrient substrate. Moreover, some bacteria augmented the auxin content in the cultivation media by additional excretion of newly produced IAA. It demonstrates that exogenous IAA might act as an autoinducer of microbial IAA biosynthesis. Previously, Vande Broek et al. (1999) reported that exogenous IAA induced transcription of the *Azospirillum brasilense ipdC* gene, encoding indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase, involved in IPA-biosynthetic pathway of IAA.

In order to determine an influence of auxin on IAA-producing microbes, orchid-associated bacteria were treated with different amounts of exogenous IAA (Tsavkelova et al. 2007b). Auxin is believed to have the prominent effects on root formation in 10–100 μg/ml range; these concentrations have been tested and shown to be the most effective in stimulation of the microbial growth. Thus, 10 μg IAA/ml revealed the maximal beneficial influence on growth and development of *Microbacterium* sp. and *Rhizobium* sp. strains, and the growth of *Sphingomonas* sp. and *Mycobacterium* sp. cultures was significantly stimulated by exogenous IAA in concentration of 100 μg/ml (Fig. 11.18). The best results have been observed for

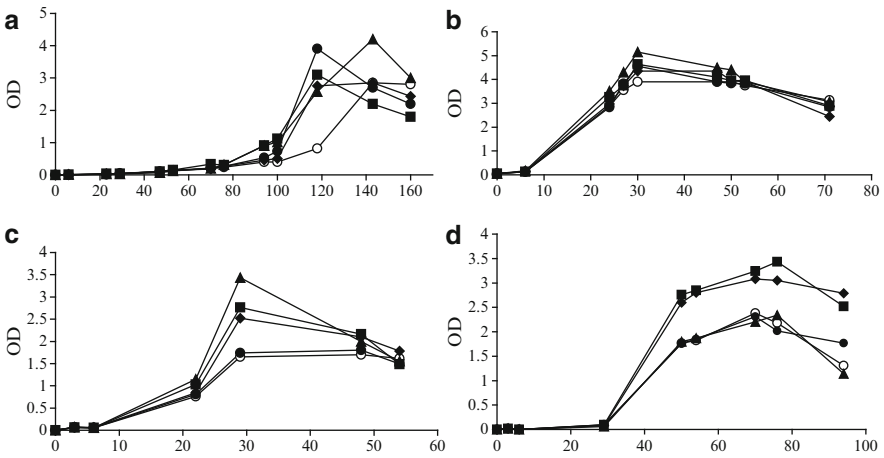


Fig. 11.18 IAA effects on bacterial biomass accumulation in mineral Czapek medium: *a* as *Mycobacterium* sp., *b* as *Sphingomonas* sp., *c* as *Rhizobium* sp., *d* as *Microbacterium* sp. Symbols are: *open circle* bacterial growth in the absence of IAA; *filled circle* in the presence of 0.1 g IAA/ml; *filled diamond* in the presence of 1.0 g IAA/ml; *filled square* in the presence of 10.0 g IAA/ml; *filled triangle* in the presence of 100.0 g IAA/ml. Data shown are mean of three independent experiments. Variations within the experiments are less than 10% (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2007b)

Rhizobium sp., which increased its biomass production two times in comparison to auxin-untreated culture. It has been also noted that IAA showed the most stimulating effects in exponential phase of bacterial growth, shortening the initial lag- and stationary phases. Previously (Berliner 1981), it has been demonstrated that exogenous IAA decreased and eliminated the lag phase of *Cosmarium botrytis*. It seems likely that IAA promotes development of "auxin-sensitive" plant-associated bacteria, so they could gain an advantage in inhabiting the rhizosphere and rhizoplane. Besides, the fact that IAA stimulates the microbial growth without being used as a nutrient source of carbon and energy suggests that it may act as a hormone substance.

Resident PGPR strains are widely applied in cultivation of agricultural, industrial, and ornamental plants to stimulate seed germination, root formation, and improve plant growth, development and productivity (Tien et al. 1979; Noel et al. 1996; Dileep et al. 1998; Eneba et al. 1998; Belimov et al. 1999; Khalid et al. 2004; Yasmin et al. 2004; Kamilova et al. 2006; Mehnaz and Lazarovits 2006; Ferreira et al. 2008; Ahmad et al. 2008; Deepa et al. 2010). The tiny orchid seeds require different combinations of diverse plant growth stimulators and/or the presence of mycorrhizal fungi for initiation of germination (Burgeff 1959; Clements 1988). The supplementation of the nutrient medium with plant and fungal extracts sometimes replaces the need for the orchid's symbiotic partner (Fonnesbech 1972; Hadley and Harvais 1968). However, this in vitro germination technique still remains a labor-intensive and not always a successful process. The first attempt on the orchid seed bacterization was made by Lewis Knudson in 1922 (Knudson, 1922). He reported on successful inoculation of the seeds of *Epidendron* and *Laelia-Cattleya* epiphytic orchids with a root-nodule bacterium, *Bacillus radicicola* (*Rhizobium leguminosarum*), originally isolated from alfalfa; more recent studies showed that orchid seed germination is also promoted by co-inoculation with a mycorrhizal fungus and orchid-associated bacteria (Wilkinson et al. 1989, 1994a). The authors suggest that the ability to produce auxin is essential for selected strains to bring the favorable impact into orchid germination; *Pseudomonas putida*, *Bacillus cereus*, *B. sphaericus*, and *Xanthomonas maltophilia* jointly with the symbiotic fungus, were able to promote germination of *Pterostylis vittata* seeds (Wilkinson et al. 1989, 1994a). Auxins, in comparison to other known plant growth stimulators, are considered of the most importance for orchid seed germination (Hadley and Harvais 1968).

Bacteria isolated from greenhouse orchids were also shown to be active in stimulating plant development by promoting root formation and increase the number of roots (Tsavkelova et al. 2005, 2007a). Treatment of the kidney bean cuttings with bacterial filtrates of several PGPR strains significantly simulated the adventitious root growth, and no inhibiting or suppressing effects have been observed (Table 11.5 and Fig. 11.19). The strains that showed the most beneficial effect on the kidney beans were taken for the orchid symbiotic seed germination assays. Originally isolated from the roots of epiphytic *D. moschatum*, *Rhizobium* sp., *Sphingomonas* sp., and *Mycobacterium* sp. were among the most active and stable IAA producers. They were studied for the ability to promote germination and further development of the orchid seeds under the artificial conditions of the

Table 11.5 Effects of selected bacterial culture supernatants on root formation of kidney bean cuttings (originally published in Tsavkelova et al. 2005, 2007a)

Bacteria associated with greenhouse orchids (Tsavkelova et al. 2005)			Bacteria associated with wild grown orchids (Tsavkelova et al. 2007a)		
Test variant	Height of root formation (mm)	Root's number	Test variant	Height of root formation (mm)	Root's number
Rhizobium sp. K2	63 ± 3.4	98 ± 4.0	*Burkholderia* sp. 1	48 ± 4.6	56 ± 6.2
Rhizobium sp. 5	57 ± 3.2	64 ± 4.0	*Erwinia* sp. 7	46 ± 5.8	28 ± 5.2
Sphingomonas sp. 42	70 ± 3.8	68 ± 2.0	*Bacillus* sp. 8	42 ± 2.5	38 ± 5.0
Sphingomonas sp. 18	67 ± 3.4	82 ± 2.0	*Bacillus* sp. 3	51 ± 3.8	56 ± 4.5
M. luteus	66 ± 3.1	62 ± 3.0	*Bacillus* sp. 21	50 ± 4.2	54 ± 6.2
Microbacterium sp. 37	46 ± 2.5	44 ± 3.0	*Chryseobacterium* sp. 15	41 ± 3.5	40 ± 5.0
Rhodococcus sp. 23	62 ± 3.5	20 ± 4.0	*Pseudomonas* sp. 10	53 ± 2.8	48 ± 6.2
Cellulomonas sp. 23	58 ± 3.4	54 ± 3.0	*Stenotrophomonas* sp. 13	53 ± 4.2	24 ± 2.8
Bacillus sp. 3	60 ± 2.9	63 ± 2.0	*Erwinia* sp. 17	21 ± 2.5	18 ± 3.2
Nocardia sp. K5	37 ± 1.8	64 ± 4.0	*Pseudomonas* sp. 20	45 ± 3.0	52 ± 8.0
Mycobacterium sp. 1	47 ± 3.4	78 ± 3.0	*Flavobacterium* sp. 11	51 ± 5.0	33 ± 4.0
Pseudomonas sp. 24	57 ± 3.2	69 ± 4.0	*Flavobacterium* sp. 22	42 ± 3.5	34 ± 3.6
Bacillus sp. 12	35 ± 2.2	46 ± 2.0	*Agrobacterium* sp. 16	33 ± 4.7	28 ± 4.7
Streptomyces sp. 32	46 ± 2.5	69 ± 3.0			
Streptomyces sp. 40	42 ± 2.6	65 ± 4.0			
IAA (50 μg/ml)	57 ± 2.7	77 ± 4.0	IAA (50 μg/ml)	57 ± 2.7	65 ± 5.5
Tap water	5 ± 0.45[a]	5 ± 2.0	Tap water	6 ± 1.5[a]	14 ± 5.0
Czapek medium	5 ± 0.45[b]	5 ± 2.0	Czapek media	4 ± 1.6[b]	11 ± 4.2

Values are the means of three replicates ± SD

[a]Control treatment

[b]Not significantly different from the control ($p \leq 0.05$); other values are significantly different ($p \leq 0.05$) from the control

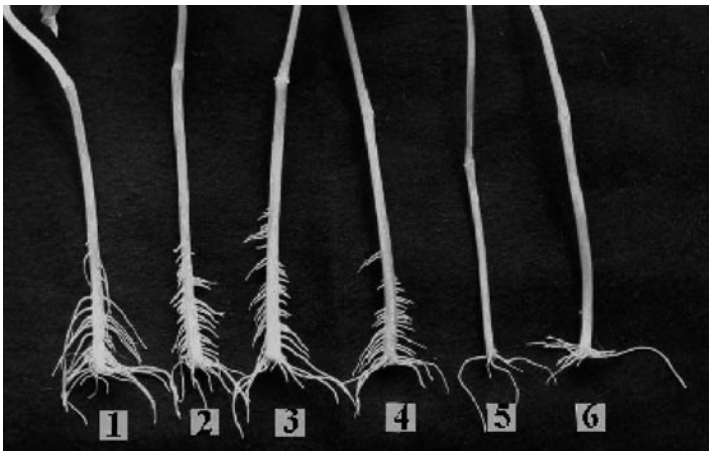


Fig. 11.19 Bioassay with the kidney bean cuttings; adventitious root formation under treatment of: (1) 50 μg/ml of IAA (auxin); (2) supernatant of *Rhizobium* sp.; (3) supernatant of *Sphingomonas* sp.; (4) supernatant of *Mycobacterium* sp.; (5) tap water; and (6) mineral Czapek medium. Data from five replicates of several independent experiments

greenhouse (Tsavkelova et al. 2007b). It turned out that no germination happened under treatment with *Rhizobium* sp. producing abundant extracellular matrix, which covered the seeds with thick (up to 3 mm) layer mucus. Two other bacteria perfectly initiated germination of *D. moschatum* seeds that resulted in seed swelling, protocorm formation, and its subsequent growth by accelerating both cell enlargement and cell division, favored in shoot bud induction and rhizome enlargement. *Sphingomonas* sp. was the most effective in symbiotic orchid propagation; more than 10% of the seeds germinated and the juvenile plants formed the chlorophyll-containing leaves. By contrast, no germination occurred in the control samples (without bacterial inoculation). Another strain, *Bacillus* sp., originally isolated from *Dendrobium leonis* (Lindl.) Rchb., has been also shown to significantly promote symbiotic germination and development of diverse epiphytic and terrestrial orchids of *Dendrobium*, *Paphiopedilum*, *Ponthieva*, and *Dactylorhiza* genera under greenhouse conditions (Kolomeitseva et al. 2002). These data on in vitro orchid germination, which takes place in the absence of mycorrhizal fungus or any of additional exogenous plant growth regulators, confirm a successful application of PGPR in orchid germination and propagation. It also shows the significant role of orchid-associated bacteria to promote the development of the endosperm-lacking orchid seeds under non-mycorrhiza-assisted conditions. Thus, treatment of the orchid seeds with IAA-producing microbial strains is helpful and advantageous for orchid propagation in vitro under artificial conditions. Associative bacteria may use their ability to produce and release auxin as a strategy to influence and trigger diverse philological processes in orchids, thus successfully affecting plant growth and development.

11.3 Conclusion

The orchid rhizoplane is well populated by different phototrophic and heterotrophic microorganisms. The spongy layers of the velamen provide a favorable econiche for various "satellite" bacteria. Microbial diversity depends on the environmental conditions in which plant is grown (wild grown environment versus the greenhouses) and on the plant ecotype (terrestrial and epiphytic orchids). Even within one epiphytic plant, the microbial consortium of its aerial and substrate roots differs considerably; the bacterial population of the aerial rhizoplane is much more intense than that of the substrate roots. Nevertheless, the common species of PGPR, such as *Bacillus*, *Burkholderia*, *Flavobacterium*, *Pantoea*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Stenotrophomonas* are among the most popular strains isolated from both greenhouse and wild grown orchids. The specific characteristic of epiphytic plants is that their aerial roots harbor nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria, which form a sheath-like covering under conditions of constant high humidity and warm temperatures. The ability of nitrogen fixation by associative cyanobacteria is essential to support and improve plant growth under nitrogen-limited conditions. Cyanobacterial community also provides nutrients for other members of microbial community of rhizoplane, such as bacteria and mycorrhizal fungi. Another characteristic of orchid PGPR is that they are active in auxin production, although the strains vary in amounts of produced IAA. Regardless the functional pathways of auxin production, all investigated bacteria performed tryptophan-dependent IAA biosynthesis. Since the resident PGPR strains promote orchid seed germination, symbiotic bacterization might be considered as an additional method for orchid in vitro propagation.

Orchids are known to produce a number of antimicrobials, phytoalexins, and related substances that inhibit a number of fungi and bacteria (Takagi et al. 1983; Stoessl and Arditti 1984; Yamaki et al. 1993). It is believed that a continuous production of reasonable amount of degradable phytoalexin(s) is optimal in that it would keep the fungal infection functional without damaging the fungus, and the host plant would not be parasitized either (Fisch et al. 1973). In one turns, orchid endophytic fungi have also been reported to possess strong antibacterial activity and produce compounds that repress bacterial growth (Vaz et al. 2009), whereas plant-associated rhizobacteria display wide range of antifungal activity and antibiosis towards different pathogenic fungi (Ayyadurai et al. 2006; Recep et al. 2009). It may therefore be concluded that the complex interactions between host orchid and its associative microorganisms are directed to selection of the most beneficial partners that is resulted in the formation of a stable community; its functional activity guarantees the nutrient supply and better adaptation of the members of such consortium to the environmental conditions.

Acknowledgments The author is grateful to Dr. Tatijana Cherdyntseva, Dr. Galina Kolomeitseva, and Prof. Alexander Netrusov for their help and support through the study.

References

Ackerman JD (1989) Limitations to sexual reproduction in *Encyclia krugii* (Orchidaceae). Syst Bot 14:101–109

Adams DG (2000) Symbiotic interactions. In: Whitton BA, Potts M (eds) The ecology of cyanobacteria: their diversity in time and space. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 523–561

Adams DG, Duggan PS (2008) Cyanobacteria–bryophyte symbioses. J Exp Bot 59:1047–1058

Ahmad F, Ahmad I, Khan MS (2008) Screening of free-living rhizospheric bacteria for their multiple plant growth promoting activities. Microbiol Res 163:173–181

Ali B, Sabri AN, Ljung K, Hasnain S (2009) Auxin production by plant associated bacteria: impact on endogenous IAA content and growth of *Triticum aestivum* L. Lett Appl Microbiol 48:542–547

Arditti J (1962) The orchid root. Orchid Soc Calif Rev 4:10–12

Arditti J (1984) An history of orchid hybridization, seed germination and tissue culture. Bot J Linn Soc 89:359–381

Arditti J (1992) Fundamentals of orchid biology. John Wiley & Sons Inc., New York

Arditti J, Ghani AKA (2000) Numerical and physical properties of orchid seeds and their biological implications. New Phytol 145:367–421

Asghar HN, Zahir ZA, Arshad M, Khaliq A (2002) Relationship between in vitro production of auxins by rhizobacteria and their growth-promoting activities in *Brassica juncea* L. Biol Fertil Soils 35:231–237

Atwood JT (1986) Two new species in the *Maxillaria rufescens* complex from Central America. Lindleyana 11:27–33

Ayyadurai N, Ravindra Naik P, Sreehari Rao M, Sunish Kumar R, Samrat SK, Manohar M, Sakthivel N (2006) Isolation and characterization of a novel banana rhizosphere bacterium as fungal antagonist and microbial adjuvant in micropropagation of banana. J Appl Microbiol 100:926–937

Badger MR, Price DG, Long BM, Woodger FJ (2006) The environmental plasticity and ecological genomics of the cyanobacterial CO_2 concentrating mechanism. J Exp Bot 57:249–265

Bar T, Okon Y (1993) Tryptophan conversion to indole-3-acetic acid via indole-3-acetamide in Azospirillum brasilense Sp. 7. Can J Microbiol 39:81–86

Barroso J, Chaves Neves H, Pais MS (1986) Production of indole-3-ethanol and indole-3-acetic acid by the mycorrhizal fungus of *Ophrys lutea* (Orchidaceae). New Phytol 103:745–749

Belimov AA, Ivanchikov AYu, Yudkin LV, Khamova OF, Postavskaya SM, Popolzukhina PV, Shmakova AA, Kozlova GYa (1999) New strains of associative growth-stimulating bacteria dominating the rhizoplane of barley seedlings: characterization and introduction. Mikrobiologiya 68:392–397

Benzing DH, Friedman WE (1981) Mycotrophy: its occurrence and possible significance among epiphytic Orchidaceae. Selbyana 5:243–247

Bergman B, Rai AN, Johansson C, Söderback E (1993) Cyanobacteria–plant symbioses. Symbioses 14:61–81

Bergman B, Gallon JR, Rai AN, Stal LJ (1997) Nitrogen fixation by non-heterocystous cyanobacteria. FEMS Microbiol Rev 19:139–185

Berliner MD (1981) Hormone effects on *Cosmarium botrytis* cell division. Cytobios 30:89–99

Beyrle HF, Smith SE, Peterson RL, Franco CMM (1995) Colonization of *Orchis morio* protocorms by mycorrhizal fungus: effects of nitrogen nutrition and glyphosate in modifying the responses. Can J Bot 73:1128–1140

Bonnardeaux Y, Brundrett M, Batty A, Dixon K, Koch J, Sivasithamparam K (2007) Diversity of mycorrhizal fungi of terrestrial orchids: compatibility webs, brief encounters, lasting relationships and alien invasions. Mycol Res 111:51–61

Brandl MT, Lindow SE (1996) Cloning and characterization of a locus encoding an indolepyruvate decarboxylase involved in indole-3-acetic acid synthesis in *Erwinia herbicola*. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:4121–4128

Brundrett N (2004) Diversity and classification of mycorrhizal associations. Biol Rev 79:473–495

Burgeff H (1959) Mycorrhiza of orchids. In: Withner C (ed) The orchids: a scientific survey. The Roland Press, New York, pp 361–395

Cacciari I, Lippi D, Pietrosanti T, Pietrosanti W (1989) Phytohormone-like substances produced by single and mixed diazotrophic cultures of *Azospirillum* and *Arthrobacter*. Plant Soil 115:151–153

Chen YH, Tsai YJ, Huang JZ, Chen FC (2005) Transcription analysis of peloric mutants of *Phalaenopsis* orchids derived from tissue culture. Cell Res 15:639–657

Cherevchenko TM, Kushnir GP (1986) Orchidei v kul'ture (Orchids in culture). Naukova Dumka, Kiev

Clements MA (1988) Orchid mycorrhizal associations. Lindleyana 3:73–86

Cockburn W, Goh CJ, Avadhani PN (1985) Photosynthetic carbon assimilation in a shootjess orchids, *Chiloschista usneoides* (Don) Ldl.: a variant on crassulacean acid metabolism. Plant Physiol 77:83–86

Costa J, Paulsrud P, Rikkinen J, Lindblad P (2001) Genetic diversity of *Nostoc* synbionts endophytically associated with two bryophyte species. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:4393–4396

Costacurta A, Vanderleyden J (1995) Synthesis of phytohormones by plant associated bacteria. Crit Rev Microbiol 21:1–18

Currah RS, Sigler L, Hambleton S (1987) New records and new taxa of fungi from the mycorrhizae of terrestrial orchids of Alberta. Can J Bot 65:2473–2482

Davies PJ (1995) The plant hormone concept: concentration, sensitivity, and transport. In: Davies PJ (ed) Plant hormones: physiology, biochemistry, and molecular biology. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 13–18

Dearnaley JD (2007) Further advances in orchid mycorrhizal research. Mycorrhiza 17:475–486

Deepa CK, Dastager SG, Pandey A (2010) Isolation and characterization of plant growth promoting bacteria from non-rhizospheric soil and their effect on cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata* (L.) Walp.) seedling growth. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 26(7):1233–1240

Dijk E, Eck ND (1995) Effects of mycorrhizal fungi on in vitro nitrogen response of some Dutch indigenous orchid species. Can J Bot 73:1203–1211

Dileep C, Kumar B, Dileep S, Dube HC (1998) Promotion of plant growth and yield by two rhizoplane fluorescent pseudomonads. Indian J Exp Biol 36:399–402

Döbereiner J, Day JM (1974) Associative symbiosis in tropical grasses: characterization of microorganisms and dinitrogen-fixing sites. In: Newton WE, Nyman CJ (eds) Proceedings of the first international symposium on nitrogen fixation, vol 2. Washington State University Press, Pullman, pp 518–538

Dressler RL (1993) Phylogeny and classification of the Orchid family. Cambridge University Press, Oregon

Drews G, Weckesser J (1982) Function, structure and composition of cell wall and external layers. In: Carr NG, Whitton BA (eds) The biology of cyanobacteria. Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford, pp 333–357

Dycus A, Knudson L (1957) The role of the velamen of the aerial roots of orchids. Bot Gaz 119:78–87

Egebo LA, Nielsen SVS, Jochimsen B (1991) Oxygen-dependent catabolism of indole-3-acetic acid in *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. J Bacteriol 173:4897–4901

Elevitch C, Wilkinson K, Mathews B (1998) Mulch from hedgerows of nitrogen fixing trees affects soil nutrient levels in a jackfruit orchard. Forest Farm Comm Tree Res Rep 3:21–25

Eneba KSA, Wei G, Kloepper JW (1998) Effects of plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria on loblolly and slash pine seedlings. Forest Sci 44:139–144

Erickson LC (1957) Respiration and photosynthesis in *Cattleya* roots. Am Orchid Soc Bull 26:401–402

Erlandsen SL, Kristich CJ, Dunny GM, Wells CL (2004) High-resolution visualization of the microbial glycocalyx with low-voltage scanning electron microscopy: dependence on cationic dyes. J Histochem Cytochem 52:1427–1435

Fay P (1992) Oxygen relations of nitrogen fixation in cyanobacteria. Microbiol Rev 56:340–373

Fay MF, Chase MW (2009) Orchid biology: from Linnaeus via Darwin to the 21st century. Ann Bot 104:359–364

Ferreira A, Quecine MC, Lacava PT, Oda S, Azevedo JL, Araújo WL (2008) Diversity of endophytic bacteria from eucalyptus species seeds and colonization of seedlings by *Pantoea agglomerans*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 287:8–14

Fisch MH, Flick BH, Arditti J (1973) Structure and antifungal activity of hercinol, loroglossol and orchinol. Phytochemistry 12:437–441

Fonnesbech M (1972) Growth hormones and propagation of *Cymbidium* in vitro. Physiol Plant 27:310–316

Franco M, Guevara G, Mesa N, Urueña G (2007) Hardening of the national flower of Colombia, the threatened *Cattleya trianae* (Orchidaceae), from in vitro culture with previous invigoration phase. Rev Biol Trop 55:681–691

Freiberg E (1999) Influence of microclimate on the occurrence of cyanobacteria in the phyllosphere in a premontane forest of Costa Rica. Plant Biol 1:244–252

Galun M, Bubrick P (1984) Physiological interactions between the partners of the lichen symbiosis. In: Linskens HF, Heslop-Harrison J (eds) Encyclopedia of plant physiology new series, vol 17. Springer Verlag, Berlin, pp 362–401

Gantar M, Kerby NW, Rowel P, Obreht Z (1991) Colonization of wheat (*Triticum vulgare* L.) by N_2-fixing cyanobacteria. I. A survey of soil cyanobacterial isolates forming associations with roots. New Phytol 118:477–483

Garbeva P, Overbeek L, Vuurde J, Elsas J (2001) Analysis of endophytic bacterial communities of potato by plating and denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE) of 16S rDNA based PCR fragments. Microb Ecol 41:369–383

Gehrig H, Faist K, Kluge M (1998) Identification of phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase isoforms in leaf, stem and roots of the obligate CAM plant *Vanilla planifolia* Salib. (Orchidaceae): a physiological and molecular approach. Plant Mol Biol 38:1215–1223

Gladkova NV (1982) The order Orchidales. In: Takhtajan A (ed) Zhizn' rastenii (Plant life), vol 6. Prosveshchenie, Moscow, pp 248–275

Glickmann E, Gardan L, Jacquet S, Hussain S, Elasri M, Petit A, Dessaux Y (1998) Auxin production is a common feature of most pathovars of *Pseudomonas syringae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:156–162

Gnanamanickam SS (ed) (2007) Plant-associated bacteria. Springer, Dordrecht

Gorelova OA, Korzhenevskaia TG (2002) Formation of giant and ultramicroscopic forms of *Nostoc muscorum* CALU 304 during cocultivation with *Rauwolfia* tissues. Mikrobiologiia 71:654–661

Govil S, Gupta SC (1997) Commercialization of plant tissue culture in India. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Cult 51:65–73

Gravendeel B, Smithson A, Slik FJW, Schuiteman A (2004) Epiphytism and pollinator specialization: drivers for orchid diversity? Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 359: 1523–1535

Grobbellaar N, Scott WE, Hattingh W, Marchall J (1987) The identification of the coralloid root endophytes of the southern African cycads and the ability of the isolates to fix dinitrogen. S Afr J Bot 53:111–118

Gu Z, Arditti J, Nyman LP (1987a) *Vanilla planifolia*: callus induction and plantlet production in vitro. Lindleyana 2:48–52

Gu Z, Higaki PC, Nishia MM, Arditti J, Nyman LP (1987b) The effects of benzyladenine, 2,4-dichlorophenoxyscetic acid, and indoleacetic acid on shoot-tip cultures of *Cymbidium*. Lindleyana 2:88–90

Gulati A, Vyas P, Rahi P, Kasana RC (2009) Plant growth-promoting and rhizosphere-competent Acinetobacter rhizosphaerae strain BIHB 723 from the cold deserts of the Himalayas. Curr Microbiol 58:371–377

Hadley G (1970) Non-specificity of symbiotic infection in orchid mycorrhizal. New Phytol 69:1015–1023

Hadley G, Harvais G (1968) The effect of certain growth substances on asymbiotic germination and development of *Orchis purpurella*. New Phytol 67:441–445

Halda-Alija L (2003) Identification of indole-3-acetic acid producing freshwater wetland rhizosphere bacteria associated with *Juncus effuses* L. Can J Microbiol 49:781–787

Hayes AB (1969) Observations on orchid seed mycorrhizae. Mycopathology 38:139–144

Hill DS, Stein JI, Torkewitz NR, Morse AM, Howell CR, Pachlatko JP, Becker JO, Ligon JM (1994) Cloning of genes involved in the synthesis of pyrrolnitrin from *Pseudomonas fluorescens* and role of pyrrolnitrin synthesis in biological control of plant disease. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:78–85

Ivanova EG, Doronina NV, Trotsenko IuA (2001) Aerobic methylobacteria are capable of synthesizing auxins. Mikrobiologiia 70:452–458

Jaeger CH, Lindow SE, Miller W, Clark E, Firestone MK (1999) Mapping of sugar and amino acid availability in soil around roots with bacterial sensors of sucrose and tryptophan. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:2685–2690

Jensen JB, Egsgaard H, Van Onckelen H, Jochimsen BU (1995) Catabolism of indole-3-acetic acid and 4- and 5-chloroindole-3-acetic acid in *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. J Bacteriol 177:5762–5766

Jersáková J, Johnson SD, Kindlmann P (2006) Mechanisms and evolution of deceptive pollination in orchids. Biol Rev Camb Philos Soc 81:219–235

Kameneva SV, Muronets EM (1999) Genetic control of the processes of interaction of bacteria and plants in associations. Genetika 11:1480–1494

Kamilova F, Kravchenko LV, Shaposhnikov AI, Azarova T, Makarova N, Lugtenberg B (2006) Organic acids, sugars, and L-tryptophane in exudates of vegetables growing on stonewool and their effects on activities of rhizosphere bacteria. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:250–256

Katiyar RS, Sharma GD, Mishara RR (1986) Mycorrhizal infections of epiphytic orchids in tropical forests of Meghalaya (India). J Indian Bot Soc 65:329–334

Khalid A, Arshad M, Zahir ZA (2004) Screening plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria for improving growth and yield of wheat. J Appl Microbiol 96:473–480

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Javed M (2009) Microbial strategies for crop improvement. Springer, Berlin

Knudson L (1922) Nonsymbiotic germination of orchid seeds. Bot Gaz 73:1–25

Koga J, Syono K, Ichikawa T, Adachi T (1994) Involvement of L-tryptophan aminotransferase in indole-3-acetic acid biosynthesis in *Enterobacter cloacae*. Biochim Biophys Acta 1209:241–247

Kolomeitseva GL, Tsavkelova EA, Gusev EM, Malina NE (2002) On symbiosis of orchids and active isolate of the bacterium *Bacillus pumilus* in culture in vitro. Bull GBS Russ Acad Sci 183:117–126

Korzhenevskaya TG, Lobakova ES, Dol'nikova GA, Gusev MV (1999) Topography of microsymbionts in apogeotropic roots of the cycads *Cycas revolute* Thunb. and *Encephalartos horridus* (Jacq.) Lehm. Mikrobiologiya 68:501–507

Kramer J (1975) Orchids. Harry N Abrams Publishers, New York

Kravchenko LV, Azarova TS, Makarova NM, Tikhonovich IA (2004) The effect of tryptophan of plant root metabolites on the phytostimulating activity of rhizobacteria. Mikrobiologiia 73:195–198

Kusumoto M (1980) Effects of coconut milk, agar, and sucrose concentrations, and media pH on the proliferation of *Cymbidium* protocorm-like bodies cultured in vitro. J Jpn Soc Hort Sci 48:503–509

Lambert DH, Stevens SE (1986) Photoheterotrophic growth of *Agmenellum quadruplicaturm* PR-6. J Bacteriol 165:654–656

Leveau JH, Lindow SE (2005) Utilization of the plant hormone indole-3-acetic acid for growth by *Pseudomonas putida* strain 1290. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:2365–2371

Libbert E, Risch H (1969) Interactions between plants and epiphytic bacteria regarding their auxin metabolism. V. Isolation and identification of the IAA-producing and destroying bacteria from pea plants. Physiol Plantarum 22:51–58

Lindblad P (2009) Cyanobacteria in symbiosis with cycads. In: Pawlowski K (ed) Prokaryotic symbionts in plants, vol 8, Microbiology Monographs. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 225–233

Liu P, Nester EW (2006) Indoleacetic acid, a product of transferred DNA, inhibits vir gene expression and growth of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* C58. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:4658–4662

Loiret F, Ortega E, Kleiner D, Ortega-Rodes P, Rodes R, Dong Z (2004) A putative new endophytic nitrogen-fixing bacterium *Pantoea* sp. from sugarcane. J Appl Microbiol 97:504–511

Magie AR, Wilson EE, Kosuge T (1963) Indoleacetamide as an intermediate in the synthesis of indoleacetic acid in *Pseudomonas savastanoi*. Science 141:1281–1282

Manulis S, Shafrir H, Epstein E, Lichter A, Barash I (1994) Biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid via the indole-3-acetamide pathway in *Streptomyces* spp. Microbiology 140:1045–1050

Manulis S, Haviv-Chesner A, Brandl MT, Lindow SE, Barash I (1998) Differential involvement of indole-3-acetic acid biosynthetic pathways in pathogenicity and epiphytic fitness of *Erwinia herbicola* pv. *gypsophilae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:634–642

McCormick MK, Whigham DF, Sloan D, O'Malley K, Hodkinson B (2006) Orchid–fungus fidelity: a marriage meant to last? Ecology 87:903–911

Meeks JC, Elhai J (2002) Regulation of cellular differentiation in filamentous cyanobacteria in free-living and plant-associated symbiotic growth states. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 66:94–121

Mehnaz S, Lazarovits G (2006) Inoculation effects of *Pseudomonas putida*, *Gluconacetobacter azotocaptans*, and *Azospirillum lipoferum* on corn plant growth under greenhouse conditions. Microb Ecol 51:326–335

Mordukhova EA, Skvortsova NP, Kochetkov VV, Dubeikovskii AN, Boronin AM (1991) Synthesis of the phytohormone indole-3-acetic acid by rhizosphere bacteria of the genus *Pseudomonas*. Mikrobiologiya 60:494–500

Moreira ASFP, Isaias RMS (2008) Comparative anatomy of the absorption roots of terrestrial and epiphytic orchids. Braz Arch Biol Technol 51:83–93

Noel ARA (1974) Aspects of cell wall structure and development of velamen in *Ansellia gigantean* Reichb. f. Ann Bot 38:495–504

Noel TC, Sheng C, Yost CK, Pharis RP, Hynes MF (1996) *Rhizobium leguminosarum* as a plant growth-promoting rhizobacterium: direct growth promotion of canola and lettuce. Can J Microbiol 42:279–283

Olyunina LN, Shabaev VP (1996) Production of indole-3-acetic acid by rhizosphere bacteria of the genus Pseudomonas during the growth process. Mikrobiologiia 65:813–817

Ona O, Van Impe J, Prinsen E, Vanderleyden J (2005) Growth and indole-3-acetic acid biosynthesis of *Azospirillum brasilense* Sp245 is environmentally controlled. FEMS Microbiol Lett 246:125–132

Pabst GFJ, Dungs F (1975) Orchidaceae brasiliensis, vol 1. Brucke-Verlag Kurt Schmersow, Hildesheim

Pankratova EM (2000) Natural and artificial cyanobacterial consortia: the role in evolution and ecology and practical application, Sel'skokhozyaistvennaya mikrobiologiya v XIX–XXI vv. Tezisy doklad Vserossiiskaya konferentsiya, SPb (Agricultural microbiology in XIX–XXI centuries. Abstracts of the All-Russia Conference, St. Petersburg), pp 65–66

Pankratova EM, Trefilova LV, Ziablykh RIu, Ustiuzhanin IA (2008) Cyanobacterium *Nostoc paludosum* Kütz as a basis of creation of agriculturally useful microbial associations by the example of bacteria of the genus *Rhizobium*. Mikrobiologiia 77:266–272

Park M, Kim C, Yang J, Lee H, Shin W, Kim S, Sa T (2005) Isolation and characterization of diazotrophic growth promoting bacteria from rhizosphere of agricultural crops of Korea. Microbiol Res 160:127–133

Patten CL, Glick BR (1996) Bacterial biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid. Can J Microbiol 42:207–220

Patten CL, Glick BR (2002) Role of *Pseudomonas putida* indoleacetic acid in development of the host plant root system. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3795–3801

Pavlova IB, Kulikovskiĭ AV, Botvinko IV, Dzhentemirova KM, Drozdova TD (1990) Electron microscopic study of bacterial development in colonies. The morphology of bacterial colonies. Zh Microbiol Epidemiol Immunobiol 9:15–20

Peterson RL, Currah RS (1990) Synthesis of mycorrhizae between protocorms of *Goodyera repens* (Orchidaceae) and *Ceratobasidium cereale*. Can J Bot 68:1117–1125

Peterson RL, Farquhar ML (1994) Mycorrhizas – integrated development between roots and fungi. Mycologia 86:311–326

Plude JL, Parker DL, Schommer OJ, Timmerman RJ, Hagstrom SA, Joers JM, Hnasko R (1991) Chemical characterization of polysaccharide from the slime layer of the cyanobacterium *Microcystis flos-aquae* C3-40. Appl Environ Microbiol 57:1696–1700

Pridgeon AM (1986a) Anatomical adaptations in Orchidaceae. Lindleyana 1:96–101

Pridgeon AM (1987) The velamen and exodermis of orchid roots. In: Arditti J (ed) Orchid biology: reviews and perspectives. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, NY, p 349

Rai A, Bergman B (2002) Creation of new nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterial associations. Biol Environ Proc R Ir Acad 102B:65–68

Rai AN, Söderback E, Bergman B (2000) Cyanobacterium–plant symbioses. New Phytol 147:449–481

Rasmussen U, Nilsson M (2002) Cyanobacterial diversity and specificity in plant. In: Rai AN, Bergman B, Rasmussen U (eds) Cyanobacteria in symbiosis. Springer, Netherlands, pp 313–328

Rasmussen HN, Whigham DF (2002) Phenology of roots and mycorrhiza in orchid species differing in phototrophic strategy. New Phytol 154:797–807

Rasmussen HN, Johansen B, Andersen TF (1991) Symbiotic in vitro culture of immature embryos and seeds of *Listera ovata*. Lindleyana 6:134–139

Recep K, Fikretin S, Erkol D, Cafer E (2009) Biological control of the potato dry rot caused by *Fusarium* species using PGPR strains. Biol Control 50:194–198

Rippka R, Deruelles J, Waterbury JB, Herdman M, Stanier RJ (1979) Genetic assignments, strain histories and properties of pure cultures of cyanobacteria. J Gen Microbiol 111:1–61

Roberts P (1999) *Rhizoctonia*-forming fungi. A Taxanomic Guide Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew

Roberts DL, Dixon KW (2008) Orchids. Curr Biol 18:R325–R329

Safronova IIu, Botvinko IV (1998) Intercellular matrix of *Bacillus subtilis* 271: polymeric composition and function. Mikrobiologiia 67:55–60

Sanford WW, Adanlawo I (1973) Velamen and exodermis characters of West African epiphytic orchids in relation to taxonomic grouping and habitat tolerance. Bot J Linn Soc 66:307–321

Sekine M, Watanabe K, Syono K (1989) Molecular cloning of a gene for indole-3-acetamide hydrolase from *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*. J Bacteriol 171:1718–1724

Sergeeva E, Liaimer A, Bergman B (2002) Evidence for production of the phytohormone indole-3-acetic acid by cyanobacteria. Planta 215:229–238

Shefferson RP, Weiss M, Kull T, Taylor DL (2005) High specificity generally characterizes mycorrhizal association in rare lady's slipper orchids, genus *Cypripedium*. Mol Ecol 14:613–626

Shimura H, Matsuura M, Takada N, Koda Y (2007) An antifungal compound involved in symbiotic germination of *Cypripedium macranthos* var. *rebunense* (Orchidaceae). Phytochemistry 68:1442–1447

Skorupska A, Janczarek M, Marczak M, Mazur A, Król J (2006) Rhizobial exopolysaccharides: genetic control and symbiotic functions. Microb Cell Fact 5:7

Smith SE, Read DJ (1997) Mycorrhizal symbiosis. Academic, New York

Smresiu EA, Currah RS (1989) Symbiotic germination of seed of terrestrial orchids of North America and Europe. Lindleyana 1:6–15

Spaepen S, Vanderleyden J, Remans R (2007) Indole-3-acetic acid in microbial and microorganism-plant signaling. FEMS Microbiol Rev 31:425–448

Spiller H, Stallings W Jr, Woods T, Gunasekaran M (1993) Requirement for direct association of ammonia-excreting *Anabaena variabilis* mutant (SA-1) with roots for maximal growth and yield of wheat. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 40:557–566

Stal LJ (2000) Cyanobacterial mats and stromatolites. In: Whitton BA, Potts M (eds) The ecology of cyanobacteria. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 61–120

Stewart WDP, Rowell P, Ray AN (1983) Cyanobacteria-eukaryotic plant symbiosis. Ann Microbiol 134B:205–228

Stoessl A, Arditti J (1984) Orchid phytoalexins. In: Arditti J (ed) Orchid biology: reviews and perspectives. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, NY, pp 151–175

Sundin GW, Jacobs JL (1999) Ultraviolet radiation (UVR) sensitivity analysis and UVR survival strategies of a bacterial community from the phyllosphere pf field-grown peanut (*Arachis hypogeae* L.). Microb Ecol 38:27–38

Sutherland IW (2001) Biofilm exopolysaccharides: a strong and sticky framework. Microbiology 147:3–9

Svircev Z, Tamas I, Nenin P, Drobac A (1997) Co-cultivation of N-fixing cyanobacteria and some agriculturally important plants in liquid and sand cultures. Appl Soil Ecol 6:301–308

Swarts ND, Dixon KW (2009) Terrestrial orchid conservation in the age of extinction. Ann Bot 104:543–556

Takagi S, Yamaki M, Inoue K (1983) Antimicrobial agents from *Bletilla striata*. Phytochemistry 22:1011–1015

Tien TM, Gaskins MH, Hubbell DH (1979) Plant growth substances produced by *Azospirillum brasilense* and their effect on the growth of pearl millet (*Pennisetum americanum* L.). Appl Environ Microbiol 37:1016–1024

Toledo G, Bashan Y, Soeldner A (1995) In-vitro colonization and increase in nitrogen fixation of seedling roots of black mangrove inoculated by a filamentous cyanobacterium. Can J Microbiol 41:1012–1020

Tremblay RL, Ackerman JD, Zimmerman JK, Calvo RN (2005) Variation in sexual reproduction in orchids and its evolutionary consequences: a spasmodic journey to diversification. Biol J Linn Soc 84:1–54

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA (2005) Cyanobacteria of the aerial roots of epiphytic orchids; composition, nitrogen fixation and auxin production. In: Algae in terrestrial ecosystems. International conference Kaniv Nature Reserve, Kaniv, Ukraine

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Lobakova ES, Kolomeitseva GL, Netrusov AI (2001) Microbiota of orchid rhizoplane. Mikrobiologiia 70:492–497

Tsavkelova EA, Alexandrova AV, Cherdyntseva TA, Kolomeitseva GL, Netrusov AI (2003a) Fungi associated with orchid roots in greenhouse conditions. Mykologia Phytopathologia (Rus) 37:57–63

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Netrusov AI (2003b) Phytohormones production by the fungi associated with orchids. Mycologiia Phytopathologiia (Rus) 37:75–83

Tsavkelova EA, Lobakova ES, Kolomeitseva GL, Cherdyntseva TA, Netrusov AI (2003c) Localization of associative cyanobacteria in the roots of epiphytic orchids. Mikrobiologiia 72:86–91

Tsavkelova EA, Lobakova ES, Kolomeitseva GL, Cherdyntseva TA, Netrusov AI (2003d) Associative cyanobacteria, isolated from the roots of epiphytic orchids. Mikrobiologiia 72:92–97

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Netrusov AI (2004) Bacteria associated with the roots of epiphytic orchids. Mikrobiologiia 73:710–715

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Netrusov AI (2005) Auxin production by bacteria associated with orchid roots. Mikrobiologiia 74:46–53

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Botina SG, Netrusov AI (2007a) Bacteria associated with orchid roots and microbial production of auxin. Microbiol Res 162:69–76

Tsavkelova EA, Cherdyntseva TA, Klimova SY, Shestakov AI, Botina SG, Netrusov AI (2007b) Orchid-associated bacteria produce indole-3-acetic acid, promote seed germination, and increase their microbial yield in response to exogenous auxin. Arch Microbiol 188:655–664

Tsavkelova EA, Bömke C, Netrusov AI, Weiner J, Tudzynski B (2008) Production of gibberellic acids by an orchid-associated *Fusarium proliferatum* strain. Fungal Genet Biol 45:139–1403

Unno Y, Okubo K, Wasaki J, Shinano T, Osaki M (2005) Plant growth promotion abilities and microscale bacterial dynamics in the rhizosphere of *Lupin* analysed by phytate utilization ability. Environ Microbiol 7:396–404

Vagnoli L, Margheri MC, Alotta G, Materassi R (1992) Morphological and physiological properties of symbiotic cyanobacteria. New Phytol 120:243–249

Vakhrameeva MG, Tatarenko IV, Varlygina TI, Torosyan GK, Zagulskii MN (2008) Orchids of Russia and adjacent countries (within the borders of the former USSR). ARG Ganter Verlag, Ruggell

Vande Broek A, Lambrecht M, Eggermont K, Vanderleyden J (1999) Auxins upregulate expression of the indole-3-pyruvate decarboxylase gene in *Azospirillum brasilense*. J Bacteriol 181:1338–1342

Vaz AB, Mota RC, Bomfim MR, Vieira ML, Zani CL, Rosa CA, Rosa LH (2009) Antimicrobial activity of endophytic fungi associated with Orchidaceae in Brazil. Can J Microbiol 55: 1381–1391

Warcup JH (1971) Specificity of mycorrhizal association in some Australian terrestrial orchids. New Phytol 70:41–46

Warcup JH (1981) The mycorrhizal relationships of Australian orchids. New Phytol 87:371–381

Waterman RJ, Bidartondo MI (2008) Deception above, deception below: linking pollination and mycorrhizal biology of orchids. J Exp Bot 59:1085–1096

Weiler E, Schröder J (1987) Hormone genes and the crown gall disease. Trends Biochem Sci 12:271–275

White R (1987) Indole-3-acetic acid and 2-(indol-3-ylmethyl)indol-3-yl acetic acid in the thermophilic archaebacterium *Sulfolobus acidocaldarius*. J Bacteriol 169:5859–5860

Wilkinson KG, Dixon KW, Sivasithamparam K (1989) Interaction of soil bacteria, mycorrhizal fungi and orchid seed in relation to germination of Australian orchids. New Phytol 112:429–435

Wilkinson KG, Dixon KW, Sivasithamparam K, Ghisalberti EL (1994a) Effect of IAA on symbiotic germination of an Australian orchid and its production by orchid-associated bacteria. Plant Soil 159:291–295

Wilkinson KG, Sivasithamparam K, Dixon KW, Fahy PC, Bradley JK (1994b) Identification and characterization of bacteria associated with western Australian orchids. Soil Biol Biochem 26:137–142

Woodward AW, Bartel B (2005) Auxin: regulation, action and interaction. Ann Bot 95:707–735

Wu J, Qian J, Zheng S (2002) A preliminary study on ingredient of secretion from fungi of orchid mycorrhiza. Ying Yong Sheng Tai Xue Bao 13:845–848

Yamazaki J, Miyoshi K (2006) In vitro asymbiotic germination of immature seed and formation of protocorm by *Cephalanthera falcata* (Orchidaceae). Ann Bot 98:1197–1206

Yasmin S, Rahman Bakar MA, Malik KA, Hafeez FY (2004) Isolation, characterization and beneficial effects of rice associated plant growth promoting bacteria from Zanzibar soils. J Basic Microbiol 44:241–252

Yamaki M, Bai L, Kato T, Inoue K, Takagi S (1993) Three dihydrophenanthropyrans from *Bletilla striata*. Phytochemistry 32:427–430

Young C, Kampfer P, Shen F, Lai W, Arun A (2005) *Chryseobacterium formosense* sp. nov., isolated from the rhizosphere of *Lactuca sativa* L. (garden lettuce). Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:423–426

Zalukaeva GL (1990) On mycorrhizal associations in green-house culture of tropical and subtropical orchids. Bull Mosk Obsch Isp Prir (Bull Soc Imp Nat Moscou) 95:111–117

Chapter 12
Diversity and Beneficial Interactions Among *Methylobacterium* and Plants

Munusamy Madhaiyan, Puneet Singh Chauhan, Woo Jong Yim, Hari Prasanna Deka Boruah, and Tong Min Sa

12.1 Introduction

Environmental factors controlling biological methanol oxidation are not well understood, as this process is mediated by microbial communities consisting of multiple species besides abiotic and biotic factors which set limits for the activity and growth of each species (Kolb 2009). Terrestrial ecosystems are the main source of atmospheric methanol. Methanol contributes to the atmospheric pool of reactive volatile organic compounds (Galbally and Kirstine 2002) and triggers the formation of tropospheric ozone (Wennberg et al. 1998). Globally, 25×10^{12} mol/year of methanol is released from dead plant materials and 3×10^{12} mol/year from growing plants. However, only a minor fraction, i.e., 4.9×10^{12} mol/year enters the atmosphere. The gap between production and emission may be due to biological methanol oxidation in terrestrial ecosystems. Conversely, the primary source of atmospheric methanol is the emission from plants (Galbally and Kirstine 2002), i.e., 67% of global annual production. Methanol from plants is released by chemical and enzymatic demethylation of methoxy groups wherein plant cell wall-associated pectin polymers are demethylated during plant growth (Fall and Benson 1996) also during the degradation of pectin (Donnelly and Dagley 1980; Schink and Zeikus 1980; Schink et al. 1981) and lignin (Warneke et al. 1999). Pectin methylesterases (PMEs, EC 3.1.1.11) are important cell wall enzymes involved in modeling the pectin matrix. Pectin is a major compound of plant cell walls and accounts for about one-third of all the macromolecules in dicotyledonous species. PMEs catalyze the C-6 demethylation of homoglacturonan (HG) within plant cell walls. In this process, methanol (MeOH) is released and negatively charged carboxyl groups are created (Körner et al. 2009).

M. Madhaiyan • P.S. Chauhan • W.J. Yim • H.P. Deka Boruah • T.M. Sa (✉)
Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361-763, Republic of Korea
e-mail: tomsa@chungbuk.ac.kr

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_12,

In soils, methanol concentrations could be spatially and heterogeneously distributed. In proximity to plant material, hot spots of methanol might exist that are not detectable in mixtures with bulk soil due to dilution effect (Conrad and Claus 2005). In spite of our knowledge of the mechanism of methanol production and consumption in soils, there still are no biogeochemical data on soil internal production and consumption rates. Hence, global soil emission rates in relation to the aboveground emission from plants are not available till date. Global methanol emission from terrestrial ecosystems is similar to fluxes of some other atmospheric chemistry relevant monocarbon (C_1) compounds (4.9×10^{12} mol/year). Wetlands usually are the sources and aerated soils the sinks. A significant part of the emitted methane is degraded in the atmosphere (Denman et al. 2007). The natural production of halomethanes in terrestrial ecosystems is associated with demethylation of plant polymers. These compounds cause depletion of ozone in the upper troposphere and stratosphere (Hines et al. 1998; Keppler et al. 2000; Redeker et al. 2000; Warwick et al. 2006; Rhew and Abel 2007). There are no validated global estimates because global rates are insufficiently assessed to date. Currently available data on single compounds, i.e., methylbromide (Hines et al. 1998) suggest that fluxes of halomethanes are much lower than those of methane and methanol ($<0.01 \times 10^{12}$ mol/year) (Kolb 2009).

It is well known that methanol is a key substrate for many methylotrophic species, which is probably also true for those in soils. This point of view is supported by the fact that most of the soil-derived aerobic methylotrophic isolates (83%) utilize methanol. It is not yet clear as it how many of the species of methylotrophs are capable of utilizing methanol in situ. The growth-positive concentrations tested were in the millimolar range, whereas in situ concentrations are probably much lower (<10 mmol/L, Conrad and Claus 2005). Nonetheless, very low Km values for methanol dehydrogenase of single species, e.g., *Hyphomicrobium denitrificans* (0.3 mmol/L), suggest that at least some known soil isolates can thrive under micro- and nanomolar concentrations (Kolb 2009).

Soil-derived methanol oxidizers are primarily facultative methylotrophs. Only 31% of soil species are restricted to methanol and/or other C1 compounds. Bacteria of the genus *Methylobacterium* are facultative methylotrophs that are capable of growth on methanol and methylamine as well as C_2, C_3, and C_4 compounds. They belong to the Alphaproteobacteria and are sometimes referred to as pink-pigmented facultative methylotrophs. *Methylobacterium* strains are widespread in the environment and have been isolated from soils, dust, and lake sediments. They have also been found in association with plants, specifically with leaf surfaces, and they have been hypothesized to potentially dominate the phyllosphere bacterial population. Some *Methylobacterium* strains possess nitrogen-fixing and nodulation capabilities, which they use in symbiosis with *Crotalaria* and *Lotononis* plant species. Recently published data suggest that the degrees of plant–*Methylobacterium* association vary from very strong, as exemplified by symbiosis, to semi-tight, as exemplified by endophytic association, to loose, and epiphytic association on plant surfaces. In the case of symbiosis, the benefit for the plant is evident, in contrast to the looser forms of association between methylotrophs and plants. Recent studies have been carried

out on plant–*Methylobacterium* interactions including early growth promotion, induce systemic resistance, photosynthetic activity, heavy metal resistance, etc. Presented chapter will focus on the current status of methanol-oxidizing microbes, diversity and their beneficial interactions with associated plants. This will also address some of these arising issues as well as the established facts of methylotrophic microorganisms, diversity of methylotrophs and their interaction with plants and what these processes imply at both the plant and ecosystem level.

12.2 Methanol-Oxidizing Microorganisms

Methanol-oxidizing microorganisms utilize methanol as a carbon and energy source (Lidstrom 2006). Most known species are facultative methylotrophic and strictly aerobic, and belong to the domains Bacteria and Eukaryota. Little is known about eukaryotic methanol oxidizers in soils. Some methanol-utilizing yeasts have been isolated, i.e., *Pichia pastoris*, *Hansensula polymorpha*, *Candida* spp., and *Trichsporon* spp. (Lee and Komagata 1980; Kaszaki et al. 2006; Ito et al. 2007). However, their relevance for the aerobic conversion of C_1 compounds in soils is largely unknown and needs further research. In addition to aerobic methanol oxidizers, some strict anaerobes also utilize methanol, e.g., *Moorella mulderi* (Balk et al. 2003) utilizes methanol as a substrate with thiosulfate as an electron acceptor. Similarly, *Thermotoga lettingae* (Balk et al. 2002) oxidizes methanol as an electron donor with thiosulfate, ferric iron, or elemental sulfur as electron acceptors. Anaerobic, methanogenic Archaea may also utilize methanol (Ferry 1999) and might be important methanol consumers in wetlands (Conrad and Claus 2005; Zhang et al. 2008).

Aerobic methanol-oxidizing Archaea have yet not been discovered. Thus, in aerated soils (e.g., forest and grassland soils) and at oxic–anoxic interfaces of wetland soils, aerobic methylotrophic bacteria are the key organisms in methanol turnover. The first aerobic methanol-utilizing bacterium *Bacillus methylicus* was described in the year by Loew (1892), and many novel species have been isolated since then (Table 12.1). Methylotrophic bacteria are divided into methane-utilizing, i.e., methanotrophs and other methylotrophic species. Since the nineteenth century, 154 species with 58 genera within the Proteobacteria, Verrucomicrobia, Cytophagales, Bacteroidetes, Firmicutes, and Actinobacteria have been described. Within this group, 46 methane-utilizing species within 18 genera belonging to the Gamma- and Alphaproteobacteria, and Verrucomicrobia are known till date. Methanotrophs are principally obligate methylotrophic, only one genus (*Methylocella*) comprises three species that can also utilize multi-carbon compounds (Dedysh et al. 2005a, b). In culture, methanotrophs possess the physiological potential to grow on methanol, and labeling of bacteria in soil samples with ^{13}C from ^{13}C-methanol revealed methanotrophic genotypes (Radajewski et al. 2002). This observation revealed that methanotrophs may consume methanol from soil, if it is present in millimolar concentrations. However, in situ relevance of these observations needs

Table 12.1 List of methylotrophic bacteria (Kolb 2009)

Genus	Species	Type strain	Source
Methanol-utilizing methylotrophic bacteria			
Gammaproteobacteria			
Methylomicrobium	*album*	VKM-BG8	Soil
	alcaliphilum	20Z	Soda lake
	agile	NCIMB11124	Sewage
	japanense	NI	Marine
	kenyense	AMO1	Soda lake
	buryatense	VKM B-2245	Soda lake
	pelagicum	NCIMB2265	Marine
Methylobacter	*luteus*	VKM-53B	Sewage
	marinus	ACM4717	Marine
	psychrophilus	VKM B-2103	?
	tundripaludum	SV96	Soil
	whittenburyi	NCIMB11128	?
Methylomonas	*aurantiaca*	UQM3406	Soil
	fodinarum	UQM3268	Sediment
	methanica	VKM B-2110	Soil
	scandinavica	strain SR5	Ground water
Methylococcus	*capsulatus*	UNIQEM1	Soil, water
	chroococcus	Strain9	?
	mobilis	LMD77.28	?
	themophilus	IMV-2Yu	Soil
Methylohalobius	*crimeensis*	10Ki, 4Kr	Sediment
Methylosarcina	*fibrata*	AML-C10	Soil
	lacus	LW14	Lake
	quisquiliarum	AML-D4	Soil
Methylosphaera	*hansonii*	ACAM549	Marine
Methylosoma	*difficile*	LC2	Sediment
Methylothermus	*thermalis*	MYHT	Hot spring
Clonothrix	*fusca" B*		Drinking water
Crenothrix	*polyspora" B*		Drinking water
Photobacterium	*indicum*	ATCC19614	Marine sediment
Methylophaga	*alcalica*	M39	Soda lake
	aminisulfidivorans	MP	Marine
	marina	ATCC35842	Marine
	thalassica	ATCC33146	Marine
	sulfidovorans	LMD95.210	Marine
Methylohalomonas	*lacus*	HMT1	Lake
Methylonatrum	*kenyense*		Soda lake
Klebsiella	*oxytoca*	MMA/F	River
Enterobacter	*arachidis* sp. nov.		Rhizosphere soil
Betaproteobacteria			
Methylophilus	*leisingerii*	DM11	?
	methylotrophus	AS1	Activated sludge
	quaylei	MT	Air
Methylobacillus	*pratensis*	F31	Grass

(*continued*)

Table 12.1 (continued)

Genus	Species	Type strain	Source
	flagellatus	KT	?
	glycogenes	TK0113	Soil
Methylovorus	*mays*	C	Soil
	glucosotrophus	6B1	Waste water
Methyloversatilis	*universalis*	FAM5	Lake
Methylibium	*aquaticum*	MCC1728	Fresh water pond
	petroleiphilum	PM1	compost biofilter
Alphaproteobacteria			
Methylocystis	*echninoides*	IMET10491	Soil
	heyeri	H2	Soil
	hirsuta	CSC1	Ground water
	parvus	ACM3309	Soil
	rosea	SV97	Soil
Methylosinus	*sporium*	ACM3306	Soil
	trichsporium	OB3b	Soil
Methylocapsa	*acidiphila*	B2	Soil
Methylocella	*palustris*	K	Soil
	silvestris	BL2	Soil
	tundrae	T4, Ch1, Y1	Soil
Paracoccus	*alkenifer*	A901/1	Biofilter
	alcaliphilus	TK1015	Soil
	versutus	VKM B-2163	Soil
	methylutens	DM12	Ground water
	denitrificans	NCCB22021	Soil
	kondratievae	GB	Soil
	pantotrophus	Soil	
Sagittula	*stellata*	E-37	Salt marsh
Xanthobacter	*autotrophicus*	ATCC35674	Soil
	flavus	301	Soil
	agilis	SA35	Water
	viscosus	7d	Activated sludge
Afipia	*felis*	RD1	Soil, sediment
Rhodobacter	*capsulatus*	Kb1	Marine
	sphaeroides	ATH2.4.1	Marine
Xanthomonas	*campestris*	ATCC33913	*Brassica campestris*
Bradyrhizobium	*japonicum*	USDA110	Soil
Mesorhizobium	*loti*	??	Soil
Azorhizobium	*caulinodans*	ORS571	Soil
EnsiferF	*meliloti*	RCR2011	Soil
	fredii	PRC205	Soil
Rhodoblastus	*acidophilus*	M402	Hot spring
	sphagnicola	RS	Soil
Ancylobacter	*natronum*	VKM B-2242	Soda lake
Hyphomicrobium	*chloromethanicum*	CM2	Soil
	denitrificans	TK0415	Soil
	coagulans	B-2176	Soil

(*continued*)

Table 12.1 (continued)

Genus	Species	Type strain	Source
	sulfonivorans	BAA-113	Soil
	facile	IFAM H-526	Soil
	vulgare	TK0401	Soil
	aestuarii	ATCC27497	River
	zavarzinii	DSM1566	Soil
	hollandicum	ATCC27500	Sewage
	methylovorum	TK0412	Soil
Angulomicrobium	*tetraedrale*	1037	Fresh water
Marinosulfonomonas	*methylovora*	PSCH4	Marine water
Methylorhabdus	*multivorans*	DM13	Ground water
Methylobacterium	*persinicum*	002-165	Water
	komagatae	002-079	Water
	brachiatum	B0021	Water
	tardum	RB677	Water
	gregans	002-074	Water
	isbiliense	AR24	water
	populi	BJ001	Poplar tissue
	variabile	GR3	Water
	aquaticum	GR16	Water
	aminovorans	TH-15	Soil
	adhaesivum	AR27	Water
	platani	PMB02	*Platanus orientalis*
	salsuginis	MR	Marine
	hispanicum	GP34	Drinking water
	jeotgali	S2R03-9	Sea food
	mesophilicum	A47, TK0034	?
	nodulans	ORS2060	Root nodule, soil
	oryzae	CBMB20	Oryza sativa
	podarium	VKM B-2144	Human skin
	lusitanum	RXM	Sewage
	suomiense	F20	Soil
	thiocyanatum	ALL/SCN-P	Soil
	extorquens	TK1	Soil
	aerolatum	5413S-11	Air
	iners	5317S-33	Air
	radiotolerans	VKM B-2142	Oryza sativa
	organophilum	ATCC27886	?
	rhodesianum	NCIB12249	Fermentor
	rhodinum	ATCC14821	Soil
	zatmanii	ATCC43883	Fermentor
	beijerinckiamobilis	DSM2326	Soil
	fujisawaense	CBMB37	Soil
	goesingense	CBMB5	Soil
	phyllosphaerae	CBMB27	Rice phyllosphere
Methylosulfonomonas	*methylovora*	M2	Soil
Hansschlegelia	*plantiphila*	S1	Plant buds

(*continued*)

Table 12.1 (continued)

Genus	Species	Type strain	Source
Methylopila	*helvetica*	DM9	Ground water
	capsulata	37AA	?
Albibacter	*methylovorans*	DM10	Ground water
Acidomonas	*methanolica*	ATCC43581	Waste water
Sphingomonas	*melonis*	ET35	River
Firmicutes			
Bacillus	*methanolicus*	PB1	Soil
Actinobacteria			
Arthrobacter	*sulfinovorans*	ALL	Soil
	methylotrophus	TGA	Soil
Mycobacterium	*flavescens*	ATCC14474	Guinea pig
	gastri	ATCC15754	Human
	neoaurum	ATCC25795	Soil
	parafortuitum	ATCC19686	Soil
	peregrinum	ATCC14467	Soil
	phlei	ATCC11758	Grass
	smegmatis	ATCC19420	Soil
	vaccae	ATCC15483	Soil
Amycolatopsis	*methanolica*	239	Soil
Brevibacterium	*casei*	MSQ5	River
Bacteroidetes			
Flavobacterium	sp.	MMA/2,MSA/1	River
Verrucomicrobia			
Methylokorus	*infernorum*	V4	Soil
Methyloacida	*kamchatkensis*	Kam1	Hot spring
Acidimethylosilex	*fumarolicum*	SoilV	Soil
Non-methanol-utilizing methylotrophic Bacteria			
Gammaproteobacteria			
Methylocaldum	*gracile*	VKM-14L	?
	szegediense	OR2	Hot spring
	tepidum	LK6	Soil
Pseudomonas	*mendocina*	TSQ4	River
Beggiatoa	*alba*	LSUB18LD	Marine
Alphaproteobacteria			
Aminobacter	*lissarensis*	CC495	Soil
	ciceronei	IMB-1	Soil
Methylobacterium	*dichloromethanicum*	DM4	Soil
	chloromethanicum	CM4	Soil
Methyloarcula	*marina*	h1	Estuary
	terricola	h37	Soil
Leisingera	*methylohalidivorans*	MB2	Marine
Labrys	*methylaminiphilus*	JLW10	Sediment
Xanthobacter	*aminoxidans*	14a	Activated sludge
Paracoccus	*aminovorans*	VKM B-2140	Soil
	solventivorans	VKM B-2190	Soil
	aminophilus	VKM B-2141	Soil
	kocurii	VKM B-2139	Activated sludge

(*continued*)

Table 12.1 (continued)

Genus	Species	Type strain	Source
Betaproteobacteria			
Methylotenera	*mobilis*	JLW8	Lake
Burkholderia	*graminis*	H C4D1M	Soil
Xenovorans	H	LB400	Soil
Actinobacteria			
Nocardioides	sp.	SAC-4	Wood
Rhodococcus	*erythropolis*	DSQ4	River
Mycobacterium	*fluoranthenivorans*	DSQ3	River

? unknown source

to be proven. Non-methanotrophic methanol oxidizers have a primarily facultative methylotrophic lifestyle (91%, 100 species) and only 9% of species are restricted to C_1 compounds, i.e., methanol and sulfur- or nitrogen-containing C_1 compounds (species of *Methylobacillus*, *Methylophilus*, *Methylovorus*, and *Methylophaga*).

In all Gram-negative methylotrophic bacteria that have been studied, methanol oxidation is catalyzed by the pyrroloquinoline quinine (PQQ)-linked enzyme methanol dehydrogenase (MDH). This enzyme catalyzes the oxidation of methanol to formaldehyde and is distinct from the alcohol dehydrogenase of Gram-positive methylotrophic bacteria (de Vries et al., 1992) and methylotrophic yeasts (Williamson and Paquin 1987). Recently, a novel MDH was found in strains belonging to Burkholderiales (Kalyuzhnaya et al. 2008). An alternative MDH coupled to nicotinic acid amide (NAD) was discovered in *Bacillus methanolicus* (Arfman et al. 1997), and in Actinobacteria, a further methanol-oxidizing enzyme catalyzes methanol oxidation (Bystrykh et al. 1993). The gene *mxaF* encodes the PQQ-dependent MDH in many *Proteobacteria* (Lidstrom 2006). The evidence of the homologous gene mxaF0 in root-nodule inducing Alphaproteobacteria (e.g., *Bradyrhizobium japonicum*) might indicate that some root-nodule inducing species (1) are capable of utilizing methanol or (2) possessing at least structurally similar, but functionally dissimilar, enzymes. Some soil-derived *Burkholderia* species contain the *mxaF*-homologue *xoxF* (Chain et al. 2006). Its gene product might be involved in the oxidation of methanethiol (CH_3SH) during growth on dimethylsulfide (Schäfer 2007). However, its definite function is still unresolved, and conclusive experiments addressing the role of mxaF0 and *xoxF* in these two proteobacterial groups are missing, and, hence, it is unclear whether these organisms may utilize methanol.

The need to reinvestigate already isolated heterotrophic species may be emphasized by the fact that, recently, aerobic methanol utilization was proven when already described heterotrophic species such as *Beijerinckia mobilis* and *Mycobacterium* spp. were tested with methanol as a substrate. It is obvious that the utilization of methanol is widespread among heterotrophic aerobic bacteria and novel species, e.g., *Hansschlegelia plantiphila* are still being isolated (Ivanova et al. 2007). Recently, some novel methanol-utilizing bacteria *Enterobacter arachidis* sp. nov., *Methylobacterium phyllosphaerae* sp. nov., were isolated from the rhizosphere and phyllosphere (Madhaiyan et al. 2009a, b; Anandham et al. 2008;

Poonguzhali et al. 2008b). Thus, it is reasonable to expect a large unveiled diversity in the environment. Some methylotrophic bacteria do not utilize methanol (24 species in 15 genera). These organisms are obligate (e.g., *Methylotenera mobilis*) or facultative methylotrophs and may utilize dimethylsulfide, dimethylsulfoxide, halomethanes, mono-, di-, and trimethylamine, tetramethylammonium, or formamide. However, the same C_1 compounds are also used by some methanol-utilizing species (Kolb 2009, Table 12.1).

12.3 Diversity of Soil Methanol-Utilizing Bacteria

Methylotrophic communities in soils were assessed by the detection of biomarkers (McDonald et al. 2008). Most studies addressed methanotrophs and analyzed genes of the particulate or soluble methane monooxygenases, i.e., *pmoA* and *mmoX* (McDonald et al. 2008). Few studies targeted gene markers that allow for the detection of methylotrophs that do not utilize methane. Genes of the proteobacterial MDH (*mxaF*) (McDonald and Murrell 1997; Radajewski et al. 2002), tetrahydromethanopterin pathway-linked enzymes catalyze the oxidation of formaldehyde to formate in various methylotrophs (*fae*, *mtdB*, *mch*, and *fhcD*) (Kalyuzhnaya et al. 2004; Kalyuzhnaya and Chistoserdova 2005; Nercessian et al. 2005), and a gene of the chloromethane methyl transferase (*cmuA*) (Miller et al. 2004; Borodina et al. 2005) that oxidizes chloromethane have been used. A direct link between substrate assimilation and diversity provides stable isotope probing of membrane phospholipids fatty acids or nucleic acids. This approach has been applied to detect species that were actively involved in the consumption of isotope-labeled methanol and methane in soils (Bull et al. 2000; Lueders et al. 2004; Dumont et al. 2006; Chen et al. 2008; Maxfield et al. 2008). Biomarker studies assessing methanol-utilizing communities in soils confirmed the phyla-level diversity retrieved by cultivation. The known soil-retrieved methanol-utilizing species belongs to the class Proteobacteria, Verrucomicrobia, Firmicutes, and Actinobacteria (Fig. 12.1). The permanent establishment of a species in a community is based on its

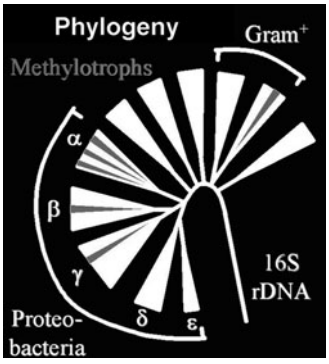


Fig. 12.1 Phylogeny of methylotrophic bacteria based on 16S rDNA analysis

fundamental ecological niche (Hutchinson 1957) that is determined by abiotic and biotic environmental factors. Environmental factors that are spatially and/or temporarily structured in soils may create habitats that favor adaptation and hence niche differentiation of soil prokaryotes. In the following sections, potential key factors of methanol-utilizing methylotrophic bacteria will be identified.

Soil-derived methanol oxidizers are primarily facultative methylotrophs. Only 31% of soil species are restricted to methanol and/or other C_1 compounds. A choice of the following soluble substrates was usually positive for growth: mono-, di-, and soluble polysaccharides (e.g., inulin, dextrin), sugar acids and polyols, primary alcohols (ethanol, butanol, and isopropanol), glycerol, amino acids, mono-, di, tricarbonic acids, aromatic, and various other nitrogen- and sulfur-containing carbon compounds (Kutschera 2007). The marine species *Sagittula stellata* is the only documented cellulolytic methanol-oxidizing methylotroph (Gonzalez et al. 1997). Because cellulose is, like pectin and lignin, an essential compound in plant cell walls, it is conceivable that cellulolytic methanol-utilizing methylotrophs may exist in soils. Facultative methylotrophic isolates have been tested for various alternative substrates, but with different spectra of carbon sources and in millimolar concentrations. In soils, however, concentrations of dissolved carbon compounds may be lower, i.e., micro- and nanomolar. Nonetheless, it has been demonstrated that species of different genera utilize very different spectra of substrates. For instance, most *Hyphomicrobium*, *Methylocella* species, and *Rhodoblastus sphagnicola* do not utilize saccharides or derived acids and polyols, whereas *Xanthobacter*, *Paracoccus*, and *Mycobacterium* species, *Beijerinckia mobilis*, *Methylosulfonomonas methylovora*, *Bacillus methanolicus*, and *Amycolatopsis methanolica* do so. Therefore, a factor that might select for co-occurrence of methanol-utilizing species in the same soil community is the different capability to utilize alternative carbon substrates.

Oxygen availability is restricted to a thin surface layer around the rhizosphere of oxygen-releasing plants in wetlands and flooded soils (Conrad 1996; Brune et al. 2000; Conrad and Frenzel 2002). In aerated soils, oxygen availability may be extended to the main soil body (Tiedje et al. 1984), nonetheless, its concentration is dynamic. Steep oxygen gradients establish over the surfaces of soil aggregates (Tiedje et al. 1984; Sexstone et al. 1985; Zausig et al. 1993; Küsel and Drake 1994), and inside, anoxic microzones may occur (Tiedje et al. 1984; Sexstone et al. 1985; Zausig et al. 1993). Variable oxygen concentration in soils might drive differential adaptation: the incubation of subsamples from the same original rice field soil sample under different oxygen concentrations led to divergent methanotrophic community structures (Henckel et al. 2000). Most known soil-derived methanol-utilizing methylotrophs grow under oxygen-saturated conditions but three are microaerophilic species, i.e., *Methylosoma difficile, Methylokorus infernorum*, and *R. sphagnicola* (Kulichevskaya et al. 2006; Dunfield et al. 2007; Rahalkar et al. 2007). Quantitative data on oxygen concentration being utilized by known species are not available in most cases. Analogous to the methanotrophic species, it seems likely that methanol-utilizing methylotrophs have different optima regarding oxygen concentration. The capability of utilizing an alternative electron acceptor

may be advantageous for certain methanol-oxidizing species in soils, because they can remain active when conditions are anoxic. Nonetheless, 75% of methylotrophic species from soil are strictly aerobic. The solely utilized external alternative electron acceptor is nitrate. Some species were identified as denitrifiers, e.g., *Paracoccus denitrificans* and *Hyphomicrobium denitrificans*. Many soil isolates have not been tested for their capability of dissimilatory nitrate reduction. Even some strictly aerobic species (e.g., methanotrophs) harbor genes of nitrite and nitric oxide reductases (Ward et al. 2004), and strains produced N_2O and nitrite when nitrate was present (Knowles 2005). However, growth on methane with denitrification has not been verified till date. In spite of obvious questions, the capability to use nitrate as an alternative electron acceptor is a key factor that determines whether a methanol-utilizing species can thrive under various redox conditions (Kolb 2009).

Similar to other microorganism, methanol-utilizing methylotrophs require nitrogen sources for growth. Most species can assimilate ammonium and nitrate. Even certain genera namely *Xanthobacter* (Jenni and Aragno 1987), *Ancylobacter* (Raj 1989), *Methylosinus*, *Methylocystis*, *Methylococcus*, *Methylocella*, and *Methylocapsa* fix dinitrogen and many strains have genes *nifH* and/or *nifD* for nitrogenase (Boulygina et al. 2002; Dedysh et al. 2004; Lidstrom 2006; Trotsenko and Murrell 2008). In nitrogen-limited forest soils (Bodelier and Laanbroek 2004), diazotrophy is advantageous for the respective species. In agricultural soils with high nitrogen input and turnover (Bodelier and Laanbroek 2004), diazotrophic species might not be favored, unless they can induce root nodules (Jourand et al. 2004; Renier et al. 2008). On the other hand, methanol-oxidizers compete for nitrate and ammonium with other soil organisms. Therefore, even in nitrogen-rich soils, N_2-fixation might be advantageous. The application of this method using unlabeled methane as the sole substrate revealed active diazotrophs of the methanotrophic genera of Methylocystaceae and methanol-utilizing of Rhizobiales (Buckley et al. 2007, 2008). $^{15}N_2$ DNA stable isotope probing is a promising tool to address, to what extent diazotrophy is present in methanol-utilizing species of soil communities. Methane-utilizing species respond differently to inorganic fertilizers containing ammonium and nitrate (Bodelier et al. 2000a, b; Gulledge et al. 2004; Seghers et al. 2005; Mohanty et al. 2006). In methane-rich soils, such as flooded rice fields, selective growth of some indigenous methanotrophic species could be stimulated by adding inorganic fertilizers (Bodelier et al. 2000b; Mohanty et al. 2006; Noll et al. 2008). These observations suggesting that methanotrophic methylotrophs have different optima of ammonium and nitrate concentration. However, different requirements for the external nitrogen source may be regarded as a general issue concerning all methylotrophs, even though ammonium is a competitive inhibitor for methane mono-oxygenases (Conrad 1996; Bodelier and Laanbroek 2004). This should be considered when conclusions from fertilizer experiments with methanotrophic communities are conveyed to methanol-utilizing communities, i.e., ammonium might have a divergent effect on methanotrophs compared with methanol-utilizing methylotrophs. The nitrate concentration may be a key factor for methanol oxidizers, and it is relevant in two aspects: (1) as an

external N-source (2) a potential alternative electron acceptor. Soil pH is an abiotic factor with an effect on prokaryotic community structure in soils (Buckley et al. 2006; Lejon et al. 2007), while 71% of soil-derived methanol-utilizing species are neutrophils, only 29% are acid tolerant, acidophilic, or alkaliphilic. The occurrence of certain methanotrophic genotypes is correlated with soil pH (Knief and Dunfield 2005; Kolb et al. 2005), and it seems reasonable to assume that soil pH may also affect the community structure of other soil methanol oxidizers.

Soil temperature differs spatially and over time. This favors different adaptations to temperature by different species of the same community. As an example, the incubation of rice field and forest soil samples (at 5–35°C) altered methane oxidation rates and also thrive the relative abundance of different species (Mohanty et al. 2007) due to divergent temperature optima. Between soils with larger mean temperature differences, one might expect even more dramatic differences in community structure. Recently, thermophilic methanotrophs affiliating with Verrucomicrobia were isolated from soils with high temperatures (Dunfield et al. 2007; Pol et al. 2007; Islam et al. 2008; Semrau et al. 2008). Isolation attempts from temperate soils have not revealed methanotrophic isolates of this phylum. Both meso- and thermophilic methanol-utilizing methylotrophs namely *Methylobacterium extorquens* and *B. methanolicus* have been isolated from soil. Hence, also within the group of methylotrophs that cannot utilize methane, different adaptation to temperature occurs. Collectively, these observations indicate that temperature is an important factor for methylotroph niche differentiation, but further research is needed to draw a fruitful conclusion. In several species soil salinity concentrations are measured that a species can tolerate. The concentrations range of NaCl varies from $\leq$0.02% for *B. methanolicus* (Arfman et al. 1989) up to 5% for *Hyphomicrobium vulgare* (Hirsch, 1989). Few studies have addressed the direct interaction of eukaryotes with methylotrophs in soils. *Methylobacterium nodulans* induces root nodule formation in tropical legume *Crotolaria podocarpa* (Sy et al. 2001; Jourand et al. 2004; Renier et al. 2008). Within the root nodule, this species grows exclusively and fixes dinitrogen for its host. The mechanism of the interaction is analogous to the classical root nodule symbiosis (Sy et al. 2001). In tissues of submerged mosses (*Sphagnum cuspidatum*), an endophytic methanotroph affiliating with Alphaproteobacteria was detected (Raghoebarsing et al. 2005). A transfer of carbon between bacterium and plant suggests a close trophic link between the two partners (Raghoebarsing et al. 2005). These two types of symbiotic interactions with plants suggest that methanol-utilizing methylotrophs may be adapted to certain plant species. Grazing by protozoa is another factor that might influence soil methanol-oxidizing communities. Protozoa from rice field soil displayed different preferences for various methanotrophic species (Murase and Frenzel 2007, 2008). Predatory protozoa might have selected for species that were more protected from grazing and have the capability to control species abundances. If methanol-utilizing species in general are subjected to grazing by soil protozoa, this is speculative. Nonetheless, this finding illustrates that niche differentiation of free-living soil methanol oxidizers might be impacted by predatory protozoa (Kolb 2009).

12.4 Plant-Associated *Methylobacterium*

Plant interactions with microorganisms are well-documented phenomena. Symbiotic bacteria that inhabit the rhizosphere and form nodules on the root of legumes are able to assimilate atmospheric nitrogen and provide it to the host plant. Rhizosphere bacteria, including members of the genera *Rhizobium* and *Bradyrhizobium*, however, are dominant players involved in plant–microbe symbiosis. Many bacteria are present on the leaves and there is evidence that these inhabitants have a significant impact on plant growth and development. One such inhabitant is Pink-Pigmented Facultative Methylotrophic bacteria, or PPFMs, which are members of the Genus *Methylobacterium* and are Gram-negative alpha-*Proteobacteria*. These plant-associated bacteria are easily detected by their pink color and ability to utilize one carbon compounds, such as methanol, as sole carbon and energy sources. They are phylogenetically related to both plant-associated bacteria *Agrobacterium* and *Rhizobium* (Bratina et al. 1992) and have more recently been placed in a clade including a *Methylobacterium* strain that is able to nodulate and fix nitrogen in symbiosis with legumes (Sy et al. 2001). PPFMs have been isolated from virtually all land plants examined (Corpe 1985). Although, they do not grow as rapidly as other phylloplane bacteria on multi-carbon sources, they compete well for leaf surface colonization. Hirano and Upper (1991) measured bacterial populations on snap pea throughout a growing season and found PPFMs to be the most abundant organisms in the phylloplane microflora at each sampling date.

Utilizing mutants in the pathway for one-carbon metabolism of *Methylobacterium* together with wild type, Sy et al. (2005) demonstrated that methylotrophy is advantageous to the bacterium colonizing *Medicago truncatula* under competitive conditions. Under non-competitive conditions, these methylotrophy mutants were able to colonize the plants as well as wild type indicating that methanol is not the only carbon source available to *Methylobacterium* while it is associated with the plant (Sy et al. 2005). Populations of *Methylobacterium* on red clover in the field were shown to decrease from the spring towards summer, but then increase again towards the end of the cropping season (Omer et al. 2004). PPFMs, however, are not limited to the phylloplane and also associated with other parts of the plant, concentrated at the actively growing portions. Gourioin et al. (2006) harvested *Methylobacterium* from the roots and the aerial portions of inoculated plants and compared proteins that were up or down regulated during colonization with those from free-living bacteria grown on minimal medium. Among proteins induced during phyllosphere colonization was *PhyR*, a two-component response regulator that was shown to play an essential role in plant colonization. They suggested that it is part of a key regulator for adaptation to epiphytic life of *Methylobacterium* (Gourioin et al. 2006). A *PhyR* disruption mutant exhibited in vitro growth similar to the progenitor isolate. However, during colonization of *Arabadopsis*, *phyR* cell numbers were below the detection limit for 65% of the 3-week old plants. Colonization to wild type levels was restored when the *PhyR* gene was expressed in trans (Gourioin et al. 2006).

PPFMs and other commensal plant-associated bacteria differ from plant pathogens by not eliciting a hypersensitive response and not causing disease in associated tissue. Hirano and Upper (2000) have studied the various phyllosphere inhabitants and used *Pseudomonas syringae* as a model to explain the complex association of bacteria with plants. Depending on the host plant and the environmental conditions, *P. syringae* can act as an epiphyte, an ice nucleus or as a pathogen in the phyllosphere (Hirano and Upper 2000). Recently, a plant growth-promoting *Methylobacterium* isolate was shown to induce defense responses in groundnut (Madhaiyan et al. 2006). The induced systemic resistance activity in *Methylobacterium*-associated groundnut provided protection against rot pathogens suggesting that PPFMs could be useful as a means of biological control of pathogens (Madhaiyan et al. 2006). PPFMs have been studied for their stimulation of seed germination and other aspects of plant growth and development. PPFMs are seed transmitted in soybean (Holland and Polacco 1994) and have been detected intra-cellularly in Scotch pine buds by in situ hybridization (Pirttila et al. 2000).

In general, seed-associated bacteria affect germination. Klincare et al. (1971) showed a correlation between lowered populations of seed microflora and a decline in the germination rates in a variety of species. This observation led to the investigation of a possible role of PPFMs in germination. Heat-cured seeds showed decrease seed germination frequency, by 30–75% depending on seed lot that could be corrected by imbibition with PPFMs, their spent medium, or by addition of cytokinins (Holland and Polacco 1994). Since exogenous cytokinins had an effect on germination similar to PPFMs or their spent media, cytokinin production was investigated in PPFMs (Holland and Polacco 1994; Freyermuth et al. 1996). Four different leaf isolates and a type culture were shown to produce and secrete *trans*-zeatin by the way of tRNA turnover (Koenig et al. 2002). A cytokinin-null mutant (*miaA*-), however, stimulated germination of soybean seeds as well as wild-type bacteria (Koenig et al. 2002). The component(s) in PPFM spent medium were found to be associated for the germination effect. More recently Ryu et al. (2006) demonstrated the production of plant growth regulators, including the auxin indole-3-acetic acid (IAA) as well as the cytokinins *trans*-zeatin riboside (*t*-ZR), dihydrozeatin riboside (DHZR) and isopentenyladenosine (iPA), by two *Methylobacterium* isolates from rice. Inoculation of red pepper and tomato seeds with these two isolates resulted in increased germination percentage as well as increased root length compared to uninoculated controls and plants inoculated with the *miaA*-mutant described above (Ryu et al. 2006). Similarly rice seeds inoculated with these isolates exhibited both an increase in the seed germination percentage and the germination rate. Such enhancement was a result of phytohormones secreted by the PPFMs (Lee et al. 2006). Earlier, PPFMs have been shown to produce vitamin B12 (Toraya et al. 1975). In liverworts, Basile et al. (1985) showed a correlation between exogenous vitamin B12-mediated enhanced growth and development due to PPFM. *Methylobacterium* spp. isolated from *Funaria hygrometrica* were shown to cause an acceleration of bud formation and growth in the protonemata (Zabetakis 1997). Secretions of other interesting secondary metabolites by PPFMs are being reported in the literature, e.g., two character-impact

compounds of strawberry flavor, the furanones 2,5-dimethyl-4-hydroxy-2*H*-furan-3-one (DMHF) and 2,5-dimethyl-4-methoxy-2*H*-furan-3-one (mesifuran) were synthesized by strawberry tissue cultures only after being treated with *Methylobacterium extorquens*. It was demonstrated that the precursor to furanones, 2-hydroxy-propanol (lactaldehyde), was formed by the bacterial oxidation of 1,2-propanediol, present in strawberry cells (Zabetakis 1997). Sugarcane sets inoculated with *Methylobacterium* spp. showed an accelerated and high rate of germination (Madhaiyan et al. 2005). When combining seed inoculation with *Methylobacterium* spp. in sugarcane with a soil treatment and a foliar application, researchers demonstrated an increase in specific leaf area, plant height, number of internodes and cane yield (Madhaiyan et al. 2005). Foliar applications of *Methylobacterium* spp. have resulted in increased growth and yield of cotton as well (Madhaiyan et al. 2006). In vitro regenerated sunflower plantlets from excised hypocotyl segments were inoculated with *Methylobacterium* strain from a field-grown sunflower plant prior to being placed on shoot-induction medium, showed an increase in both the number of shoots and roots while having no effect on the length of the shoots (Koopman and Kutschera 2005). A PPFM strain originally isolated from contaminated rice callus stimulated the growth of recolonized rice callus (Maliti et al. 2005). This callus isolates from green leafy plants, were shown to inhibit plantlet generation in two rice cultures resulting in continual embryo-like cell proliferation (Maliti et al. 2005). However, when rice seeds were inoculated with these isolates and grown in culture, there was a significant increase in growth and development of the seedlings increased biomass, leaf development and shoot growth (Maliti et al. 2005).

12.5 ACC Deaminase Producing *Methylobacterium* and Their Effects on Plant Growth

When plants are exposed to abiotic or biotic stressed environment, they often respond by producing stress ethylene. Various plants respond differently to stress and also have a range of sensitivities to ethylene. In addition, there is a complex web of interactions between ethylene and other plant hormones that varies from one plant to another. Thus, it is difficult to explain the functioning of stress ethylene in one simple model. Nevertheless, plants exposed to various types of stress invariably exhibit increased ethylene levels, as a result to increased damage (Hyodo 1991).

In an apparent paradox, stress ethylene has been suggested to both alleviate and exacerbate some of the effects of pathogen infection, depending upon the plant species, its age and the nature of the pathogen (Abeles et al. 1992; Arshad and Frankenberger 2002; Van Loon and Glick 2004). A model that explains these seemingly contradictory effects of stress ethylene on plants has been proposed (Stearns and Glick 2003; Pierik et al. 2006; Van Loon et al. 2006). In this model, there is an initial small peak of ethylene close in time, usually a few hours after, to

the onset of the stress and then a second much larger peak that appears some time later, usually 1–3 days. The first peak is only a small fraction of the magnitude of the second peak and is thought to initiate a protective response by the plant, such as transcription of pathogenesis-related genes and acquired resistance (Ciardi et al. 2000; Van Loon and Glick 2004). The first small wave of ethylene production is thought to consume the existing pool of ACC within plant tissues (Robison et al. 2001). On the other hand, the second ethylene peak is so large that physiological processes such as senescence, chlorosis and abscission are initiated resulting in, inhibitory effect to plant survival. Thus, following a severe infection by pathogens, a large portion of the plant damage occurs due to autocatalytic ethylene synthesis and not from direct pathogen action (Van Loon 1984). In this regard, not only exogenous ethylene can increase the severity of a pathogen infection, but as well, inhibitors of ethylene synthesis or ethylene action can significantly decrease the severity of a fungal or bacterial infection. The second peak of ethylene production occurs as a consequence of increased transcription of ACC synthase genes triggered by environmental and developmental cues (Yang and Hoffman 1984).

The enzyme ACC deaminase (EC: 4.1.99.4) catalyzes the cleavage of ACC to ammonia and α-ketobutyrate was first discovered in 1978 (Honma and Shimomura 1978). This enzyme has subsequently been detected in a wide range of bacterial strains and fungi (Klee et al. 1991; Sheehy et al. 1991; Honma 1993; Jacobson et al. 1994; Campbell and Thomson 1996; Burd et al. 1998; Minami et al. 1998; Jia et al. 1999; Belimov et al. 2001; Mayak et al. 2004; Ghosh et al. 2003; Ma et al. 2003; Uchiumi et al. 2004; Belimov et al. 2005; Blaha et al. 2006; Madhaiyan et al. 2006, 2007a; Anandham et al., 2008; Poonguzhali et al. 2008a; Yim et al. 2009), and for many of these strains, the ACC deaminase gene has been isolated and characterized. The presence of ACC deaminase is relatively common amongst soil microorganisms. In one study, 27 out of 233 newly isolated *Rhizobium* spp. from various sites in southern and central Saskatchewan contained ACC deaminase activity (Duan et al. 2006). In another study, ACC deaminase activity/genes were found in a wide range of bacterial isolates including *Azospirillum*, *Rhizobium*, *Agrobacterium*, *Achromobacter*, *Burkholderia*, *Ralstonia*, *Pseudomonas,* and *Enterobacter* (Blaha et al. 2006). Moreover, 62 out of 88 *Pseudomonas* strains exhibit biocontrol activity and ACC deaminase activity (Wang et al. 2000). The association of *Methylobacterium* species with plants seems to be symbiotic in which the bacteria utilize methanol, the waste metabolite from plants and in turn produce compounds that promote plant growth. Production of plant growth hormones like indole-3-acetic acid, cytokinins, and ACC deaminase involved in modulation of ethylene levels and plant growth promotion by *Methylobacterium* have been investigated (Madhaiyan et al. 2006, 2007a, b).

ACC deaminase is a member of a large group of enzymes that require the co-factor pyridoxal 5′-phosphate for its activity (Walsh et al. 1981). These enzymes have been classified based on their three dimensional structure, into four folding types: (1) tryptophan synthase, (2) aspartate aminotransferase, (3) D-amino acid aminotransferase, and (4) alanine racemase (Jansonius 1998). According to

this classification scheme, ACC deaminase fits into the tryptophan synthase family. The coenzyme pyridoxal phosphate is a tightly bound cofactor of ACC deaminase in the amount of approximately one mole of pyridoxal phosphate per trimeric subunit (Honma 1985). Interestingly, ACC synthase also requires pyridoxal phosphate for enzyme activity.

A model is proposed by which plant growth-promoting bacteria can lower plant ethylene levels and in turn facilitate plant growth (Glick et al. 1998). In this model the plant growth-promoting bacteria bind to the surface of a plant (usually seeds or roots, although ACC deaminase-producing bacteria may also be found on leaves and flowers). In response to tryptophan and other small molecules in the plant exudates, the bacteria synthesize and secrete IAA, some of which is taken up by the plant. This IAA together with endogenous plant IAA can stimulate plant cell proliferation, plant cell elongation or induce the transcription of ACC synthase, enzyme that catalyzes the formation of ACC. Some of the ACC is exuded from seeds, roots, or leaves (Penrose et al. 2001; Grichko and Glick 2001) along with other small molecules normally present in these exudates and may be taken up by the bacteria and subsequently cleaved by the enzyme, ACC deaminase, to ammonia and α-ketobutyrate. In this model, the bacterium acts as a sink for plant ACC and as a result of lowering either the endogenous or the IAA-stimulated ACC level, the amount of ethylene in the plant is also reduced. As a direct consequence of lowering plant ethylene levels, PGP bacteria possess the enzyme ACC deaminase, reduce the extent of ethylene inhibition of plant growth following a wide range of stresses. Thus, plants grown in association with these bacteria may have longer roots and shoots and be more resistant to growth inhibition by a variety of ethylene-inducing stresses (Saleem et al. 2007).

The question arises, as to how bacterial ACC deaminase can selectively lower deleterious ethylene levels but not affect the small peak of ethylene that is thought to activate some plant defense responses. As discussed later in this chapter, ACC deaminase is generally present in bacteria at a low level until it is induced, and the induction of enzyme activity is a relatively slow and complex process. Immediately following an environmental stress, the pool of ACC in the plant is lower as is the level of ACC deaminase in the associated bacterium. Following the relatively rapid induction of a lower level of ACC oxidase in the plant, it is likely that there is increased flux through this enzyme resulting in the first small peak of ethylene which is of sufficient magnitude to induce a protective/defensive response in the plant. With time, bacterial ACC deaminase is induced (by the increasing amounts of ACC that ensues from the induction of ACC synthase in the plant) so that the magnitude of the second, deleterious, ethylene peak is decreased significantly. The second ethylene peak may be reduced dramatically, but it is never completely abolished since ACC oxidase has a much higher affinity for ACC than ACC deaminase does (Glick et al. 1998). Thus, when ACC deaminase-producing bacteria are present, ethylene levels are ultimately dependent upon the ratio of ACC oxidase to ACC deaminase (Glick et al. 1998; Glick 2005; Saleem et al. 2007).

12.6 Conclusions

In the present chapter the methylotrophy, diversity of methylotrophs and their interactions with plants have been discussed. These methylotrophs belong to the Alpha-, Beta-, and Gammaproteobacteria, Verrucomicrobia, Firmicutes, and Actinobacteria. Their ecological niches are determined by oxygen and methanol concentration, temperature, pH, the capability to utilize nitrate as an electron acceptor, and the spectrum of nitrogen sources and utilizable multi-carbon substrates. Recently, discovered interactions with eukaryotes indicate that their ecological niches may not solely be defined by physicochemical parameters. Since methylobacteria produce and secrete cytokinins and auxin, a model of plant–microbe-interaction (symbiosis) is proposed in which the methanol-consuming bacteria are viewed as coevolved partners of the gametophyte that determine its growth, survival, and reproduction (fitness). Methylobacteria are widely distributed in a variety of habitats, such as freshwater, dust, and soils. On leaf surfaces, these methanol-consuming microbes often dominate the "bacterial flora" (microbiota). Quantitative studies led to the conclusion that typically more than 80% of the viable bacteria recovered from healthy leaves are members of the genus *Methylobacterium*. Hence, there should be a futuristic approach to explore the diversity of methylotrophs and their novel traits which will contribute to improve the plant microbe symbiotic relationship.

References

Abeles FB, Morgan PW, Saltveit ME (1992) Ethylene in plant biology. Academic, San Diego

Anandham R, IndiraGandhi P, Madhaiyan M, Sa T (2008) Potential plant growth promoting traits and bioacidulation of rock phosphate by thiosulfate oxidizing bacteria isolated from crop plants. J Basic Microbiol 48:439–447

Anthony C (1982) The biochemistry of methylotrophs. Academic Press, Inc. New York pp 4–19

Arfman N, Watling EM, Clement W, Vanoosterwijk RJ, Devries GE, Harder W, Attwood MM, Dijkhuizen L (1989) Methanol metabolism in thermotolerant methylotrophic *Bacillus* strains involving a novel catabolic NAD-dependent methanol dehydrogenase as a key enzyme. Arch Microbiol 152:280–288

Arfman N, Hektor HJ, Bystrykh LV, Govorukhina NI, Dijkhuizen L, Frank J (1997) Properties of an NAD(H)-containing methanol dehydrogenase and its activator protein from *Bacillus methanolicus*. Eur J Biochem 244:426–433

Arshad M, Frankenberger WT (2002) Ethylene: agricultural sources and applications. Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, New York

Balk M, Weijma J, Stams AJM (2002) *Thermotoga lettingae* (*Thermotoga lettingae*) sp. nov., a novel thermophilic, methanol-degrading bacterium isolated from a thermophilic anaerobic reactor. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:1361–1368

Balk M, Weijma J, Friedrich MW, Stams AJM (2003) Methanol utilization by a novel thermophilic homoacetogenic bacterium, *Moorella mulderi* sp. nov., isolated from a bioreactor. Arch Microbiol 179:315–320

Basile DV, Basile MR, Li QY, Corpe WA (1985) Vitamin B12-stimulated growth and development of *Jungermannia leiantha Grolle* and *Gymnocolea inflata* (Huds.) *Dum.* (Hepaticae). Bryologist 88:77–81

Belimov AA, Safronova VI, Sergeyeva TA, Egorova TN, Matveyeva VA, Tsyganov VE, Borisov AY, Tikhonovich IA, Kluge C, Preisfeld A, Dietz KJ, Stepanok VV (2001) Characterization of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria isolated from polluted soils and containing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. Can J Microbiol 47:642–652

Belimov AA, Hontzeas N, Safronova VI, Demchinskaya SV, Piluzza G, Bullitta S, Glick BR (2005) Cadmium-tolerant plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria associated with the roots of Indian mustard (*Brassica juncea* L. Czern.). Soil Biol Biochem 37:241–250

Blaha D, Combaret CP, Mirza MS, Loccoz YM (2006) Phylogeny of the 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase encoding gene acdS in phyto beneficial and pathogenic Proteobacteria and relation with strain biogeography. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 56:455–470

Bodelier PLE, Laanbroek HJ (2004) Nitrogen as a regulatory factor of methane oxidation in soils and sediments. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 47:265–277

Bodelier PLE, Hahn AP, Arth IR, Frenzel P (2000a) Effects of ammonium-based fertilisation on microbial processes involved in methane emission from soils planted with rice. Biogeochemistry 51:225–257

Bodelier PLE, Roslev P, Henckel T, Frenzel P (2000b) Stimulation by ammonium-based fertilizers of methane oxidation in soil around rice roots. Nature 403:421–424

Borodina E, Cox MJ, McDonald IR, Murrell JC (2005) Use of DNA-stable isotope probing and functional gene probes to investigate the diversity of methyl chloride-utilizing bacteria in soil. Environ Microbiol 7:1318–1328

Boulygina ES, Kuznetov BB, Marusina AI, Kuznetov BB, Marusina AI, Tourova TP, Kravchenko IK, Bykova SA, Kalganova TV, Galchenko VF (2002) A study of nucleotide sequences of nifH genes of some methanotrophic bacteria. Microbiology 71:500–508

Bratina BJ, Brusseau GA, Hanson RS (1992) Use of 16S rRNA analysis to investigate phylogeny of methylotrophic bacteria. Int J Syst Bacteriol 42:645–648

Brune A, Frenzel P, Cypionka H (2000) Life at the oxic–anoxic interface: microbial activities and adaptations. FEMS Microbiol Rev 24:691–710

Buckley DH, Huangyutitham V, Nelson TA, Rumberger A, Thies JE (2006) Diversity of Planctomycetes in soil in relation to soil history and environmental heterogeneity. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:4522–4531

Buckley DH, Huangyutitham V, Hsu SF, Nelson TA (2007) Stable isotope probing with $^{15}N_2$ reveals novel noncultivated diazotrophs in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:3196–3204

Buckley DH, Huangyutitham V, Hsu SF, Nelson TA (2008) $N_2{}^{15}$ ($^{15}N_2$)-DNA-stable isotope probing of diazotrophic methanotrophs in soil. Soil Biol Biochem 40:1272–1283

Bull ID, Parekh NR, Hall GH, Ineson P, Evershed RP (2000) Detection and classification of atmospheric methane oxidizing bacteria in soil. Nature 405:175–178

Burd GI, Dixon DG, Glick BR (1998) A plant growth-promoting bacterium that decreases nickel toxicity in seedlings. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3663–3668

Bystrykh LV, Vonck J, Vanbruggen EFJ, Vanbeeumen J, Samyn B, Govorukhina NI, Arfman N, Duine JA, Dijkhuizen L (1993) Electron-microscopic analysis and structural characterization of novel NADP(H)-containing methanol-N, N′-dimethyl-4-nitrosoaniline oxidoreductases from the Gram-positive methylotrophic bacteria *Amycolatopsis methanolica* and *Mycobacterium gastri* MB19. J Bacteriol 175:1814–1822

Campbell BG, Thomson JA (1996) 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase genes from *Pseudomonas* strains. FEMS Microbiol Lett 138:207–210

Chain PSG, Denef VJ, Konstantinidis KT et al (2006) *Burkholderia xenovorans* LB400 harbors a multi-replicon, 9.73-Mbp genome shaped for versatility. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 15280–15287

Chen Y, Dumont MG, McNamara NP, Chamberlain PM, Bodrossy L, StralisPavese N, Murrell JC (2008) Diversity of the active methanotrophic community in acidic peat lands as assessed by mRNA and SIP-PLFA analyses. Environ Microbiol 10:446–459

Ciardi JA, Tieman DM, Lund ST, Jones JB, Stall RE, Klee HJ (2000) Response to *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *vesicatoria* in tomato involves regulation of ethylene receptor gene expression. Plant Physiol 123:81–92

Conrad R (1996) Soil microorganisms as controllers of atmospheric trace gases (H_2, CO, CH_4, OCS, N_2O, and NO). Microbiol Rev 60:609–641

Conrad R, Claus P (2005) Contribution of methanol to the production of methane and its C^{13} (^{13}C)-isotopic signature in anoxic rice field soil. Biogeochemistry 73:381–393

Conrad R, Frenzel P (2002) Flooded soils. In: Britton G (ed) Encyclopedia of environmental microbiology. Wiley, New York, pp 1316–1333

Corpe WA (1985) A method for detecting methylotrophic bacteria on solid surfaces. J Microbiol Methods 3:215–221

de Vries GE, Arfman N, Terpstra P, Dijkhuizen L (1992) Cloning, expression, and sequence analysis of the *Bacillus methanolicus* C1 methanol dehydrogenase gene. J Bacteriol 174: 5346–5353

Dedysh SN, Ricke P, Liesack W (2004) *Nif*H and *Nif*D phylogenies: an evolutionary basis for understanding nitrogen fixation capabilities of methanotrophic bacteria. Microbiology 150:1301–1313

Dedysh SN, Knief C, Dunfield PF (2005a) *Methylocella* species are facultatively methanotrophic. J Bacteriol 187:4665–4670

Dedysh SN, Smirnova KV, Khmelenina VN, Suzina NE, Liesack W, Trotsenko YA (2005b) Methylotrophic autotrophy in *Beijerinckia mobilis*. J Bacteriol 187:3884–3888

Denman KL, Brasseur G, Chidthaisong A (2007) Couplings between changes in the climate system and biogeochemistry. In: Solomon S, Qin D, Manning M, Chen Z, Marquis M, Averyt KB, Tignor M, Miller HL (eds) Climate change 2007: the physical science basis. Cambridge University, Cambridge, UK, pp 499–587

Donnelly MI, Dagley S (1980) Production of methanol from aromatic acids by *Pseudomonas putida*. J Bacteriol 142:916–924

Duan J, Müller KM, Charles TC, Vesely S, Glick BR (2006) 1-Aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase genes in Rhizobia: isolation, characterization and regulation. In: Proceedings of the 7th international PGPR workshop, Amsterdam, p 50

Dumont MG, Radajewski SM, Miguez CB, McDonald IR, Murrell JC (2006) Identification of a complete methane monooxygenase operon from soil by combining stable isotope probing and metagenomic analysis. Environ Microbiol 8:1240–1250

Dunfield PF, Yuryev A, Senin P, Smirnova AV, Stott MB, Hou S, Ly B, Saw JH, Zhou Z, Ren Y, Wang J, Mountain BW, Crowe MA, Weatherby TM, Bodelier PL, Liesack W, Feng L, Wang L, Alam M (2007) Methane oxidation by an extremely acidophilic bacterium of the phylum *Verrucomicrobia*. Nature 450:879–882

Fall R, Benson AA (1996) Leaf methanol – the simplest natural product from plants. Trends Plant Sci 1:296–301

Ferry JG (1999) Enzymology of one-carbon metabolism in methanogenic pathways. FEMS Microbiol Rev 23:13–38

Freyermuth SK, Long RLG, Mathur S (1996) Metabolic aspects of plant interaction with commensal methylotrophs. In: Lidstrom ME, Tabita FR (eds) Microbial growth on C1 compounds. Kluwer, Dordrecht, pp 277–284

Galbally IE, Kirstine W (2002) The production of methanol by flowering plants and the global cycle of methanol. J Atmos Chem 43:195–229

Ghosh S, Penterman JN, Little RD, Chavez R, Glick BR (2003) Three newly isolated plant growth-promoting bacilli facilitate the seedling growth of canola seedlings. Plant Physiol Biochem 41:277–281

Glick BR (2005) Modulation of plant ethylene levels by the bacterial enzyme ACC deaminase. FEMS Microbiol Lett 251:1–7

Glick BR, Penrose DM, Li J (1998) A model for the lowering of plant ethylene concentrations by plant growth promoting bacteria. J Theor Biol 190:63–68

Gonzalez JM, Mayer F, Moran MA, Hodson RE, Whitman WB (1997) *Sagittula stellata* gen. nov, sp. nov. (repetition), a lignin-transforming bacterium from a coastal environment. Int J Syst Bacteriol 47:773–780

Gourioin B, Rosssignol M, Vorholt JA (2006) A proteomic study of *Methylobacterium extorquens* reveals a response regulator essential for epiphytic growth. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:13186–13191

Grichko VP, Glick BR (2001) Amelioration of flooding stress by ACC deaminase – containing plant growth-promoting bacteria. Plant Physiol Biochem 39:11–17

Gulledge J, Hrywna Y, Cavanaugh C, Steudler PA (2004) Effects of long-term nitrogen fertilization on the uptake kinetics of atmospheric methane in temperate forest soils. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 49:389–400

Henckel T, Roslev P, Conrad R (2000) Effects of O_2 and CH_4 on presence and activity of the indigenous methanotrophic community in rice field soil. Environ Microbiol 2:666–679

Hines ME, Crill PM, Varner RK, Talbot RW, Shorter JH, Kolb CE, Harriss RC (1998) Rapid consumption of low concentrations of methyl bromide by soil bacteria. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:1864–1870

Hirano SS, Upper CD (1991) Bacterial community dynamics. In: Andrews JH, Hirano SS (eds) Microbial ecology of leaves. Springer, New York, pp 271–294

Hirano SS, Upper CD (2000) Bacteria in the leaf ecosystem with emphasis on *Pseudomonas syringae* – a pathogen, ice nucleus and an epiphyte. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64:624–653

Hirsch P (1989) Genus *Hyphomicrobium Stutzer* and Hartleb (1898). In: Staley JT, Bryant MP, Pfennig N, Holt JG (eds) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology, vol 3. Williams and Wilkins Co., Baltimore, pp 1895–1904

Holland MA, Polacco JC (1994) PPFMs and other covert contaminants: is there more to plant physiology than just plant? Annu Rev Plant Physiol Plant Mol Biol 45:197–209

Honma M (1985) Chemically reactive sulfhydryl groups of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. Agric Biol Chem 49:567–571

Honma M, Shimomura T (1978) Metabolism of 1-amino-cyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid. Agric Biol Chem 42:1825–1831

Honma M (1993) Stereospecific reaction of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. In: Pech JC, Latche A, Balague C (eds) Cellular and molecular aspects of the plant hormone ethylene. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, The Netherlands. pp 111–116

Hutchinson GE (1957) Concluding remarks. Cold Spring Harbor Symposium on Quantitative Biology. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 415–417

Hyodo H (1991) Stress/wound ethylene. In: Mattoo AK, Suttle JC (eds) The plant hormone ethylene. CRC, Boca Raton, pp 65–80

Islam T, Jensen S, Reigstad LJ, Larsen O, Birkeland NK (2008) Methane oxidation at 55 degrees C (55°C) and pH 2 by a thermoacidophilic bacterium belonging to the Verrucomicrobia phylum. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105:300–304

Ito T, Fujimura S, Uchino M, Tanaka N, Matsufuji Y, Miyaji T, Takano K, Nakagawa T, Tomizuka N (2007) Distribution, diversity and regulation of alcohol oxidase isozymes, and phylogenetic relationships of methylotrophic yeasts. Yeast 24:523–532

Ivanova E, Doronina N, Trotsenko Y (2007) *Hansschlegelia plantiphila* gen. nov sp. nov., a new aerobic restricted facultative methylotrophic bacterium associated with plants. Syst Appl Microbiol 30:444–452

Jacobson CB, Pasternak JJ, Glick BR (1994) Partial purification and characterization of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase from the plant growth promoting rhizobacterium Pseudomonas putida GR12–2. Can J Microbiol 40:1019–1025

Jansonius NJ (1998) Structure, evolution and action of vitamin B6-dependent enzymes. Curr Opin Struct Biol 8:759–769

Jenni B, Aragno M (1987) *Xanthobacter agilis* sp. nov., a motile, dinitrogen-fixing, hydrogen-oxidizing bacterium. Syst Appl Microbiol 9:254–257

Jia YJ, Kakuta Y, Sugawara M, Igarashi T, Oki N, Kisaki M, Shoji T, Kanetuna Y, Horita T, Matsui H, Honma M (1999) Synthesis and degradation of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid by Penicillium citrinum. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 63:542–549

Jourand P, Giraud E, Bena G, Sy A, Willems A, Gillis M, Dreyfus B, de Lajudie P (2004) *Methylobacterium nodulans* sp. nov., for a group of aerobic, facultatively methylotrophic, legume root-nodule-forming and nitrogen-fixing bacteria. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 54: 2269–2273

Kalyuzhnaya MG, Chistoserdova L (2005) Community-level analysis: genes encoding methanopterin-dependent enzymes. Environ Microbiol 397:443–454

Kalyuzhnaya MG, Lidstrom ME, Chistoserdova L (2004) Utility of environmental primers targeting ancient enzymes: methylotroph detection in Lake Washington. Microb Ecol 48: 463–472

Kalyuzhnaya MG, Hristova KR, Lidstrom ME, Chistoserdova L (2008) Characterization of a novel methanol dehydrogenase in representatives of Burkholderiales: implications for environmental detection of methylotrophy and evidence for convergent evolution. Appl Environ Microbiol 190:3817–3823

Kaszaki P, Czechowska K, Petryszak P, Miedzobrodzki J, Pawlik P, Koloczek H (2006) Methylotrophic extremophilic yeast *Trichosporon* sp.: a soil-derived isolate with potential applications in environmental biotechnology. Acta Biochim Pol 53:463–473

Keppler F, Eiden R, Niedan V, Pracht J, Scholer HF (2000) Halocarbons produced by natural oxidation processes during degradation of organic matter. Nature 403:298–301

Klee HJ, Hayford MB, Kretzmer KA, Barry GF, Kishore GM (1991) Control of ethylene synthesis by expression of a bacterial enzyme in transgenic tomato plants. Plant Cell 3:1187–1193

Klincare AA, Kreslina DJ, Mishke IV (1971) Composition and activity of the epiphytic microflora of some agricultural plants. In: Preece TF, Dickinson CH (eds) Ecology of leaf surfacemicro-organisms. Academic Press, London. pp 191–201

Knief C, Dunfield PF (2005) Response and adaptation of different methanotrophic bacteria to low methane mixing ratios. Environ Microbiol 7:1307–1317

Knowles R (2005) Denitrifiers associated with methanotrophs and their potential impact on the nitrogen cycle. Ecol Eng 24:441–446

Koenig RL, Morris RO, Polacco JC (2002) tRNA is the source of low-level trans-zeatin production in *Methylobacterium* spp. J Bacteriol 184:1832–1842

Kolb S (2009) Aerobic methanol-oxidizing bacteria in soil. FEMS Microbiol Lett 300:1–10

Kolb S, Knief C, Dunfield PF, Conrad R (2005) Abundance and activity of uncultured methanotrophic bacteria involved in the consumption of atmospheric methane in two forest soils. Environ Microbiol 7:1150–1161

Koopman V, Kutschera U (2005) In-vitro regeneration of sunflower plants: effects of a *Methylobacterium* strain on organ development. J Appl Bot Food Qual 79:59–62

Körner E, von Dahl CC, Bonaventure G, Baldwin IT (2009) Pectin methylesterase NaPME1 contributes to the emission of methanol during insect herbivory and to the elicitation of defense responses in *Nicotiana attenuate*. J Exp Bot 60:2631–2640

Kulichevskaya IS, Guzev VS, Gorlenko VM, Liesack W, Dedysh SN (2006) *Rhodoblastus sphagnicola* sp. nov., a novel acidophilic purple non-sulfur bacterium from Sphagnum (*Sphagnum*) peat bog. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:1397–1402

Küsel K, Drake HL (1994) Acetate synthesis in soil from a Bavarian beech forest. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:1370–1373

Kutschera U (2007) Plant-associated methylobacteria as co-evolved phytosymbionts: a hypothesis. Plant Signal Behav 2:74–78

Lee JD, Komagata K (1980) *Pichia cellobiosa*, *Candida cariosilignicola*, and *Candida succiphila*, new species of methanol-assimilating yeasts. Int J Syst Bacteriol 30:514–519

Lee HS, Madhaiyan M, Kim CW, Choi SJ, Chung KY, Sa TM (2006) Physiological enhancement of early growth of rice seedlings (*Oryza sativa* L.) by production of phytohormone of N_2-fixing methylotrophic strains. Biol Fertil Soils 42:402–408

Lejon DPH, Nowak V, Bouko S, Pascault N, Mougel C, Martins JMF, Ranjard L (2007) Fingerprinting and diversity of bacterial copA genes in response to soil types, soil organic status and copper contamination. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 61:424–437

Lidstrom ME (2006) Aerobic methylotrophic bacteria. In: Dworkin M, Falkow S, Rosenberg E, Schleifer KH, Stackebrandt E (eds) The prokaryotes, vol 2. Springer, New York, pp 618–634

Loew O (1892) Ueber einen *Bacillus*, welcher Ameisensäure und Formaldehyd assimiliren kann. Centralblatt bakteriologie parasitenkunde infektionskrankheiten hygiene abteilung II 12: 462–465

Lueders T, Wagner B, Claus P, Friedrich MW (2004) Stable isotope probing of rRNA and DNA reveals a dynamic methylotroph community and trophic interactions with fungi and protozoa in oxic rice field soil. Environ Microbiol 6:60–72

Ma W, Sebestianova S, Sebestian J, Burd GI, Guinel F, Glick BR (2003) Prevalence of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate in deaminase in *Rhizobia* spp. Antonie Leeuwenhoek 83:285–291

Madhaiyan M, Poonguzhali S, Lee HS, Hari K, Sundaram SP, Sa TM (2005) Pink-pigmented facultative methylotrophic bacteria accelerate germination, growth and yield of sugarcane clone Co86032 (*Saccharum officinarum* L.). Biol Fertil Soils 41:350–358

Madhaiyan M, Poonguzhali S, Ryu JH, Sa TM (2006) Regulation of ethylene levels in canola (*Brassica campestris*) by 1-aminocycloprpane-1-carboxylate deaminase-containing *Methylobacterium fjisawaense*. Planta 224:268–278

Madhaiyan M, Kim BY, Poonguzhali S, Kwon SW, Song MH, Ryu JH, Go SJ, Koo BS, Sa TM (2007a) *Methylobacterium oryzae* sp. nov., an aerobic, pink-pigmented, facultatively methylotrophic, 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase-producing bacterium isolated from rice. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:326–331

Madhaiyan M, Poonguzhali S, Sa TM (2007b) Characterization of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate (ACC) deaminase containing *Methylobacterium oryzae* and interactions with auxins and ACC regulation of ethylene in canola (*Brassica campestris*). Planta 226:867–876

Madhaiyan M, Poonguzhali S, Kwon SW, Sa TM (2009a) *Methylobacterium phyllosphaerae* sp. nov., a pink-pigmented, facultative methylotroph from the phyllosphere of rice. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:22–27

Madhaiyan M, Poonguzhali S, Lee JS, Saravanan VS, Lee KC, Santhanakrishnan P (2009b) Enterobacter arachidis sp nov a plant-growth promoting diazotrophic bacterium isolated from rhizosphere soil of groundnut. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 60:1559–1564. doi:10.1099/ijs.0.013664-0

Maliti CM, Basile DV, Corpe WA (2005) Effects of *Methylobacterium* spp. strains on rice *Oryza sativa* L. callus induction, plantlet regeneration, and seedling growth in vitro. J Torrey Bot Soc 132:355–367

Maxfield PJ, Hornibrook ERC, Evershed RP (2008) Acute impact of agriculture on high-affinity methanotrophic bacterial populations. Environ Microbiol 10:1917–1924

Mayak S, Tirosh T, Glick BR (2004) Plant growth-promoting bacteria that confer resistance to water stress in tomato and pepper. Plant Sci 166:525–530

McDonald IR, Murrell JC (1997) The methanol dehydrogenase structural gene mxaF and its use as a functional gene probe for methanotrophs and methylotrophs. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:3218–3224

McDonald IR, Bodrossy L, Chen Y, Murrell JC (2008) Molecular techniques for the study of aerobic methanotrophs. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:1305–1315

Miller LG, Warner KL, Baesman SM, Oremland RS, McDonald IR, Radajewski S, Murrell JC (2004) Degradation of methyl bromide and methyl chloride in soil microcosms: use of stable C

isotope fractionation and stable isotope probing to identify reactions and the responsible microorganisms. Geochim Cosmochim Acta 68:3271–3283
Minami R, Uchiyama K, Murakami T, Kawai J, Mikami K, Yamada T, Yokoi D, Ito H, Matsui H, Honma M (1998) Properties, sequence, and synthesis in *Escherichia coli* of 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase from *Hansenula saturnus*. J Biochem 123:1112–1118
Mohanty SR, Bodelier PLE, Floris V, Conrad R (2006) Differential effects of nitrogenous fertilizers on methane-consuming microbes in rice field and forest soils. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:1346–1354
Mohanty SR, Bodelier PLE, Conrad R (2007) Effect of temperature on composition of the methanotrophic community in rice field and forest soil. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 62:24–31
Murase J, Frenzel P (2007) A methane-driven microbial food web in a wetland rice soil. Environ Microbiol 9:3025–3034
Murase J, Frenzel P (2008) Selective grazing of methanotrophs by protozoa in a rice field soil. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 65:408–414
Nercessian O, Kalyuzhnaya MG, Joye SB, Lidstrom ME, Chistoserdova L (2005) Analysis of fae and fhcD genes in Mono Lake, California. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:8949–8953
Noll M, Frenzel P, Conrad R (2008) Selective stimulation of type I methanotrophs in a rice paddy soil by urea fertilization revealed by RNA-based stable isotope probing. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 65:125–132
Omer ZS, Tombolini R, Broberg A, Gerhardson B (2004) Indole-3-acetic acid production by pink-pigmented facultative methylotrophic bacteria. Plant Growth Regul 43:93–96
Penrose DM, Moffatt BA, Glick BR (2001) Determination of the a-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase gene requires symbiotic nitrogen-fixing regulator gene nifA2 in *Mesorhizobium loti* MAFF303099. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:4964–4969
Pierik R, Tholen D, Poorter H, Visser EJW, Voesenek LACJ (2006) The Janus face of ethylene: growth inhibition and stimulation. Trends Plant Sci 11:176–183
Pirttila AM, Laukkanen H, Pospiech H, Myllylä R, Hohtola A (2000) Detection of intracellular bacteria in the buds of Scotch pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.) by *in situ* hybridization. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:3073–3077
Pol A, Heijmans K, Harhangi HR, Tedesco D, Jetten MSM, den Camp HJMO (2007) Methanotrophy below pH 1 by a new *Verrucomicrobia* species. Nature 450:874–878
Poonguzhali S, Madhaiyan M, Sa TM (2008a) Isolation and identification of phosphate solubilizing bacteria from Chinese cabbage and their effect on growth and phosphorus utilization of plants. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:773–777
Poonguzhali S, Madhaiyan M, Yim WJ, Kim KA, Sa TM (2008b) Colonization pattern of plant root and leaf surfaces visualized by use of green-fluorescent-marked strain of *Methylobacterium suomiense* and its persistence in rhizosphere. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 78:1033–1043
Radajewski S, Webster G, Reay DS, Morris SA, Ineson P, Nedwell DB, Prosser JI, Murrell JC (2002) Identification of active methylotroph populations in an acidic forest soil by stable isotope probing. Microbiology 148:2331–2342
Raghoebarsing AA, Smolders AJP, Schmid MC, Rijpstra WI, Wolters-Arts M, Derksen J, Jetten MS, Schouten S, Sinninghe Damsté JS, Lamers LP, Roelofs JG, Op den Camp HJ, Strous M (2005) Methanotrophic symbionts provide carbon for photosynthesis in peat bogs. Nature 436:1153–1156
Rahalkar M, Bussmann I, Schink B (2007) *Methylosoma difficile* gen. nov., sp. nov., a novel methanotroph enriched by gradient cultivation from littoral sediment of Lake Constance. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:1073–1080
Raj HD (1989) Oligotrophic methylotrophs: Ancylobacter (*basonym Microcyclus* Orskov) Raj gen. nov. Crit Rev Microbiol 17:89–106
Redeker KR, Wang NY, Low JC, McMillan A, Tyler SC, Cicerone RJ (2000) Emissions of methyl halides and methane from rice paddies. Science 290:966–969

Renier A, Jourand P, Rapior S, Poinsot V, Sy A, Dreyfus B, Moulin L (2008) Symbiotic properties of *Methylobacterium nodulans* ORS 2060^{T}: a classic process for an atypical symbiont. Soil Biol Biochem 40:1404–1412

Rhew RC, Abel T (2007) Measuring simultaneous production and consumption fluxes of methyl chloride and methyl bromide in annual temperate grasslands. Environ Sci Technol 41:7837–7843

Robison MM, Griffith M, Pauls KP, Glick BR (2001) Dual role of ethylene in susceptibility of tomato to *Verticillium* wilt. J Phytopathol 149:385–388

Ryu JH, Madhaiyan M, Poonguzhali S, Yim W, Indireagandhi P, Kim K, Anandham R, Yun J, Kim KH, Sa TM (2006) Plant growth substances produced by *Methylobacterium* spp. and their effect on tomato (*Lycoperison esculentum* L.) and Red Pepper (*Capsicum annum L.*) growth. J Microbiol Biotechnol 16:1622–1628

Saleem M, Arshad M, Hussain S, Bhatti AS (2007) Perspective of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) containing ACC deaminase in stress agriculture. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 34:635–648

Schäfer H (2007) Isolation of Methylophaga (*Methylophaga*) spp. from marine dimethylsulfide-degrading enrichment cultures and identification of polypeptides induced during growth on dimethylsulfide. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:2580–2591

Schink B, Zeikus JG (1980) Microbial methanol formation – a major end product of pectin metabolism. Curr Microbiol 4:387–389

Schink B, Ward JC, Zeikus JG (1981) Microbiology of wetwood – importance of pectin degradation and *Clostridium* species in living trees. Appl Environ Microbiol 42:526–532

Seghers D, Siciliano SD, Top EM, Verstraete W (2005) Combined effect of fertilizer and herbicide applications on the abundance, community structure and performance of the soil methanotrophic community. Soil Biol Biochem 37:187–193

Semrau JD, DiSpirito AA, Murrell JC (2008) Life in the extreme: thermoacidophilic methanotrophy. Trends Microbiol 16:190–193

Sexstone AJ, Parkin TB, Tiedje JM (1985) Temporal response of soil denitrification rates to rainfall and irrigation. Soil Sci Soc Am J 49:99–103

Sheehy RE, Honma M, Yamada M, Sasaki T, Martineau B, Hiatt WR (1991) Isolation, sequence, and expression in *Escherichia coli* of the *Pseudomonas* sp. strain ACP gene encoding 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. J Bacteriol 173:5260–5265

Stearns J, Glick BR (2003) Transgenic plants with altered ethylene biosynthesis or perception. Biotechnol Adv 21:193–210

Sy A, Giraud E, Jourand P, Garcia N, Willems A, de Lajudie P, Prin Y, Neyra M, Gillis M, Boivin-Masson C, Dreyfus B (2001) Methylotrophic *Methylobacterium* bacteria nodulate and fix nitrogen in symbiosis with legumes. J Bacteriol 183:214–220

Sy A, Timmers ACJ, Knief C, Vorholt JA (2005) Methylotrophic metabolism is advantageous for *Methylobacterium extorquens* during colonization of *Medicago truncatula* under competitive conditions. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:7245–7252

Tiedje JM, Sexstone AJ, Parkin TB, Revsbech NP, Shelton DR (1984) Anaerobic processes in soil. Plant Soil 76:197–212

Toraya T, Yongsmith B, Tanaka A, Fukui S (1975) Vitamin B12 production by a methanol-utilizing bacterium. Appl Microbiol 30:477–479

Trotsenko YA, Murrell JC (2008) Metabolic aspects of aerobic obligate methanotrophy. Adv Appl Microbiol 63:183–229

Uchiumi T, Ohwada T, Itakura M, Mitsui H, Nukui N, Dawadi P, Kaneko T, Tabata S, Yokoyama T, Tejima K, Saeki K, Omori H, Hayashi M, Maekawa T, Sriprang R, Murooka Y, Tajima S, Simomura K, Nomura M, Suzuki A, Shimoda Y, Sioya K, Abe M, Minamisawa K (2004) Expression islands clustered on the symbiosis island of the *Mesorhizobium loti* genome. J Bacteriol 186:2439–2448

Van Loon LC (1984) Regulation of pathogenesis and symptom expression in diseased plants by ethylene. In: Fuchs Y, Chalutz E (eds) Ethylene: biochemical, physiological and applied aspects. Martinus Nijhoff/Dr W. Junk, The Hague, pp 171–180

Van Loon LC, Glick BR (2004) Increased plant fitness by rhizobacteria. In: Sandermann H (ed) Molecular ecotoxicology of plants. Springer, Berlin, pp 177–205

Van Loon LC, Geraats BPJ, Linthorst HJM (2006) Ethylene as a modulator of disease resistance in plants. Trends Plant Sci 11:184–191

Walsh C, Pascal RA, Johnston M, Raines R, Dikshit D, Krantz A, Honma M (1981) Mechanistic studies on the pyridoxal phosphate enzyme 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate from *Pseudomonas* sp. Biochemistry 20:7509–7519

Wang C, Knill E, Glick BR, Défago G (2000) Effect of transferring 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC) deaminase genes into *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain CHA0 and its gacA derivative CHA96 on their growth promoting and disease-suppressive capacities. Can J Microbiol 46:898–907

Ward N, Larsen O, Sakwa J, Bruseth L, Khouri H, Durkin AS, Dimitrov G, Jiang L, Scanlan D, Kang KH, Lewis M, Nelson KE, Methé B, Wu M, Heidelberg JF, Paulsen IT, Fouts D, Ravel J, Tettelin H, Ren Q, Read T, DeBoy RT, Seshadri R, Salzberg SL, Jensen HB, Birkeland NK, Nelson WC, Dodson RJ, Grindhaug SH, Holt I, Eidhammer I, Jonasen I, Vanaken S, Utterback T, Feldblyum TV, Fraser CM, Lillehaug JR, Eisen JA (2004) Genomic insights into methanotrophy: the complete genome sequence of *Methylococcus capsulatus* (Bath). PLoS Biol 2:1616–1628

Warneke C, Karl T, Judmaier H, Hansel A, Jordan A, Lindinger W, Crutzen PJ (1999) Acetone, methanol, and other partially oxidized volatile organic emissions from dead plant matter by abiological processes: significance for atmospheric HOx chemistry. Global Biogeochem Cycles 13:9–17

Warwick NJ, Pyle JA, Shallcross DE (2006) Global modelling of the atmospheric methyl bromide budget. J Atmos Chem 54:133–159

Wennberg PO, Hanisco TF, Jaegle L, Jacob DJ, Hintsa EJ, Lanzendorf EJ, Anderson JG, Gao R, Keim ER, Donnelly SG, Negro LAD, Fahey DW, McKeen SA, Salawitch RJ, Webster CR, May RD, Herman RL, Proffitt MH, Margitan JJ, Atlas EL, Schauffler SM, Flocke F, McElroy CT, Bui TP (1998) Hydrogen radicals, nitrogen radicals, and the production of O_3 in the upper troposphere. Science 279:49–53

Williamson VM, Paquin CE (1987) Homology of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* ADH4 to an iron-activated alcohol dehydrogenase from *Zymomonas mobilis*. Mol Gen Genet 209:374–381

Yang SF, Hoffman NE (1984) Ethylene biosynthesis and its regulation in higher plants. Annu Rev Plant Physiol 35:155–189

Yim WJ, Poonguzhali S, Madhaiyan M, Palaniappan P, Siddikee MA, Sa TM (2009) Characterization of plant-growth promoting diazotrophic bacteria isolated from field grown Chinese cabbage under different fertilization conditions. J Microbiol 47:147–155

Zabetakis I (1997) Enhancement of flavour biosynthesis from strawberry (*Fragaria xananassa*) callus cultures by *Methylobacterium* species. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Cult 50:179–183

Zausig J, Stepniewski W, Horn R (1993) Oxygen concentration and redox potential gradients in unsaturated model soil aggregates. Soil Sci Soc Am J 57:908–916

Zhang GS, Tian JQ, Jiang N, Guo XP, Wang YF, Dong XZ (2008) Methanogen community in Zoige wetland of Tibetan plateau and phenotypic characterization of a dominant uncultured methanogen cluster ZC-I. Environ Microbiol 10:1850–1860

Chapter 13
Actinobacteria–Plant Interactions: A Boon to Agriculture

Janice L. Strap

13.1 Introduction

Without question, the control of plant diseases is essential for sustainable agriculture. The application of agrochemicals to control plant diseases is an important method in agricultural practices, but is not without complications such as environmental pollution, development of pathogen resistance, and deleterious effects on nontarget organisms (Gerhardson 2002). Growing demand for ecologically sensible agricultural practices underscores the need for new strategies to augment existing disease control practices.

Saprophytic microflora within the plant rhizosphere can be both deleterious and beneficial to plant growth and to crop yields (Burr and Caesor 1984; Frederickson and Elliott 1985; Gaskins et al. 1985; Schroth and Hancock 1982; Solans 2007; Suslow and Schroth 1982). Plant diseases caused by soil-dwelling microorganisms, especially fungi, are responsible for significant losses of agricultural crops each year. While the traditional approach to controlling the spread of diseases in agriculture has been the use of pesticides, this is a costly practice which poses serious hazards to the environment. The growing demand for alternative approaches to agricultural pest control and fertilization is fueled by the current impetus toward chemical-free agricultural products and a paucity of registered chemicals available for use (Fravel 2005). Therefore, the application of biocontrol and plant-growth-promoting microbes provides a valuable alternative to effectively reduce reliance on potentially harmful chemicals.

Microbial inoculants are a much needed addition to the arsenal required to overcome agroenvironmental problems since they can promote the health and growth of plants, improve nutrient availability and uptake, and attenuate crop

J.L. Strap (✉)
University of Ontario Institute of Technology, 2000 Simcoe Street North, Oshawa, ON, Canada, L1H 7K4
e-mail: Janice.Strap@uoit.ca

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_13,

damage by inhibiting or outcompeting phytopathogens, thereby reducing the need for agrochemicals (Barea et al. 1998; Bonfante 2003; Hodge et al. 2001; Kloepper et al. 2004). Efficient disease control, however, requires a thorough understanding of plant–microbe interactions including the complex relationships between plant pathogens and potential microbial inoculants. Details of the molecular mechanisms that govern the specificity of these interactions remain to be elucidated.

13.2 Actinomycetes

Actinomycetes are a heterogeneous and widely distributed group of bacteria in nature (Srinivasan et al. 1991), which make important contributions to nutrient cycling of natural substrates and have a role in humification (McCarthy 1987). Actinomycetes produce chemically diverse metabolites many of which exhibit antibiotic activity and plant growth regulatory activity. In addition, they produce lytic enzymes which not only facilitate their survival by degrading diverse substrates but which can inhibit the growth of phytopathogens (Gonzalez-Franco et al. 2003; Hoster et al. 2005; Singh et al. 1999). Actinomycetes, especially *Streptomyces*, can degrade diverse, recalcitrant polymers occurring naturally in plant litter and soil, including lignocelluloses (Crawford 1978; Thomas and Crawford 1998), chitin (Gonzalez-Franco et al. 2003; Krsek and Wellington 2001), and pectin (Beg et al. 2000; Hématy et al. 2009). The degradative ability of streptomycetes is important for carbon cycling in the environment and humic formation that can ultimately affect soil nutrition and plant health.

Members of the genus *Streptomyces* belong to the order *Actinomycetales* and are filamentous, Gram-positive, and soil-dwelling organisms of both industrial and agricultural significance. These bacteria undergo both chemical (antibiotic production) and morphological differentiation as part of their complex life cycle (Chater 1993). The unique growth nature of *Streptomyces*, specifically their ability to form desiccant-resistant spores, makes them ideal biological control agents since they can be formulated as dry, stable powdered products (Emmert and Handelsman 1999). Moreover, the streptomycetes are of great interest due to their ability to produce an extensive array of chemically diverse secondary metabolites that serve as commercially important compounds including antimicrobial agents, antiparasitic agents, and agriculturally important herbicides (Bibb 1996). These secondary metabolites are usually produced in a growth-phase-dependent manner (Demain and Fang 1995). The onset of morphological differentiation, which is characterized by the development of aerial hyphae and spores, is often coincidental with the onset of antibiotic production (Challis and Hopwood 2003; Champness and Chater 1994). These antibiotics may serve many functions in the rhizosphere. It has been reported, for example, that some known antibiotics can affect plant growth. Geldanamycin, a benzoquinoid ansamycin antibiotic that inhibits bacteria, protozoa, and fungi (DeBoer et al. 1970), likewise inhibits seed germination of both monocots and dicots but lacks a post emergence effect on larger seedlings (Heisey and Putnam

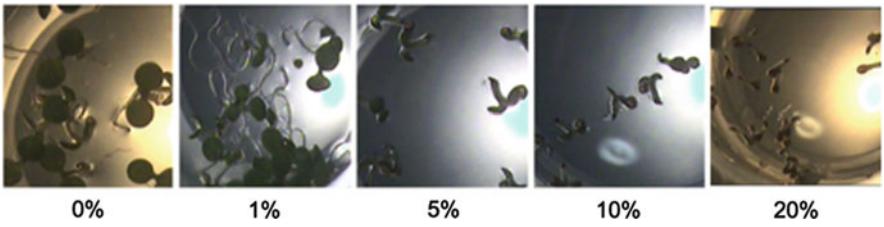


Fig. 13.1 Dose-dependent effect of a putative phytotoxin produced by a *Streptomyces* soil isolate on the growth of *Arabidopsis thaliana*. At low concentrations, the phytotoxic compound stimulates the growth of *A. thaliana*, while plant growth is severely compromised at higher concentrations (photos by J.L. Strap)

1990). Nigericin, a polyether antibiotic that inhibits select phytopathogenic fungi and Gram-positive bacteria (Harned et al. 1951), inhibits radicle growth of germinating seeds (Heisey and Putnam 1990). Interestingly, the herbicidal activity of geldanamycin and nigericin is dose dependent; specific concentrations can stimulate the growth of some plants (Heisey and Putnam 1990). This has been observed for other herbicidal compounds at subtoxic concentrations as well (Fig. 13.1).

13.3 The Rhizosphere

The rhizosphere, defined as the zone of soil directly influenced by plant roots, represents a unique biological niche within the soil environment (Lechevalier 1989). The rhizosphere supports an abundance of diverse saprophytic microorganisms able to decompose polymeric organic matter such as lignocellulose and chitin in the soil (Lynch 1990; Whipps 2001), thereby making important contributions to nutrient cycling and the formation of humic substances (Trigo and Ball 1994).

Plant root exudates directly affect microbial populations within the rhizosphere (Brown 1975; Buyer et al. 2002; Grayston and Campbell 1996; Morgan et al. 2005; Whipps 2001; Yang and Crowley 2000) by providing growth substrates such as sugars, amino acids, organic acids, fatty acids, nucleotides, sterols, vitamins, and other compounds that influence the growth of bacteria and fungi (Broeckling et al. 2008; Fischer et al. 2003; Fries and Forsman 1951; Jaeger et al. 1999; Rovira 1956; Smucker 1993; Welbaum et al. 2004; Yang and Crowley 2000). In turn, the plant is affected by the increased activity of the microorganisms in the rhizosphere. There is evidence that the variety of nutrients secreted by plant roots is both plant species and age specific, thereby influencing the diversity of microbes that inhabit the rhizosphere of specific plant species over the course of plant development (Buyer et al. 2002; Grayston and Campbell 1996; Grayston et al. 1996; King and Wallace 1956; Wallace and Lochhead 1949). The microbial flora present in the rhizosphere greatly impacts the establishment of potential phytopathogens.

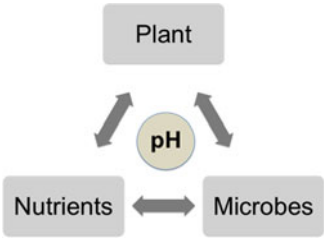


Fig. 13.2 Influence of plant root exudates on microbial communities in the rhizosphere. Plants produce exudates that not only help to solubilize essential nutrients from the soil but also serve as carbon and energy sources for microbial populations within the rhizosphere. Microorganisms that dwell in the rhizosphere in turn affect the availability of essential nutrients such as iron to the plant and to other microbes. Sequestration of bioavailable iron stores by biocontrol strains restricts the growth of phytopathogens

In the rhizosphere, the concentration of bioavailable iron is extremely low (Guerinot and Yi 1994). Plant exudates facilitate the acquisition of essential iron by acidification of the surrounding soil through excretion of protons and organic acids (Jones et al. 1996; Marschner and Romheld 1994), secretion of reductases (Marschner and Romheld 1994), and production of phytosiderophores which chelate Fe^{3+} (Takagi et al. 1984). Humic substances can also increase iron bioavailability in a pH-dependent manner (Robin et al. 2008; Weber et al. 2006). The production of plant root exudates, therefore, influences the resident microbial population capable of humic formation, which in turn affects the bioavailability of iron which subsequently influences not only plant growth but also the microbial community within the rhizosphere (Fig. 13.2).

There is still much to learn about the complex interactions between plant roots and the diverse microbes that dwell in close association with them. The extent to which microbes interact with each other and with plant roots is still relatively understudied. The reason for this lies in the inability to accurately quantify and identify the diverse microbial inhabitants of the rhizosphere.

13.3.1 Diversity in the Rhizosphere

In the past, microbes present in the rhizosphere have been investigated through isolation and cultivation from rhizosphere soils on laboratory media, which has resulted in an underestimation of diversity within rhizosphere communities due to the limited cultivability of environmental microbes. The application of molecular methods to study microbial communities has enhanced our understanding of the unculturable microorganisms within this important ecosystem. This knowledge is crucial to the successful development of actinomycetes as microbial inoculants.

Detection of the actinomycete diversity present in association with plant roots is possible through culture-independent techniques such as repetitive elements-PCR

(repPCR) (Davelos et al. 2004; Schneider and De Brujin 1996), BOX-PCR (Davelos et al. 2004; Lanoot et al. 2004), denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE) (Basil et al. 2004; Gonzalez-Franco et al. 2009; Muyzer and Smalla 1998; Williamson et al. 2000), metagenomics (Fierer et al. 2007), use of green fluorescent protein (GFP) (Coombs and Franco 2003), and recently, genome-wide microarrays (Val et al. 2009). The application of molecular techniques in combination with the more traditional culture-based techniques is necessary to gain a better understanding of the microbial diversity and mechanisms governing microbe–microbe and plant–microbe interactions in the rhizosphere. This knowledge is essential for making informed choices for developing biocontrol agents to control phytophathogens and to overcome current limitations to field application of biocontrol agents.

13.3.2 Exudates in the Rhizosphere

As mentioned above, the rhizosphere is a unique environment, where plant exudates are an important nutrient source for root-colonizing microbes. Root exudates selectively influence the growth of bacteria and fungi that colonize the rhizosphere. They alter the chemistry of the soil within the rhizosphere by serving as a selective growth substrate for soil microbes. Since the exudates for a given plant species can be highly specific, they enrich their rhizosphere for microbes that are well adapted to the utilization of the specific organic exudates excreted by that plant (Lynch and Whipps 1990). Thus, specific bacteria that can utilize those exudates as well as antagonize pathogens are likely more abundant in the rhizosphere (Neal et al. 1973a, b). Metabolites from highly adapted root-colonizing actinomycetes are, in turn, an important source of the antibiotics, enzymes, and bioactive products involved in promoting plant growth and preventing invasion by root pathogens (Goodfellow and Williams 1983; Tokala et al. 2002).

13.4 Biological Control of Plant Diseases by Actinobacteria

Biological control of plant diseases uses microorganisms to suppress plant disease (Emmert and Handelsman 1999) and is often accompanied by plant growth promotion. Interest in the biocontrol of plant pathogens has increased considerably over the years, partly as a response to public concern about the use of hazardous chemical fungicides and pesticides. An advantage of biocontrol microbes is that they protect the plant not only from microbial threats but also from insects and weeds (Fravel 2005; Table 13.1).

The interactions between Gram-negative bacteria and plants has been extensively studied compared to plant interactions with Gram-positive bacteria, especially in the area of biocontrol. This is surprising given the ubiquitous nature of

Table 13.1 Examples of agroactive compounds produced by *Streptomyces* species

Organism	Products	Application	References
Streptomyces lydicus strain WYEC 108	Actinovate	Biocontrol	Elliott et al. (2009)
Streptomyces lydicus strain WYEC 108	Actino-Iron®	Biocontrol	Pasura (2008)
Streptomyces griseoviridis strain K61	Mycostop® WP	Biocontrol	Hamdali et al. (2008)
Streptomyces sp. A43 (FJ442821)	Non-commercial	Biocontrol	de Vasconcellos and Cardoso (2009)
Streptomyces avermitilis	Avermectin	Anthelmintic	Miller et al. (1979)
Streptomyces griseus	Streptomycin	Antimicrobial	Leben and Keitt (1954)
Streptomyces griseus IMRU 3570	Candicidin	Antifungal	Campelo and Gil (2002)
Streptomyces grieseochromogenes	Blasticidin-S	Antifungal	Dekker (1963)
Streptomyces griseoviridis	Polyene antibiotic	Fungicide	Raatikainen et al. (1994)
Streptomyces hygroscopicus	Bialaphos	Non-selective herbicide	Murakami et al. (1986)
Streptomyces hygroscopicus	Herbimycins	Herbicide	Omura et al. (1979)
Streptomyces hygroscopicus	Milbemycin	Anthelmintic	Takiguchi et al. (1980)
Streptomyces hygroscopicus	Validamycin A	Antifungal	Endo et al. (1983)
Streptomyces kasugaensis	Thiolutin	Antifungal	Sturdíková et al. (1990)
Streptomyces species No. 638	Anisomycin	Herbicide	Yamada et al. (1972)
Streptomyces thermoarchaensis	Milbemycin	Anthelmintic	Thomas et al. (1991)

actinobacteria, their ability to colonize plant root systems (Alexander 1977; Tokala et al. 2002), and their amenability to agricultural application.

While biological control of phytopathogens shows great promise under laboratory conditions, the results do not consistently translate to field conditions which typically fluctuate with season (Fravel 2005). The use of biocontrol does lend itself readily to greenhouse applications (Paulitz and Belanger 2001) since greenhouse conditions can be optimized for a specific biocontrol agent, whereas field conditions cannot be controlled (Fravel 2005).

Biocontrol of fungal plant diseases has been described using *Trichoderma* sp. (Elad et al. 1980), *Pseudomonas* sp. (Ligon et al. 2000), and *Streptomyces* sp. (Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998a). Actinomycetes, including *Streptomyces* spp., possess several qualities of effective biocontrol agents, including the ability to colonize plant root surfaces (Tokala et al. 2002), antibiosis against plant root pathogens (Basil et al. 2004; Kang et al. 2010), the synthesis of extracellular enzymes (Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998b), and the degradation of phytotoxins (Lewis and Starkey 1969).

Actinomycetes produce a large number of agroactive metabolites (Table 13.1) that play a role as biocontrol agents exhibiting antagonism against a variety of plant pathogens (Bressan 2003; Chamberlain and Crawford 1999; Tahvonen and Avikainen 1987; Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998a; Yuan and Crawford 1995). For

example, *Streptomyces nigrescens* produce phosphazomycins that exhibit in vitro activity against *Botrytis cinerea*, *Rhizoctonia solani*, and *Alternaria kikuchiana* (Tomiya et al. 1990). In addition to antifungal activity, some agroactive metabolites produced by *Streptomyces* also exhibit anthelmintic activity contributing to their biocontrol properties.

A microorganism that colonizes roots is ideal for use as a biocontrol agent against soil-borne diseases (Weller 1988). This property would ensure protection and beneficial effects throughout the growing season. Root colonization is exhibited by many *Streptomyces* (Basil et al. 2004; Crawford et al. 1993; Kortemaa et al. 1994; Tokala et al. 2002; Strap unpublished) underscoring their importance as rhizosphere microorganisms.

The genus *Streptomyces* has been investigated as a potential biocontrol agent against fungal phytopathogens such as *Pythium ultimum* (Castillo et al. 2002; Chamberlain and Crawford 1999; Crawford et al. 1993), *Sclerotinia homeocarpa* (Castillo et al. 2002; Chamberlain and Crawford 1999; Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998a), *Fusarium oxysporum* (Chamberlain and Crawford 1999), *Gaeumannomyces graminis* (Chamberlain and Crawford 1999), and *Phytophthora fragariae* (Valois et al. 1996).

Many streptomycetes have been shown to suppress fungal growth in vitro (Basil et al. 2004; Crawford et al. 1993; Kang et al. 2010; Tokala et al. 2002). In situ biocontrol by *Streptomyces* spp. has been demonstrated using the organisms themselves as well as isolated, bioactive products produced by the organisms (Smith et al. 1990).

As described above, the unique growth strategy of *Streptomyces* makes them ideally suited for use as biocontrol agents: they have the ability to colonize plant root surfaces (Barakate et al. 2002; Basil et al. 2004; Tokala et al. 2002), they exhibit antibiosis against plant root pathogens (Chamberlain and Crawford 1999), and they synthesize extracellular enzymes (Chamberlain and Crawford 2000). The mechanisms that have been proposed for the observed activities of biocontrol strains are briefly outlined below.

13.4.1 Antibiosis

The colonization of a biocontrol agent in the rhizosphere accompanied by the production of one or more substances, usually a secondary metabolite that inhibits or kills a pathogen, is known as antibiosis. A number of streptomycete antibiotics effective against phytopathogens in vitro have been identified (Kim et al. 1999; Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998b). Antibiosis by root-colonizing actinomycetes has also been observed (Chamberlain and Crawford 1999; Crawford et al. 1993; Rothrock and Gottlieb 1984; Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998a).

Antibiosis is an advantage in the biological control of disease since compounds that mediate antibiosis can diffuse readily in nature and therefore direct contact between the antagonist and the pathogen is not necessary (Hajlaou et al. 1994).

There is evidence that antibiotics are indeed produced in soil, and they have been implicated in the biocontrol of pathogens in situ. *Streptomyces violaceusniger* YCED9 produces geldanamicin, nigericin, and a complex of macrocyclic lactone antibiotics which are thought to be involved in the control of *R. solani* and *S. homeocarpa* in greenhouse experiments since nigericin could be recovered from soil (Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998a). Other *Streptomyces* have also been shown to produce antibiotics in soil (Cundliffe 1989; Fravel 1988; Rangaswami and Ethiraj 1962). Chamberlain and Crawford (1999) demonstrated the effectiveness of the lignocellulolytic *Streptomyces* strains YCED9 and WYE53 as biocontrol agents to control pathogenic fungal agents of turfgrass including *R. solani*, *P. ultimum*, and *G. graminis* (Chamberlain and Crawford 1999). While antimicrobial substances are likely to facilitate the biocontrol of plant diseases, it is unlikely that this is the sole mechanism by which biocontrol occurs. Biocontrol is likely to be based on the ecological balance of many competing factors. There have been reports of mutant biocontrol strains deficient in the production of antimicrobial substances that are able to control plant diseases as efficiently as the wild-type strains (Kempf and Wolf 1989; Neeno-Eckwall et al. 2001) and likely due to the ability to colonize and outcompete the pathogen as described below. Another study of the same *Streptomyces* species showed that a mutant of the strain defective in the production of geldanamycin lost the ability to control the disease (Agbessi et al. 2003).

13.4.2 Colonization of Plant Roots and Surfaces

The ability of a biocontrol organism to maintain a sufficient population density in the rhizosphere for a sufficient length of time is critical to the success of the biocontrol method (Weller 1988). Properties of successful colonizers are introduced below.

13.4.2.1 Competition

There are examples where mutants of biocontrol strains that are deficient in the production of antimicrobial substances are almost as effective in biocontrol as the wild-type strains (Kempf and Wolf 1989), suggesting that this mechanism of biocontrol is related to the colonization ability and other competitive traits of the biocontrol agent. A competitive advantage is conferred upon a biocontrol agent that has the ability to use a specific energy source or inorganic compound that not all microorganisms within a given niche are able to use. For example, iron can limit the growth of plant pathogens and is a well-known source for nutrient competition in the rhizosphere (Douling and O'Gara 1994; Robin et al. 2008).

Competition for Iron: Importance of Siderophores

The ability of a biocontrol agent to outcompete a pathogen for nutrients and space within the rhizosphere is an advantageous trait. Sequestration of iron gives a biocontrol strain a competitive advantage.

Iron is an essential element for the growth of all living organisms but is scarce as a consequence of its low solubility in most habitats. Siderophores are low molecular weight compounds secreted by many bacteria that permit the acquisition of ferric ion (Whipps 2001). Due to the importance of iron for growth and metabolism, siderophore-mediated iron acquisition plays an important role in the ability of a microorganism to colonize plant roots, thereby impacting microbial interactions within the rhizosphere (Crowley 2006; Yang and Crowley 2000). Streptomycetes produce diverse siderophores (Hamby-Salove 2002; Muller and Raymond 1984; Tokala et al. 2002; Yang and Leong 1982) that have high affinity for ferric iron, thereby sequestering iron away from pathogens restricting their growth (Loper 1988; Whipps 2001). Furthermore, these siderophores differ in their specificity allowing them to bind other metals further depriving phytopathogens of essential elements. Many plant-growth-promoting bacteria including streptomycetes can use iron from heterologous siderophores (Barona-Gomez et al. 2006; Crowley 2006; Neilands and Leong 1986; Neilands 1984) allowing them to outcompete phytopathogens. Plants are not affected by the resulting localized depletion of iron since most plants can grow at lower iron concentrations than microbes and many plants can utilize microbial siderophores.

13.4.3 Parasitism and the Production of Extracellular Proteins

Parasitism, the physical destruction of fungal cell walls by the action of extracellular hydrolytic enzymes produced by an antagonist, is yet another mechanism of biocontrol (Adams 1990; Chernin and Chet 2002). Hydrolases involved in mycoparasitism of fungal pathogens include β-1,3 glucanases and chitinases (Berg et al. 2002; Chernin et al. 1995; Cohen-Kupiec et al. 1999; El-Tarabily et al. 2000; Gonzalez-Franco et al. 2003; Inbar and Chet 1995; Mahadevan and Crawford 1997; Valois et al. 1996), which results in degradation of the fungal cell wall reducing the number of fungal pathogens able to cause disease. The importance of chitinases as a mechanism of biocontrol is exemplified by the observation that nonchitinolytic streptomycetes do not protect plants from *Sclerotinia* (El-Tarabily et al. 2000).

13.4.4 Volatile Substances

The synthesis and perception of volatile substances as signaling molecules adds an additional layer of complexity to the interactions between plants and microbes.

Volatile substances are lipophilic, low molecular weight organic or inorganic compounds with high vapor pressure (Vespermann et al. 2007). Plant roots are known to release volatile metabolites (Wenke et al. 2010). Many bacteria including actinomycetes have been reported to produce volatile substances (Carpenter-Boggs et al. 1995; Collins and Gaines 1964; Gerber and Lechevalier 1965; Schulz and Dickschat 2007; Vespermann et al. 2007; Wilkins and Schöller 2009); some of these substances have been implicated as a biocontrol mechanism (Wan et al. 2008). For example, Wan et al. (2008) demonstrated that *Streptomyces platensis* F-1 effectively suppressed the growth of *R. solani*, *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum*, and *B. cinerea* and effectively reduced the severity of leaf and seedling blight of rice caused by *R. solani*, leaf blight of oilseed rape caused by *S. sclerotiorum*, and strawberry fruit rot caused by *B. cinerea* (Wan et al. 2008), suggesting a potential role for this organism as a biofumigant to protect postharvest fruits from decay or for use under greenhouse conditions for control of foliar diseases.

While the importance of volatile compounds in the biocontrol process is undeniable, there is a dearth of information on the mechanisms involved in the signal transduction process and how these compounds mediate interaction between microbes and between plants and microbes.

13.5 Plant Growth Promotion by Actinobacteria

Plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) colonize the rhizosphere of numerous plant species and confer diverse beneficial effects, such as increased plant growth (Tokala et al. 2002), increased seed germination rate (Glick et al. 1997), tolerance to abiotic stress (Timmusk and Wagner 1999; Yang et al. 2009), and reduced susceptibility to diseases (Kloepper et al. 2004). Additional beneficial effects of PGPR strains include enhancement of phosphorus availability (Gyaneshwar et al. 2002; Rodriguez and Fraga 1999), fixation of atmospheric nitrogen (Gregor et al. 2003), sequestration of iron for plants by production of siderophores (Hamby-Salove 2002; Mondal and Sen 1999; Simeoni et al. 1987; Tokala et al. 2002), and production of phytohormones such as gibberellins and auxins (Glick 1995; Merzaeva and Shirokikh 2010).

Streptomyces and other PGPR can affect plant growth either indirectly or directly. Indirect promotion occurs when PGPR lessen or prevent the harmful effects of one or more deleterious microorganisms. This is biocontrol as described above. The antagonism of soil phytopathogens results due to competitive exclusion by root colonization and/or the biosynthesis of metabolites, which prevent pathogen invasion and establishment. In comparison, direct promotion of plant growth by PGPR occurs when the plant is supplied with a compound that is synthesized by the bacteria or when a PGPR otherwise facilitates plant uptake of soil nutrients (Lynch 1990; Lynch and Whipps 1990).

Despite their enormous potential as plant-growth-promoting rhizobacteria, *Streptomyces* have not been well investigated for their use as PGPR. This is

surprising since streptomycetes account for a significant percentage of typical soil microflora (Alexander 1977; Janssen 2006; Lacey 1973), are particularly effective colonizers of plant root systems (Basil et al. 2004; Tokala et al. 2002), and are able to endure unfavorable growth conditions by forming spores which allows them to persist in the environment (Chater 1993; Goodfellow and Williams 1983). While the beneficial effects of some *Streptomyces* and other PGPR strains have been shown, the mechanisms they utilize for plant growth promotion are not yet fully understood and it is likely that multiple mechanisms are utilized by any given strain (Glick 1995).

13.5.1 Nutrient Uptake

The mechanisms behind plant–PGPR interactions are conceivably complex and appear to be species and context dependent. One proposed mechanism by which PGPR affect nutrient uptake is by enhancing growth and development of plant roots, leading to root systems with larger surface area with increased number of root hairs, which are then able to access more nutrients (Adesemoye et al. 2008; Biswas et al. 2000).

13.5.1.1 Iron Sequestration

Siderophore production by root-colonizing *Streptomyces* species has been shown to be a mechanism for plant growth enhancement (Hamby-Salove 2002; Tokala et al. 2002). In legumes, a siderophore-secreting *Streptomyces* by an unknown mechanism assimilated iron from the surrounding soil and transferred it into root nodules where it was assimilated by bacteroides (Tokala et al. 2002) promoting nodulation. This interesting streptomycete symbiosis resulted in pea plants that had longer shoots, higher average nodule weights, root weights, and greater nitrogenase activity than uninoculated plants. The actinomycete-specific association had a positive influence on the physiology of the host plant.

For many other PGPR, there is also a positive correlation between siderophore production and observed enhancement of plant growth (Aronson and Boyer 1994; Becker and Cook 1988; Hofte et al. 1991). There are multiple proposed mechanisms by which this may occur. First, sequestration of the iron in the rhizosphere by PGPR renders the iron less available to potential pathogens in the rhizosphere (Kloepper et al. 1980) as already discussed. Second, the PGPR's own growth and its ability to promote host plant growth could be enhanced if it is able to utilize the bound, bioavailable iron through specific membrane receptors and uptake transport systems. These receptors and transporters, and their corresponding genes, have been described for several rhizobacteria (Bunet et al. 2006; de Weger et al. 1986; LeVier and Guerinot 1996; Marugg et al. 1985; Reigh and O'Connell 1993). Third, the PGPR may help the host plant assimilate iron when bioavailability

is low in soil. Finally, certain root-colonizing species of rhizobacteria are effective biocontrol agents. Microbial biocontrol is typically achieved through competitive antagonism or parasitism of the plant pathogen, and the capacity of some biocontrol agents to antagonize a plant pathogen appears to be closely related to siderophore production (Becker and Cook 1988; Hofte et al. 1991; Loper 1988; Mondal and Sen 1999; Simeoni et al. 1987).

13.5.1.2 Enhancement of Phosphorus Availability

Another mechanism by which microbial inoculants with plant-growth-promoting activity may exert their effect is in the solubilization of inorganic phosphate and mineralization of organic phosphates (Tawaraya et al. 2006). Phosphorus is an essential macronutrient required for the growth and development of plants (Illmer and Schinner 1992). However, a large proportion of phosphorus applied as fertilizer is in an insoluble form restricting the amount available to plants. Phosphate-solubilizing bacteria within plant rhizospheres have the ability to solubilize inorganic and organic phosphorus (Vazquez et al. 2000), which can lead to increased plant growth and improved health.

Hamdali et al. (2008) investigated select phosphate-solubilizing actinomycete isolates originating from Moroccan phosphate mines for their ability to promote the growth of *Triticum durum*. They found that the strains exhibiting the best phosphorus release also had the best stimulatory effect on shoot and root growth, inhibited phytopathogenic fungi, and colonized the root surfaces (Hamdali et al. 2008). This underscores the importance of phosphate solubilization as a desirable characteristic of biocontrol strains.

13.5.1.3 Phytohormone Production

The rhizosphere is a dynamic habitat rich in microorganisms and in plant–microbe interactions, some of which are beneficial to the microbes and plants, and some of which are detrimental to one and/or the other.

As mentioned above, PGPR can influence the nutritional status of the rhizosphere by profoundly enhancing plant root development. Phytohormones such as auxins, gibberellins, and cytokinins produced by PGPR can function as plant growth regulators (Aldesequy et al. 1998; Glick 1995; Merzaeva and Shirokikh 2010; Strzelczyk and Pokojska-Burdziej 1984; Tsuchiya et al. 1997).

A significant number of rhizosphere-isolated bacteria are able to produce the auxin, indole-3-acetic acid (IAA), which is involved in cell division, root initiation, and cell enlargement (Patten and Glick 1996). Bacterial IAA production typically leads to increased root length, which increases the root surface area facilitating access to nutrients. It should be noted that some phytopathogenic bacteria can also produce IAA; this includes *Streptomyces* species (Manulis et al. 1994).

Gibberellins are phytohormones involved in a number of developmental processes in plants which are also synthesized by a number of bacteria (Atzorn et al. 1988; Bottini et al. 1989). Aldesequy et al. (1998) found that two different *Streptomyces* species, *S. olivaceoviridis* and *S. rochei*, significantly increased the shoot length and shoot fresh mass of wheat plants, respectively. Hormone extraction, purification, and bioassay showed that both species produced substantial amounts of growth regulating substances including auxins, gibberellins, and cytokinins, thus demonstrating that *Streptomyces* species produce at least one class of compounds that directly influence plant growth (Aldesequy et al. 1998). However, some other putative mechanisms of plant growth promotion such as siderophore biosynthesis and phosphorus solubilization were not assessed in that study. El-Abyad et al. (1993) and Merriman et al. (1974) reported plant growth enhancement as a function of *Streptomyces* inoculation under gnotobiotic conditions, although they did not study the possible mechanisms of streptomycete-mediated growth promotion (El-Abyad et al. 1993; Merriman et al. 1974).

Plants commonly synthesize increased levels of the hormone ethylene in response to stress (Morgan and Drew 1997). Synthesis of the enzyme 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC) deaminase which hydrolyzes 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid, the immediate biosynthetic precursor of ethylene in plant tissues to ammonia and α-ketobutyrate, effectively lowers plant ethylene levels, thereby increasing resistance to environmental stress (Glick et al. 2007; Penrose and Glick 1997). The ability of ACC deaminase producing streptomycetes to enhance plant growth through the reduction of ACC levels in planta has been demonstrated (El-Tarabily 2008).

13.5.2 Current Limitations of PGPR

As discussed above, PGPR have been shown to be effective in laboratory experiments and greenhouse studies, but the desired effects in the field have not been observed consistently (Fravel 2005; Paulitz and Belanger 2001). The lack of consistency in performance between controlled environments such as the laboratory and greenhouse and the more variable field conditions along with microbial community differences may be the explanation. Despite the variability so far observed under field conditions, this avenue of research is an important one. As additional information regarding the mechanisms of plant–microbe interactions and the mechanisms by which the specificity of certain microbial interactions is controlled, it may be possible to overcome many of the current limitations to field application.

13.6 Considerations for Actinomycete Formulations

As discussed above, actinomycetes are important agents in plant growth promotion and for the control of plant diseases. Many of the actinomycetes that have been described for these applications have an advantage over their Gram-negative

counterparts in that they sporulate. Sporulation itself is not the hallmark of a successful biocontrol agent; however, vegetative inoculants do pose challenges, especially for maintaining adequate shelf life. For example, Sabaratnam and Traquair (2002) formulated vegetative hyphae of rhizosphere-competent *Streptomyces* sp. Di-944 for application onto tomato seeds using talcum powder, determined to be the most stable, starch granules, and alginate beads. The latter was found to be the least effective, attributed in part to the limited aeration and delayed hydration (Sabaratnam and Traquair 2002).

The use of actinomycetes as microbial inoculants in the field requires that a suitably large inoculum be prepared that can be stored without losing viability. Growth of actinomycetes and production of desirable biocontrol and plant-growth-promoting characteristics have been shown to vary with a given isolate, the growth conditions employed such as aeration (Clark et al. 1995; Okabe et al. 1992), temperature, pH, and source of carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorus (Aharonowitz 1980; Martin and Demain 1980). Actinomycete inocula have been prepared for field and greenhouse applications in a variety of ways. For example, Soares et al. (2007) describe a method in which streptomycete isolates were grown on sterilized rice (Soares et al. 2007). While this was an effective method, spore production varied with the *Streptomyces* species tested.

The formulation of a biological control agent can greatly impact its practicality in the field or greenhouse. It is quite common to formulate viable agents with inert carriers such as talc or Kaolin clay. Formulation is driven by the nature of the biological control agent, the target pathogen, and delivery mechanism. Zeolite and powdered milk formulations of *S. violaceusniger* YCED9 spores were shown to be effective in reducing crown-foliar disease caused by *S. homeocarpa* (Trejo-Estrada et al. 1998b) in both laboratory and greenhouse conditions. Another zeolite formulation containing *Streptomyces* sp. 385 and chitosan supplementation was shown to suppress *Fusarium* wilt in greenhouse-grown cucumber (Singh et al. 1999). In addition to the biological considerations, dry formulations weigh less and are therefore easier to ship and have reduced risk of contamination (Fravel 2005).

Determining the optimum conditions for preparing microbial inoculants in sufficient quantities to be used in field applications is not a trivial process. Further complicating the implementation of microbial inoculants is the requirement for a carrier suitable to the delivery method for a given application. Overcoming these obstacles requires a thorough knowledge of strain characteristics and is important for generating an economically viable biocontrol product.

13.7 Conclusion

It is clear that the mechanisms of plant growth promotion and biocontrol are not mutually exclusive but interdependent processes. Many of the properties exhibited by plant-growth-promoting actinobacteria are also those exhibited by effective

biocontrol agents which make their use in agriculture an attractive alternative to agrochemicals.

Acknowledgment The author thanks A. Latos for critical reading of the manuscript.

References

Adams PB (1990) The potential of mycoparasites for biological control of plant diseases. Annu Rev Phytopathol 28:59–72

Adesemoye AO, Torbert HA, Kloepper JW (2008) Enhanced plant nutrient use efficiency with PGPR and AMF in an integrated nutrient management system. Can J Microbiol 54:876–886

Agbessi S, Beauséjour J, Déry C, Beaulieu C (2003) Antagonistic properties of two recombinant strains of *Streptomyces melanosporofaciens* obtained by intraspecific protoplast fusion. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 62:233–238

Aharonowitz Y (1980) Nitrogen metabolite regulation of antibiotic biosynthesis. Annu Rev Microbiol 34:209–233

Aldesequy HS, Mansour FA, Abo-Hamed SA (1998) Effect of the culture filtrates of *Streptomyces* on growth and productivity of wheat plants. Folia Microbiol (Praha) 43:465–470

Alexander M (1977) Introduction to soil microbiology, 2nd edn. Krieger, Melbourne, FL

Aronson DB, Boyer GL (1994) Growth and siderophore formation in six iron-limited strains of *Frankia*. Soil Biol Biochem 26:561–567

Atzorn RA, Crozier CT, Weeler CT, Sanberg G (1988) Production of gibberellins and indole-3-acetic acid by *Rhizobium phaseoli* in relation to nodulation of *Phaseolus vulgaris* roots. Planta 175:532–536

Barakate M, Ouhdouch Y, Oufdou KH, Beaulieu C (2002) Characterization of rhizospheric soil streptomycetes from Moroccan habitats and their antibiotic activities. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 18:49–54

Barea JM, Andrade G, Bianciotto VV, Dowling D, Lohrke S, Bonfante P, O'Gara F, Azcon-Aguilar C (1998) Impact on arbuscular mycorrhiza formation of *Pseudomonas* strains used as inoculants for biocontrol of soil-borne fungal plant pathogens. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:2304–2307

Barona-Gomez F, Lautru S, Francou FX, Leblond P, Pernodet JL, Challis GL (2006) Multiple biosynthetic and uptake systems mediate siderophore-dependent iron acquisition in *Streptomyces coelicolor* A3(2) and *Streptomyces ambofaciens* ATCC 23877. Microbiology 152:3355–3366

Basil A, Strap J, Knotek-Smith H, Crawford D (2004) Studies on the microbial populations of the rhizosphere of big sagebrush (*Artemisia tridentata*). J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 31:278–288

Becker JO, Cook RJ (1988) Role of siderophores in suppression of *Pythium* species and production of increased-growth response of wheat by fluorescent pseudomonads. Phytopathology 78:778–782

Beg QK, Bhushan B, Kapoor M, Hoondal GS (2000) Production and characterization of thermostable xylanase and pectinase from *Streptomyces* sp. QG-11-3. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 24:396–402

Berg G, Roskot N, Steidle A, Eberl L, Zock A, Smalla K (2002) Plant-dependent genotypic and phenotypic diversity of antagonistic rhizobacteria isolated from different *Verticillium* host plants. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3328–3338

Bibb MJ (1996) The regulation of antibiotic production in *Streptomyces coelicolor* A3(2). Microbiology 142:1335–1344

Biswas JC, Ladha JK, Dazzo FB (2000) Rhizobia inoculation improves nutrient uptake and growth of lowland rice. Soil Sci Soc Am J 64:1644–1650

Bonfante P (2003) Plants, mycorrhizal fungi and endobacteria: a dialog among cells and genomes. Biol Bull 204:215–220

Bottini R, Fulchieri M, Pearce D, Pharis RP (1989) Identification of giberellins A1, A3, and isoA3 in cultures of *Azospirillum lipoferum*. Plant Physiol 90:45–47

Bressan W (2003) Biological control of maize seed pathogenic fungi by use of actinomycetes. BioControl 48:233–240

Broeckling CD, Broz AK, Bergelson J, Manter DK, Vivanco JM (2008) Root exudates regulate soil fungal community composition and diversity. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:738–744

Brown ME (1975) Rhizosphere microorganisms opportunists bandits or benefactors. In: Walker N (ed) Soil microbiology. Butterworths, London, UK, pp 21–38

Bunet R, Brock A, Rexer HU, Takano E (2006) Identification of genes involved in siderophore transport in *Streptomyces coelicolor* A3(2). FEMS Microbiol Lett 262:57–64

Burr TJ, Caesor AJ (1984) Beneficial plant bacteria. CRC Crit Rev Plant Sci 2:1–20

Buyer JS, Roberts DP, Russek-Cohen E (2002) Soil and plant effects on microbial community structure. Can J Microbiol 48:955–964

Campelo A, Gil J (2002) The candicidin gene cluster from *Streptomyces griseus* IMRU 3570. Microbiology 148:51–59

Carpenter-Boggs L, Loynachan T, Stahl P (1995) Spore germination of *Gigaspora margarita* stimulated by volatiles of soil-isolated actinomycetes. Soil Biol Biochem 27:1445–1451

Castillo UF, Strobel GA, Ford EJ, Hess WM, Porter H, Jensen JB, Albert H, Robison R, Condron MAM, Teplow DB, Stevens D, Yaver D (2002) Munumbicins, wide-spectrum antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces* NRRL 30562, endophytic on *Kennedia nigriscans*. Microbiology 148:2675–2685

Challis G, Hopwood D (2003) Synergy and contingency as driving forces for the evolution of multiple secondary metabolite production by *Streptomyces* species. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:14555–14561

Chamberlain K, Crawford DL (1999) *In vitro* and *in vivo* antagonism of pathogenic turfgrass fungi by *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* strains YCED9 and WYE53. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 23:641–646

Chamberlain K, Crawford DL (2000) Thatch biodegradation and antifungal activities of two lignocellulolytic *Streptomyces* strains in laboratory cultures and in golf green turfgrass. Can J Microbiol 46:550–558

Champness WC, Chater KF (1994) Regulation and integration of antibiotic production and morphological differentiation in *Streptomyces* spp. In: Piggott PJ, Moran CP Jr, Youngman P (eds) Regulation of bacterial differentiation. American Society of Microbiology, Washington, DC, pp 61–93

Chater KF (1993) Genetics of differentiation in *Streptomyces*. Annu Rev Microbiol 47:685–713

Chernin L, Chet I (2002) Microbial enzymes in biocontrol of plant pathogens and pests. In: Burns RG, Dick RP (eds) Enzymes in the environment: activity, ecology, and applications. Dekker, New York, NY, pp 171–225

Chernin L, Ismailov Z, Haran S, Chet I (1995) Chitinolytic *Enterobacter agglomerans* antagonistic to fungal plant pathogens. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:1720–1726

Clark GJ, Langley D, Bushell ME (1995) Oxygen limitation can induce microbial secondary metabolite formation: investigations with miniature electrodes in shaker and bioreactor culture. Microbiology 141:663–669

Cohen-Kupiec R, Broglie KE, Friesem D, Broglie RM, Chet I (1999) Molecular characterization of a novel b-1,3-exoglucanase related to mycoparasitism of *Trichoderma harzianum*. Gene 226:147–154

Collins R, Gaines H (1964) Production of hydrogen sulfide by *Streptomyces odorifer*. Appl Microbiol 12:335–336

Coombs JT, Franco CM (2003) Visualization of an endophytic *Streptomyces* species in wheat seed. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:4260–4262

Crawford D, Lynch J, Whipps J, Ousley MA (1993) Isolation and characterization of actinomycete antagonists of a fungal root pathogen. Appl Environ Microbiol 59:3899–3905

Crawford DL (1978) Lignocellulose decomposition by selected *Streptomyces* strains. Appl Environ Microbiol 35:1041–1045

Crowley DE (2006) Microbial siderophores in the plant rhizosphere. In: Barton LL, Abadia J (eds) Iron nutrition in plants and rhizospheric microorganisms. Springer, Berlin, pp 169–198

Cundliffe E (1989) How antibiotic producing microorganisms avoid suicide. Annu Rev Microbiol 43:207–223

Davelos AL, Xiao K, Samac DA, Martin AP, Kinkel LL (2004) Spatial variation in *Streptomyces* genetic composition and diversity in prairie soil. Microb Ecol 48:601–612

de Vasconcellos R, Cardoso E (2009) Rhizospheric streptomycetes as potential biocontrol agents of *Fusarium* and *Armillaria* pine rot and as PGPR for *Pinus taeda*. BioControl 54:807–816

de Weger LA, Boxtel R, Burg B, Gruters RA, Geels FP, Schippers B, Lugtenberg B (1986) Siderophores and outer membrane proteins of antagonistic, plant-growth-stimulating, root-colonizing *Pseudomonas* spp. J Bacteriol 165:585–594

DeBoer C, Meulman PA, Wnuk RJ, Peterson DH (1970) Geldanamycin, a new antibiotic. J Antibiot 29:442–447

Dekker J (1963) Antibiotics in the control of plant diseases. Annu Rev Microbiol 17:243–262

Demain AL, Fang A (1995) Emerging concepts of secondary metabolism in actinomycetes. Actinomycetologica 9:98–117

Douling DN, O'Gara F (1994) Metabolites of *Pseudomonas* involved in the biocontrol of plant diseases. Trends Biotechnol 12:133–141

El-Abyad MS, El-Sayed MA, El-Shanshoury AR, El-Sabbagh SM (1993) Towards the biological control of fungal and bacterial diseases of tomato using antagonistic *Streptomyces* spp. Plant Soil 149:185–195

El-Tarabily KA (2008) Promotion of tomato (*Lycopersicon esculentum* Mill.) plant growth by rhizosphere competent 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid deaminase-producing streptomycete actinomycetes. Plant Soil 308:161–174

El-Tarabily KA, Soliman MH, Nassar AH, Al-Hassani HA, Sivasithamparam K, McKenna F, Hardy GE (2000) Biological control of *Sclerotinia minor* using a chitinolytic bacterium and actinomycetes. Plant Pathol 49:573–583

Elad Y, Chet I, Katan Y (1980) *Trichoderma harzianum* a biocontrol agent effective against *Sclerotium rolfsiii* and *Rhizoctonica solani*. Phytopathology 70:119–121

Elliott M, Shamoun S, Sumampong G, James D, Masri S, Varga A (2009) Evaluation of several commercial biocontrol products on European and North American populations of *Phytophthora ramorum*. Biocontrol Sci Technol 19:1007–1021

Emmert EA, Handelsman J (1999) Biocontrol of plant disease: a (gram-) positive perspective. FEMS Microbiol Lett 171:1–9

Endo T, Matsuura K, Wakae O (1983) Effect of validamycin A on infection of *Rhizoctonia solani* in rice sheaths. Ann Phytopathol Soc Jpn 49:689–697

Fierer N, Breitbart M, Nulton J, Salamon P, Lozupone C, Jones R, Robeson M, Edwards RA, Felts B, Rayhawk S, Knight R, Rohwer F, Jackson RB (2007) Metagenomic and small-subunit rRNA analyses reveal the genetic diversity of bacteria, archaea, fungi, and viruses in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:7059–7066

Fischer SE, Miguel MJ, Mori GB (2003) Effect of root exudates on the exopolysaccharide composition and the lipopolysaccharide profile of *Azospirillum brasilense* Cd under saline stress. FEMS Microbiol Lett 219:53–62

Fravel D (1988) Role of antibiosis in biocontrol of plant disease. Annu Rev Phytopathol 26:75–91

Fravel DR (2005) Commercialization and implementation of biocontrol. Annu Rev Phytopathol 43:337–359

Frederickson JK, Elliott LF (1985) Effects on winter wheat seedling growth by toxin-producing rhizobacteria. Plant Soil 83:399–409
Fries N, Forsman B (1951) Quantitative determination of certain nucleic acid derivatives in pea root exudate. Physiol Plant 4:410–420
Gaskins MH, Albrecht SL, Hubbell DH (1985) Rhizosphere bacteria and their use to increase plant productivity: a review. Agric Ecosyst Environ 12:99–116
Gerber N, Lechevalier H (1965) Geosmin, an earthy-smelling substance isolated from actinomycetes. Appl Environ Microbiol 13:935–938
Gerhardson B (2002) Biological substitutes for pesticides. Trends Biotechnol 20:338–343
Glick BR (1995) The enhancement of plant growth by free-living bacteria. Can J Microbiol 41:109–117
Glick BR, Liu C, Ghosh S, Dumbroff EB (1997) Early development of canola seedlings in the presence of the plant growth-promoting rhizobacterium *Pseudomonas putida* GR12-2. Soil Biol Biochem 29:1233–1239
Glick BR, Todorovic B, Czarny J, Cheng Z, Duan J, McConkey B (2007) Promotion of plant growth by bacterial ACC deaminase. Crit Rev Plant Sci 26:227–242
Gonzalez-Franco AC, Deobald LA, Spivak A, Crawford DL (2003) Actinobacterial chitinase-like enzymes: profiles of rhizosphere versus non-rhizosphere isolates. Can J Microbiol 49:683–698
Gonzalez-Franco AC, Robles-Hernandez L, Nuñez-Barrios A, Strap JL, Crawford DL (2009) Molecular and cultural analysis of seasonal actinomycetes in soils from *Artemisia tridentata* habitat. Phyton – Int J Exp Bot 78:83–90
Goodfellow M, Williams ST (1983) Ecology of actinomycetes. Annu Rev Microbiol 37:189–216
Grayston SJ, Campbell CD (1996) Functional biodiversity of microbial communities in the rhizospheres of hybrid larch (*Larix eurolepis*) and Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis*). Tree Physiol 16:1031–1038
Grayston SJ, Vaughan D, Jones D (1996) Rhizosphere carbon flow in trees, in comparison with annual plants: the importance of root exudates and its impact on microbial activity and nutrient availability. Appl Soil Ecol 5:29–56
Gregor AK, Klubek B, Varsa EC (2003) Identification and use of actinomycetes for enhanced nodulation of soybean co-inoculated with *Bradyrhizobium japonicumi*. Can J Microbiol 49:483–491
Guerinot M, Yi Y (1994) Iron: nutritious, noxious, and not readily available. Plant Physiol 104:815–820
Gyaneshwar P, Naresh Kumar G, Parekh L, Poole P (2002) Role of soil microorganisms in improving P nutrition of plants. Plant Soil 245:83–93
Hajlaou MR, Traquair JA, Jarvis WR, Belanger RR (1994) Antifungal activity of extracellular metabolites produced by *Sporothrix flocculosa*. Biocontrol Sci Technol 4:229–237
Hamby-Salove MB (2002) Plant growth promotion and siderophore production by selected root-colonizing, nonpathogenic *Streptomyces* species. MS Thesis, University of Idaho, Moscow, ID, USA
Hamdali H, Hafidi M, Virolle MJ, Ouhdouch Y (2008) Rock phosphate-solubilizing actinomycetes: screening for plant growth-promoting activities. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:2565–2575
Harned RL, Hidy PH, Corum CJ, Jones KL (1951) Nigericin, a new crytalline antibiotic from an unidentified *Streptomyces*. Antibiot Chemother 1:594–596
Heisey RM, Putnam AR (1990) Herbicidal activity of the antibiotics geldanamycin and nigericin. J Plant Growth Regul 9:19–25
Hématy K, Cherk C, Somerville S (2009) Host-pathogen warfare at the plant cell wall. Curr Opin Plant Biol 12:406–413
Hodge A, Campbell CD, Fitter AH (2001) An arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus accelerates decomposition and acquires nitrogen directly from organic material. Nature 413:297–299
Hofte M, Seong KY, Jurkevitch E, Verstraete W (1991) Pyoverdin production by the plant growth beneficial *Pseudomonas* strain 7NSK2. Plant Soil 130:249–257

Hoster F, Schmitz JE, Daniel R (2005) Enrichment of chitinolytic microorganisms: isolation and characterization of a chitinase exhibiting antifungal activity against phytopathogenic fungi from a novel *Streptomyces* strain. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 66:434–442

Illmer P, Schinner F (1992) Solubilization of inorganic phosphates by microorganisms isolated from forest soil. Soil Biol Biochem 24:389–395

Inbar J, Chet I (1995) The role of recognition in the induction of specific chitinases during mycoparasitism by *Trichoderma harzianum*. Microbiology 141:2823–2829

Jaeger CH 3rd, Lindow SE, Miller W, Clark E, Firestone MK (1999) Mapping of sugar and amino acid availability in soil around roots with bacterial sensors of sucrose and tryptophan. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:2685–2690

Janssen PH (2006) Identifying the dominant soil bacterial taxa in libraries of 16S rRNA and 16S rRNA genes. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:1719–1728

Jones DL, Darrah PR, Kochian LV (1996) Critical evaluation of organic acid mediated iron dissolution in the rhizosphere and its potential in root iron uptake. Plant Soil 180:57–66

Kang MJ, Strap JL, Crawford DL (2010) Isolation and characterization of potent antifungal strains of the *Streptomyces violaceusniger* clade active against *Candida albicans*. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 37:35–41

Kempf HJ, Wolf G (1989) *Erwinia herbicola* as a biocontrol agent of *Fusarium culmorum* and *Puccinia recondita* f. sp. *tritici* on wheat. Phytopathology 79:990–994

Kim BS, Moon SS, Hwang BK (1999) Isolation, identification and antifungal activity of a macrolide antibiotic, oligomycin A, produced by *Streptomyces libani*. Can J Bot 77:850–858

King H, Wallace R (1956) Morphological and physiological groups of soil bacteria from the roots of barley and oats. Can J Microbiol 2:473–481

Kloepper JW, Leong J, Teintze M, Schroth MN (1980) *Pseudomonas* siderophores: a mechanism explaining disease suppressive soils. Curr Microbiol 4:317–320

Kloepper JW, Ryu CM, Zhang S (2004) Induced systemic resistance and promotion of plant growth by *Bacillus* spp. Phytopathology 94:1259–1266

Kortemaa H, Rita H, Haahtela K, Smolander A (1994) Root-colonization ability of antagonistic *Streptomyces griseoviridis*. Plant Soil 163:77–83

Krsek M, Wellington EM (2001) Assessment of chitin decomposer diversity within an upland grassland. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 79:261–267

Lacey J (1973) Actinomycetes in soils, composts and fodders. In: Sykes G, Skinner FA (eds) Actinomycetales: characteristics and practical importance. Academic, London, UK, pp 231–251

Lanoot B, Vancanneyt M, Dawyndt P, Cnockaert M, Zhang J, Huang Y, Liu Z, Swings J (2004) BOX-PCR fingerprinting as a powerful tool to reveal synonymous names in the genus *Streptomyces*. Emended descriptions are proposed for the species *Streptomyces cinereorectus*, *S. fradiae*, *S. tricolor*, *S. colombiensis*, *S. filamentosus*, *S. vinaceus*, *S. phaeopurpureus*. Syst Appl Microbiol 27:84–92

Leben C, Keitt G (1954) Antibiotics and plant disease, effects of antibiotics in control of plant diseases. J Agric Food Chem 2:234–238

Lechevalier M (1989) Actinomycetes in agriculture and forestry. In: Goodfellow M, Williams ST, Williams MM (eds) Actinomycetes in biotechnology. Academic, New York, NY, pp 327–358

LeVier K, Guerinot ML (1996) The *Bradyrhizobium japonicum FegA* gene encodes an iron-regulated outer membrane protein with similarity to hydroxamate-type siderophore receptors. J Bacteriol 178:7265–7275

Lewis JA, Starkey RL (1969) Decomposition of plant tannins by some soil microorganisms. Soil Sci 107:235–241

Ligon JM, Hill DS, Hammer PE, Torkewitw NR, Hofman D, Kempt HJ, Van Pee KH (2000) Natural products with antifungal activity from *Pseudomonas* biocontrol bacteria. Pest Manag Sci 56:688–695

Loper JE (1988) Role of fluorescent siderophore production in biological control of *Pythium ultimum* by a *Pseudomonas fluorescens* strain. Phytopathology 76:386–389

Lynch JM (1990) Beneficial interactions between micro-organisms and roots. Biotechnol Adv 8:335–346
Lynch JM, Whipps JM (1990) Substrate flow in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 129:1–10
Mahadevan B, Crawford D (1997) Properties of the chitinase of the antifungal biocontrol agent *Streptomyces lydicus* WYEC108. Enzyme Microb Technol 20:489–493
Manulis S, Shafrir H, Epstein E, Lichter A, Barash I (1994) Biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid via the indole-3-acetamide pathway in *Streptomyces* spp. Microbiology 140:1045–1050
Marschner H, Romheld V (1994) Strategies of plants for acquisition of iron. Plant Soil 165:261–274
Martin J, Demain A (1980) Control of antibiotic biosynthesis. Microbiol Rev 44:230–251
Marugg J, van Spanje DM, Hoekstra WPM, Schippers B, Weisbeek PJ (1985) Isolation and analysis of genes involved in siderophore biosynthesis in plant-growth-stimulating *Pseudomonas putida* WCS358. J Bacteriol 164:563–570
McCarthy AJ (1987) Lignocellulose-degrading actinomycetes. FEMS Microbiol Rev 46:145–163
Merriman PR, Price RD, Kollmorgen JF, Piggott T, Ridge EH (1974) Effect of seed inoculation with *Bacillus subtilis* and *Streptomyces griseus* on the growth of cereals and carrots. Aust J Agric Res 25:219–226
Merzaeva OV, Shirokikh IG (2010) Production of auxins by the endophytic bacteria of winter rye. Appl Biochem Microbiol 46:44–50
Miller TW, Chaiet L, Cole DJ, Cole LJ, Flor JE, Goegelman RT, Gullo VP, Joshua H, Kempf AJ, Krellwitz WR, Monaghan RL, Ormond RE, Wilson KE, Albers-Schönberg G, Putter I (1979) Avermectins, new family of potent anthelmintic agents: isolation and chromatographic properties. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 15:368–371
Mondal G, Sen B (1999) Siderophore production by *Aspergillus niger* AN27, a biocontrol agent. Curr Sci 77:337–338
Morgan JA, Bending GD, White PJ (2005) Biological costs and benefits to plant-microbe interactions in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 56:1729–1739
Morgan PW, Drew MC (1997) Ethylene and plant responses to stress. Physiol Plant 100:620–630
Muller G, Raymond KN (1984) Specificity and mechanism of ferrioxamine-mediated iron transport in *Streptomyces pilosus*. J Bacteriol 160:304–312
Murakami T, Anzai H, Imai S, Satoh A, Nagaoka K, Thompson CJ (1986) The bialaphos biosynthetic genes of *Streptomyces hygroscopicus*: cloning and analysis of the genes involved in the alanylation step. Mol Gen Genet 205:42–50
Muyzer G, Smalla K (1998) Application of denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE) and temperature gradient gel electrophoresis (TGGE) in microbial ecology. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 73:127–141
Neal JR Jr, Larson RI, Atkinson TG (1973a) Changes in rhizosphere populations of selected physiological groups of bacteria related to substitution of specific pairs of chromosomes in spring wheat. Plant Soil 39:209–212
Neal JR Jr, Atkinson TG, Larson RI (1973b) Changes in rhizosphere microflora of spring wheat induced by disomic substitution of a chromosome. Can J Microbiol 16:153–158
Neeno-Eckwall EC, Kinkel LL, Schottel JL (2001) Competition and antibiosis in the biological control of potato scab. Can J Microbiol 47:332–340
Neilands J, Leong S (1986) Siderophores in relation to plant growth and disease. Annu Rev Plant Physiol 37:187–208
Neilands JB (1984) Siderophores of bacteria and fungi. Microbiol Sci 1:9–14
Okabe M, Kuwajima T, Satoh M, Kimura K, Okamura K, Okamoto R (1992) Preferential and high-yield production of a cephamycin C by dissolved oxygen controlled fermentation. J Ferment Bioeng 73:292–296
Omura S, Nakagawa A, Sadakane N (1979) Structure of herbimycin A, a new ansamycin antibiotic. Tetrahedron Lett 44:4323–4326
Pasura A (2008) Biological control of *Pythium* root rot in soilless potting mixes. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Patten C, Glick BR (1996) Bacterial biosynthesis of indole-3-acetic acid. Can J Microbiol 42:207–220
Paulitz TC, Belanger RR (2001) Biological control in greenhouse systems. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:103–133
Penrose DM, Glick BR (1997) Enzymes that regulate ethylene levels–1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid (ACC) deaminase, ACC synthase and ACC oxidase. Indian J Exp Biol 35:1–17
Raatikainen OJ, Paivinen TH, Tahvonen RT (1994) HPLC separation and subsequent detection of aromatic heptaene polyenes in peat after treatment with *Streptomyces griseoviridis*. Pestic Sci 41:149–154
Rangaswami G, Ethiraj S (1962) Antibiotic production by *Streptomyces* species in unamended soil. Phytopathology 15:989–992
Reigh G, O'Connell M (1993) Siderophore-mediated iron transport correlates with the presence of specific iron-regulated proteins in the outer membrane of *Rhizobium meliloti*. J Bacteriol 175:94–102
Robin A, Vansuyt G, Hinsinger P, Meyer J, Briat J, Lemanceau P (2008) Iron dynamics in the rhizosphere: consequences for plant health and nutrition. Adv Agron 99:183–225
Rodriguez H, Fraga R (1999) Phosphate solubilizing bacteria and their role in plant growth promotion. Biotechnol Adv 17:319–339
Rothrock CS, Gottlieb D (1984) Role of antibiosis in antagonism of *Streptomyces hygroscopicus* var. *geldanus* to *Rhizoctonia solanii* in soil. Can J Microbiol 30:1440–1447
Rovira AD (1956) Plant root excretions in relation to the rhizosphere effect. I. The nature of root exudate from oat and peas. Plant Soil 7:178–194
Sabaratnam S, Traquair JA (2002) Formulation of a *Strepomyces* biocontrol agent for the suppression of *Rhizoctonia* damping-off in tomato transplants. Biol Control 23:245–253
Schneider M, De Brujin FJ (1996) Rep-PCR mediated genomic fingerprinting of rhizobia and computer-assisted phylogenetic pattern analyses. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 12:163–174
Schroth M, Hancock JG (1982) Disease-suppressive soil and root-colonizing bacteria. Science 216:1376–1381
Schulz S, Dickschat JS (2007) Bacterial volatiles: the smell of small organisms. Nat Prod Rep 24:814–842
Simeoni LA, Lindsay WL, Baker R (1987) Critical iron level associated with biological control of *Fusarium* wilt. Phytopathology 77:1057–1061
Singh PP, Shin YC, Park CS, Chung YR (1999) Biological control of *Fusarium* wilt of cucumber by chitinolytic bacteria. Phytopathology 89:92–99
Smith J, Putnam A, Nair M (1990) *In vitro* control of *Fusarium* diseases of *Asparagus officinalis* L. with a *Streptomyces* or its polyene antibiotic, faerifungin. J Agric Food Chem 38:1729–1733
Smucker AJM (1993) Soil environmental modifications of root dynamics and measurement. Annu Rev Phytopathol 31:191–218
Soares ACF, Da Silva C, Da Silva M, Perez JO (2007) Production of streptomycete inoculum in sterilized rice. Sci Agric (Piracicaba Braz) 64:641–644
Solans M (2007) *Discaria trinervis-Frankia* symbiosis promotion by saprophytic actinomycetes. J Basic Microbiol 47:243–250
Srinivasan MC, Laxman RS, Deshpande MV (1991) Physiology and nutritional aspects of actinomycetes: an overview. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 7:171–184
Strzelczyk E, Pokojska-Burdziej A (1984) Production of auxins and gibberellin-like substances by mycorrhizal fungi, bacteria and actinomycetes isolated from soil and the mycorrhizosphere of pine (*Pinus silvestris* L.). Plant Soil 81:185–194
Sturdíková M, Proksa B, Uhrín D, Fuska J (1990) Regulation of biosynthesis of thiolutin and aureothricin in *Streptomyces kasugaensis*. Folia Microbiol 35:278–283
Suslow TV, Schroth MN (1982) Role of deleterious rhizobacteria as minor pathogens in reducing crop growth. Phytopathology 72:111–115
Tahvonen R, Avikainen H (1987) The biological control of seedborne *Alternaria brassicicola* of cruciferous plants with a powdery preparation of *Streptomyces* sp. J Agric Sci 59:199–208

Takagi SI, Nomoto K, Takemoto T (1984) Physiological aspect of mugineic acid, a possible phytosiderophore of graminaceous plants. J Plant Nutr 7:469–477
Takiguchi Y, Mishima H, Okuda M, Terao M, Aoki A, Fukuda R (1980) Milbemycins, a new family of macrolide antibiotics: fermentation, isolation and physico-chemical properties. J Antibiot 33:1120–1127
Tawaraya K, Naito M, Wagatsuma T (2006) Solubilization of insoluble inorganic phosphate by hyphal exudates of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi. J Plant Nutr 29:657–665
Thomas DI, Cove JH, Baumberg S, Jones CA, Rudd BA (1991) Plasmid effects on secondary metabolite production by a streptomycete synthesizing an anthelmintic macrolide. J Gen Microbiol 137:2331–2337
Thomas L, Crawford DL (1998) Cloning of clustered *Streptomyces viridosporus* T7A lignocellulose catabolism genes encoding peroxidase and endoglucanase and their extracellular expression in *Pichia pastoris*. Can J Microbiol 44:240–245
Timmusk S, Wagner EG (1999) The plant-growth-promoting rhizobacterium *Paenibacillus polymyxa* induces changes in *Arabidopsis thaliana* gene expression: a possible connection between biotic and abiotic stress responses. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12:951–959
Tokala RK, Strap JL, Jung CM, Crawford DL, Salove MH, Deobald LA, Bailey JF, Morra MJ (2002) Novel plant-microbe rhizosphere interaction involving *Streptomyces lydicus* WYEC108 and the pea plant (*Pisum sativum*). Appl Environ Microbiol 68:2161–2171
Tomiya T, Uramoto M, Isono K (1990) Isolation and structure of phosphazomycin C. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 43:118–121
Trejo-Estrada S, Paszczynski A, Crawford DL (1998a) Antibiotics and enzymes produced by the biocontrol agent *Streptomyces violaceusniger* YCED9. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 21:81–90
Trejo-Estrada SR, Sepulveda IR, Crawford DL (1998b) *In vitro* and *in vivo* antagonism of *Streptomyces violaceusniger* YCED9 against fungal pathogens of turfgrass. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 14:865–872
Trigo C, Ball AS (1994) Is the solubilized product from the degradation of lignocellulose by actinomycetes a precursor of humic substances? Microbiology 140:3145–3152
Tsuchiya K, Kobayashi S, Nishikiori T, Nakagawa T, Tatsuta K (1997) NK10958P, a novel plant growth regulator produced by *Streptomyces* sp. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 50:259–260
Val G, Marín S, Mellado R (2009) A sensitive method to monitor *Bacillus subtilis* and *Streptomyces coelicor*-related bacteria in maize rhizobacterial communities: the use of genome-wide microarrays. Microb Ecol 58:108–115
Valois D, Fayad K, Barasubiye T, Garon M, Dery C, Brzezinski R, Beaulieu C (1996) Glucanolytic actinomycetes antagonistic to *Phytophthora fragariae* var. *rubi*, the causal agent of raspberry root-rot. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:1630–1635
Vazquez P, Holguin G, Puente ME, Lopez-Cortez A, Bashan Y (2000) Phosphate-solubilizing microorganisms associated with the rhizosphere of mangroves in a semiarid coastal lagoon. Biol Fertil Soils 30:460–468
Vespermann A, Kai M, Piechulla B (2007) Rhizobacterial volatiles affect the growth of fungi and *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:5639–5641
Wallace R, Lochhead A (1949) Qualitative studies of soil microorganisms: VIII. Influence of various crop plants on the nutritional groups of soil bacteria. Soil Sci 67:63–70
Wan M, Li G, Zhang J, Jiang D, Huang H (2008) Effect of volatile substances of *Streptomyces platensis* F-1 on control of plant fungal diseases. Biol Control 46:552–559
Weber T, Allard T, Tipping E, Benedetti MF (2006) Modelling iron binding to organic matter. Environ Sci Technol 40:7488–7493
Welbaum GE, Sturz AV, Dong Z, Nowak J (2004) Managing soil microorganisms to improve productivity of agro-ecosystems. Crit Rev Plant Sci 23:175–193
Weller DM (1988) Biological control of soil borne plant pathogens in the rhizosphere with bacteria. Annu Rev Phytopathol 26:379–407
Wenke K, Kai M, Piechulla B (2010) Below ground volatiles facilitate interactions between plant roots and soil organisms. Planta 231:499–506

Whipps JM (2001) Microbial interactions and biocontrol in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 52:487–511
Wilkins K, Schöller C (2009) Volatile organic metabolites from selected *Streptomyces* strains. Actinomycetologica 23:27–33
Williamson N, Brian P, Wellington EM (2000) Molecular detection of bacterial and streptomycete chitinases in the environment. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 78:315–321
Yamada O, Kaise Y, Futatsuya F, Ishida S, Ito K (1972) Studies on plant growth regulating activities of anisomycin and toyocamycin. Agric Biol Chem 36:2013–2015
Yang CC, Leong J (1982) Production of desferrioxamines B and E from a ferroverdin-producing *Streptomyces* species. J Bacteriol 149:381–383
Yang CH, Crowley DE (2000) Rhizosphere microbial community structure in relation to root location and plant iron nutritional status. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:345–351
Yang J, Kloepper JW, Ryu CM (2009) Rhizosphere bacteria help plants tolerate abiotic stress. Trends Plant Sci 14:1–4
Yuan WM, Crawford DL (1995) Characterization of *Streptomyces lydicus* WYEC108 as a potential biocontrol agent against fungal root and seed rots. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:3119–3128

Chapter 14
Functional Significance of Insect Gut Bacteria and Their Role in Host Insect Processes, Development, and Crop Production

P. Indiragandhi, R. Anandham, and Tong Min Sa

14.1 Introduction

The existence of an intimate relationship between many insect species and large numbers of microorganisms has been known for over a century. The success of insects has created myriad of opportunities for bacteria to occupy niches created by insects. The guts of insects offer such niches where the insects are able to take advantage of the products of bacterial metabolism and the adaptability of the prokaryotes. These insect–host and microbe associations form a dynamic spectrum in relation to the necessity as well as physiological impact toward those involved. The association of insects with a wide variety of bacteria includes beneficial endosymbionts, occasional disease causing entomopathogens, and harmless transient cuticle contaminants acquired from the environment (Wernegreen 2002). Endosymbiotic bacteria may be extracellular or intracellular

P. Indiragandhi
Regional Research Station, Tamil Nadu Agricultural University, Vriddhachalam, Cuddalore, Tamil Nadu 606 001, India

Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361-763, Republic of Korea

R. Anandham
Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361-763, Republic of Korea

Department of Agricultural Microbiology, Agricultural College and Research Institute, Tamil Nadu Agricultural University, Madurai 625 104, Tamil Nadu, India

T.M. Sa (✉)
Department of Agricultural Chemistry, Chungbuk National University, Cheongju, Chungbuk 361-763, Republic of Korea
e-mail: tomsa@chungbuk.ac.kr

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_14,

and can be found in the digestive system, hemocoel, reproductive tract, or localized in specialized cells called mycetome. The interplay between insects and the microorganisms inhabiting the gut was recognized as early as 1929. In this year, Wigglesworth (1929) suggested that blood sucking triatomines, which feed solely on blood during its whole life cycle, would have symbionts to provide the insects with complex B vitamins. Bacterial symbionts have also been implicated in furnishing nutrients to sap feeders (aphids, psyllids, whiteflies, mealybugs, etc.). In aphids, the bacterium *Buchnera* was found to utilize nonessential amino acids present in the phloem sap to produce essential amino acids, completing the dietary needs of aphids (Shigenobu et al. 2000; Moran et al. 2003; Wilcox et al. 2003).

Insects living on nutrient-poor diets, where amino acids are very scarce like wood and humus, benefit from symbiotic bacteria that are able to fix atmospheric nitrogen and synthesize amino acids (Nardi et al. 2002). Nevertheless, gut microbes are not limited to insects with unbalanced diets, but could also be involved in insect temperature resistance (Montllor et al. 2002), host plant detoxification (Lauzon et al. 2003), and parasite protection (Olivier et al. 2003). Most of the arthropod symbioses involve highly specific interactions, often between one bacterial species and one insect (Kikuchi et al. 2005). There are a few examples of multispecies communities, such as the associates of the hindgut of termites. Degradation of complex carbohydrates and fixation of nitrogen form the metabolic foundation for the community's function (Nakashima et al. 2002; Bakalidou et al. 2002). The intricacies of managing the carbon and nitrogen economy of the hindgut provide evidence for interdependence and coevolution among the members of the community. The termite system offers one of the most powerful existing models for studying nutritional interactions among community members.

Evidence for a more interactive relationship between microbiota and host was assessed by many researchers (Dillon and Dillon 2004; Genta et al. 2006). However, studies have often been restricted to a catalogue of species present (Sittenfeld et al. 2002; Broderick et al. 2004; Xiang et al. 2006). This might be due to the culture-independent method of analysis of such interrelationships. In order to evaluate the functional significance of the gut bacteria to the host insect, the bacterial isolate should be cultivable under in vitro condition (Mohr and Tebbe 2007).

Thus, the interactions between insects and their microbial symbionts have provided the bases for many principles in symbiosis and have revealed unexpected mechanisms that illustrate how organisms cooperate to perform life functions and gain a competitive edge.

This chapter describes some of the bacteria associated with the class *Insecta* and their functional role in insect host nutrition and development. Furthermore, insight is given into the possible use of insect gut bacteria as potential plant-growth-promoting bacteria (PGPB) for crop production.

14.2 Functional Significance of Insect Gut Bacteria

Numerous studies in the past have described the microbial gut community using classical techniques, but little information was provided on its biological role. A number of reviewers commented on the lack of information on the biological role of the insect microbiota. Brooks (1963) stated that further isolation and characterization of insect intestinal biota were pointless unless they were correlative with either the ability of the host to control its biota or the effect of the biota on the host's physiology. The microbial midgut inhabitants seem likely to benefit the insect host, based on the results of studies conducted with different insect orders by various researchers (Takatsuka and Kunimi 1998, 2000; Lauzon et al. 2003; Dillon and Dillon 2004; Behar et al. 2005; Xiang et al. 2006; Indiragandhi et al. 2007a, 2008a; Figs. 14.1 and 14.2). Gradually, literature related to the biological roles of gut bacteria to the host insect has been increasing. Some of the reported examples of benefits/biological roles of gut bacteria include its assistance in host insect morphogenesis (Zacharuk 1976a, b; Iverson et al. 1984) and food digestion (Borkott and Insam 1990), detoxification of plant allelochemicals and xenobiotics (both synthetic and biopesticides), disease resistance by providing antimicrobial metabolites, and modification of midgut pH by their own metabolism, thereby conferring protection against indigenous and invading pathogenic microorganisms.

14.2.1 Role of Chitinase Produced by Gut Bacteria in Host Insect Processes

Chitin is one of the most important biopolymers in nature. In insects, it supports the cuticles of the epidermis and trachea as well as the peritrophic membrane (PM) lining the gut epithelium. An invertebrate–unique structure, the PM, is irreversibly permeable to secreted digestive enzymes and to the products of digestion (Chapman 1985). Insect growth and morphogenesis are strictly dependent on the capability to remodel chitin containing structures and food materials. For this purpose, insects repeatedly produce chitin synthases and chitinolytic enzymes in different tissues. In the context of morphogenesis, chitinolytic activity of the gut bacteria helps in the emergence of an adult from puparium (Iverson et al. 1984). Similar observations were reported in certain coleopterans in which gut bacteria were found to secrete enzymes capable of digesting portions of the pupal case, thereby weakening the wall and facilitating emergence. Winicur and Mitchell (1974) demonstrated that chitinase was present in the molting fluid of *Drosophila melanogaster* and described about the digestion of endocuticular chitin before larval emergence. It seems that a low level of chitinase activity imparted by the symbiotic bacteria is essential for the host insect throughout its life cycle (Iverson et al. 1984). It has been anticipated that gut microbial symbionts in the intestinal tract can be situated in the gut lumen or associated with the gut epithelium or PM (Buchner 1965). Likewise,

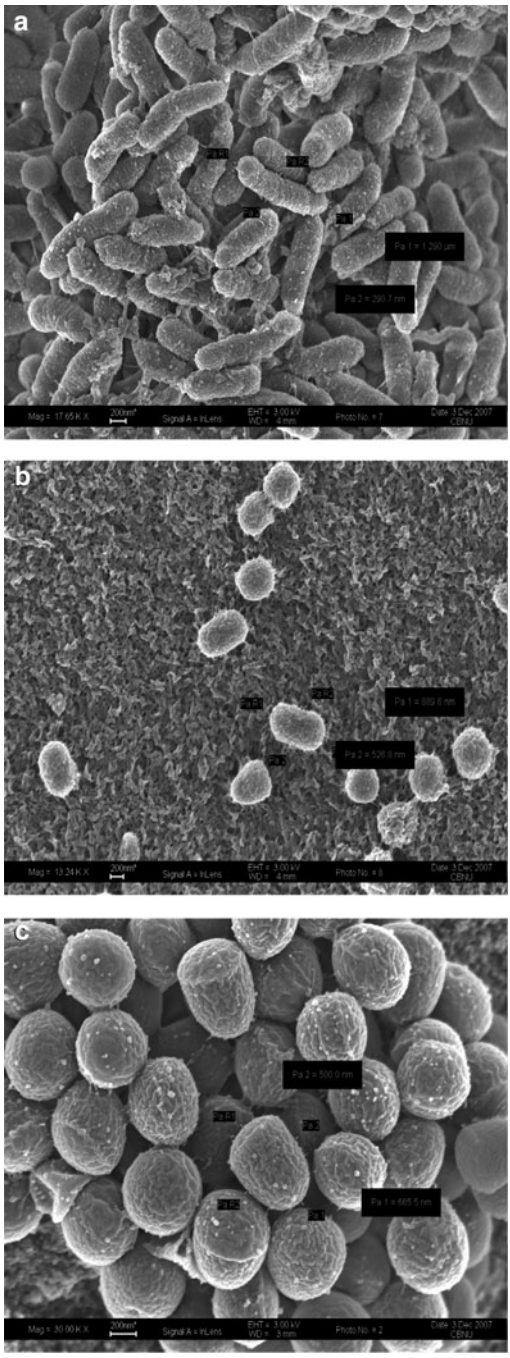


Fig. 14.1 Scanning electron micrograph of *P. xylostella* gut bacterial strains (**a**) *Pseudomonas* sp. PRGB06, (**b**) *Stenotrophomoas* sp. PRGB08, and (**c**) *Brachybacterium* sp. PSGB10

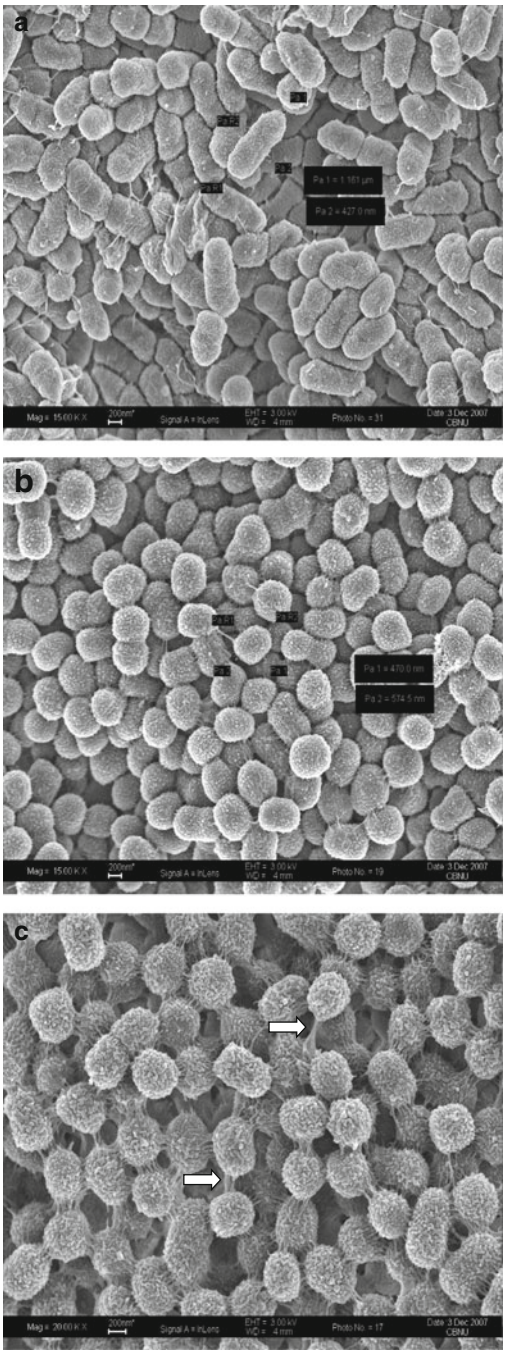


Fig. 14.2 Scanning electron micrograph of *P. xylostella* gut bacterial strains (**a**) *Serratia* sp. PRGB11, (**b**) *Acinetobacter* sp. PSGB03, and (**c**) *arrows* indicates the interlinking pigments among cells of *Acinetobacter* sp. PSGB03

studies on the house cricket (*Acheta domestica*) indicated that part of the bacterial gut microbiota is attached to the PM in the midgut, the gut wall, and cuticular bristles in the hindgut. The ability of insects to digest the chitin containing food resource is rather limited and is often dependent on symbiotic microorganisms. For instance, Brendelberger (1997) observed that the chitinase activity was parallel with the reduction in bacterial numbers in the host gut after antibiotic treatment. It indicates that chitobiase was not synthesized by the host but was taken up by bacteria from the food. This bacterial origin of chitinolytic enzymes was also shown by Genta et al. (2006) for the digestion of cell wall of wheat bran in yellow mealworm, *Tenebrio moliter* (Tenebrionidae), and in some other insects, in the digestion of their own exuvia (Mira 2000).

One more example for the evidence of chitinase produced by gut bacteria on host insect process is with the tsetse fly and its gut bacteria, *Sodalis glossinidius*. *S. glossinidius* has been shown to play a role in potentiating its host's susceptibility to trypanosome infection by influencing the efficacy of the tsetse immune system (Welburn and Maudlin 1991, 1999). In the tsetse fly, it is known that trypanosomes can only be established in the fly midgut if these parasites can successfully evade the action of an *N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine (GlcNAc), a specific trypanocidal lectin which is secreted during feeding (Maudlin and Welburn 1987). *Sodalis* is thought to influence lectin activity through the production of lectin-inhibitory sugar (GlcNAc), which is known to accumulate during pupal development as a result of this bacterium's chitinolytic activity (Welburn et al. 1993). More recently, it has been shown that the chitinase-producing gut bacteria (Fig. 14.1) isolated from *P. xylostella* increased the host insect consumption index (CI), relative growth rate (RGR), approximate digestibility (AD), efficiency of conversion of ingested food (ECI), and efficiency of conversion of digested food (ECD) (Table 14.1) (Indiragandhi et al. 2008a).

14.2.2 Gut Bacteria Mediated Detoxification of Allelochemical and Xenobiotics

Miyazaki et al. (1968) documented the significant role of gut bacteria *Rhagoletis* to detoxify harmful plant compounds, thereby protecting the host fly. Bacterial culture of *Pseudomonas* spp. could break down a variety of pesticides, apparently through the hydrolytic action of strong esterases, and might synthesize amino acids essential for growth of the maggot. Furthermore, gut microbes are reported for their detoxification of allelochemicals such as flavanoids, tannins, and alkaloids (Lauzon et al. 2003). There has been a report on bacterial modification of plant phenolics leading to the production of volatile phenolics in the locust *Schistocerca gregaria* to give guaiacol, a component of the locust aggregation pheromone (Dillon and Dillon 2004). *Pseudomonas aerugenosa* was reported for its detoxification of the plant secondary metabolite polyketide known as pederin in *Paederus* beetle (Piel 2002). Participation of gut bacteria *Pantoea* (=*Enterobacter*) *agglomerans* (a common

Table 14.1 Quantitative food-use efficiency measures for third instar larvae of *Plutella xylostella* after treatment with chitinase-producing *Serratia marcescens* PSGB12 and FLGB16

	Milligram of ingested food mg^{-1} avg. larval weight day^{-1}				
Treatment	CI	RGR	AD (%)	ECI (%)	ECD (%)
A. Cell pellet + buffer	0.62 ± 0.029^{c}	0.068 ± 0.007^{d}	23.17 ± 1.56^{cb}	3.71 ± 0.98^{d}	2.42 ± 0.23^{d}
B. Cell pellet + crude enzyme	1.63 ± 0.226^{b}	0.283 ± 0.062^{b}	30.88 ± 0.91^{abc}	8.45 ± 0.34^{a}	12.83 ± 1.08^{c}
C. Crude enzyme	0.61 ± 0.066^{c}	0.032 ± 0.004^{d}	24.66 ± 0.26^{bc}	0.81 ± 0.03^{f}	1.86 ± 0.37^{de}
D. Cell pellet + buffer	0.34 ± 0.036^{d}	0.179 ± 0.007^{c}	32.53 ± 0.73^{ab}	4.72 ± 0.37^{c}	40.0 ± 0.75^{b}
E. Cell pellet + crude enzyme	3.06 ± 0.036^{a}	0.579 ± 0.066^{a}	46.8 ± 22.72^{a}	5.6 ± 0.45^{b}	65.05 ± 1.96^{a}
F. Crude enzyme	0.22 ± 0.022^{de}	0.177 ± 0.015^{c}	13.8 ± 1.80^{cb}	2.95 ± 0.32^{e}	1.58 ± 0.25^{de}
G. Buffer	0.06 ± 0.015^{e}	0.016 ± 0.003^{d}	11.5 ± 1.32^{c}	0.97 ± 0.16^{f}	0.47 ± 0.073^{e}
LSD ($P \geq 0.05$)	0.18	0.06	20.0	0.74	1.62

Treatment details: A–C cell pellet, crude enzyme of PSGB12; D–F cell pellet, crude enzyme of FLGB16; G – buffer alone (0.05 M phosphate buffer); CFU ml^{-1} for PSGB12 $= 2 \times 10^{9}$ and for FLGB16 $= 5.75 \times 10^{9}$; 1 ml of supernatant gave 5.03 and 5.01 mU for PSGB12 and FLGB16, respectively. *CI* consumption index, *RGR* relative growth rate, *AD* approximate digestibility, *ECI* efficiency of conversion of ingested food, and *ECD* efficiency of conversion of digested food. Values are mean of $\pm$ SE of five replications per treatment. Means followed by the same letter are not significantly different from each other at 5% (LSD) (Indiragandhi et al. 2008a)

inhabitant of fruit fly and its host plant apple) in biochemical transformation of plant allelochemical dihydrochalcone phloridzin has been explored for *Rhagoletis pomonella*. Since the extent to which insects catabolize harmful compounds in their digestive tracts or on their host plant is of considerable importance to their survival (Lauzon et al. 2003), it would be possible that when insects feed on plant materials that contain plant-produced defensive toxins or/are exposed to insecticides or other pesticides. Therefore, it is likely that the gut bacteria are also exposed to these toxins and may actually contribute to detoxification of these compounds (Davidson et al. 2000; Genta et al. 2006), since gut microbes can adapt rapidly to changes in the diet of the insect by changing the population profiles and induction of requisite enzymes (Santo-Domingo et al. 1998). Therefore, the ability of microbes to modify or detoxify plant allelochemicals is an additional property that may be important in certain insect–microbe relationships (Dillon and Dillon 2004).

Most insects detoxify chemicals by converting lipophilic compounds to more water-soluble compounds that are more easily excreted. A well-known enzyme responsible for this detoxification action is glutathione-S-transferase (GST), which is widely distributed in all living organisms. So far, reports indicate that the action of GST in the insect gut is the well-explored enzyme in the detoxification of insecticides sprayed against the insects (Mohan and Gujar 2003a). Some studies reported that the bacterially produced enzymes were responsible for the detoxification of toxic substances in host insects. For instance, field-collected strains of *Spodoptera frugiperda* (J.E. Smith) showed high activity of detoxification enzymes, namely, microsomal oxidases, glutathione S-transferases, and hydrolase (Yu 1992). Interestingly, the enzyme phosphotriesterase (PTE) from microorganisms in soil

seems to be associated with the detoxification of organophosphorous pesticides and organophosphate resistance mechanism in insects. PTE was first detected in the soil microoganisms, *Pseudomonas diminuta* and *Flavobacterium* sp., which are capable of hydrolyzing paraoxon and parathion at a high catalytic rate (Munnecke and Hsieh 1974). Gut isolates of *P. xylostella* which are resistant to prothiofos were shown to have increased activity of GST than that of the same but susceptible field population (Indiragandhi and Sa, unpublished data). The high reliance to insecticides for the control of insect pests and the repeated use of the same insecticides may result in significant reduction of their biological efficacy. This loss of efficacy might be attributed to the rapid microbial degradation of insecticides by a gut symbiotic microflora as reported in soil applied nematicides (Karpouzas et al. 2005). Therefore, the enzymes of gut bacteria might contribute to the detoxification of insecticides in insects, consequently giving rise to resistance development.

14.2.3 Gut Bacteria Mediated Disease Resistance in Host Insect

The insect intestinal tract is generally inhospitable to fungi and infection rarely occurs via the gut. This is surprising as both foregut and hindgut are lined with unsclerotized cuticle, which is actively invaded, for example, in locust by an adapted fungal pathogen. It was generally thought that anaerobiosis, digestive enzymes, adverse pH, speed of food throughput, and protection from the peritrophic membrane are primarily responsible for the gut barrier to fungi (Dillon and Charnley 1991). However, none of these factors can account for the failure of the conidia of *Metarhizium anisopliae* to germinate in the guts of locusts (Dillon and Charnley 1991). Since the guts of germfree locusts do not have such inhibitory properties, it was concluded that an antifungal toxin was produced by the gut microbiota of the locust. Subsequently, antimicrobial phenolic compounds were purified from the gut and fecal pellets of conventionally reared locusts. Three phenolics were identified using GC-MS, namely, hydroxyquinone, 3,4-dihydroxybenzoic, and 3,5-dihydroxybenzoic acids. These compounds were not detected in fractions from germfree insects. A solution of authentic phenols inhibited germination of *M. anisopliae* at concentrations estimated to occur in the fecal pellets. When *Pantoea agglomerans*, a prominent member of the microbial population in the locust gut, was introduced into germfree insects the antifungal compounds reappeared in the feces in proportion to the size of the gut bacterial population (Dillon and Charnley 1995, 1996). In Hymenopteran social insect honeybees, in addition to the genetically determined hygienic behavior (uncapping of cells and removal of diseased and dead larvae) toward the Chalkbrood disease caused by *Ascosphaera apis*, gut bacteria of worker bees such as *Paenibacillus alvei*, *Bacillus circulans*, *B. licheniformis*, *B. megaterium*, *B. pumilus*, and *B. subtilis* were reported for the host insect resistance to disease (Gilliam 1997). The phenolics produced by the gut microbiota are toxic to a wide range of insect and plant

Table 14.2 Antagonistic activities of *P. xylostella* gut bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp. PRGB06 against phytopathogenic fungi

Phytopathogenic fungi	Host	Disease	Inhibition zone diameter (cm)
Botrytis cinerea	Tomato	Gray mold	1.8 ± 0.4^{bc}
Colletotrichum acutatum KACC 41932	Strawberry	Leaf spot	–
C. capsici KACC 40978	Red pepper	Anthracnose	–
C. coccodes KACC 40008	Red pepper	Anthracnose	1.2 ± 0.1^{c}
C. gloespoiroides KACC 40690	Red pepper	Anthracnose	3.6 ± 0.1^{a}
Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. *niveum* KACC 40902	Muskmelon	Wilt	–
Rhizoctonia solani KACC 40106	Rice	Sheath blight	3.0 ± 0.4^{a}
Sclerotia sclerotiorum	Ginseng	Wilt	2.3 ± 0.2^{b}
Phytophthora capsici KACC 40483*	Red pepper	Anthracnose	–
LSD ($P \geq 0.05$)			0.7

– Absence of antagonism

Values are the mean ± SE of three replications. In the same column, significant differences according to the LSD at 0.05% levels are indicated by different letters (Indiragandhi et al. 2008a)

*Growth of *Phytophthora capsici* was inhibited by *Serratia* sp. PRGB11 (1.4 ± 0.3), *Acinetobacter* sp. strains PRGB15 (1.8 ± 0.6), PRGB16 (1.6 ± 0.4), PSGB03 (1.6 ± 0.5), PSGB04 (1.6 ± 0.2), and PSGB05 (1.6 ± 0.3); plus values in parentheses following strain names indicate diameter of inhibition zone (cm)

pathogenic fungi and insect pathogenic bacteria (Dillon and Charnley 2002). Antifungal activity of gut bacteria isolated from *P. xylostella* was reported for entomo- and phytopathogenic fungi under in vitro condition (Table 14.2 and Fig. 14.3) (Indiragandhi et al. 2007a, 2008a). The gut bacterial isolates showed significant activity of biocontrol determinants such as siderophore (Fig. 14.4), chitinase, and β-1,3 glucanase (Tables 14.3 and 14.4). Consequently, the antifungal activity of gut bacteria toward entomopathogenic fungi might be due to the action of individual or combination of all the biocontrol determinants. For the former case, it could be explained that the antibiotic activity might be due to the siderophore and its cross-utilization of siderophores produced by the fungal pathogens (Indiragandhi et al. 2008a, b) (Table 14.4).

14.2.4 Gut Bacteria Mediated Protection Against Biopesticides

The soil bacterium, *Bacillus thuringiensis* (*Bt*), is an important component of insect pest management program all over the world. Insecticidal proteins of *Bt* are effective for controlling many insect species, but insect resistance to *Bt* threatens the long-term effectiveness of these toxins (Oppert et al. 1997; Mohan and Gujar 2003b). The salient feature of this species is the accumulation of crystalline parasporal inclusions during sporulation. These inclusions are composed of one or more protoxins, known as δ-endotoxins, each of which is specific primarily at the level of insect orders, particularly Lepidoptera, Diptera, and Coleoptera. In

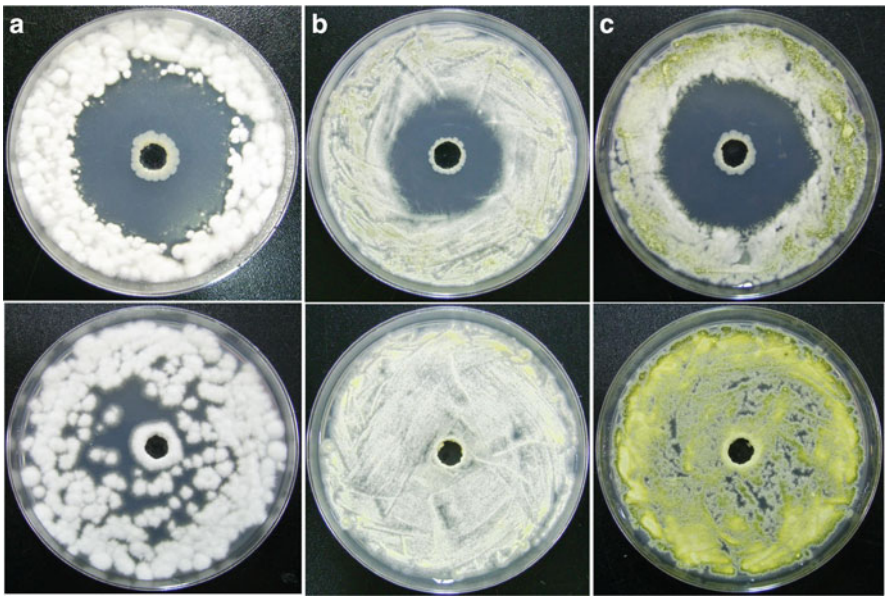


Fig. 14.3 Antagonistic activity of *P. xylostella* gut associated *Pseudomonas* sp. PRGB06 against the entomopathogens (**a**) *Beauveria bassiana* KACC 40039, (**b**) *Metarhizium* sp. KACC 400217, (**c**) *Metarhizium anisopliae* KACC 40029; their respective controls were shown at bottom panel

Lepidoptera, specificity is in part due to the extremely alkaline midgut environment that is required to solubilize the protoxin into the active form (Broderick et al. 2004). In vivo, protoxins of 120 kDa undergo proteolytic conversion to active toxins of 60–65 kDa through the action of gut protease activity at high pH in the larval midgut. Several mechanisms of insect resistance to *Bt* toxin have been proposed, such as reduced binding of toxin to larval brush border membrane vesicle which results in increased resistance in the Indian meal moth – *Plodia interpunctella*, tobacco budworm, *Heliothis virescens*, and beet armyworm, *Spodoptera litura* (Oppert et al. 1997). However, in some insect species the development of resistance to *Bt* has been linked to altered gut protease activity that interacts with *Bt* toxins. Possibly, these protease enzymes in the gut juice would originate from the gut bacterial genera present in the host insect. Few studies have indicated the inhabitation of the lepidopteran insect gut by different phylotypes of bacteria and their role in determining the insecticidal activity of *Bt* (Takatsuka and Kunimi 2000; Broderick et al. 2004). Midgut pH is important from the perspective of both the microbes and the insect. A predominant member of the midgut microbial community, *Enterobacter faecalis*, is commonly found at higher pH (8–9) and acidifies its environment through its metabolism (Manero and Blanch 1999). This could confer some advantage to the insect host, as well-known microbial toxins of Lepidoptera such as *Bt* toxin are activated only in alkaline conditions (Wilson and Benoit 1993). Thus, *E. faecalis* might protect the insect from *Bt* toxin by decreasing the midgut pH as evidenced by the smaller population of *E. faecalis* in the larvae of

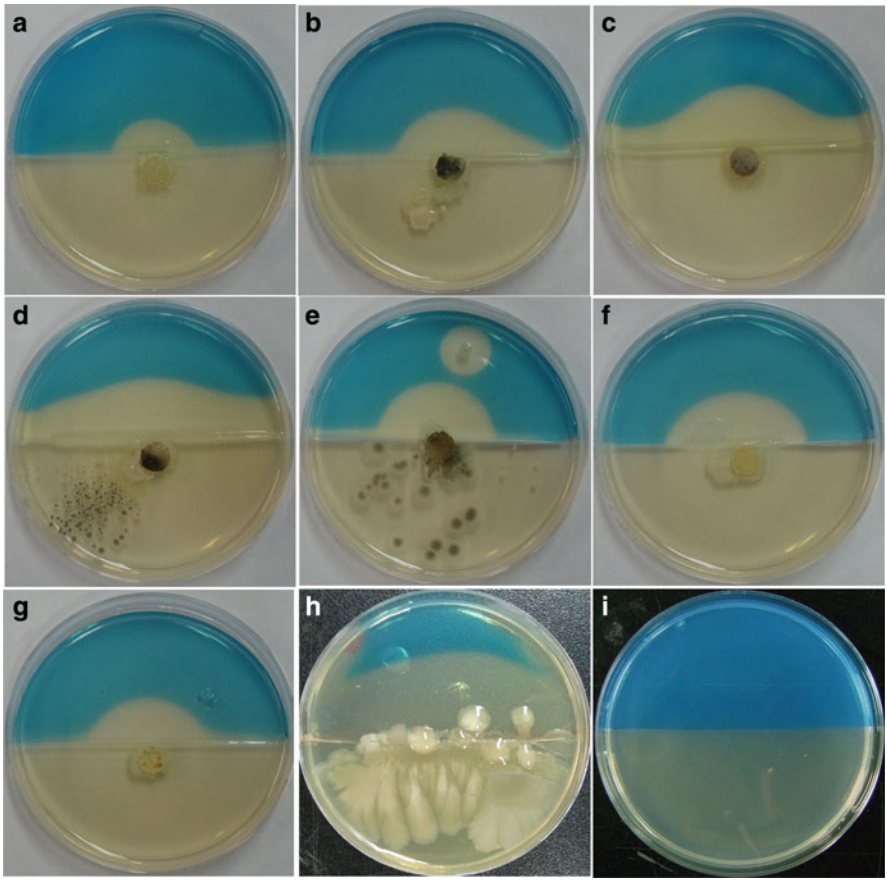


Fig. 14.4 Modified CAS agar plate assay for testing siderophore production by bacterial and fungal entomopathogens. Agar plate containing CAS-blue agar (*top half*) and MEA for fungi (**a**–**g**) and NA for *Bt* (**h**) media (*bottom half*) inoculated with (**a**) *Beauveria bassiana* KACC 40227, (**b**) *Hirsutella thompsoni* KACC 40023, (**c**) *Metarhizium anisopliae* KACC 40230, (**d**) *Metarhizium* sp. KACC 40229, (**e**) *Metarhizium* sp. KACC 40217, (**f**) *Paecilomyces tenuipes* KACC 40503, (**g**) *Paecilomyces* sp., (**h**) *Bacillus thuringiensis* KACC 10168, and (**i**) control (Indiragandhi et al. 2008a)

more susceptible insects to *Bt* toxin (Broderick et al. 2003). The bacteria may also contribute to their own survival by managing midgut pH to enhance their own growth or exclude competing microorganisms. This was demonstrated in the reduction of *Bt* growth to about 20 times lesser than that of larvae without true gut bacteria *Staphylococcus* sp. and *Streptococcus* sp. of lepidopteran oriental tea tortrix, *Homona magnanima* (Takatsuka and Kunimi 2000). On the other hand, it was shown that the siderophore produced by the gut bacteria cross-utilizes the siderophore produced by other bacteria and fungi (i.e., entomopathogenic fungi and bacteria), such as *Bt* through their outer membrane receptor protein (OMRP) (Table 14.4 and Fig. 14.5) (Indiragandhi et al. 2008a).

Table 14.3 Plant-growth-promoting characteristics of bacterial strains isolated from larval guts of *P. xylostella*

	Direct plant-growth promotion through							Indirect plant-growth promotion through		
	Mineral solubilization/oxidation			Production of enzymes and phytohormones				Production of biocontrol determinants		
Bacterial strains[†]	Soluble P (μg^{-1} ml^{-1})	Zn SE (%)	Sulfate content (μg^{-1} ml^{-1})	ARA (nmol ethylene/h/mg protein)	ACCD (nmol α-KB/min/mg protein)	IAA (μg^{-1} ml^{-1})	Salicylic acid (μg^{-1} ml^{-1})	Siderophore	Chitinase	β-1,3-glucanase (μg glucose/min/mg protein)
Acinetobacter sp. PSGB03	458 ± 15^{b}	286 ± 5^{d}	7.7 ± 1.3^{ab}	2.7 ± 0.2^{bc}	60.4 ± 0.6^{d}	7.9 ± 0.2^{e}	5.8 ± 0.5^{d}	+	+	1.3 ± 0.1^{c}
Acinetobacter sp. PSGB04	468 ± 6^{b}	300 ± 3^{c}	2.4 ± 0.9^{c}	2.0 ± 0.4^{e}	572 ± 1.2^{a}	8.3 ± 0^{dc}	4.7 ± 0.3^{e}	+	–	0.7 ± 0.1^{d}
Acinetobacter sp. PSGB05	479 ± 35^{b}	271 ± 2^{e}	6.5 ± 0.6^{b}	2.8 ± 0.1^{bc}	133 ± 1.4^{b}	8.0 ± 0.1^{e}	6.0 ± 0.3^{d}	+	–	–
Acinetobacter sp. PRGB15	540 ± 20^{a}	300 ± 4^{c}	–	2.8 ± 0.2^{ab}	86.5 ± 1.2^{c}	8.2 ± 0^{d}	3.1 ± 0.3^{f}	+	+	–
Acinetobacter sp. PRGB16	547 ± 59^{a}	314 ± 10^{b}	–	2.2 ± 0.2^{de}	–	8.2 ± 0^{dc}	7.2 ± 0.6^{c}	+	–	2.4 ± 0.2^{b}
Pseudomonas sp. PRGB06	250 ± 35^{c}	171 ± 1^{g}	10.0 ± 3.4^{a}	3.0 ± 0.4^{ab}	–	10.0 ± 0.1^{a}	6.8 ± 0.4^{c}	+	–	8.0 ± 0.4^{a}
Serratia sp. PRGB11	216 ± 5^{c}	250 ± 3^{f}	8.0 ± 1.2^{ab}	2.4 ± 0.3^{cd}	–	8.7 ± 0^{b}	8.0 ± 0.4^{b}	+	+	–
Serratia sp. PSGB13	120 ± 18^{d}	514 ± 3^{a}	2.4 ± 0.9^{c}	3.3 ± 0.4^{a}	–	8.4 ± 0.1^{c}	10.1 ± 0.7^{a}	+	+	–
LSD ($P \geq 0.05$)	43	7.0	3.3	0.4	3.5	0.2	0.7			0.4

ARA acetylene reduction assay, *IAA* indole-3-acetic acid, *ACCD* 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase, *α-KB* α-ketobutyrate, + presence of trait, – absence of trait. The values indicate the mean ± SE of three replications. In the same column, significant differences according to the LSD at 0.05% levels are indicated by different letters (Indiragandhi et al. 2008b)

[†]All the strains were positive for ammonia production and negative for HCN and pectinase production

Table 14.4 Cross-utilization of homologous and heterologous siderophores by *P. xylostella* gut bacteria

Bacterial strain[a]	MIC[b] (μM)	Gut bacterial isolates whose siderophores (homologous) were utilized	Entomopathogenic bacteria and fungi, and phytopathogenic fungi (heterologous) whose siderophores were utilized[c]
Brachybacterium sp. PSGB10	200	A, B, F, G	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 17
Pseudomonas sp. PRGB06	500	B, C, E, F	1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17
Serratia marcescens FLGB16	500	A, B, E, F	1, 3, 8, 11, 12, 13, 14

[a]*Acinetobacter* sp. PRGB16 (MIC-1,000 μM), *Stenotrophomonas* sp. PRGB08 (500 μM), and *Serratia* sp. PRGB11 (500 μM) did not cross-feed either homologous or heterologous siderophores
[b]Minimum inhibitory concentration of 2,2′-dipyridyl (DPD)
[c](1) *Bacillus thuringiensis* KACC 10168, (2) *Beauveria bassiana* KACC 40218, (3) *B. bassiana* KACC 40224, (4) *B. bassiana* KACC 40039, (5) *Cordyceps millitans* KACC 40665, (6) *Metarhizium* sp. KACC 40217, (7) *Metarhizium* sp. KACC 40230, (8) *M. anisopliae* KACC 40029, (9) *Hirsutella thompsoni* KACC 40023, (10) *Paecilomyces amarosiensis* KACC 41779, (11) *P. tenuipes* KACC 40503, (12) *Botrytis cinerea*, (13) *Colletotrichum acutatum* KACC 40218, (14) *C. coccodes* KACC 40218, (15) *C. gleosporoides* KACC 40218, (16) *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *niveum* KACC 40902, and (17) *Phytophthora capsici* KACC 40483 (Indiragandhi et al. 2008a)

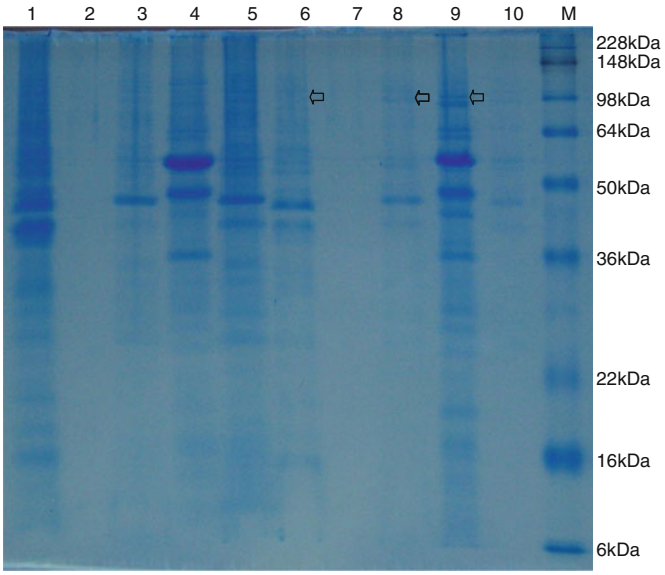


Fig. 14.5 Sodium dodecyl sulfate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (12%) (SDS-PAGE) analysis of OMRP fraction isolated from bacterial cells of *Pseudomonas* sp. PRGB06, *Stenotrophomonas* sp. PRGB08, *Brachybacterium* sp. PSGB10, *Serratia marcescens* FLGB16, and *Serratia* sp. PRGB11 grown under normal and iron-deficient conditions (NA + MIC of 2,2′-DPD for respective strain), shown in the order of lanes 1–5 and 6–10, respectively. 10 μg of protein was loaded in each lane. Standard marker is shown in lane M. The *arrowhead* shows 96–98 kDa outer membrane protein (Indiragandhi et al. 2008)

14.2.5 Gut Bacteria Mediated Nitrogen Fixation in Insects

Nitrogen, although abundant in the atmosphere, is paradoxically a limited resource for multicellular organisms. In the class Insecta, biological nitrogen fixation has been greatly demonstrated in termites. Even though termite gut cells are now known to be capable of digesting lignocellulose without direct assistance from gut symbionts (Bignell 2000), no cells of arthropod guts are competent to fix nitrogen or to convert carbon dioxide to acetate. These two anaerobic activities are the sole province of the gut microbes. Microbial acetogenesis in termite guts has been demonstrated to provide at least one third of the energy requirements of termites (Breznak 2000). Anaerobic prokaryotes provide their arthropod hosts with important nutritional benefits that cannot be provided by eukaryotic cells alone. Behar et al. (2005) found that all individuals of field-collected mediterranean fruit flies, *Ceratitis capitata*, harbor large diazotrophic enterobacterial populations that express dinitrogen reductase in the gut. Moreover, nitrogen fixation was demonstrated in isolated guts and in live flies. This may significantly contribute to the fly's nitrogen intake. The presence of similar bacterial consortia/activity in additional insect orders such as Lepidoptera (Table 14.3) (Hameeda et al. 2006b; Indiragandhi et al. 2008b) suggests that nitrogen fixation occurs in vast pools of terrestrial insects. On a large scale, this phenomenon may have a considerable impact on the nitrogen cycle (Behar et al. 2005). Insect gut bacteria associated with various orders of insects and their functional role in insects are summarized in Table 14.5.

14.3 Potential of Antibiotic Therapy for Insect Pest Management

The literatures reviewed under the various topics highlighted the importance of gut bacteria to the host insect species. The loss of gut bacteria often results in detrimental fitness costs for the host, such as growth impairment, shortened life span, and sterility, while their presence contributes to insect morphogenesis, digestion, nutrition, protection against toxic substances, pheromone production, and even reproduction (Brand et al. 1975; Buchner 1965; Nolte 1977; O'Neill et al. 1992). Evidently, the reduction or elimination of the gut bacteria in insects by antibiotic therapy would certainly cause deleterious effects on the host insect. For instance, Costa et al. (1997) evaluated the effect of different substances on the growth and development of whiteflies. They found significant negative effects on growth and development of whiteflies due to the bacterial protein synthesis affected by the test substances such as tetracycline and rifampicin. Likewise, the removal of *Buchnera* with antibiotics severely debilitates aphid performance and fecundity (Koga et al. 2007). Broderick et al. (2000) observed that lepidopterous larvae fed on antibiotics in various combinations display numerous signs of reduced health. For example,

Table 14.5 Gut bacterial phylotypes identified from different orders of class Insecta

Sl. no.	Insect pests	Gut bacterial phylotypes	Functional significance	References
Coleoptera				
1	Pine bark beetle *Ips paraconfusus* (Scolytidae)	*Bacillus cereus*	Pheromone production	Brand et al. (1975)
2	Rice weevil *Sitophilus* spp. (Dryopthoridae)	*Aeromonas haywardensis*, *Erwinia carotovora*, *Klebsiella oxytoca*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *Providencia stuartii*, *Serratia liquefaciens*, *Escherichia coli*, *Paracoccus* sp., *P. fluorescens*	Not determined	Lefévre et al. (2004)
Diptera				
3	Crucifer root maggot *Delia radicum* (Anthomyiidae)	*Erwinia amylovora*, *E. carotovora*, *K. pneumoniae*, *E. coli*, *Helicobacter canadiensis*, *Mycobacterium avium*, *Pseudomonas aeroginosa*, *P. cichorii*, *Rhodothermus marinus*, *Serratia ficaria*, *Serratia marcescens*	Nutritional role	Lukwinski et al. (2006)
4	Mediterranian fruit fly *Ceratitis capitata*	*Enterobacter* spp., *Klebsiella* spp.	Nitrogen fixation	Behar et al. (2005)
5	Apple fruit fly *Rhagoletis pomonella* (Tephritidae)	*Pseudomonas* spp., *Enterobacter* sp., *Micrococcus* sp., *Flavobacterium* sp., *Bacillus* sp.	Dihydrochalcone phloridzin degradation, detoxification of Azinphosmethyl	Lauzon et al. (1994, 2003)
6	Mexican fruit fly *Anastrepha ludens* (Tephritidae)	*Enterobacter*, *Listeria*, *Povidencia*, *Serratia*, *Staphylococcus* spp. *Citrobacter*, *Streptococcus*, *Aerococcus*, *Listeria*	Not determined	Kuzina et al. (2001)
7	Queensland fruit fly *Bactrocera tryoni* (Tephritidae)	*Klebsiella oxytoca*, *E. cloacae*	Nitrogen fixation	Murphy et al. (1994)
8	Sugar beet root maggot *Tetanops myopaeformis* (Otitidae)	*Acinetobacter calcoaceticus*, *S. liquefaciens*, *S. marcescens*, *P. maltophilia*, *P. fluorescens*	Morphogenesis	Iverson et al. (1984)

(*continued*)

Table 14.5 (continued)

Sl. no.	Insect pests	Gut bacterial phylotypes	Functional significance	References
Hemiptera				
9	Pentatomid bug *Leptocorisa chinensis*, *Riptortus clavatus*, *R. linearis* (Alydidae)	*Burkholderia*	Not determined	Kikuchi et al. (2005)
10	Pink sugarcane mealybug *Saccharicoccus sacchari* (Pseudococcidae)	*Gluconacetobacter sacchari*	Not determined	Franke et al. (1999)
11	Whitefly *Bemisia argentifolii*, *B. tabaci* (Aleyrodidae)	*Acinetobacter lwoffsii*, *A. baumannii*, *Agrobacterium* sp., *Bacillus megaterium*, *B. amyloliquefasciens*, *B. licheniformis*, *Cellulomonas turbata*, *Citrobacter* sp., *Enterobacter cloacae*, *Flavomonas oryzihabitans*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *S. epidermidis*	Honey dew production	Davidson et al. (2000)
12	Cotton bollworm *Helicoverpa armigera* (Noctuidae)	*Acinetobacter anitratus*, *A. venetianus*, *Aquamonas fontana*, *Flavobacterium*, *Enterobacter avium*, *E. casseliflavus*, *E. gallinarum*, *Leuconostoc citreum*, *Lactococcus lactis*, *Pseudomonas mevalonii*, *Sphingomonas* sp., *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*	Not determined	Xiang et al. (2006)
13	Pink bollworm (PBW) *Pectinophora gossypiella* (Gelechidae)	*Aeromonas salmonicida* sp. *salmonicida*, *Chromobacterium violaceum*, *Citrobacter koseri*, *Enterococcus faecium*, *Enterobacter gergoviae*, *Klebsiella oxytoca*	Not determined	Kuzina et al. (2002)
14	Automeris *Automeris zugana* (Saturnidae)	*Bacillus* sp., *B. thuringiensis*, *Corynebacterium durum*, *C. pyogenes*, *Citrobacter* spp., *Curtobacterium* spp., *Enterobacter gergoviae*, *E. aerogenes*, *E. agglomerans*, *K. pneumoniae*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Micrococcus* spp., *P. diminuta*, *Serratia marcescens*, *S. liquefaciens*, *Staphylococcus* spp.	Not determined	Sittenfeld et al. (2002)

15	Gypsy moth *Lymantria dispar* (Noctuidae)	*Bacillus* sp., *E. faecalis*, *P. putida*, *Staphylococcus xylosus*, *S. cohnii*, *S. lentus*, *Pantoae agglomerans*, *Serratia marcescens*, *Paenibacillus*, *Micrococcus*, *Rhodococcus*	Enhances insecticidal activity of *Bt*	Broderick et al. (2004)
16	Beet armyworm *Spodoptera exigua* (Noctuidae)	*Myroides odoratus*, *Ochrobactrum* sp.	*N*-Acylamino acid production	Spiteller et al. (2000)
17	Cut worm *Agrotis segetum* (Noctuidae)	*Providencia rettigeri*	*N*-Acylamino acid production	Spiteller et al. (2000)
18	Cabbage moth *Mamestra brassicae* (Noctuidae)	*Acinetobacter* sp.	*N*-Acylamino acid production	Spiteller et al. (2000)
19	Oriental tea tortrix *Homona magnanima* (Tortricidae)	*Streptococcus* spp., *Staphylococcus* spp.	Inhibits *Bt* germination in host gut	Takatsuka and Kunimi 2000
20	Leek moth *Acrolepiopsis assectella* (Yponomeutidae)	*Bacillus* spp., *Klebsiella oxytoca*	Kairomone production	Thibout et al. (1995)
21	Diamondback moth *Plutella xylostella* (Yponomeutidae)	*Pseudomonas* sp., *Stenotrophomonas* sp., *Acinetobacter* sp., *Serratia marcescens*, *Brachybacterium* sp. (Figs. 14.1 and 14.2)	Chitinase and siderophore production	Indiragandhi et al. (2008a, b)
Others				
22	Desert locust *Schistocerga gregaria* (Acrididae)	*P. agglomerans*, *K. pneumoniae*, *Enterobacter agglomerans*, *E. cloacea*, *E. casseliflavus*	CR by phenolics and cohesion pheromone production	Dillon et al. (2005)
23	Western flower thrips *Frankliniella occidentalis* (Thripidae)	*Erwinia* spp.	Not determined	de Vries et al. (2001)
24	Formosan subterranean termite *Coptotermes formosanus* (Termitidae)	*Serratia marcescens*, *Enterobacter aerogens*, *E. cloacae*, *C. farmeri*	Scavenge oxygen and create anaerobic condition for anaerobes	Adams and Boopathy (2005)
25	Leaf cutting ants *Atta sexdans*	*Burkholderia* spp.	Antibiotic production	Santos et al. (2004)

a cocktail of antibiotics including tetracycline reduced larval survival by 50% over the first 20 days after hatching, and the surviving larvae weigh one tenth of the untreated control larvae. Tetracycline alone has a similar effect on development, whereas gentamicin, rifampicin, and penicillin have no effect on survival or growth. Another antibiotic, zwittermicin A, dramatically increases larval sensitivity to the insecticidal toxin produced by *Bt* and also alters the population size of more than one member of the gut community. It is possible that a change in the gut microbiota may inhibit larval growth, instar development, and make the larvae more sensitive to pathogens and toxins. Thus, gut bacteria provide a potential target for insect control with systemic antibacterial materials, or transgenic plants that produce antibacterial proteins (Jaynes et al. 1987). With reference to *P. xylostella*, antibiotic-treated leaf-fed larvae showed malformed adult development and failed to successfully develop into pupae (Indiragandhi and Sa, unpublished data).

14.4 Insect Gut Bacteria as Biocontrol Agents and PGPB

Genetic modification of gut isolates which are mildly pathogenic to their host may be exploited as biocontrol agent. For example, *Enterobacter cloacae* WFA73, a mild pathogen to *Bemisia argentifolii*, has the ability to penetrate whitefly gut cells, which suggests that this microorganism could be genetically modified to enhance its effectiveness as a biological control agent. A similar report has been documented for soil microarthropods by Thimm et al. (1998).

Simultaneously, it is possible to exploit the insect gut bacterial isolates for the enhancement of growth and development of crop plants. The transformation of a phyllosphere bacterium, *Bacillus megaterium*, with *Bt* toxin genes for the control of Lepidoptera is an example of such manipulation (Bora et al. 1994). Similar modification of gut bacteria in other insects, to alter their ability to vector plant viruses or other characteristics of these insects, is also an interesting possibility (Richards 1993).

It could be noticeable that there is a tritrophic interaction between plant–insect–bacteria. As well documented, insect guts are known for their microbial population, which is able to fix atmospheric nitrogen, have the ability for mineral solubilization and oxidation and possess hydrolytic enzymes such as chitinase and indole derivatives.

Most reported PGPB are rhizosphere, phyllosphere, and soil isolates, except for a few from milk and cow dung (Nagarajkumar et al. 2004; Swain and Ray 2007). The microbial population in insect guts (4×10^5 to 2×10^{11} ml^{-1} of gut suspension) is greater than that in the phyllosphere (3×10^5 cm^{-2}) (Jacques et al. 1995), representing a well-explored niche for beneficial bacterial isolation. It is assumed that many insect species derive their microbiota from the surrounding environment, for instance, the phylloplane of plants (Dillon and Dillon 2004; Kremer and Souissi 2001). Presumably, the nutrient cycling rates in the gut environment are much higher and the potential disturbances are more dramatic than in soil and plants. Crop plants generally immobilize the nutrients in their leaves. Insects also have well-developed

mouth parts that are used to grind and shred organic substances, making insects more accessible for microbial colonization. Insect gut bacterial strains are also more metabolically versatile than isolates from elsewhere (Dillon and Dillon 2004). Spiteller et al. (2000) reported that the metabolic products produced by gut bacteria of *Spodoptera exigua*, *Mamestra brassicae*, and *Agrotis segetum* play a role in triggering a range of systemic responses with the result of larval feeding. Synthesis of *N*-acyl amino acid by the gut bacteria of *Spodoptera exigua* attracts the predators of the herbivores, when the host insect regurgitates its oral secretions. Findings of this study indicated that the involvement of bacteria in the biosynthesis of compounds which play a pivotal role in the interaction of plants, herbivores, and their predators adds a new trophic level to this complex network of interactions.

The gut passage may also enhance rates of decomposition by inoculating the organic material with bacteria, which might continue to grow outside the gut in the feces. After getting into the soil, the bacteria in the feces can establish in the rhizosphere. Living plant roots exude organic compounds, e.g., water-soluble sugars, amino acids, and organic acids into the rhizosphere, which in turn utilize the products of bacterial metabolism for plant growth. Bacterial features such as the ability to produce ACC (1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate) deaminase, indole derivatives (IAA), and salicylic acid (SA) could benefit plants by restraining the inhibition of root elongation by reducing the level of stress ethylene (Fig. 14.6). SA also acts as (1) a signaling compound in inducing systemic resistance against insect and disease attack and (2) antimicrobial agent (Indiragandhi et al. 2007b). By using the sugar compound as growth substrate, bacterial strains could produce some organic acids, which lead to solubilization of insoluble nutrients such as P and Zn and make them available to crop plants. This may be the reason behind the hypothesis that the insect herbivores can accelerate nutrient mobilization in soil. A number of bacterial isolates colonizing insect gut area have been reported for its potential for plant-growth promotion. Bacterial isolates from the macrofauna and *P. xylostella* were reported for their antagonistic activity against various phytopathogenic fungi, solubilization of rock phosphate by the gluconic acid production, siderophores, ACC deaminase, and hydrolytic enzyme production (Hameeda et al. 2006a, b; Indiragandhi et al. 2008b). Siderophores and indole derivatives synthesized by the insect gut bacterial strains were documented for their antagonistic activity against soil-borne pathogen (Ciche et al. 2003). Bacterial strains of *P. xylostella* significantly inhibit the phytopathogenic fungal growth and enhanced the seedling growth and vigor in economically important crops such as canola, tomato (Indiragandhi et al. 2008b) (Table 14.6), rice, chilli, and maize (Indiragandhi and Sa, unpublished data).

14.5 Future Thrust

This review of earlier studies is indicative of the possibility of utilizing the insect gut bacterial strains as biocontrol agent and PGPB. Therefore, isolation, characterization, and exploitation of microbes from such specialized dynamic environments

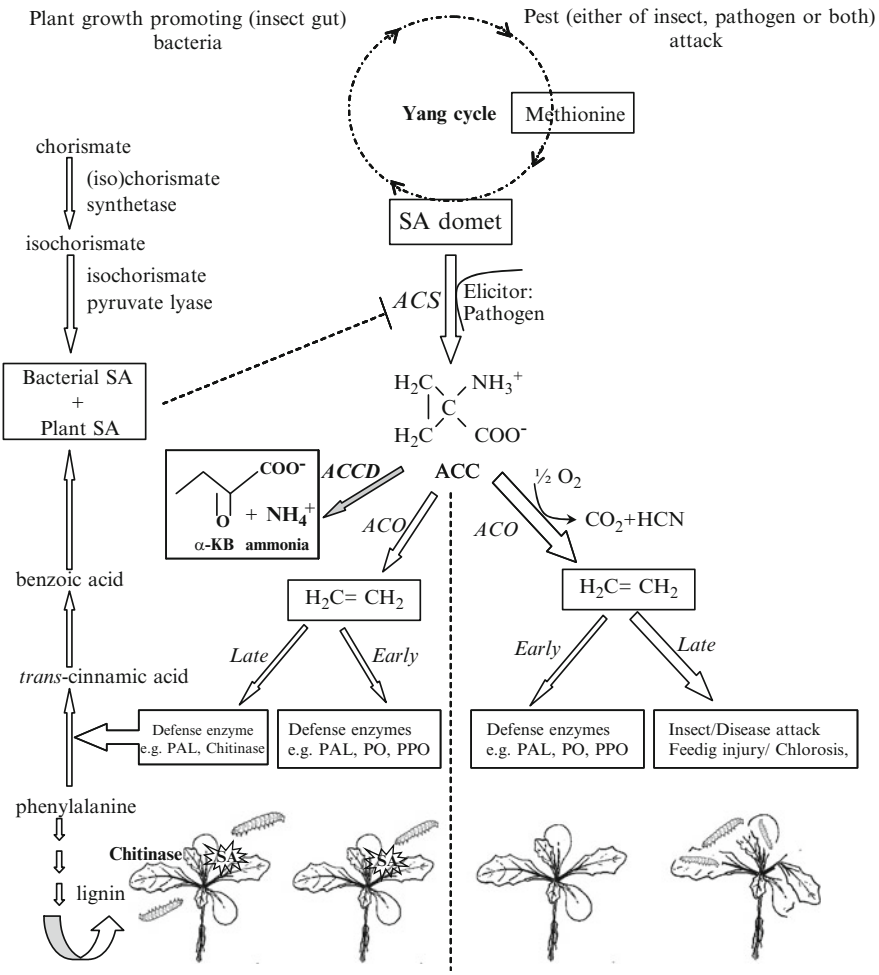


Fig. 14.6 A proposed model for plant-growth-promoting gut bacteria. The eventual increase in defense enzymes activity is a consequence of induction of systemic resistance against insect pests. *SAdomet* S-adenosylmethionine, *SA* salicylic acid, *ACS* 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate synthase, *ACC* 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate, *ACO* 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylic acid oxidase, *ACCD* 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase, *α-KB* α-ketobutyrate. *Perpendicular* symbol shows the inhibition of ACS by salicylic acid (SA) (Indiragandhi et al. 2007a)

represent a step forward in the development of bioinoculants for increased crop production through effective crop protection.

Acknowledgments The authors wish to thank the financial support given by a BK21 Research Fellowship through a doctoral fellowship to PI to carry out the works pertaining to Diamond Back moth in Department of Agricultural Chemistry at Chungbuk National University, South Korea. The facility provided by TamilNadu Agricultural University, Tamil Nadu, India, to complete this review work is greatly acknowledged.

Table 14.6 Effect of DBM larval gut bacterial strain seed treatment on early growth of canola and tomato under gnotobiotic conditions

	Root length (cm)		Seedling vigor		Dry biomass (mg)	
Treatment	Canola	Tomato	Canola	Tomato	Canola	Tomato
Acinetobacter sp. PSGB03	8.0 ± 0.2^{a} (39)	5.7 ± 0.3^{c} (9)	$1{,}048 \pm 4^{a}$	892 ± 2^{c}	136 ± 6^{bc} (17)	96 ± 0.5^{b} (22)
Acinetobacter sp. PSGB04	8.0 ± 0^{a} (41)	5.5 ± 0.3^{d} (3)	$1{,}007 \pm 4^{b}$	835 ± 9^{d}	151 ± 2^{a} (30)	100 ± 2.8^{a} (26)
Acinetobacter sp. PSGB05	7.7 ± 0^{ab} (35)	6.4 ± 0.1^{a} (21)	957 ± 6^{d}	937 ± 9^{b}	150 ± 1^{a} (30)	83 ± 1.8^{c} (5)
Acinetobacter sp. PRGB15	7.9 ± 0.6^{a} (38)	5.6 ± 0.2^{dc} (7)	995 ± 9^{c}	819 ± 5^{e}	128 ± 1^{c} (11)	89 ± 1.4^{c} (13)
Pseudomonas sp. PRGB06	7.2 ± 0.1^{b} (27)	6.5 ± 0.1^{a} (23)	881 ± 4^{g}	982 ± 2^{a}	136 ± 7^{bca} (17)	100 ± 1.0^{a} (26)
Serratia sp. PRGB11	8.0 ± 0.1^{a} (41)	6.1 ± 0.2^{ba} (16)	930 ± 7^{e}	934 ± 7^{b}	138 ± 3^{b} (19)	91 ± 1.0^{c} (15)
Control	5.7 ± 0.5^{c}	5.3 ± 0.6^{d}	920 ± 6^{f}	811 ± 8^{f}	116 ± 11^{d}	79 ± 1.7^{c}
LSD ($P \geq 0.05$)	0.6	0.4	5.0	7.0	9.0	2.0

The values indicate the mean ± SE of three replications. In the same column, significant differences according to the LSD at 0.05% levels are indicated by different letters. Values in parentheses indicate the percentage increase over the control (Indiragandhi et al. 2008b)

References

Adams L, Boopathy R (2005) Isolation and characterization of enteric bacteria from the hindgut of formosan termite. Bioresour Technol 96:1592–1598

Bakalidou A, Kampfer P, Berchtold M, Kuhnigk T, Wenzel M, Konig H (2002) *Cellulosimicrobium variabile* sp. nov., a cellulolytic bacterium from the hindgut of the termite *Mastotermes darwiniensis*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 52:1182–1192

Behar A, Yuval B, Jurkevitch E (2005) Enterobacteria-mediated nitrogen fixation in natural populations of the fruit fly *Ceratitis capitata*. Mol Ecol 14:2637–2643

Bignell DE (2000) Introduction to symbiosis. In: Abe T, Bignell DE, Higashi M (eds) Termites: evolution, sociality, symbioses, ecology. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 189–208

Bora RS, Murty MG, Shenbagarathai R, Sekar V (1994) Introduction of lepidopteran-specific insecticidal crystal protein gene of *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* by conjugal transfer into a *Bacillus megaterium* strain that persists in the cotton phyllosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:214–222

Borkott H, Insam H (1990) Symbiosis with bacteria enhances the use of chitin by the springtail, *Folsomia candida* (Collembola). Biol Fertil Soils 9:126–129

Brand JM, Bracke JW, Markovetz AJ, Wood DL, Browne LE (1975) Production of verbenol pheromone by a bacterium isolated from bark beetles. Nature 254:136–137

Brendelberger H (1997) Bacteria and digestive enzymes in the alimentary tract of *Radix peregera* (Gastropoda: Lymnaeidae). Oecologia 42:1635–1638

Breznak JA (2000) Ecology of prokaryotic microbes in the guts of wood and litter feeding termites. In: Abe T, Bignell DE, Higashi M (eds) Termites: evolution, sociality, symbiosis, ecology. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, pp 209–231

Broderick NA, Goodman RM, Raffa KF, Handelsman J (2000) Synergy between zwittermicin A and *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *Kurstaki* against gypsy moth (Lepidoptera: Lymantriidae). Environ Entomol 29:101–107

Broderick NA, Goodman RM, Handelsman J, Raffa KF (2003) Effect of host diet and insect source on synergy of gypsy moth (Lepidoptera: Lymantriidae) mortality to *Bacillus thuringiensis* subsp. *kurstaki* by zwittermicin A. Environ Entomol 32:387–391

Broderick NA, Raffa KF, Goodman RM, Handelsman J (2004) Census of the bacterial community of the gypsy moth larval midgut by using culturing and culture independent methods. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:293–300

Brooks MA (1963) Symbiosis and aposymbiosis in arthropods. Symp Soc Gen Microbiol 13:200–224

Buchner P (1965) Endosymbionts of animals with plant microorganisms. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York

Chapman RF (1985) Structure of the digestive system. In: Kerkut GA, Gilbert LI (eds) Comprehensive insect physiology biochemistry and pharmacology. Pergamon Press, New York, pp 165–211

Ciche TA, Blackburn M, Carney JR, Ensign C (2003) Photobactin: a catechol siderophore produced by *Photorhabdus luminescens*, an entomopathogenic mutually associated with *Heterorhabditis bacteriophora* NC1 nematodes. Appl Environ Microbiol 69:4706–4713

Costa HS, Henneberr JT, Toscano CN (1997) Effects of antibacterial materials on *Bemisia argentifolii* (Homoptera: Aleyrodidae) oviposition, growth, survival and sex ratio. J Econ Entomol 90:333–339

Davidson EW, Rosell RC, Hendrix DL (2000) Culturable bacteria associated with the whitefly, *Bemisia argentifolii* (Homoptera: Aleyrodidae). Fla Entomol 83:159–171

de Vries EJ, Breeuwer JAJ, Jacobs G, Mollema C (2001) The association of Western flower thrips, *Frankliniella occidentalis*, with a near *Erwinia* species gut bacteria: transient or permanent? J Invertebr Pathol 77:120–128

Dillon RJ, Charnley AK (1991) The fate of fungal spores in the insect gut. In: Cole GT, Hoch HC (eds) The fungal spore and disease initiation in plants and animals. Plenum Press, New York, pp 129–156

Dillon RJ, Charnley AK (1995) Chemical barriers to gut infection in the desert locust: in vivo production of antimicrobial phenols associated with the bacterium *Pantoea agglomerans*. J Invertebr Pathol 66:72–75

Dillon RJ, Charnley AK (1996) Colonization of the guts of germ-free desert locusts, *Schistocerca gregaria*, by the bacterium *Pantoea agglomerans*. J Invertebr Pathol 67:11–14

Dillon RJ, Charnley AK (2002) Mutualism between the desert locust *Schistocerca gregaria* and its gut microbiota. Res Microbiol 153:503–509

Dillon RJ, Dillon VM (2004) The gut bacteria of insects: nonpathogenic interactions. Annu Rev Entomol 49:71–92

Dillon RJ, Vennard CT, Buckling A, Charnley AK (2005) Diversity of locust gut bacteria protects against pathogen invasion. Ecol Lett 8:1291–1298

Franke IH, Fegan M, Hayward C, Leonard G, Stackebrandt E, Sly LI (1999) Description of *Gluconacetobacter sacchari* sp. nov., a new species of acetic acid bacterium isolated from the leaf sheath of sugarcane and the pink sugarcane mealybug. Int J Syst Bacteriol 49:1681–1693

Genta FA, Dillon RJ, Terra WR, Ferreira C (2006) Potential role for gut microbiota in cell wall digestion and glucoside detoxification in *Tenebrio molitor* larvae. J Insect Physiol 52:593–601

Gilliam M (1997) Identification and roles of non-pathogenic microflora associated with honey bees. FEMS Microbiol Lett 155:1–10

Hameeda B, Reddy HK, Rupela OP, Kumar GN, Satyavani K (2006a) Effect of carbon substrates on rock phosphate solubilization by bacteria from composts and macrofauna. Curr Microbiol 53:298–302

Hameeda B, Rupela OP, Reddy G, Satyavani K (2006b) Application of plant growth-promoting bacteria associated with composts and macrofauna for growth promotion of pearl millet (*Pennisetum glaucum* L.). Biol Fertil Soils 43:221–227

Indiragandhi P, Anandham R, Madhaiyan M, Poonguzhali S, Kim GH, Saravanan VS, Sa TM (2007a) Cultivable bacteria associated with larval gut of prothiofos-resistant, -susceptible, and field-caught populations of diamondback moth-*Plutella xylostella* and their potential for antagonism towards entomopathogenic fungi and host insect nutrition. J Appl Microbiol 103:2664–2675

Indiragandhi P, Anandham R, Kim KA, Yim WJ, Madhaiyan M, Sa TM (2007b) Induction of defense responses in tomato against *Pseudomonas syringae* pv. *tomato* by regulating the stress ethylene level with *Methylobacterium oryzae* CBMB20 containing 1-aminocyclopropane-1-carboxylate deaminase. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1037–1045

Indiragandhi P, Anandham R, Madhaiyan M, Kim GH, Sa TM (2008a) Cross utilization and expression of outer membrane receptor proteins for siderophores uptake by Diamondback moth *Plutella xylostella* (Lepidoptera: Plutellidae) gut bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Lett 287:27–33

Indiragandhi P, Anandham R, Madhaiyan M, Sa T (2008b) Characterization of plant growth promoting traits of bacteria isolated from larval gut of diamondback moth-*Plutella xylostella* (Lepidoptera: Plutellidae). Curr Microbiol 56:327–333

Iverson KL, Bromel MC, Anderson AW, Freeman TP (1984) Bacterial symbionts in the sugar beet root maggot, *Tetanops myopaeformis* (van Röder). Appl Environ Microbiol 47:22–27

Jacques MA, Kinkel LL, Morris CE (1995) Population sizes, immigration, and growth of epiphytic bacteria on leaves of different ages and positions of field grown endive (*Cochorium endivia* var. *latifolia*). Appl Environ Microbiol 61:899–906

Jaynes JM, Xanthopoulos KG, Destefano-Beltran L, Dodds JH (1987) Increasing bacterial disease resistance in plants utilizing antibacterial genes from insects. BioEssays 6:263–271

Karpouzas DG, Fotopoulou A, Menkissoglu-Spiroudi U, Singh BK (2005) Nonspecific biodegradation of the organophosphorus pesticides, cadusafos and ethoprophos, by two bacterial isolates. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 53:369–378

Kikuchi Y, Meng XY, Fukatsu T (2005) Gut symbiotic bacteria of the genus *Burkholderia* in the broad-headed bugs *Riptortus clavatus* and *Leptocorisa chinensis* (Heteroptera: Alydidae). Appl Environ Microbiol 71:4035–4043

Koga R, Tsuchida T, Sakurai M, Fukatsu T (2007) Selective elimination of aphid endosymbionts: effects of antibiotic dose and host genotype, and fitness consequences. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 60:229–239

Kremer RJ, Souissi T (2001) Cyanide production by rhizobacteria and potential for suppression of weed seedling growth. Curr Microbiol 43:182–186

Kuzina LV, Peloquin JJ, Vacek DC, Miller TA (2001) Isolation and identification of bacteria associated with adult laboratory mexican fruit flies, *Anastrepha ludens* (Diptera: Tephritidae). Curr Microbiol 42:290–294

Kuzina LV, Miller ED, Ge B, Miller TA (2002) Transformation of *Enterobacter gergoviae* isolated from pink bollworm gut with *Bacillus thuringiensis* toxin. Curr Microbiol 44:1–4

Lauzon CR, Robert BJ, Bussert TG, Prokopy RJ (1994) Could bacteria in nature be detoxifying compounds for the apple maggot fly? Mass. Fruit Notes 55:1–3

Lauzon CR, Potter SE, Prokopy RJ (2003) Degradation and detoxification of the dihydrochalcone phloridzin by *Enterobacter agglomerans*, a bacterium associated with the apple pest, *Rhagoletis pomonella* (Walsh) (Diptera: Tephritidae). Environ Entomol 32:953–962

Lefévre C, Charles H, Vallier A, Delobel B, Farrell B, Heddi A (2004) Endosymbiont phylogenesis in the dryopthoridae weevils evidence for bacterial replacement. Mol Biol Evol 21:965–973

Lukwinski AT, Hill JE, Khachatourians GG, Hemmingsen SM, Hegedus DD (2006) Biochemical and taxonomic characterization of bacteria associated with the crucifer maggot (*Delia radicum*). Can J Microbiol 52:197–208

Manero A, Blanch AR (1999) Identification of *Enterococcus* spp. with a biochemical key. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:4425–4430

Maudlin I, Welburn SC (1987) Lectin mediated establishment of midgut infections of *Trypanosoma congolense* and *Trypanosoma* in *Glossina morsitans*. Trop Med Parasitol 38:167–170

Mira A (2000) Exuviae eating: a nitrogen meal? J Insect Physiol 46:605–610

Miyazaki S, Bousch GM, Baerwald RJ (1968) Amino acid synthesis by *Pseudomonas meltophthora* bacteria symbiote of *Rhagoletis pomnonella* (Diptera). J Insect Physiol 14:513–518

Mohan M, Gujar GT (2003a) Local variation in susceptibility of diamondback moth, *Plutella xylostella* (Linnaeus) to insecticides and role of detoxification enzymes. Crop Prot 22:495–504

Mohan M, Gujar GT (2003b) Characterization and comparison of midgut proteases of *Bacillus thuringiensis* susceptible and resistant diamondback moth (Lepidoptera: Plutellidae). J Invertebr Pathol 83:1–11

Mohr KI, Tebbe CC (2007) Field study results on the probability and risk of a horizontal gene transfer from transgenic herbicide-resistant oilseed rape pollen to gut bacteria of bees. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 75:573–582

Montllor CB, Maxmen A, Purcell AH (2002) Facultative bacterial endosymbionts benefit pea aphids *Acyrthosiphon pisum* under heat stress. Ecol Entomol 27:189–195

Moran NA, Plague GR, Sandstrom JP, Wilcox JL (2003) A genomic perspective on nutrient provisioning by bacterial symbionts of insects. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:14543–14548

Munnecke DM, Hsieh DPH (1974) Microbial decontamination of parathion and *p*-nitrophenol in aqueous media. Appl Environ Microbiol 28:212–217

Murphy KM, Teakle DS, Macrae IC (1994) Kinetics of colonization of adult queensland fruit flies (*Bactrocera tryoni*) by dinitrogen fixing alimentary tract bacteria. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:2508–2517

Nagarajkumar M, Bhaskaran R, Velazhahan R (2004) Involvement of secondary metabolites and extracellular lytic enzymes produced by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* in inhibition of *Rhizoctonia solani*, the rice sheath blight pathogen. Microbiol Res 159:73–81

Nakashima KI, Watanabe H, Azuma JI (2002) Cellulase genes form the parabasalian symbiont *Pseudotrichonympha grassii* in the hindgut of the wood feeding termite *Coptotermes formosanus*. Cell Mol Life Sci 59:1554–1560

Nardi JB, Mackie RI, Dawson JO (2002) Could microbial symbionts of arthropod guts contribute significantly to nitrogen fixation in terrestrial ecosystem? J Insect Physiol 48:751–763

Nolte DJ (1977) The action of locustor. J Insect Physiol 23:899–903

O'Neill SL, Giordano R, Colbert AME, Karr TL, Robertson HM (1992) 16 S rRNA phylogenetic analysis of the bacterial endosymbionts associated with cytoplasmic instability in insects. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89:2699–2702

Olivier KM, Russell NA, Moran NA, Hunter MS (2003) Facultative bacterial symbionts in aphids confer resistance to parasitic wasp. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:1803–1807

Oppert B, Kramer KJ, Beeman RW, Johnson D, McGaughey WH (1997) Proteinase-mediated insect resistance to *Bacillus thuringiensis* toxins. J Biol Chem 272:23473–23476

Piel J (2002) A polyketide synthase-peptide synthetase gene cluster from an uncultured bacterial symbiont of *Paederus* beetles. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99:14002–14007

Richards FF (1993) An approach to reducing arthropod vector competence. ASM News 59:509–514

Santo-Domingo JW, Kaufman MG, Klug MJ, Holben WE, Haris D, Tiedje JM (1998) Influence of diet on the structure and function of the bacterial hindgut community of crickets. Mol Ecol 7:761–767

Santos AV, Dillon RJ, Dillon VM, Reynolds SE, Samuels RI (2004) Occurrence of the antibiotic producing bacterium *Burkholderia* sp. in colonies of the leaf-cutting ant *Atta sexdens rubropilosa*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 239:319–323

Shigenobu S, Watanabe H, Hattori M, Sasaki Y, Ishikawa H (2000) Genome sequence of the endocellular bacterial symbiont of aphids *Buchnera* sp. APS. Nature 407:81–86

Sittenfeld A, Uribe-Lorío L, Mora M, Nielson V, Arrieta G, Janzen DH (2002) Does a polyphagous caterpillar have the same gut microbiota when feeding on different species of food plants? Rev Biol Trop 50:547–560

Spiteller D, Dettner K, Boland W (2000) Gut bacteria may be involved in interactions between plants, herbivores and their predators: microbial biosynthesis of *N*-acylglutamine surfactants as elicitors of plant volatiles. Biol Chem 381:755–762

Swain MR, Ray RC (2007) Biocontrol and other beneficial activities of *Bacillus subtilis* isolated from cowdung microflora. Microbiol Res 164:121–130

Takatsuka J, Kunimi Y (1998) Replication of *Bacillus thuringiensis* in larvae of the mediterranean flour moth, *Ephestia kuehniella* (Lepidoptera: Pyralidae): growth, sporulation and insecticidal activity of parasporal crystals. Appl Entomol Zool 33:479–486

Takatsuka J, Kunimi Y (2000) Intestinal bacteria affect growth of *Bacillus thuringiensis* in larvae of the oriental tea tortrix, *Homona magnanima* Diakonoff (Lepidoptera: Tortricidae). J Invertebr Pathol 76:222–226

Thibout E, Guillot JF, Ferary S, Limouzin P, Auger J (1995) Origin and identification of bacteria which produce kairomones in the frass of *Acrolepiopsis assectella* (Lepidoptera: Hyponomeutoidea). Experientia 51:1073–1073

Thimm T, Hoffmann A, Borkott H, Munch JN, Tebbe CC (1998) The gut of the soil microarthropod *Folsomia candida* (Collembola) is a frequently changeable but selective habitat and a vector for microorganisms. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:2660–2669

Welburn SC, Maudlin I (1991) Rickettsia-like organism, puparial temperature and susceptibility to trypanosome infection in *Glossina morsitans*. Parasitology 102:201–206

Welburn SC, Maudlin I (1999) Tsetse-trypanosome interactions: rites of passage. Parasitol Today 15:399–403

Welburn SC, Arnold K, Maudlin I, Gooday GW (1993) Rickettsia like organisms and chitinase production in relation to transmission of trypanosomes by tsetse flies. Parasitology 107:141–145

Wernegreen JJ (2002) Genome evolution in bacterial endosymbionts of insects. Nat Genet 3:850–861

Wigglesworth VB (1929) Digestion in the tsetse-fly: a study of structure and function. Parasitology 21:288–291

Wilcox JL, Dunbar HE, Wolfinger RD, Moran NA (2003) Consequences of reductive evolution for gene expression in an obligate endosymbiont. Mol Microbiol 48:1491–1500

Wilson GR, Benoit TG (1993) Alkaline pH activated *Bacillus thuringiensis* spores. J Invert Pathol 62:87–89

Winicur S, Mitchell HK (1974) Chitinase activity during *Drosophila* development. J Insect Physiol 20:1795–1805

Xiang H, Wei GH, Jia S, Huang J, Miao XX, Zhou Z, Zhao LP, Huang YP (2006) Microbial communities in the larval midgut of laboratory and field populations of cotton bollworm (*Helicoverpa armigera*). Can J Microbiol 52:1085–1092

Yu SJ (1992) Detection and biochemical characterization of insecticide resistance in fall armyworm (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae). J Econ Entomol 85:675–682

Zacharuk RY (1976a) Penetration of the cuticular layers of elaterid larvae (Coleoptera) by fungus *Metarizium anisopliae* and notes on a bacterial invasion. J Invertebr Pathol 21:101–106

Zacharuk RY (1976b) Structural changes of the cuticle associated with moulting. In: Hepburn HR (ed) The insect integument. Elsevier Scientific Publishing Co., New York, pp 299–321

Chapter 15
Potentials for Biological Control of Plant Diseases by *Lysobacter* spp., with Special Reference to Strain SB-K88

Md. Tofazzal Islam

15.1 Introduction

Our ability to provide adequate pest control to increase crop yields and reduce land requirements cannot pace with the growing demand of the world's population using conventional agriculture. This has led to higher chemical inputs to control insect pests and plant diseases (Agrios 1997). Consequently, this has placed an undue burden on the planet's ecosystems. The costs associated with the rapid development of modern pesticides include environmental contamination, unpredicted human health consequences, and deleterious effects on wildlife and other nontargeted organisms in the food chain (Carson 1962). The realization that sustainable industrial processes must be compatible with environmental concerns has developed into the philosophy of Green Chemistry. Biological control of plant pests represents a natural overlap between sustainable agriculture and green chemistry (Baker 1987; Bais et al. 2004; Harman et al. 2004; Islam et al. 2005a, b; Haas and Defago 2005).

Biological control has been developed as an academic discipline since 1970s and is now a mature science (Baker 1987; Weller et al. 2002). Most broadly, it can be defined as the suppression of damaging activities on one organism by one or more other organisms, often referred to as natural enemies. However, member of the US National Research Council took into account modern biotechnological developments and referred to biological control "as the use of undesirable organisms and to favor desirable organisms such as crops, beneficial insects, and microorganisms." The organism that suppresses the pest or pathogen is referred to as the biological control agent (BCA). Biological control of notorious plant pathogens by plant-associated beneficial bacteria has been considered as a safe, cost-effective, and an alternative strategy to the synthetic chemical pesticides

M.T. Islam (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, Bangabandhu Sheikh Mujibur Rahman Agricultural University, Gazipur 1706, Bangladesh
e-mail: tofazzalislam@yahoo.com

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9_15,

(Whipps 2001; Schmalenberger and Tebbe 2003; Haas and Defago 2005). A large body of literature indicated that bacterial genera such as *Bacillus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Agrobacterium*, *Streptomyces*, and *Burkholderia* can suppress plant diseases through antibiosis, high plant colonization, competition for nutrients, hyperparasitism, and induced systemic resistance (Heungens and Parke 2000; Gardner and Fravel 2002; Hogan and Kolter 2002; Haas and Defago 2005; Islam et al. 2005a, b; Deora et al. 2006; Islam 2008).

The species of the genus *Lysobacter* have ability to lyse other microorganisms, including fungi, peronosporomycetes, and nematodes (Christensen and Cook 1978; Tsfasman et al. 2007). They uniquely display a number of traits that distinguish them from other taxonomically and ecologically related microorganisms, such as (1) show gliding motility (Christensen and Cook 1978; Lin and McBride 1996; McBride 2001; Sullivan et al. 2003; Islam et al. 2005a, b) (2) possess high genomic G + C content generally ranging from 65 to 72%; and (3) lack flagella but contain polar brush-like fimbriae (Islam et al. 2005b). This genus have gained broad interest for several reasons such as (1) rich source for production of a variety of novel antibiotics, such as lysobactins or katanosins (Bonner et al. 1988; O'Sullivan et al. 1988), cephabacins (Harada et al. 1984; Demirev et al. 2006; Lee et al. 2008), tripropeptins (Hashizume et al. 2001, 2004a, b), and macrocylic lactams such as xanthobaccins (Hashidoko et al. 1999; Nakayama et al. 1999; Yu et al. 2007); (2) production of a wide variety of extracellular cell wall degrading enzymes such as β-lytic proteases (Epstein and Wensink 1988; Ahmed et al. 2003), endopeptidase (Wright et al. 1998; Muranova et al. 2004), keratinases (Allpress et al. 2002), β-1,3 glucanases (Palumbo et al. 2003), cellulase (Ogura et al. 2006), and lysoamidase (Riazanova et al. 2005); (3) ability to suppress plant diseases and colonize plant surfaces (Martin 2002; Islam et al. 2004a, 2005b; Islam 2008, 2010); and (4) exhibition of wolf-pack-like micropredatory behavior (Martin 2002; Islam 2010). Some of these unique features of *Lysobacter* spp. are advantageous for using them as BCAs against phytopathogens. Meanwhile, some strains of *Lysobacter* spp. have been reported as effective agents for biocontrol of fungal, bacterial, nematode, and peronosporomycetal diseases in plants (Zhang et al. 2001; Folman et al. 2004; Islam et al. 2005a, b; Kobayashi et al. 2005; Ji et al. 2008). As the genus *Lysobacter* has close similarities to *Xanthomonas* and *Stenotrophomonas*, they were often erroneously identified as *Xanthomonas* or *Stenotrophomonas* sp. by morphological and biochemical tests (Homma et al. 1997; Hashidoko et al. 1999; Nakayama et al. 1999; Zhang and Yuen 1999; Sullivan et al. 2003; Islam et al. 2005a). However, recent development of molecular techniques for identification of bacteria makes it possible to place wrongly identified *Lysobacter* spp. phylogenetically in right place (Nijhuis et al. 2010; Yin 2010) and also easily identify new species in very high numbers (Sullivan et al. 2003; Islam et al. 2005b; Tindall and Euzéby 2006; Kawamura et al. 2009; Aslam et al. 2009; Postma et al. 2010). As a result, more than nine new species have been discovered in the last couple of years and many more new species will be identified in the near future (please see Table 15.1).

Although 23 *Lysobacter* species have already been identified, only a few of them have been tested for their biocontrol efficacy (Nakayama et al. 1999;

Table 15.1 Species/strains of *Lysobacter* spp. isolated from various sources in the environment

Species/strain	Source	References
Lysobacter brunescens	Water	Christensen and Cook (1978)
L. enzymogenes C3	Turf grass leaf surface (grass foliage)	Kobayashi and El-Barrad (1996)
L. enzymogenes 3.1T8	Root tips of hydroponic cucumber plants	Folman et al. (2003)
Lysobacter sp. SB-K88	Rhizoplane of sugar beet	Homma et al. (1993)
L. antibioticus	Rhizosphere of rice	Ji et al. (2008)
L. lactamgenus YK90	Soil	Ono et al. (1984)
L. enzymogenes N4-7	Agric soil	Kobayashi and El-Barrad (1996)
L. concretionis Ko07	Anaerobic sludge blanket reactor of waste water	Bae et al. (2005)
L. daejeonensis	Greenhouse soils	Weon et al. (2006)
L. yangpyeongensis	Greenhouse soils	Weon et al. (2006)
L. koreensis	Ginseng field	Lee et al. (2006a)
L. defulvii	Municipal solid waste	Yassin et al. (2007)
L. niabensis	Greenhouse soils	Weon et al. (2007)
L. niastensis		
L. spongiicola KMM329	Deep-sea sponge	Romanenko et al. (2008)
L. capsici	Rhizosphere of pepper	Park et al. (2008)
L. gummosus	Skin surface of salamander (amphibian)	Brucker et al. (2008)
L. antibioticus HS124	Rhizosphere	Ko et al. (2009)
L. ximonensis	Soil	Wang et al. (2009)
L. oryzae	Rhizosphere of rice	Aslam et al. (2009)
L. dokdonensis	Soil	Oh et al. (2010)
L. ruishenii	Contaminated soils	Wang et al. (2010)
L. penacitarrae	Soil of ginseng field	Ten et al. (2009)
Lysobacter sp. strain OC7	Sea water	Maeda et al. (2009)
L. xinjiangensis	Gamma-irradiated sand soil	Liu et al. (2010)
Lysobacter sp. E4	Soil	Iwata et al. (2010)
L. soli	Ginseng field soil	Srinivasan et al. (2009)
L. enzymogenes OH11	Rhizosphere of green pepper	Qian et al. (2009)
L. daecheongensis	Sediment stream	Ten et al. (2008)
Lysobacter sp.	Rhizosphere of coastal sun dune plants	Lee et al. (2006b)
L. korlensis *L. bugurensis*	Arid soils	Zhang et al. (2010)

Zhang et al. 2001; Folman et al. 2001, 2003; Islam et al. 2005a; Ji et al. 2008). Among them, two strains, namely, *L. enzymogenes* strain C3 (Zhang and Yuen 1999; Yuen and Zhang 2001; Zhang and Yuen 2000; Zhang et al. 2001; Palumbo et al. 2003, 2005; Kilic-Ekici and Yuen 2003, 2004) and *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 (Homma et al. 1993, 1997; Nakayama et al. 1999; Islam et al. 2004a, 2005b, Islam 2008, 2010) have been studied extensively. Both these strains have shown high promise as biocontrol of fungal and peronosporomycetal plant diseases. *Lysobacter*

spp. have also been found in disease-suppressive soils and a correlation between the abundance of *Lysobacter* spp. and disease suppression has been claimed (Postma et al. 2008, 2010). The mechanism of biocontrol of plant diseases by *Lysobacter* spp. has not been fully elucidated (Islam et al. 2005a; Islam 2008, 2010). However, several lines of evidence suggest that they exert antagonistic effects toward phytopathogens through secretion of novel antibiotics (Kato et al. 1997; Hashidoko et al. 1999; Nakayama et al. 1999; Folman et al. 2003; Islam et al. 2005a, b; Yu et al. 2007) and lytic enzymes (Zhang and Yuen 2000; Zhang et al. 2001; Palumbo et al. 2003), high plant colonization (Islam et al. 2004a, 2005b), induction of systemic resistance in host plants (Kilic-Ekici and Yuen 2003, 2004), hyperparasitism involving type III, IV, and VI secretion systems (Reedy and Kobayashi 2003; Blackmoore et al. 2009; Patel et al. 2009), and exhibition of micropredatory behaviors (Islam 2010).

Considerable interests have been given in recent years to the genus *Lysobacter* as new members of BCAs, which advances our understanding on ecology, behavior, and mode of action of these potential bacterial BCAs. A recent review titled "*Stenotophomonas* and *Lysobacter*: ubiquitous plant-associated γ-proteobacteria of developing significance in applied microbiology" has recently been published (Hayword et al. 2010). This review surveys the advances of research on biocontrol of plant diseases by bacterial antagonists *Lysobacter* spp., with special reference to *Lysobacter* sp. strain SB-K88. Mode of antagonism and potential use of *Lysobacter* spp. as biological control agents of plant diseases are also discussed.

15.2 Habitat and Taxonomic Position

Christensen and Cook proposed that *Lysobacter* spp. are ubiquitous inhabitants in soil and water (Christensen and Cook 1978). Literature survey revealed that strains of *Lysobacter* were found in diverse environment in different parts of the world, including sugar beet rhizoplane in Hokkaido, Japan (Homma et al. 1993); Kentucky blue grass foliage in Nebraska, USA (Giesler and Yuen 1998); root tips of hydroponics cultured cucumber in the Netherlands (Folman et al. 2003); groundwater of a basement tile drain in Michigan, USA (Sullivan et al. 2003); plant rhizosphere soils in China (Jiang et al. 2005); Kartchner Caverns limestone cave in Arizona, USA (Ikner et al. 2007); soils of ginseng field near Daechung lake in Korea (Lee et al. 2006a); greenhouse soils of Daejeon and Yangpyeong regions in Korea (Weon et al. 2006); deep-sea sponge in Philippines (Romanenko et al. 2008); arid soils in northwest China (Zhang et al. 2010); and rhizosphere soils of rice in Korea (Aslam et al. 2009). A list of *Lysobacter* strains and their sources of isolation is given in Table 15.1.

Lysobacter as an independent genus was first proposed by Christensen and Cook in 1978 with four species, namely, *L. enzymogenes*, *L. antibioticus*, *L. brunescens*,

and *L. gummosus*, where *L. enzymogenes* is the typed species. Originally grouped with myxobacteria, the genus *Lysobacter* belongs to the family Xanthomonadaceae within the γ-proteobacteria under the order Xanthomonadales and family Xanthomonadaceae that includes 23 named species so far (Table 15.1). However, this genus is phylogenetically related to the genera of *Xanthomonas*, *Stenotrophomonas*, *Pseudoxanthomonas*, *Thermonas*, and *Xylella*. *Lysobacter* spp. differ from these related species by some unique features such as (1) no flagella but show gliding motility; (2) high G + C contents generally ranging from 65 to 72%; (3) oxidase activity; (4) 28°C optimum growing temperature; and (5) varying cell length (2–70 mm). Recently, a new order and a family, Lysobacterales and Lysobacteraceae, respectively, have been proposed for the *Lysobacter*.

Kingdom: Bacteria
Phylum: Proteobacteria
Class: Gammaproteobacteria
Order: Xanthomonadales/Lysobacterales
Family: Xanthomonadaceae/Lysobacteraceae
Genus: *Lysobacter*
Typed species: *Lysobacter enzymogenes*

Recently, several closely related species under the genus *Lysobacter* have been found in clay soils cultivated with different crops in the Netherlands (Postma et al. 2010). DNA fingerprinting and phenotypic characterization revealed that there were considerable diversification and niche differentiation among the strains belonging to *L. capsici*. The *L. capsici* strains strongly inhibit *Rhizoctonia solani* AG-2 and originate from *Rhizoctonia*-suppressive soils where also population of *L. antibioticus* and *L. gummmosus* was present. These results confirmed the presence of combined populations of closely related *Lysobacter* spp. within agricultural soils (Postma et al. 2010). *Lysobacter* spp. have also been found in extreme environmental conditions. For example, *L. xinjiangenesis* has been isolated from abandoned gold mine in the gamma-irradiated sandy soils in Xinjiang in China (Liu et al. 2010). This species is a moderately thermotolerant and alkalitolerant bacterium (Liu et al. 2010). Similarly, a chlorothalonil degrading bacterium, *L. ruishenii* strain CTN-1T, was isolated from a long-term chlorothalonil-contaminated soil in China (Wang et al. 2010). On the other hand, *L. spongiicola* KMM329 (Romanenko et al. 2008) and *L. gummosus* (Brucker et al. 2008) were isolated from deep-sea sponge and the skin surface of salamander (amphibian), respectively. Although small in number in comparison to other bacteria, *Lysobacter* spp. is distributed widely in diverse environments (Yin 2010). *L. gummosus* isolated with other bacteria has recently known to produce polyhydroxyalkanoates in the rhizosphere of sugar beet (Gasser et al. 2009). A novel nitrogen-fixing *Lysobacter* sp. strain E4 has been isolated from soil, which can accumulate high amounts of ammonium (~1.6 mM NH_4^+) in culture broth containing glucose as energy source (Iwata et al. 2010). These findings suggest that *Lysobacter* spp. are cosmopolitan and they inhabit in quite versatile environments.

15.3 Suppression of Plant Diseases by *Lysobacter* spp.

Lysobacter spp. suppress growth of the fungi, peronosporomycetes, unicellular algae, bacteria, and nematodes by secreting various lytic enzymes and/or antibiotics (Christensen and Cook 1978; Nakayama et al. 1999; Folman et al. 2003; Islam et al. 2005b). Suppression of both soil-borne and foliar plant diseases by some strains of *Lysobacter* spp. has been demonstrated by many reports (Homma et al. 1993; Kobayashi and El-Barrad 1996; Giesler and Yuen 1998; Zhang and Yuen 1999; Nakayama et al. 1999; Yuen et al. 2001; Folman et al. 2003, 2004; Islam et al. 2004a, 2005a, b; Islam 2008, 2010; Kobayashi et al. 2005; Kobayashi and Yuen 2005; Ji et al. 2008; Qian et al. 2009) (Table 15.1). Among them, only two strains, namely, *L. enzymogenes* strains C3 and *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 have extensively been studied for their biocontrol efficacy against several economically important plant diseases. Other species or strains that have shown biocontrol efficacy against plant diseases include *L. enzymogenes* strain 3.1T8 (Folman et al. 2003, 2004; Postma et al. 2008), *L. antibioticus* strain HS124 (Ko et al. 2009), and *L. enzymogenes* OH11 (Qian et al. 2009).

15.3.1 Suppression of Plant Diseases by *Lysobacter enzymogenes* Strain C3

On isolation from the leaf surface of turfgrass, the *L. enzymogenes* strain C3 suppresses many important plant diseases, including brown patch disease on tall fescue caused by *R. solani* (Giesler and Yuen 1998); bean rust caused by *Bipolaris sorokiniana* (Zhang and Yuen 1999, 2000; Yuen et al. 2001; Kilic-Ekici and Yuen 2004); Fusarium head blight of wheat by *Fusarium graminearum* (Yuen et al. 2003; Jochum et al. 2006), damping-off disease sugar beet by *Pythium ultimum* (Kobayashi et al. 2005; Palumbo et al. 2005); common bean rust caused by *Uromyces appendiculatus* (Yuen et al. 2001); and summer patch of Kentucky bluegrass by *Magnaporthe poae* (Kobayashi and El-Barrad 1996; Kobayashi and Yuen 2005). This strain (C3) also showed antagonistic effects against several species of nematodes including *Caenorhabditis elegans*, *Heterodera schachtii*, *Meloidogyne javanica*, *Pratylenchus penetrans*, and *Aphelenchoides fragariae* (Chen et al. 2006).

Exposure of *C. elegans* to strain C3 on agar resulted in almost complete elimination of egg production and death of 94% of hatched juveniles after 2 days. Similarly, hatch of *H. schachtii* eggs was about 50% on a lawn of strain C3 on agar as compared to 80% on a lawn of *Escherichia coli*. Juveniles that hatched on a lawn of strain C3 on agar died due to disintegration of the cuticle and body contents. *M. javanica* juveniles died after 4 days exposure to a 7-days-old chitin broth culture of strain C3. Immersion of *A. fragariae*, *M. javanica*, and *P. penetrans* juveniles and adults in a nutrient broth culture of *L. enzymogenes* strain C3 led to rapid death and disintegration of the nematodes. *L. enzymogenes* strain C3 cultures also caused

rapid immobilization of *H. schachtii* juveniles in nutrient broth and completely lysed after 3 days coincubation. These results suggest that antibiotics and enzymes produced by strain C3 are active against a range of nematode species (Katznelson et al. 1964; Chen et al. 2006). Other strains of biocontrol *Lysobacter* spp. are also needed to be tested for their biocontrol performances against phytopathogenic nematodes.

15.3.2 *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 Suppresses Damping-Off Diseases

Lysobacter sp. strain SB-K88 was isolated from the fibrous roots of sugar beet cultivated in Hokkaido Prefecture of Japan (Homma et al. 1993, 1997). The SB-K88 showed antimicrobial activities against many fungi and peronosporomycetes but were practically inactive against bacteria (Nakayama et al. 1999; Islam et al. 2005b) (Fig. 15.1). Application of SB-K88 as seed inoculants gave suppression of rhizomania of sugar beet (Homma et al. 1993) and damping-off diseases in sugar beet and spinach caused by *Pythium* sp. (Nakayama et al. 1999) and *Aphanomyces cochlioides* (Islam et al. 2004a, 2005b). The tetramic acid-containing macrocyclic lactam antibiotics, xanthobaccins produced by this strain have been found equally effective in the suppression of damping-off disease in sugar beet at less than micromolar concentration (Nakayama et al. 1999; Islam et al. 2004a, 2005b). In greenhouse conditions, sugar beet and spinach seedlings from seeds previously inoculated with SB-K88 (ca. 10^9 CFU/ml) were protected from damping-off disease almost equivalent to those of commercial fungicides (Islam et al. 2005b). However, a large-scale field experiment is needed for assessing practical use of this bacterial strain as biocontrol agent against damping-off diseases in sugar beet and spinach.

15.3.3 Disease Suppression by *L. enzymogenes* Strain 3.1T8 and Others

Folman et al. (2003, 2004) demonstrated that *L. enzymogenes* 3.1T8 suppresses root and crown rot diseases in cucumber plants grown in hydroponics. However, efficacy of the biocontrol of cucumber disease by this strain was somewhat unstable (Folman et al. 2003). Recently, biological control of *Pythium aphanidermatum* in cucumber grown in recirculating nutrient solution in the greenhouse was successfully achieved with the combined application of *L. enzymogenes* strain 3.1 T8 and chitosan (Postma et al. 2009). Application of strain 3.1T8 in combination with chitosan (the decayed derivative of chitin) reduced the member of diseased plants by 50–100% in four independent experiments relative to *Pythium* control. Application of chitosan or the bacterial inoculant alone was not effective. Washed bacterial cells plus chitosan inhibited *Pythium*-induced disease, but the supernatant without bacterial cells

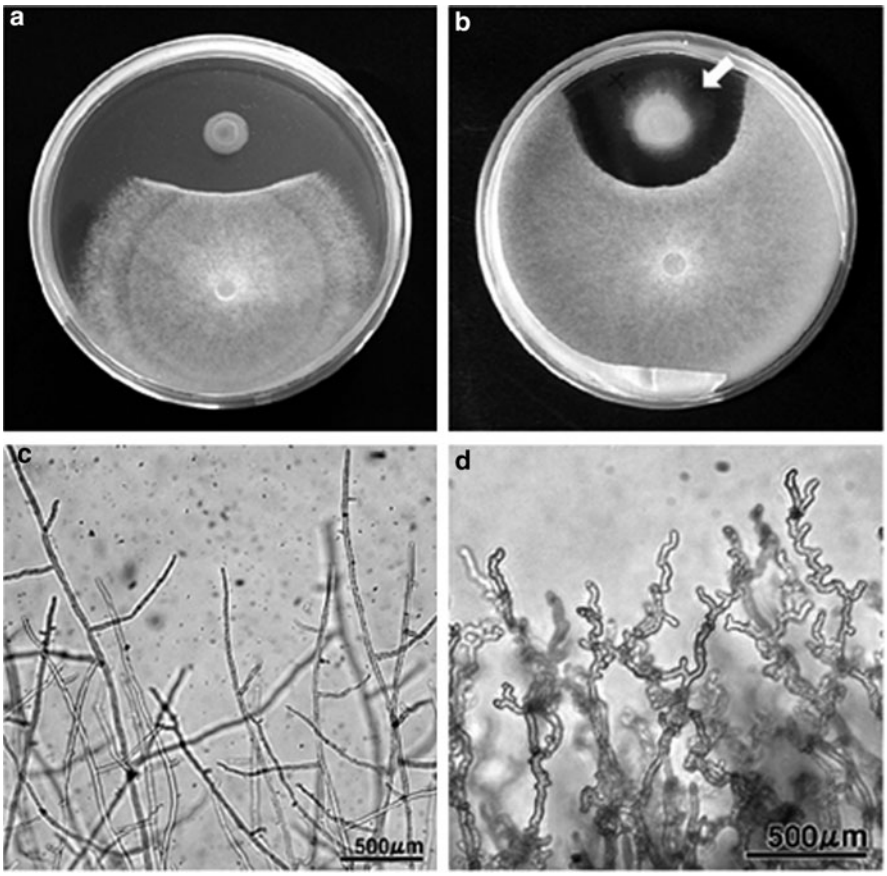


Fig. 15.1 In vitro interactions between *Lysobacter* sp. strain SB-K88 and *A. cochlioides* AC-5 in a dual culture on PDA (Islam et al. 2005). (**a**) Inhibition of AC-5 mycelial growth in the presence of SB-K88 (4 days). (**b**) Gliding motility of SB-K88 (*arrow*) on PDA (10 days) and changes in the hyphal density at the edge of the AC-5 colony. (**c**) Normal hyphal growth in a control. (**d**) Curly growth of AC-5 hyphae approaching an SB-K88 colony

combined with chitosan was not effective. Application of chitosan at the range of 0.1 and 0.03 g/plant resulted in the highest numbers of *L. enzymogenes* 3.1 T8 present in roots, i.e., 10^8–10^9 cells/g root (Postma et al. 2009). These results suggest that chitosan enhances the biocontrol efficacy of *L. engymogenes* 3.1 T8. The efficacy of oligochitosan on plant disease control has been reported (Yin et al. 2010).

L. antibioticus, which was isolated from the rhizosphere of rice, suppresses bacterial leaf blight of rice caused by *Xanthomonas oryzae* (Ji et al. 2008). Another strain (HS124) of the same species displayed suppression of late blight disease in pepper caused by *Phytophthora capsici* (Ko et al. 2009). Postma et al. (2009) claimed a correlation between the presence of *Lysobacter* spp. in disease-suppressive soils and suppression of fungal diseases. A bunch of new species of *Lysobacter*

Table 15.2 Suppression of plant diseases by species/strains of *Lysobacter*

Species/strain	Source	Suppression of disease	Name of pathogen	References
Lysobacter enzymogenes C3	Turf grass leaf surface (grass foliage)	Leaf spot of tall fescue Bean rust Fusarium head blight of wheat Brown patch of turfgrass Damping-off of sugar beet Summer patch of Kentucky bluegrass	*Bipolaris sorokiniana* *Uromyces appendiculatus* *Fasarium* sp. *Rhizoctonia solani* *Pythium ultimum* *Magnaporthe poae*	Kobayashi et al. (1996) Zhang and Yuen (1999) Yuen et al. (2001) Jochum et al. (2006) Giesler and Yuen (1998) Kobayashi et al. (2005) Kobayashi and Yuen (2005)
L. enzymogenes 3.1T8	Root tips of cucumber	Root and crown rot of cucumber	*Pythium aphanidermatum*	Folman et al. (2003, 2004)
Lysobacter sp. SB-K88	Rhizosphere of sugar beet	Rhizomania of sugar beet Damping-off of spinach and sugar beet	*Pythium* sp. *Rhizoctonia solani* and *Aphanomyces cochlioides*	Homma et al. (1997) Nakayama et al. (1999) Islam et al. (2004b, 2005a, b, 2008, 2010) Islam (2008, 2010)
L. antibioticus	Rhizosphere of rice	Bacterial leaf blight of rice	*Xanthomonas oryzae*	Ji et al. (2008)
L. antibioticus HS124	Rhizosphere	Late blight of pepper	*Phytophthora capsici*	Ko et al. (2009)
L. enzymogenes OH11	Rhizosphere of green pepper	Damping-off and root rot diseases	*Rhizoctonia solani* *Sclerotinia* sp.	Qian et al. (2009)

have been discovered in the last couple of years (Table 15.1); some of them might have potentials for biocontrol of plant diseases (Table 15.2). A comparative study including all known species of *Lysobacter* is needed to clarify their diversity in the production of antimicrobial compounds and suppression of phytopathogens.

15.4 General Active Principle and Mechanisms of Disease Suppression

The widely recognized mechanisms of biocontrol mediated by plant growth promoting rhizobacteria are competition for an ecological niche or a substrate, production of inhibitory allelochemicals (such as enzymes and antibiotics), and induction

of systemic resistance in host plants to a broad-spectrum of pathogens and/or abiotic stresses. This section reviews the advances of the active principle and mechanisms of disease suppression by the biocontrol bacteria *Lysobacter* spp.

15.4.1 Secretion of Lytic Enzymes as Mean of Biocontrol

Many bacteria including *Lysobacter* spp. produce and secrete lytic enzymes that can hydrolyze a wide variety of polymeric compounds, including chitin, proteins, cellulose, hemicellulose, glucans, and DNA. Secretions of cell wall degrading enzymes by BCAs often result in the suppression of plant diseases. Production and secretion of a wide variety of lytic enzymes is one of the important systems contributing to broad-spectrum antagonism of *Lysobacter*. Proteases, chitinases, glucanases, endopeptidase, lipases, lysoamidase, phospholipases, keratinases, lactamases, and phosphatases produced by *Lysobacter* can degrade cell wall of many phytopathogens (von Tigerstrom 1980, 1984; von Tigerstrom and Stelmaschuk 1987; Au et al. 1991; Boras et al. 1993; Chohnan et al. 2002, 2004; Allpress et al. 2002; Ahmed et al. 2003; Palumbo et al. 2005). For example, a β-1,3-glucanase contributes significantly to biocontrol activities of *L. enzymogenes* strain C3 against fungal and peronosporomycetal diseases (Palumbo et al. 2005). Proteases were the earliest recognized enzymes that were thought to be responsible for biocontrol of nematodes (Katznelson et al. 1964). Proteases were also active against some gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (Ensign and Wolfe 1966). However, it is unclear how much of the lytic enzyme activity that can be detected in the natural environment represents specific response to microbe–microbe interactions. Survey of literature revealed that *Lysobacter* and Myxobacteria are known to produce copious amounts of lytic enzymes and thus some of them have been known to be effective in suppressing fungal, peronosporomycetal, and bacterial plant pathogens (Kobayashi and El-Barrad 1996; Bull et al. 2002; Stepnaia et al. 2004).

Palumbo et al. (2003) have characterized three β-1,3-glucanase genes (*gluA*, *gluB*, and *gluC* genes) of *L. enzymogenes* N4-7 at molecular level. In fact, strain N4-7 produces multiple biochemically distinct extracellular β-1,3-glucanase enzymes (Holtman 1998). Suppression of late blight disease in pepper through secretion of lytic enzymes such as chitinase, β-1,3-glucanase, lipase, and protease in concert with the release of antibiotic compound 4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid by *L. antibioticus* strain HS124 has also been demonstrated (Ko et al. 2009). In vivo experiments in the greenhouse revealed that the growth of pepper plants treated with *L. antibioticus* culture was enhanced, resulting in greater protection from the blight disease. Optimum growth and protection was achieved when culture were grown in the presence of Fe (III). Additionally, the activities of pathogenesis-related proteins such as chitinase and β-1,3-glucanase decreased in roots, but increased in leaves with time after treatment compared to control.

15.4.2 Antibiosis as a Means of Biocontrol

Besides enzyme activity, antibiotics produced and secreted by *Lysobacter* are also thought to play significant role in the biological control of plant diseases. A broad-spectrum phenazine antibiotic, myxin, produced by a strain of *Lysobacter* (which was classified as *Sorangium*), has been reported in the mid-1970s (Peterson et al. 1966). *Lysobacter* spp. produce diverse antibiotics with novel mode of actions. Christensen (2001) isolated and identified a broad-spectrum antibiotic, namely, 1-hydroxy-6-methoxyphenazine from *L. antibioticus*. Kato and coworkers (1998) identified macrocyclic peptide antibiotics that were very active against MRSA *Staphylococcus aureus*. Similarly, a polyketide antibiotic, 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol, has been identified from a *Lysobacter* sp. isolated from the skin of salamander (*Plethodon cinereus*) (Brucker et al. 2008). Among the antibiotics isolated from *Lysobacter* spp., the tetramic acid-containing macrocyclic lactams are found predominantly in some strains that have high potential for biocontrol of plant and fungal diseases (Fig. 15.2).

15.4.2.1 Secretion of Macrocyclic Lactam Antibiotics by SB-K88

The *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 suppresses damping-off diseases in sugar beet and spinach. EtOAc extracts of culture supernatants of SB-K88 displayed potent antimicrobial activities against many fungi and peronosporomycetes. Chromatographic separation followed by spectroscopic identification revealed that SB-K88 produces at least three novel antibiotics: xanthobaccin A, B, and C (Hashidoko et al. 1999; Nakayama et al. 1999) (Fig. 15.2). The R_f values of xanthobaccin A, B, and C on silica gel thin layer plates with a solvent system $CHCl_3$–MeOH–H_2O (65:25:4) were 0.49, 0.43, and 0.67, respectively (Nakayama et al. 1999). These compounds have a characteristic 5,5,6-tricyclic skeleton and a tetramic acid chromophore (Hashidoko et al. 1999). Detailed chemical structure of xanthobaccin A has been elucidated by Hashidoko and coworkers in 1999. The plane structure of xanthobaccin A is the same as that of a known antibiotic maltophilin, which was isolated from a rhizobacterium of rape *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* R3089 (Jacobi et al. 1996). Both xanthobaccins and maltophilin belong to a group of tetramic acid-containing macrocyclic lactam antibiotics. This group of rare metabolites also includes other structures such as the marine natural products, cylindramide A (Kanazawa et al. 1993), discodermide (Gunasekera et al. 1991), and alteramide (Fig. 15.2) (Shigemori et al. 1992).

Due to the unique features and biological activities such as antibiotics, anticancer, antiprotozoal, and antioxidant activities, there have been extensive research interests in total synthesis of these scarce natural products (Boeckman et al. 1989; Cramer et al. 2005, 2006). Although the chemical structures of xanthobaccin B and C have not yet been fully elucidated, spectroscopic analyses revealed that XB-B has a hydroxyl group substitution at position 27 in the six-member ring of XB-A

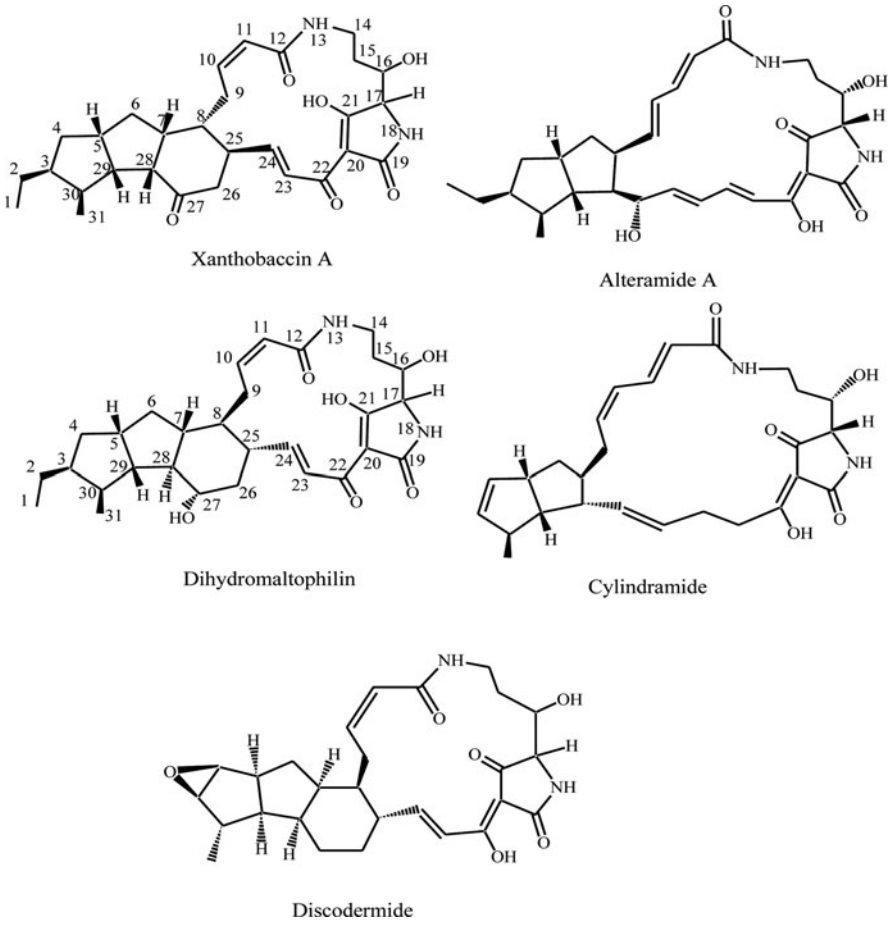


Fig. 15.2 Structure of some biologically active macrocyclic lactam antibiotics from *lysobacter* spp. and other microorganisms

(Nakayama et al. 1999). Literature survey also revealed that the structures of xanthobaccins and dihydromaltophilin (Yu et al. 2007) are closely related to the structure of ikarugamycin, an antibiotic which was produced by *Streptomyces phaeochromogenes* subsp. *ikaruganensis*. However, both xanthobaccins and maltophilin displayed potent antifungal and antiperonosporomycetal activities in vitro but no antibacterial activity, whereas ikarugamycin has been reported as an antibacterial metabolite against gram-positive bacteria (Ito and Hirata 1977). Although detailed structure–activity relationships have not yet been established, however, the differences of antimicrobial spectra of these antibiotics may be associated with the structural differences in their tricyclic skeletons.

The macrocyclic lactam antibiotics, xanthobaccins, displayed multifarious antagonistic effects against *A. cochlioides* and *Pythium* sp. In vitro dual culture

on PDA medium, SB-K88, or xanthobaccin A demonstrated *A. cochlioides* hyphal growth inhibition. Microscopic observation of *A. cochlioides* hyphae growing close to SB-K88 colonies revealed marked alterations in hyphal morphology, including excessive branching, irregular swelling, and curling of hyphal tips and loss of apical growth (Fig. 15.1) (Islam et al. 2005b). Confocal laser scanning microscopy (CLSM) using rhodamine-conjugated phalloidin revealed that excessive branching and curling of hyphae of *A. cochlioides* induced by SB-K88 are linked to the disruption of filamentous actin (F-actin) organization in the hyphal cells (Fig. 15.3) (Islam 2008). The major secreted xanthobaccin A from SB-K88 might be involved in disruption of F-actin in the *A. cochlioides* cells. However, these organizational changes of the dynamic cytoskeletal protein, actin, were reversible. The cytoskeleton is considered as a regulator and target of biotic interactions in the rhizosphere (Tekemoto and Hardham 2004). This study provides convincing evidence that a rhizoplane bacterium, *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88, has direct inhibitory effect on the growth and development of damping-off pathogen *A. cochlioides* living in the same ecosystem. This activity is attributable to a combination of cytoskeletal F-actin disruption in the zoospores and hyphal cells.

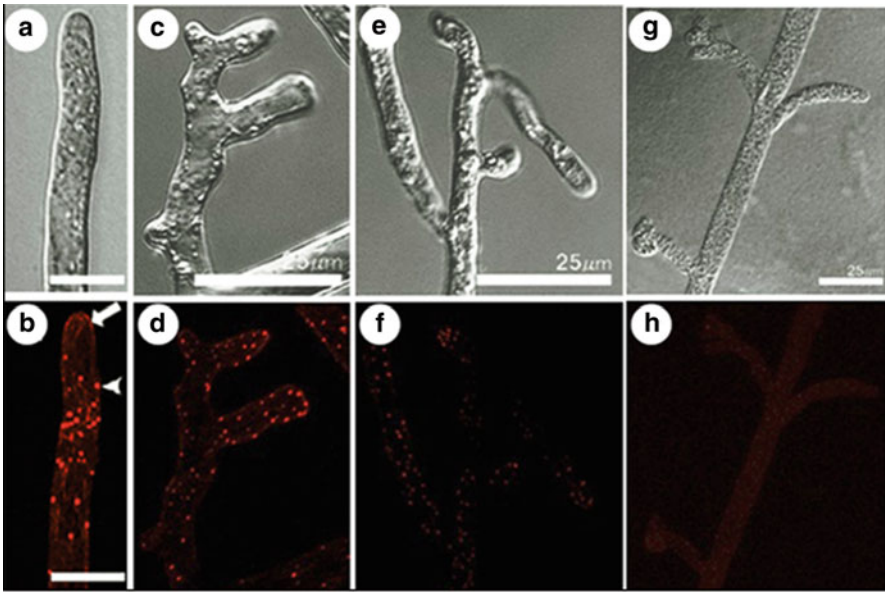


Fig. 15.3 Differential interference contrast (DIC) micrographs (**a**, **c**, **e**, **g**) and their corresponding confocal images (**b**, **d**, **f**, **h**) showing F-actin organization in control and excessively branched and curled hyphae (induced by *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88) of *Aphanomyces cochlioides* (adapted from Islam (2008)). (**b**) Normal organization of F-actin in *A. cochlioides* hyphae (control). *Arrow* and *arrowhead* indicate distinct cap (arrays only) and a plaque of F-actin, respectively. (**d**, **f**, **h**) Disorganized and disrupted F-actin in the excessively branched and curled hyphae. The plaques became smaller and the arrays were disorganized and concentrated irregularly. *Bars* in (**a**, **b**) indicate 10 μm

Disruption of cytoskeletal protein in cells of many organisms by a marine natural product, latrunculin B, has been reported (Heath et al. 2000). A parallel TEM analysis also convincingly proved that the excessive branching and curling that occurred were due to marked ultrastructural alterations, including invagination of membrane, disintegration or necrosis of cell wall, accumulation of excessive lipid bodies, enlarged electron-dense vacuoles, and disintegration of cytoplasm (Fig. 15.4) (Islam 2008). CLSM analysis revealed that the number of lipid bodies and activities of mitochondria were markedly increased in the affected hyphae as visualized by vital stains (Fig. 15.5) (Islam 2010). It is evident that these ultrastructural changes occurred in hyphal cells were largely due to the effects of secreted macrocylic lactam antibiotics, xanthobaccins in concert with lytic enzymes (Islam et al. 2005b).

Peronosporomycete phytopathogens infect plants through production of biflagellat motile zoospores (Islam et al. 2001, 2002). The zoospores are believed to locate host plants guided by host-specific signal(s) and then differentiate into round cystospores by shedding flagella (Islam and Tahara 2001; Islam et al. 2003, 2004b). The cystospores subsequently germinate to form germ tubes to invade host tissues for infection. Disruption of any stage of preinfection eliminates the chance of infection by the peronosporomycetes (West et al. 2003).

Interestingly, zoospores of a damping-off pathogen *A. cochlioides* (peronosporomycete) became immotile within 1 min after exposure to a SB-K88 cell suspension, a cell-free supernatant of SB-K88, or pure xanthobaccin A (MIC, 0.01 μg/ml) (Islam et al. 2004a, 2005b). In all cases, lysis followed in most of the spores within 30 min in the presence of the inhibiting factor(s). This low inhibitory concentration of xanthobaccin A appears within the reasonable range of an antimicrobial agent and may meet the requirements for application in rhizosphere settings (Nakayama et al. 1999). In an experiment involving SB-K88-inoculated sugar beet seeds that were germinated and grown under hydroponic conditions, the level of xanthobaccin A in the rhizosphere was estimated to be 3 μg/plant (Nakayama et al. 1999). Thus, it is possible that at the root surface the levels of dissolved xanthobaccin A are substantially higher than the MIC for *A. cochlioides* zoospore motility and survival in vitro, suggesting that the biocontrol exhibited against this pathogen is linked to the production of a *Lysobacter* sp. strain SB-K88-derived antibiotic at the root surface.

Zoospores that were halted but not lysed due to the action of lower concentration of EtOAc extracts of SB-K88 culture filtrates became round cystospores. These cystospores had diminished F-actin plaques compared to untreated control (Islam 2008). On the other hand, cystospores that were able to germinate in the presence of low concentration of EtOAc extracts or known actin inhibitor, latrunculin B, had disrupted F-actin and malformed germ tubes. As radial F-actin is known to participate in initiation and maintenance of tip formation and growth (Bachewich and Heath 1998), it is now clear that SB-K88 extracts contain actin disrupting compounds. Disruption of F-actin by several marine natural products has also been reported. For example, F-actin disruption in human cells by marine natural products such as pectenotoxin-6 (Leira et al. 2002) and okadaic acid (Fiorentini et al. 1996)

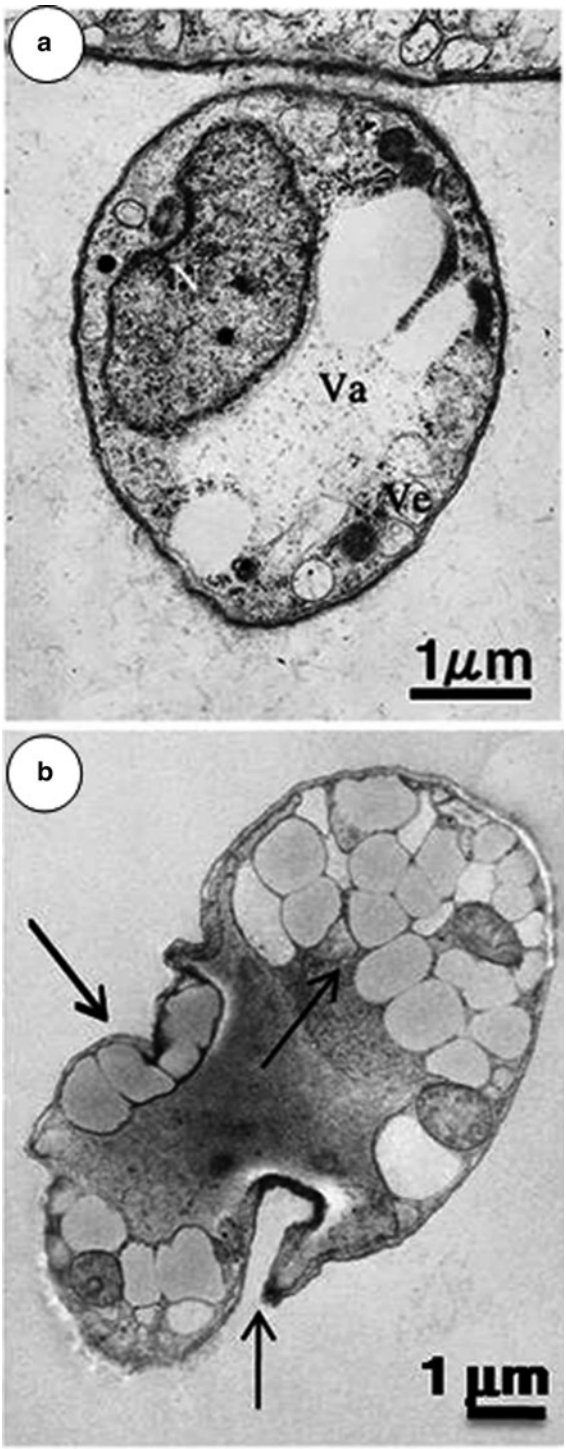


Fig. 15.4 Transmission electron micrographs of cross sections of *Aphanomyces cochlioides* AC-5 hyphae growing toward colonies of *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 at day 5 of interactions on PDA medium (adapted from Islam (2008)). (**a**) A cross section of a control hypha. (**b**) Excessive lipid bodies and cytoplasmic disintegration in a longitudinal section of the affected hyphae

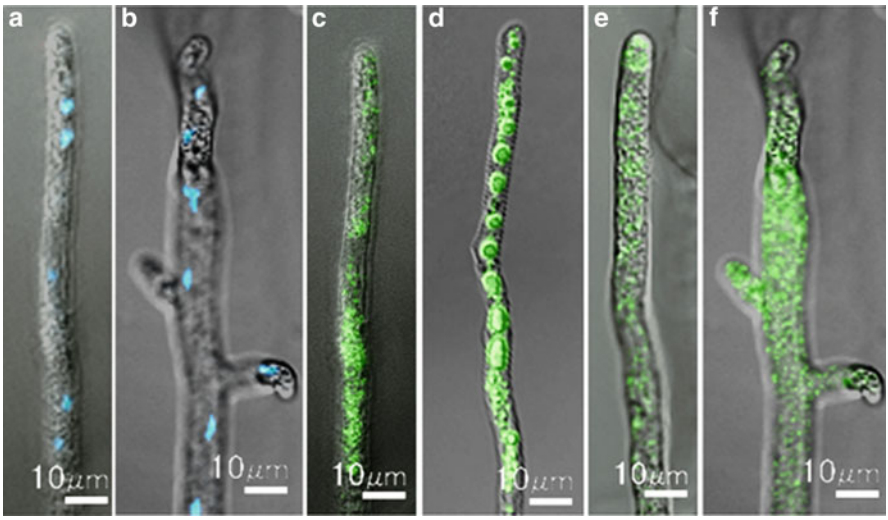


Fig. 15.5 Confocal laser scanning micrographs showing intracellular changes of nuclei, lipid bodies, and mitochondrial activity in *Apahnomyces cochlioides* hyphae challenged with *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 on PDA medium (Islam 2010). (**a**) Control hypha, nuclei oval-shaped. (**b**) Affected hypha with nuclei spindle-shaped. (**c**) Control hypha with lipid bodies organized into the cytoplasm. (**d**) Affected hypha with lipid bodies sank into the vacuoles. (**e**) Control hypha, mitochondrial density lower. (**f**) Affected hypha with higher mitochondrial density near the affected area

has also been reported. Further bioassay-guided chromatographic separation and spectroscopic identification of F-actin disrupting molecule(s) secreted from SB-K88 are needed. Cocultivation of *A. cochlioides* and SB-K88 in liquid broth medium revealed that SB-K88 substantially inhibited growth and decomposed AC-5 mycelia and suppressed release of zoospores. The excised root tips of sugar beet seedlings were less attractive to AC-5 zoospores (Islam 2010). However, mechanism of this deleterious effect to phytopathogen is poorly understood.

15.4.2.2 Antibiosis as Mode of Action of Biocontrol by *L. enzymogenes* Strain C3 and Others

An analogue of xanthobaccins, dihydromaltophilin, has recently been identified as a heat stable antibiotic factor (HSAF) from another extensively studied biocontrol bacterium *L. enzymogenes* strain C3 (Yu et al. 2007; Li et al. 2008). The HSAF is a colorless powder. HR-EI-MS of HSAF gave an *m*/*z* 513.2954 for $[M\ (C_{29}H_4O_6N_2) + H]^+$ (calculated 513.2959). This compound exhibits a wide range of antifungal activities and shows a novel mode of action by disrupting the biosynthesis of a distinct group of sphingolipids (Giesler and Yuen 1998). Bioassay revealed that, at a concentration of 0.3–1.5 μM, HSAF arrested spore germination *B. sorokiniana* and caused reduced hyphal extension or profuse branching of

F. graminearum and *F. verticilloides* (Yu et al. 2007). Reduction of germination of spores and polar growth and induction of excessive branching in fungal hyphae by HSAF might be linked to the disruption of filamentous actin organization in the hyphal cells as demonstrated by SB-K88/xanthobaccins in *A. cochlioides* (Islam 2008). In both strains C3 and SB-K88, nutritionally limited media were found suitable for the production of macrocyclic lactam antibiotics. Similarly, *L. antibioticus* HS124 suppresses blight diseases in pepper caused by *Phytophthora capsici* through the production of an antibiotic compound 4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid in concert with various lytic enzymes (Ko et al. 2009). The purified antibiotic 4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid strongly inhibited the hyphal growth of *P. capsici*.

The concept that environmental sensing mechanisms modulate production of many antifungal factors is well understood. Nakayama et al. reported that the amount of xanthobaccin A produced per SB-K88 cell was approximately 1×10^4- to 1×10^5-fold larger in the rhizoplane near attached SB-K88 than in liquid cultured cells (Nakayama et al. 1999). Further research is required to elucidate the mechanisms underlying sensing of the rhizoplane environment and simultaneous production of macrocyclic lactam antibiotics by *Lysobacter* spp. Quantitatively large production of heat stable, tetramic acid-containing macrocyclic lactam antibiotics structurally close to maltophilin is a shared trait by *Lysobacter* spp. that implies the ecological importance of *Lysobacter* biocontrol strains since these antibiotics are known to be effective on inhibition of fungal and peronosporomycetal diseases.

15.4.2.3 Biosynthetic Origin of Macrocyclic Lactam Antibiotics

The genetic locus responsible for the biosynthesis of HISAF in strain C3 has also been identified (Yu et al. 2007). DNA sequencing followed by antifungal bioassay of the developed mutants revealed that a hybrid polyketide synthase-nonribosomal peptide synthase (PKS-NRPS) gene is responsible for biosynthesis of the unique macrocyclic lactam system that is found in many biologically active natural products isolated for marine organisms (Shigemori et al. 1989; Gunasekera et al. 1991; Kanazawa et al. 1993). The analyses of the chemical structure of HSAF also suggest that an ornithine residue is incorporated into the lactam functionalities and that the biosynthesis of HSAF could involve both polyketide and nonribosomal peptide mechanisms, as found in bleomycins and other natural products (Du et al. 2003). Recently, two novel compounds in this group, namely, frontalamide A and frontalamide B have been discovered from a *Streptomyces* strain associated with the southern pine beetle (see structures in Fig. 15.2) (Blodgett et al. 2010). Genome mining efforts revealed strikingly conserved frontalamide-like biosynthetic clusters in the genomes of phylogenetically diverse bacteria ranging from proteobacteria to actinomycetes. These findings suggest the common biosynthetic origins for polyketide tetramate macrolactams from phylogenetically diverse bacteria.

15.4.3 Plant Colonization and Biofilm Formation

Both in vitro and in vivo experiments revealed that *Lysobacter* can colonize both leaves and roots of plants (Sullivan et al. 2003; Islam et al. 2005a, b; Postma et al. 2010). Islam et al. (2005a, b) investigated plant colonization behavior of a *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 by the aid of scanning electron microscopy (SEM) (Fig. 15.6). Their SEM analyses of 2-week-old sugar beet and spinach seedlings from seeds previously inoculated with SB-K88 revealed dense colonization on both the root and leaf surfaces in a characteristic perpendicular fashion. In colonized

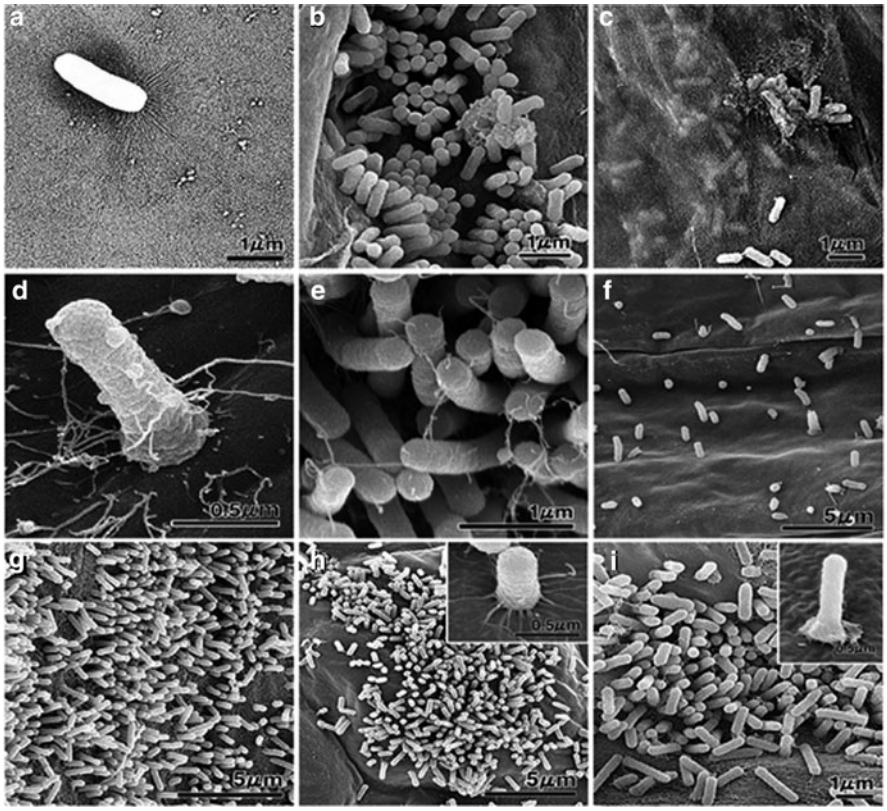


Fig. 15.6 TEM (**a**) and SEM (**b–i**) micrographs illustrating the morphology of *Lysobacter* sp. strain SB-K88 (**a**) and colonization of SB-K88 (**b–i**) on plant surfaces upon inoculation of seeds and seedlings grown in the gellan gum-based medium (**b–d**, **g–i**) or soil (**f**) (Islam et al. 2005b). (**a**) TEM micrograph of a sessile SB-K88 bacterial cell having large, brush-like fimbriae at one end. (**b**) Colonization on sugar beet root by perpendicular attachment. (**c**) Bacterial biofilm that developed under a semitransparent film of sugar beet root mucigel. (**d**) Typical perpendicular attachment of a bacterial cell to a sugar beet cotyledon. (**e**) High-density perpendicular attachment and colonization on the sugar beet leaf surface after immersion into an SB-K88 bacterial suspension (ca. 10^5 CFU/ml). (**f**) Colonization of sugar beet root. (**g**) Colonization of tomato root. (**h**) Colonization of *Arabidopsis thaliana* leaf. (**i**) Colonization of *Arabidopsis thaliana* root

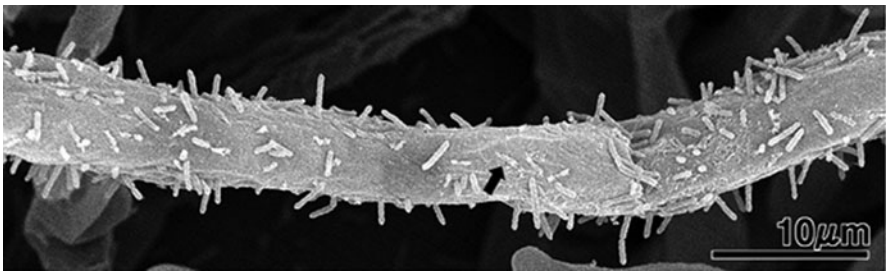


Fig. 15.7 SEM micrograph showing perpendicular attachment of *Lysobacter* sp. strain SB-K88 to a hypha (Islam et al. 2005b). The *black arrow* indicates unidentified granular deposits on the surface of the *A. cochlioides* hyphae colonized by SB-K88. No such granular deposits were observed on the surfaces of untreated control hyphae (not shown)

regions, a semitransparent film apparently enveloping the root and microcolonies were observed on the sugar beet root surface (Islam et al. 2005a). This *Lysobacter* strain also efficiently colonized the roots of several plants, including spinach, tomato, *Arabidopsis thaliana*, and *Amaranthus gangeticus*. Interestingly, the SB-K88 also colonized *A. cochlioides* hyphal surface in the same perpendicular manner when grown together on liquid medium (Fig. 15.7). To the best of my knowledge, perpendicular attachment of biocontrol bacterium to both plant and hyphal cell walls has not been reported (Islam et al. 2005b; Islam 2010). How a rod-shaped bacterium stands on plant and hyphal cell walls? Detailed transmission electron microscopic analysis revealed that the SB-K88 has long (~6 μm) brush-like, fragile fimbriae at one pole of the dividing bacterial cells (Fig. 15.6a).

As fimbriae are known to function in bacteria to adhere to the substrates, it is reasonable to assume that brush-like fimbriae help SB-K88 to attach perpendicularly on plant and hyphal cell walls as well as for gliding motility. Presence of fimbriae appears to be characteristic structural features of bacteria having gliding motility (Spormann 1999). A further study is needed to confirm whether perpendicular mode of attachment is a generic character of *Lysobacter* or not. Biofilm formation accompanying this perpendicular mode of attachment in theory could support a larger population of rod-shaped bacteria on a given plant surface (Islam et al. 2005a, b). Also, establishing a clearer understanding of the SB-K88's mechanism of perpendicular attachment to plant and hyphal surfaces may be important in realizing its potential as a biocontrol agent. Determining whether this phenomenon is characteristic of the genus *Lysobacter* in general may also help workers find other useful species (Islam et al. 2005b). Effective colonization of both foliar and subterranean plant parts by *L. enzymogenes* C3 has also been demonstrated (Sullivan et al. 2003).

15.4.4 Induced Systematic Resistance

Several species of bacterial and fungal biocontrol agents (BCAs) have been shown induced systemic resistance in host plants against the pathogens. One of the strains

of *Lysobacter* spp., i.e., strain C3, has also been shown induced systemic resistance in the host plants (Kilic-Ekici and Yuen 2003). The authors compared strain C3 in growth chamber experiments with other strains of *L. enzymogenes*, strains of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria (PGPR) that induce systemic resistance in dicot plants, and the synthetic elicitor 1,2,3-benzothiadiazole-7-thiocarboxylic acid-*S*-methyl-ester (BTH). They assessed and compared the effects of treatments (1) for induction of localized or systemic resistance against *B. sorokiniana* when applied to leaves and roots, and (2) the effects of induced resistance on pathogen's conidial germination on the phylloplane. None of the bacterial or chemical treatments induced any systemic resistance when applied to a leaf. Strains of *L. enzymogenes* differed in their ability to cause localized disease inhibition following foliage treatment and to induce systemic resistance in leaves when applied to roots. In contrast to strain C3, two other strains of *L. enzymogenes* were ineffective in inducing systemic resistance, indicating that this trait may not be a generic character of *Lysobacter*. The PGPR strains varied in effectiveness in causing localized disease inhibition when applied to the leaves. Most of the bacterial strains increased peroxidase activity in the treated leaves, providing evidence that localized disease inhibition may have been plant mediated. The involvement of localized induced resistance was confirmed in *P. fluorescens* WCS417r, which did inhibit *B. sorokiniana* conidial germination or hyphal growth in vitro. Soil drenches with nearly all PGPR strains resulted in systemic resistance in leaves, but the treatments varied as to the timing and strength of induced systemic resistance. BTH induced localized resistance when applied to leaves but did not activate resistance in leaves when applied to roots. All cases of induced resistance were associated with an inhibition of conidial germination on leaf surfaces and, thus, this reaction appears to be a hallmark of induced resistance in the *B. sorokiniana*–tall fescue pathosystem.

Further work with more species and strains of biocontrol *Lysobacter* spp. is needed for the better understanding of this important trait of biocontrol *Lysobacter* spp. Inoculation of SB-K88 in vitro enhanced vegetative growth (above ground) of sugar beet seedlings; however, root morphology was remarkably changed. Development of root hairs and polar growth of primary and lateral roots were shorted and thicker than that of uninoculated seedlings. A detailed study is needed to confirm whether the secreted chemicals and/or colonization of SB-K88 cause any effect on the root morphology of plants.

15.4.5 Wolf-Pack Predation

One of the unique features of *Lysobacter* spp. is that they exhibit micropredatory behavior like Myxobacteria (Martin 2002). Islam (2010) demonstrated that *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88, which suppresses damping-off diseases in sugar beet and spinach, aggregates around the dead cystospores of *A. cochlioides*. As a result, the cystospores lysed within few hours probably by secretion of macrocylic lactam antibiotics in concert with lytic enzymes from the bacterial cells (Islam 2010).

Lysobacter spp. and members of the bacteria, such as *Myxococcus xanthus*, tend to attack prey as groups, which is known as wolf-pack predation (Burnham et al. 1981; Lueders et al. 2006). Such group predation can be accomplished remotely via the secretion of diffusible compounds that kill and decompose hapless neighboring prey. Alternatively, some predatory compounds may be normally envisaged as a predator swarm that invades and decimates a prey colony on a solid surface; some pack predators (e.g. *Myxococcus* spp.) can surround and entrap their prey as a group even in aquatic environment. Although wolf-pack predation of bacteria against other prokaryotic organisms has been reported, predatory behavior of a prokaryotic against a eukaryotic organism is scarce. Therefore, molecular details and the sensing mechanism of *Lysobacter's* wolf-pack predation are needed to be clarified. Micropredatory behavior of *Lysobacter* may be a useful trait for biocontrol of plant diseases by these bacterial antagonists (Islam 2010).

15.4.6 Production of Allelochemicals and Growth Promoting Effects

Although *Lysobacter* is famous for production and secretion of antibiotics and lytic enzymes, however, reports on direct plant growth promoting effects of *Lysobacter* are scarce. Recently, Iwata and coworkers (2010) demonstrated that *Lysobacter* sp. strain E_4 can fix nitrogen under free-living conditions. It produces higher amounts of ammonia (~1.60 mM NH_4^+ conc.) in media containing glucose (Iwata et al. 2010). Therefore, this strain can be used as a biofertilizer as an alternative to synthetic nitrogenous fertilizers such as urea. As new species are being discovered every year, it is not unlikely to get similar biofunctional *Lysobacter* spp. in the days to come. It may be interesting to know whether the nitrogen fixer *Lysobacter* sp. can also produce antimicrobial substances or not.

15.5 Conclusion and Perspective

Lysobacter spp. are ubiquitous inhabitants in nature that possess some characteristic features, including gliding motility and high genomic G + C ratio, and produce lytic antibiotics and enzymes. Some strains of *Lysobacter* spp. have shown high promise in biocontrol of economically important plant diseases through multifaceted mechanisms including antibiosis, high plant colonization, induced systematic resistance, and micropredatory activity. The full potentials of *Lysobacter* spp. have not yet been evaluated for biocontrol of plant diseases in the field conditions. As a large number of new species have been discovered very recently, a growing research interest will certainly be given to judge the potentials of *Lysobacter* as biocontrol agents in the practical field of agriculture.

Acknowledgments The author is thankful to Prof. Satoshi Tahara and Prof. Yasuyuki Hashidoko of Hokkaido University, Japan, for their kind supports during his works on *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88. The Ministry of Science and Information and Communication Technology of the Peoples Republic of Bangladesh also deserve special thanks for financial support (2009–2010) to the project titled "Environment safe and low input sustainable food production by the application of natural resources."

References

Agrios GN (1997) Plant pathology. Academic, San Diego, CA, USA

Ahmed K, Chohnan S, Ohashi H, Hirata T, Masaki T, Sakiyama F (2003) Purification, bacteriolytic activity, and specificity of β-lytic protease from *Lysobacter* sp. IB-9374. J Biosci Bioeng 95:27–34

Allpress JD, Mountain G, Gowland PC (2002) Production, purification and characterization of an extracellular keratinase from *Lysobacter* NCIMB 9497. Lett Appl Microbiol 34:337–342

Aslam Z, Yasir M, Jeon CD, Chung YR (2009) *Lysobacter oryzae* sp. nov., isolated from the rhizosphere of rice (*Oryza sativa* L.). Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:675–680

Au S, Roy KL, von Tigerstrom RG (1991) Nucleotide sequence and characterization of the gene for secreted alkaline phosphatase from *Lysobacter enzymogenes*. J Bacteriol 173:4551–4557

Bachewich C, Heath IB (1998) Radial F-actin arrays precede new hypha formation in Saprolegnia: implications for establishing polar growth and regulating tip morphogenesis. J Cell Sci 111:2005–2016

Bae HS, Im WT, Lee ST (2005) *Lysobacter concretionis* sp. nov., isolated from anaerobic granules in an upflow anaerobic sludge blanket reactor. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 55:1155–1161

Bais HP, Fall R, Vivanco JM (2004) Biocontrol of *Bacillus subtilis* against infection of *Arabidopsis* root by *Pseudomonas syringae* is facilitated by biofilm formation and surfactin production. Plant Physiol 134:307–319

Baker KF (1987) Evolving concepts of biological control of plant pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 25:67–85

Blackmoore M, Patel N, Hillman B, Kobayashi D (2009) Involvement of type IV secretion in *Lysobacter enzymogenes* pathogenesis of fungal and algal hosts. Phytopathology 99:S12

Blodgett JAV, Oh DC, Cao S, Currie CR, Kolter R, Clardy J (2010) Common biosynthetic origins for polyketide tetramate macrolactams from phylogenetically diverse bacteria. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107(26):11692–11697

Boeckman RKJ, Weidner CH, Perni RB, Napier JJ (1989) An enantioselective and highly convergent synthesis of (+)-ikarugamycin. J Am Chem Soc 111:8036–8037

Bonner DP, O'Sullivan J, Tanaka SK, Clark JM, Whitney RR (1988) Lysobactin, a novel antibacterial agent produced by *Lysobacter* sp. II. Biological properties. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 41:1745–1751

Boras GJ, Au S, Roy KL, von Tigerstrom RG (1993) beta-Lactamase of *Lysobacter enzymogenes*: cloning, characterization and expression of the gene and comparison of the enzyme to other lactamases. J Gen Microbiol 139(Pt 6):1245–1252

Brucker RM, Baylor CM, Walters RL, Lauer A, Harris RN, Minbiole KP (2008) The identification of 2,4-diacetylphloroglucinol as an antifungal metabolite produced by cutaneous bacteria of the salamander *Plethodon cinereus*. J Chem Ecol 34(1):39–43

Bull CT, Shetty KG, Subbrao KV (2002) Interactions between myxobacteria, plant pathogenic fungi, and biocontrol agents. Plant Dis 86:889–896

Burnham JC, Collart SA, Highison BW (1981) Entrapment and lysis of the cyanobacterium *Phormidium luridum* by aqueous colonies of *Myxococcus xanthus* PCO_2. Arch Microbiol 129:285–294

Carson R (1962) Silent spring. Houghton Mifflin, USA

Chen J, Moore WH, Yuen GY, Kobayashi D, Caswell-Chen EP (2006) Influence of *Lysobacter enzymogenes* Strain C3 on nematodes. J Nematol 38(2):233–239

Chohnan S, Nonaka J, Teramoto K, Taniguchi K, Kameda Y, Tamura H, Kurusu Y, Norioka S, Masaki T, Sakiyama F (2002) *Lysobacter* strain with high lysyl endopeptidase production. FEMS Microbiol Lett 213:13–20

Chohnan S, Shiraki K, Yokota K, Ohshima M, Kuroiwa N, Ahmed K, Masaki T, Sakiyama F (2004) A second lysine-specific serine protease from *Lysobacter* sp. strain IB-9374. J Bacteriol 186:5093–5100

Christensen P (2001) Genus IV *Lysobacter* Christensen and Cook 1978. In: Brenner D, Krieg N, Staley J (eds) Bergey's manual of systematic bacteriology. Springer, New York, pp 95–101

Christensen P, Cook FD (1978) *Lysobacter*, a new genus of nonfruiting, gliding bacteria with high base ratio. Int J Syst Bacteriol 28:367–393

Cramer N, Laschat S, Baro A, Schwalbe H, Richter C (2005) Enantioselective total synthesis of cylindramide. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 44:820–822

Cramer N, Buchweitz M, Laschat S, Frey W, Baro A, Mathieu D, Richter C, Schwalbe H (2006) Total synthesis and NMR investigations of cylindramide. Chemistry 12:2488–2503

Demirev AV, Lee CH, Jaishy BP, Nam DH, Ryu DD (2006) Substrate specificity of nonribosomal peptide synthetase modules responsible for the biosynthesis of the oligopeptide moiety of cephabacin in *Lysobacter lactamgenus*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 255(1):121–128

Deora A, Hashidoko Y, Islam MT, Aoyama Y, Ito T, Tahara S (2006) An antagonistic rhizoplane bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp. strain EC-S101 physiologically stresses a spinach root rot pathogen *Aphanomyces cochlioides*. J Gen Plant Pathol 72:57–74

Du L, Cheng Y, Ingenhorst G, Tang G, Huang Y, Shen B (2003) Hybrid peptide-polyketide natural products: biosynthesis and prospects towards engineering novel molecules. In: Setlow JK (ed) Genetic engineering—principles and methods, vol 25. Kluwer Academic/Plenum, New York, NY, pp 227–267

Ensign J, Wolfe R (1966) Characterization of a small proteolytic enzyme which lyses bacterial cell walls. J Bacteriol 91:524–534

Epstein DM, Wensink PC (1988) The α-lytic protease gene of *Lysobacter enzymogenes*. The nucleotide sequence predicts a large prepro-peptide with homology to pro-peptides of other chymotrypsin-like enzymes. J Biol Chem 263:16586–16590

Fiorentini C, Matarrese P, Fattorossi A, Donelli G (1996) Okadaic acid induces changes in the organization of F-actin in intestinal cells. Toxicon 34:937–945

Folman LB, Postma J, van Veen JA (2001) Ecophysiological characterization of rhizosphere bacterial communities at different root locations and plant developmental stages of cucumber grown on rockwool. Microb Ecol 42:586–597

Folman LB, Postma J, van Veen JA (2003) Characterization of *Lysobacter enzymogenes* (Christensen and Cook, 1978) strain 3.1T8, a powerful antagonist of fungal disease of cucumber. Microbiol Res 158:107–115

Folman LB, De Klein MJEM, Postma J, van Veen JA (2004) Production of antifungal compounds by *Lysobacter enzymogenes* isolate 3.1T8 under different conditions in relation to its efficacy as a biocontrol agent of *Pythium aphanidermatum* in cucumber. Biol Control 31:145–154

Gardner BBM, Fravel DR (2002) Biological control of plant pathogens: research, commercialization, and application in the USA. Plant Management Network, APS, Retrieved on September 21, 2010 from http://www.phcmexico.com.mx/apsnet_biological_Control.html

Gasser I, Mueller H, Berg G (2009) Ecology and characterization of polyhydroxyalkanoates-producing microorganisms on and in plants. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 70:142–150

Giesler LJ, Yuen GY (1998) Evaluation of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* strain C3 for biocontrol of brown patch disease. Crop Prot 17:509–513

Gunasekera SP, Gunasekera M, McCarthy P (1991) Discodermide: a new bioactive macrocyclic lactam from the marine sponge *Discodermia dissoluta*. J Org Chem 56:4830–4833

Haas D, Defago G (2005) Biological control of soil-borne pathogens by fluorescent pseudomonads. Nat Rev Microbiol 3:307–319

Harada S, Tsubotani S, Ono H, Okazaki H (1984) Cephabacins, new cephem antibiotics of bacterial origin II. Isolation and characterization. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 37:1536–1545

Harman GE, Howell CR, Viterbo A, Chet I, Lorito M (2004) *Trichoderma* species-opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:43–56

Hashidoko Y, Nakayama T, Homma Y, Tahara S (1999) Structure elucidation of xanthobaccin A, a new antibiotic produced from *Stenotrophomonas* sp. strain SB-K88. Tetrahedron Lett 40:2957–2960

Hashizume H, Igarashi M, Hattori S, Hori M, Hamada M, Takeuchi T (2001) Tripropeptins, novel antimicrobial agents produced by *Lysobacter* sp. I. Taxonomy, isolation and biological activities. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 54:1054–1059

Hashizume H, Hattori S, Igarashi M, Akamatsu Y (2004a) Tripropeptin E, a new tripropeptin group antibiotic produced by *Lysobacter* sp. BMK333-48F3. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 57:394–399

Hashizume H, Hirosawa S, Sawa R, Muraoka Y, Ikeda D, Naganawa H, Igarashi M (2004b) Tripropeptins, novel antimicrobial agents produced by *Lysobacter* sp. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 57:52–58

Hayward AC, Fegan N, Fegan M, Stirling GR (2010) *Stenotrophomonas* and *Lysobacter*: ubiquitous plant-associated gamma-proteobacteria of developing significance in applied microbiology. J Appl Microbiol 108(3):756–70

Heath IB, Gupta G, Bai S (2000) Plasma membrane-adjacent actin filaments, but not microtubules, are essential for both polarization and hyphal tip morphogenesis in *Saprolegnia ferax* and *Neurospora crassa*. Fungal Genet Biol 30:45–62

Heungens K, Parke JL (2000) Zoospore homing and infection events: effects of the biocontrol bacterium *Burkholderia cepacia* AMMDR1 on two oomycete pathogens of pea (*Pisum sativum* L.). Appl Environ Microbiol 66:5192–5200

Hogan DA, Kolter R (2002) *Pseudomonas–Candida* interactions: an ecological role for virulence factors. Science 296:2229–2232

Holtman MA (1998) Rutgers. Ph.D. thesis, The State University of New Jersey, New Brunswick

Homma Y, Uchino H, Kanzawa K, Nakayama T, Sayama M (1993) Suppression of sugar beet damping-off and production of antagonistic substances by strains of rhizobacteria. Ann Phytopathol Soc Jpn 59:282

Homma Y, Katoh K, Uchino H, Kanzawa K (1997) Suppression of sugar beet damping-off by seed bacterization with *Stenotrophomonas* sp. SB-K88 in a paper pot system. In: Ogoshi A, Kobayashi K, Homma Y, Kodama F, Kondo N, Akino S (eds) Plant growth-promoting rhizobacteria – present status and future prospects. The 4th PGPR International Workshop, Sapporo, Japan, pp 205–208

Ikner L et al (2007) Culturable microbial diversity and the impact of tourism in Kartchner Caverns, Arizona. Microb Ecol 53:30–42

Islam MT (2008) Disruption of ultrastructure and cytoskeleton network is involved with biocontrol of damping-off pathogen *Aphanomyces cochlioides* by *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88. Biol Control 46:312–321

Islam MT (2010) Mode of antagonism of a biocontrol bacterium *Lysobacter* sp. SB-K88 toward a damping-off pathogen *Aphanomyces cochlioides*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 26:629–637

Islam MT, Tahara S (2001) Chemotaxis of fungal zoospores, with special reference to *Aphanomyces cochlioides*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 65:1933–1948

Islam MT, Ito T, Tahara S (2001) Morphological studies on zoospores of *Aphanomyces cochlioides* and changes during the interaction with host materials. J Gen Plant Pathol 67:255–261

Islam MT, Ito T, Tahara S (2002) Microscopic studies on attachment and differentiation of zoospores of the phytopathogenic fungus *Aphanomyces cochlioides*. J Gen Plant Pathol 68:111–117

Islam MT, Ito T, Tahara S (2003) Host-specific plant signal and G-protein activator, mastoparan, trigger differentiation of zoospores of the phytopathogenic oomycete *Aphanomyces cochlioides*. Plant Soil 255:131–142

Islam MT, Hashidoko Y, Deora A, Ito T, Tahara S (2004a) Interactions between rhizoplane bacteria and a phytopathogenic Peronosporomycete *Aphanomyces cochlioides* in relation to the suppression of damping-off disease in sugar beet and spinach. IOBC/wprs Bulletin 27:255–260

Islam MT, Ito T, Tahara S (2004b) Interruption of the homing events of phytopathogenic *Aphanomyces cochlioides* zoospores by secondary metabolites from nonhost *Amaranthus gangeticus*. J Pestic Sci 29:6–14

Islam MT, Hashidoko Y, Deora A, Ito T, Tahara S (2005a) *Lysobacter–Aphanomyces* interactions: an ecological role for biocontrol of damping-off disease. Nippon Nogei Kagakkai Taikai Koen Yoshishu 2005:221

Islam MT, Hashidoko Y, Deora A, Ito T, Tahara S (2005b) Suppression of damping-off disease in host plants by the rhizoplane bacterium *Lysobacter* sp. strain SB-K88 is linked to plant colonization and antibiosis against soilborne peronosporomycetes. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:3786–3796

Ito S, Hirata Y (1977) The structure of ikarugamycin, an acyltetramic acid antibiotic possessing a unique as-hydrindacene skeleton. Bull Chem Soc Jpn 50:1813–1820

Iwata K, Azian A, Yamakawa H, Omori T (2010) Ammonia accumulation in culture broth by the novel nitrogen-fixing bacterium, *Lysobacter* sp. E_4. J Biosci Bioeng 110(4):415–418

Jakobi M, Winkelmann G, Kaiser D, Kempter C, Jung G, Berg G, Bahl H (1996) Maltophilin, a new antifungal compound produced by *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* R3089. J Antibiot 49:1101–1104

Ji GH, Wei LF, He YQ, Wu YP, Bai XH (2008) Biological control of rice bacterial blight by *Lysobacter antibioticus* strain 13-1. Biol Control 45:288–296

Jiang Y, Hu B, Liu F (2005) Selection and identification of antagonistic bacteria against soilborne plant pathogens. Chin J Biol Control 21(4):260–264

Jochum CC, Osborne LE, Yuen GY (2006) *Fusarium* head blight biological control with *Lysobacter enzymogenes*. Biol Control 39:336–344

Kanazawa S, Fusetani N, Matsunaga S (1993) Bioactive marine metabolites. 45. Cylindramide: cytotoxic tetramic acid lactam from the marine sponge *Halichondria cylindrata* Tanita & Hoshino. Tetrahedron Lett 34:1065–1068

Kato A, Nakaya S, Ohashi Y, Hirata H (1997) WAP-8294A2, a novel anti-MRSA antibiotic produced by *Lysobacter* sp. J Am Chem Soc 119:6680–6681

Kato A, Nakaya S, Kokubo N, Aiba Y, Ohashi Y, Hirata H, Fujii K, Harada K (1998) A new anti-MRSA antibiotic complex, WAP-8294A. I. Taxonomy, isolation and biological activities. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 51:929–935

Katznelson H, Gillespie D, Cook F (1964) Studies on the relationships between nematodes and other soil microorganisms. Can J Microbiol 10:699–704

Kawamura Y, Tomida J, Morita Y, Naka T, Mizuno S, Fujiwara N (2009) '*Lysobacter enzymogenes* ssp. *cookii*' Christensen 1978 should be recognized as an independent species, *Lysobacter cookii* sp. nov. FEMS Microbiol Lett 298:118–123

Kilic-Ekici O, Yuen GY (2003) Induced resistance as a mechanism of biological control by *Lysobacter enzymogenes* strain C3. Phytopathology 93:1103–1110

Kilic-Ekici O, Yuen GY (2004) Comparison of strains of *Lysobacter enzymogenes* and PGPR for induction of resistance against *Bipolaris sorokiniana* in tall fescue. Biol Control 30:446–455

Ko HS, Jin RD, Krishnan HB, Lee SB, Kim KY (2009) Biocontrol ability of *Lysobacter antibioticus* HS124 against *Phytophthora* blight is mediated by the production of 4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid and several lytic enzymes. Curr Microbiol 59:608–615

Kobayashi D, El-Barrad N (1996) Selection of bacterial antagonists using enrichment cultures for the control of summer patch disease in Kentucky bluegrass. Curr Microbiol 32:106–110

Kobayashi DY, Yuen GY (2005) The role of *clp*-regulated factors in antagonism against *Magnaporthe poae* and biological control of summer patch disease of Kentucky bluegrass by *Lysobacter enzymogenes* C3. Can J Microbiol 51:719–723

Kobayashi DY, Reedy RM, Palumbo JD, Zhou JM, Yuen GY (2005) A *clp* gene homologue belonging to the *Crp* gene family globally regulates lytic enzyme production, antimicrobial

activity, and biological control activity expressed by *Lysobacter enzymogenes* strain C3. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:261–269

Lee JW, Im WT, Kim MK, Yang DC (2006a) *Lysobacter koreensis* sp. nov., isolated from a ginseng field. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:231–235

Lee MS, Do JO, Park MS, Jung S, Lee KH, Bae KS, Park SJ, Kim SB (2006b) Dominance of *Lysobacter* sp. in the rhizosphere of two coastal sand dune plant species, *Calystegia soldanella* and *Elymus mollis*. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 90:19–27

Lee JS, Vladimirova MG, Demirev AV, Kim BG, Lim SK, Nam DH (2008) Expression and characterization of polyketide synthase module involved in the late step of cephabacin biosynthesis from *Lysobacter lactamgenus*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 18(3):427–433

Leira F, Cabado AG, Vieytes MR, Roman Y, Alfonso A, Botanas LM, Yasamoto T, Malaguti C, Rossini GP (2002) Characterization of F-actin depolymerization as a major toxic event induced by pectenotoxin-6 in neuroblastoma cells. Biochem Pharmacol 63:1979–1988

Li S, Jochum CC, Yu F, Zaleta-Rivera K, Du L, Harris SD, Yuen GY (2008) An antibiotic complex from *Lysobacter enzymogenes* strain C3: antimicrobial activity and role in plant disease control. Phytopathology 98(6):695–701

Lin D, McBride MJ (1996) Development of techniques for the genetic manipulation of the gliding bacteria *Lysobacter enzymogenes* and *Lysobacter brunescens*. Can J Microbiol 42:896–902

Liu M, Liu Y, Wang Y, Luo X, Dai J, Fang C (2010) *Lysobacter xinjiangensis* sp. nov., a moderately thermotolerant and alkalitolerant bacterium isolated from gamma-irradiated sand soil sample. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 61:433–437

Lueders T, Kindler K, Miltner A, Friedrich MW, Kaestner M (2006) Identification of bacterial micropredators distinctively active in a soil microbial food web. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:5342–5348

Maeda R, Nagashima H, Widada J, Iwata K, Omori T (2009) Novel marine carbazole-degrading bacteria. FEMS Microbiol Lett 292:2003–2009

Martin MO (2002) Predatory prokaryotes: an emerging research opportunity. J Mol Microbiol Biotechnol 4:467–477

McBride MJ (2001) Bacterial gliding motility: multiple mechanisms for cell movement over surfaces. Annu Rev Microbiol 55:49–75

Muranova TA, Krasovskaya LA, Tsfasman IM, Stepnaya OA, Kulaev IS (2004) Structural investigations and identification of the extracellular bacteriolytic endopeptidase L1 from *Lysobacter* sp. XL1. Biochemistry (Mosc) 69(5):501–505

Nakayama T, Homma Y, Hashidoko Y, Mizutani J, Tahara S (1999) Possible role of xanthobaccins produced by *Stenotrophomonas* sp. strain SB-K88 in suppression of sugar beet damping-off disease. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:4334–4339

Nijhuis EH, Pastoor R, Postma J (2010) Specific detection of *Lysobacter enzymogenes* (Christensen and Cook 1978) strain 3.1T8 with TaqMan PCR. J Appl Microbiol 108 (4):1155–1166

Ogura J, Toyoda A, Kurosawa T, Chong AL, Chohnan S, Masaki T (2006) Purification, characterization, and gene analysis of cellulase (Cel8A) from *Lysobacter* sp. IB-9374. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 70:2420–2428

Oh KH, Kang ST, Jung YT, Oh TK, Yoon JH (2010) *Lysobacter dokdonensis* sp. nov., isolated from soil. Int J Syst Evol Microbial. DOI:10.1099/ijs.0.020495-0

Ono H, Nozaki Y, Katayama N, Okazaki H (1984) Cephabacins, new cephem antibiotics of bacterial origin. I. Discovery and taxonomy of the producing organisms and fermentation. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 37:1528–1535

O'Sullivan J, McCullough JE, Tymiak AA, Kirsch DR, Trejo WH, Principe PA (1988) Lysobactin, a novel antibacterial agent produced by *Lysobacter* sp. I. Taxonomy, isolation and partial characterization. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 41:1740–1744

Palumbo JD, Sullivan RF, Kobayashi DY (2003) Molecular characterization and expression in *Escherichia coli* of three β-1,3-glucanase genes from *Lysobacter enzymogenes* Strain N4-7. J Bacteriol 185:4362–4370

Palumbo JD, Yuen GY, Jochum CC, Tatum K, Kobayashi DY (2005) Mutagenesis of β-1,3-glucanase genes in *Lysobacter enzymogenes* strain C3 results in reduced biological control activity toward *Bipolaris* leaf spot of tall fescue and *Pythium* damping-off of sugar beet. Phytopathology 95:701–707

Park JH, Kim R, Aslam Z, Joen CO, Chung YR (2008) *Lysobacter capsici* sp. nov., with antimicrobial activity, isolated from the rhizosphere of pepper, and emended description of the genus *Lysobacter*. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 58:387–392

Patel N, Blackmoore M, Hillman B, Kobayashi D (2009) Evidence for the role of Type VI secretion during *Lysobacter enzymogenes* pathogenesis of fungal hosts. Phytopathology 99:S100

Peterson E, Gillespie D, Cook F (1966) A wide spectrum antibiotic produced by a species of *Sorangium*. Can J Microbiol 12:221–230

Postma J, Schilder MT, Bloem J, van Leeuwen-Haagsma WK (2008) Soil suppressiveness and functional diversity of the soil microflora in organic farming systems. Soil Biol Biochem 40:2394–2406

Postma J, Stvens LH, Wiegors GL, Davelaar E, Nijhuis EH (2009) Biological control of *Pythium aphanidermatum* in cucumber with a combined application of *Lysobacter engymogenes* strain 3.1 T8 and chitosan. Biol Control 48:301–309

Postma J, Nijhuis EH, Yassin AF (2010) Genotypic and phenotypic variation among *Lysobacter capsici* strains isolated from *Rhizoctonia* suppressive soils. Syst Appl Microbiol 33(4): 232–235

Qian G, Hu B, Jiang Y, Liu F (2009) Identification and characterization of *Lysobacter enzymogenes* as a biological control agent against some fungal pathogens. Agric Sci China 8:68–75

Reedy R, Kobayashi D (2003) Induction of the type III secretory pathway in the biocontrol bacterium *Lysobacter enzymogenes* strain C3 in the presence of fungal cell wall constituents. Phytopathology 93:S73

Riazanova LP, Ledova LA, Tsurikova NV, Stepnaia OA, Sinitsyn AP, Kulaev IS (2005) Effect of the proteolytic enzymes of *Bacillus licheniformis* and the lysoamidase of *Lysobacter* sp. XL1 on *Proteus vulgaris* and *Proteus mirabilis*. Prikl Biokhim Mikrobiol 41(5):558–563

Romanenko LA, Uchino M, Tanaka N, Frolova GM, Mikhailov VV (2008) *Lysobacter spongiicola* sp. nov., isolated from a deep-sea sponge. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 58:370–374

Schmalenberger A, Tebbe CC (2003) Bacterial diversity in maize rhizospheres: conclusions on the use of genetic profiles based on PCR-amplified partial small subunit rRNA genes in ecological studies. Mol Ecol 12:251–261

Shigemori H, Bae MA, Yazawa K, Sasaki T, Kobayashi J (1992) Alteramide A, a new tetracyclic alkaloid from a bacterium *Alteromonas* sp. associated with the marine sponge *Halichondria okadai*. J Org Chem 57:4317–4320

Spormann AM (1999) Gliding motility in bacteria: insights from studies of *Myxococcus xanthus*. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 63:621–641

Srinivasan S, Kim MK, Sathiyaraj G, Kim HB, Kim YJ, Chun D (2009) *Lysobacter soli* sp. nov., isolated from soil of a ginseng field. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 60:1543–1547

Stepnaia OA, Begunova EA, Tsfasman IM, Tul'skaia EM, Streshinskaia GM, Naumova IB, Kulaev IS (2004) Mechanism of action of the extracellular bacteriolytic enzymes of *Lysobacter* sp. on gram-positive bacteria: role of the cell wall anionic polymers of the target bacteria. Microbiology 73(4):479–485

Sullivan RF, Holtman MA, Zylstra GJ, White JF, Kobayashi DY (2003) Taxonomic positioning of two biological control agents for plant diseases as *Lysobacter enzymogenes* based on phylogenetic analysis of 16S rDNA, fatty acid composition and phenotypic characteristics. J Appl Microbiol 94:1079–1086

Takemoto D, Hardham AR (2004) The cytoskeleton as a regulator and target of biotic interactions in plants. Plant Physiol 136:3864–3878

Ten LN, Jung HM, Im WT, Yoo SA, Lee ST (2008) *Lysobacter daecheongensis* sp. nov., isolated from sediment of stream near the Daechung dam in South Korea. J Microbiol 46(5):519–524

Ten LN, Jung HM, IM WT, Yoo SA, Oh HM, Lee ST (2009) *Lysobacter panaciterrae* sp. nov., isolated from soil of a ginseng field. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:958–963

Tindall BJ, Euzéby JP (2006) Lysobacter enzymogenes subsp. enzymogenes Christensen and Cook 1978, *L. enzymogenes* subsp. cookii Christensen 1978, and *Streptococcus casseliflavus* (Mundt and Graham 1968) Vaughan et al. (1978) should have been cited in the approved lists of bacterial names. Request for an opinion. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56(11):2707–2709

Tsfasman IM, Sitkin BV, Lysanskaya VY, Stepnaya OA, Kulaev IS (2007) Substrate specificity and some physicochemical properties of autolytic enzymes of the bacterium *Lysobacter* sp. XL 1. Biochemistry (Mosc) 72(7):760–765

Von Tigerstrom RG (1980) Extracellular nucleases of *Lysobacter enzymogenes*: production of the enzymes and purification and characterization of an endonuclease. Can J Microbiol 26:1029–1037

Von Tigerstrom RG (1984) Production of two phosphatases by *Lysobacter enzymogenes* and purification and characterization of the extracellular enzyme. Appl Environ Microbiol 47:693–698

Von Tigerstrom RG, Stelmaschuk S (1987) Comparison of the phosphatases of *Lysobacter enzymogenes* with those of related bacteria. J Gen Microbiol 133:3121–3127

Wang Y, Dai J, Zhang L, Luo X, Li Y, Chen G, Tang Y, Meng Y, Fang C (2009) *Lysobacter ximonensis* sp. nov., isolated from soil. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 59:786–789

Wang GL, Wang L, Chen HH, Shen B, Li SP, Jiang JD (2010) *Lysobacter ruishenii* sp. nov., a chlorothalonil-degrading bacterium isolated from a long-term chlorothalonil-contaminated soil in China. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 61:674–679

Weller DM, Raaijmakers J, McSpadden Gardner B, Thomashow LM (2002) Microbial populations responsible for specific soil suppressiveness to plant pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 40:309–348

Weon HY, Kim BY, Baek YK, Yoo SH, Kwon SW, Stackebrandt E, Go SJ (2006) Two novel species, *Lysobacter daejeonensis* sp. nov. and *Lysobacter yangpyeongensis* sp. nov., isolated from Korean greenhouse soils. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 56:947–951

Weon HY, Kim BY, Kim MK, Yoo SH, Kwon SW, Go SJ, Stackebrandt E (2007) *Lysobacter niabensis* sp. nov. and *Lysobacter niastensis* sp. nov., isolated from greenhouse soils in Korea. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:548–551

West PV, Appiah AA, Gow NAR (2003) Advances in research on oomycete root pathogens. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 62:99–113

Whipps JM (2001) Microbial interactions and biocontrol in the rhizosphere. J Exp Bot 52:487–511

Wright DS, Graham LD, Jennings PA (1998) Cloning of a *Lysobacter enzymogenes* gene that encodes an arginyl endopeptidase (endoproteinase Arg-C). Biochim Biophys Acta 1443:369–374

Yassin AF, Chen W-M, Hupfer H, Siering C, Kroppenstedt RM, Arun AB, Lai W-A, Shen F-T, Rekha PD, Young CC (2007) *Lysobacter defluvii* sp. nov., isolated from municipal solid waste. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 57:1131–1136

Yin H (2010) Detection methods for the genus *Lysobacter* and the species *Lysobacter enzymogenes*. Dissertation and Thesis in Biological Sciences, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, USA

Yin H, Zhao X, Du Y (2010) Oligochitosan a plant disease vaccine – a review. Carbohydr Polym 82:1–8

Yu F, Zaleta-Rivera K, Zhu X, Huffman J, Millet JC, Harris SD, Yuen G, Li XC, Du L (2007) Structure and biosynthesis of heat-stable antifungal factor (HSAF), a broad-spectrum antimycotic with a novel mode of action. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 51:64–72

Yuen GY, Zhang Z (2001) Control of brown patch disease using the bacterium *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* strain C3 and culture fluid. Int Turfgrass Soc Res J 9:742–747

Yuen GY, Steadman JR, Lindgren DT, Schaff D, Jochum C (2001) Bean rust biological control using bacterial agents. Crop Prot 20:395–402

Yuen GY, Jochum CC, Osborne LE, Jin Y (2003) Biocontrol of fusarium head blight in wheat by *Lysobacter enzymogenes* C3. Phytopathology 93:S93

Zhang Z, Yuen GY (1999) Biological control of *Bipolaris sorokiniana* on tall fescue by *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* C3. Phytopathology 89:817–822

Zhang Z, Yuen GY (2000) The role of chitinase production by *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* C3 in biological control of *Bipolaris sorokiniana*. Phytopathology 90:384–389

Zhang Z, Yuen GY, Sarath G, Penheiter A (2001) Chitinases from the plant disease biocontrol agent, *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* C3. Phytopathology 91:204–211

Zhang L, Bai J, Wang Y, Wu GL, Dai J, Fang CX (2010) *Lysobacter korlensis* sp. nov. and *Lysobacter burgurensis* sp. nov., isolated from soil in north-west China. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol DOI 10.1099/ijs.0.024448-0

Index

D.K. Maheshwari (ed.), *Bacteria in Agrobiology: Plant Growth Responses*,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-20332-9,